HOW I FOUND LIVINGSTONE

STANLEY

Henry M. Stanley

PHOTOGRAPHED BY THE LONDON STEREOSCOPIC COMPANY.

HOW I FOUND LIVINGSTONE.

TRAVELS, ADVENTURES, AND DISCOVERIES

IN

CENTRAL AFRICA;

INCLUDING FOUR MONTHS' RESIDENCE
WITH DR. LIVINGSTONE.

BY

HENRY M. STANLEY,

TRAVELLING CORRESPONDENT OF THE "NEW YORK HERALD."

ILLUSTRATIONS AND MAPS.

LONDON:
SAMPSON LOW, MARSTON, LOW, AND SEARLE,
CROWN BUILDINGS, 188 FLEET STREET.
1872.

[*All rights reserved.*]

LONDON:
PRINTED BY WILLIAM CLOWES AND SONS,
STAMFORD STREET AND CHARING CROSS.

TO

JAMES GORDON BENNETT, ESQ.,
(PROPRIETOR OF THE "NEW YORK HERALD,")

THIS RECORD OF

THE EXPEDITION SENT IN SEARCH OF DOCTOR LIVINGSTONE,

AND OF

TRAVELS, ADVENTURES, AND DISCOVERIES IN CENTRAL AFRICA,

Is Respectfully Dedicated,

AS A TRIBUTE

TO THE GENEROSITY AND THE LIBERALITY WHICH ORIGINATED, SUSTAINED.
AND CROWNED THE ENTERPRISE,

BY HIS GRATEFUL SPECIAL CORRESPONDENT,

HENRY M. STANLEY,
LATE COMMANDER "NEW YORK HERALD" EXPEDITION.

Reprinted 1984 from the 1872 edition. II
Cover design © 1982 Time-Life Books B.V.
Printed and bound by Brepols S.A.,
Turnhout, Belgium
ISBN: 7054 1513 9

CONTENTS.

CHAPTER I.

ZANZIBAR.

Arrival at Zanzibar—Reception by Captain Webb, U.S. Consul—Life at Zanzibar—System of Trade with the Interior—The town of Zanzibar—Population—Introduction to Dr. Kirk—Bishop Tozer . . . . Pages 1 to 20

CHAPTER II.

ORGANIZATION OF THE EXPEDITION.

Difficulty of obtaining information—Engagement of J. W. Shaw and W. L. Farquhar—Mbarak Bombay—Visit to the Sultan's Palace—Embarkation for Bagamoyo—Courtesy and Character of the Sultan . . . . . . Pages 21 to 40

CHAPTER III.

BAGAMOYO.

Arrival at Bagamoyo—Hospitality of the Jesuit Mission—Life at Bagamoyo—Ali bin Salim—Dishonest Prowlers—Donkey stolen—Packing the Bales—Difficulty in procuring Pagazis—Cost of Carriage and Goods—Soor Hadjí Palloo—His peccadilloes—Visit to the Livingstone Caravan—Arrival at Bagamoyo of Dr. Kirk—Climate of Bagamoyo—Departure of the Five Caravans . . . . Pages 41 to 68

CHAPTER IV.

THROUGH UKWERE, UKAMI, AND UDOE, TO USEGUHHA.

Arrival at first Camp, "Shamba Gonera"—The Valley of the Kingani—Building Bridge across the Kingani—The crossing—Peppering Hippopotami—Arrival at Kikoka—Route never travelled by a White Man—Rosako, the Frontier Village of Ukwere—Impertinent Curiosity of the Wagogo—My Watch-dog "Omar"—The Insect Tribe—The Tsetse Fly—The Chufwa Fly: its voracity—Commencement of the Masika, or Rainy Season—Death of Arab Horse—Interview with Chief of Kingaru—Death of Bay Horse—March to Imbiki—Arrival at Msuwa—Jungle troubles—Chained Slave-gang—Kisemo—The Belles of Kisemo—Desertion of Khamisi: his punishment—Crossing the Ungerengeri—The Capital, Useguhha Simbamwenni—The Sultana—Stormy Dispute with Shaw—African Ague—Visit from the Sultana . . . Pages 69 to 120

CHAPTER V.

TO UGOGO.

The Rainy Season—Innumerable Hosts of Creeping Things—Crossing the Ungerengeri—The Flogging of Bunder Salaam: he is Lost: his Discovery—Soldiers imprisoned by the Sultana—The Makata Wilderness—Desertion and Capture of Soldier—Terrible Difficulties in crossing the Makata Swamp—Encampment at Usagara—Shaw's Letter to Farquhar—Farquhar's Reply—His extravagant Expenditure — Shaw's Dilatoriness — Novel mode of using a Cart—Lake Ugombo—Shaw and Farquhar at Breakfast—Shaw "measures his length" on the ground—Asks for his Discharge—He Repents—A Shot fired through my Tent—Farquhar left behind at Mpwapwa—Abdullah bin Nasib—Scenery of Mpwapwa . . . Pages 121 to 170

CHAPTER VI.

THROUGH MARENGA MKALI, UGOGO, UYANZI, TO UNYANYEMBE.

Arrival at Chunyo—Bitter Water—Marenga Mkali—No Water for Thirty-six Hours—A Dangerous Fever attack—Arrival at Ugogo—Furious Mob—Plentiful Supplies at Mvumi—Tribute to the Great Sultan—The Sultan of Matamburu—March to Bihawana—Whipping the Wagogo—Visit from the Sultan of Mizanza—The Wahumba a fine Race—Arrival at Mukondoku—Departure—Counsel with Arabs as to Route—Dispute and Separation from them—They follow—Ugogo proves to be a Land of Gall and Bitterness—Arrival at Kiti—Sultan bin Mohammed—Halt at Kusuri—Thief shot—Mud-fish—Rubuga in Ruins—Amir bin Sultan—Crossing the Mtoni—Arrival in Unyanyembe . . . . Pages 171 to 222

CHAPTER VII.

GEOGRAPHICAL AND ETHNOGRAPHICAL REMARKS.

Pages 223 to 257

CHAPTER VIII.

LIFE IN UNYANYEMBE.

Hospitality of the Governor, Sayd bin Salim—Comfortable Quarters—Tabora, the principal Arab Settlement—Mirambo, Chief of Uyoweh—His Depredations—A Council of War—The Livingstone Caravan found—Terrible attack of Fever—March for Ujiji—Arrival at Masangi—Shaw taken Ill—Join the Arab Army at Mfuto—Fight with Mirambo—Capture of the Village of Zimbizo—Fever again—Defeat and great Slaughter of the Arabs by Mirambo—Retreat to Mfuto . . Pages 258 to 286

CHAPTER IX.

LIFE IN UNYANYEMBE.

The Arabs Retreat to Tabora—I proceed—Arrival at Kwihara—Try another Route—My Position most Serious—Death of Farquhar reported—Defeat of the Arabs at Tabora—Khamis bin Abdullah slain—Tabora in Flames—Preparations for Defence—The Philosopher Sheikh bin Nasib—I determine to lead a Flying Caravan to Ujiji—Death of Baruti—Men dispirited—The little Boy Kalulu—His baptism—Mirambo attacks Mfuto, and is defeated—Selim delirious from constant Fevers—Two Guides, Asmani and Mabruki—My Resolution to find Livingstone . . . . Pages 287 to 309

CHAPTER X.

TO MRERA, UKONONGO.

Start from Kwihara—Bombay gets a Thrashing—Shaw wishes to stay behind—I compel him to go on—Another Fever attack—Livingstone's Letter-carrier missing—Arrival at Kasegera—Shaw gives in, and is sent back to Kwihara—The splendid Forests of Unyamwezi—We reach Ugunda—The Mukunguru—Description of this Fever—A magnificent Sycamore—A Victim to Small-pox—Numerous Skeletons found on the Road-side—Arrival at Manyara—Dispute as to Tribute with the Sultan—Visit from him—A Dose of Concentrated Ammonia—The Sultan's Astonishment—The Hunter's Paradise—My first Game, an Antelope shot—Zebra-stalking—Adventure with a Crocodile—Two Days' Hunting—Mutiny—Asmani and Mabruki present their Guns at me—Peace restored—Bombay Thrashed again, and put in Chains—Characters of the Principal Men—Arrival at Ziwani—The Honey-Bird—Utende—Mwaru—Arrival at Mrera—Shoe-mending . . . Pages 310 to 360

CHAPTER XI.

THROUGH UKAWENDI, UVINZA, AND UHHA, TO UJIJI.

Departure from Mrera—Camp in the Jungle—I sink to my Neck in the Ooze of the Rungwa—The Mpokwa River—The Home of the Lion first seen—A Troop of Monkeys—Adventure with a huge Wild Boar—Followed by a Lion—A Day of great Troubles—A Buffalo shot—A Leopard—Buffalo-stalking—Famine stares us in the face—Welled Nzogera's—Food plentiful—A Donkey sinks in the Morass—Embassy to Chief Kiala—Seven Hours of Talk—On the Banks of the Malagarazi—Our Donkey "Simba" seized and carried away by a Crocodile—NEWS OF LIVINGSTONE!—Halt at Kawanga—Disputes about Tribute—Exorbitant Demands—We cross the Pombwe and the Kanengi Rivers—A Midnight March through the Jungle—A Crazy Woman almost betrays us by yelling—Thunder from the Tanganika—On the Banks of the Rugufu—Niamtaga—The Tanganika! Hurrah! Unfurl the Flags!—Susi, Dr. Livingstone's Servant, says, "Good-morning, Sir!"—"DR. LIVINGSTONE, I PRESUME?" "*Yes!*"—Conversation with the Doctor—Good-night . . . . . . Pages 361 to 419

CHAPTER XII.

INTERCOURSE WITH LIVINGSTONE AT UJIJI.

Summary from my Note-book of Livingstone's Travels
Pages 420 to 474

CHAPTER XIII.

OUR CRUISE ON THE TANGANIKA.

Our Ship, a cranky Canoe—Enormous Dog-nosed Monkey—The Fishermen of the Tanganika—The Zassi River and Village—Soundings of the Lake—Nyabigma Island—Disturbed at Supper—Hostility of the Natives—War between Mukamba and Warumashanya—A Mgwana asserts that the Rusizi flows out of the Lake—I am struck down by Fever—Nursed by the Doctor—The Mgwana's Report contradicted by Mukamba—Swarms of Crocodiles—Runinga's Information—The Head of the Lake and the Mouth of the Rusizi—The Question, Was the Rusizi an Effluent or Influent, answered for ever—The Doctor still believes in an Outlet—Burton and Speke's Extreme Point—Signs of Disturbance in Mruta's Village—"New York Herald Islets"—Cape Luvumba—A Fight about to Commence—The Sultan Pacified—A serio-comic Scene—Return to Ujiji
Pages 475 to 515

CHAPTER XIV.

GEOGRAPHICAL AND ETHNOGRAPHICAL REMARKS.

Pages 516 to 557

CHAPTER XV.

OUR JOURNEY TO UNYANYEMBE.

Chat with Livingstone over the Incidents of the "Pic-nic"—The Doctor declines to return Home until his Work is done—Blames Dr. Kirk for sending him Slaves, and commanding them to bring him back—Recovery of his Enfield Rifles—The Doctor resolves to accompany me to Unyanyembe—Attack of Remittent Fever—How we spent Christmas-day—Departure from Ujiji—Our Voyage down the Tanganika—Arrival at, and crossing the Liuche—Crossing the Malagarazi—No Current in the Tanganika—Arrival at Urimba—Zebra-shooting—The Valley of Loajeri—Buffalo Cow shot—Confronting an Elephant—Travellers' Tales—Red-bearded Monkeys—Magdala sighted—The Valley of Imrera—The Doctor foot-sore—Herds of

Game in Mpokwa Plain—Two Zebras shot—A Herd of Giraffe—Giraffe wounded—Ibrahim's Slave Ulimengo absconds—Latitude of Mpokwa—Zinc Canteens converted into Bullets—Giraffe brought down therewith—Start for Misonghi—The Doctor dreadfully Stung by Wild Bees—Mirambo famished—Death of Shaw—Incidents in the Career and Death of Robert Livingstone—A Lion in the Grass—A Triplet of Lions—Arrival at Ugunda—Capture of the Deserter, Hamdallah—Arrival at Unyanyembe . . . . Pages 558 to 607

CHAPTER XVI.

HOMEWARD BOUND.

Livingstone's Stores opened—Found to be a Delusion—Asmani found Guilty—White Ants consuming the Brandy and replacing the Corks!—The Goods turned over to Dr. Livingstone—He writes his Letters home—His Letter to James G. Bennett—Native Song—Last Night with Livingstone—His Journal sealed up—Our final Departure—Farewell—Halt at Tura—Letters from the Doctor—Arrival at Kiwyeh—Wagogo War Horns sounding everywhere—Full Fighting Costume—A false Alarm—Khonze Chief resists our Advance—Preparation for a Fight—Mnyamwezi seized by the Throat, and Peace restored—Arrival at Kanyenyi—Visit from the Sultan—The Village of Mapanga—Sudden Rush of Armed Natives—Forty Spears against Forty Guns—Tribute Demanded and Paid—Leucole's Account of Farquhar's Death—The Valley of the Mukondokwa—Privation from the Masika—Awful Floods—Fighting Swarms of Mosquitoes—The Doctor's Despatch-Box in Jeopardy—Dragged through the River by Ropes—Arrival at Simbamwenni—The Wall swept away—Terrific Storm—Destruction of One Hundred Villages—The Msunva Jungle—Its Horrors—"Hot-water" Ants—News from Zanzibar—Arrival at Bagamoyo—The meeting with the Livingstone Search and Relief Expedition . . . . Pages 608 to 657

CHAPTER XVII.

VALEDICTORY.

Pages 658 to 692

APPENDIX . . . . Pages 693 to 719
GLOSSARY . . . . Pages 721 & 722
INDEX . . . . Pages 723 to 736

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

Full-page Illustrations.

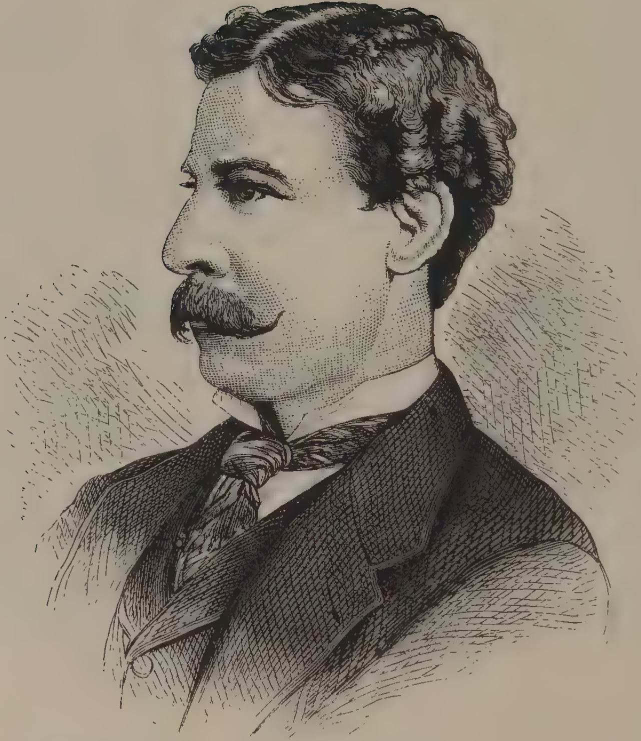
1. Portrait of James Gordon Bennett, Esq. to face Introduction.
2. A view of Zanzibar . . . . . to face page 3
3. A view of Bagamoyo . . . . . ,, 41
4. Simbamwenni—"The Lion City" . . . ,, 115
5. Discomforts of African travel—The Makata Swamp . . . . ,, 135
6. Shaw's mode of marching . . . . . ,, 152
7. The Lake and Peak of Ugombo . . . ,, 154
8. Mount Kibwe, and the Valley of the Mukondokwa River . . . . . . ,, 245
9. We attack Mirambo . . . . . . ,, 280
10. View of Kwihara . . . . . ,, 310
11. Ma-manyara takes medicine . . . ,, 334
12. The mutiny on the Gombe River . . ,, 345
13. Selim, the Interpreter . . . . ,, 352
14. The wounded boar comes to a halt . . ,, 371
15. "Dr. Livingstone, I presume?" . . . ,, 412
16. Our levée at Magala, Urundi . . . ,, 494
17. At the mouth of the Rusizi . . . ,, 504
18. 19. Pot-pourri—arms, implements, and pipes . at pages 544 and 545
20. Dr. Livingstone at work on his journal . to face page 563
21. On Lake Tanganika—homeward bound . ,, 567
22. "She is shot! She is shot!"—shooting a buffalo cow . . . . ,, 577
23. A surprise . . . . ,, 580
24. A lion in the grass . . . . . ,, 602
25. My house in Kwihara, Unyanyembe . . ,, 612
26. The Wagogo on the war path . . . ,, 632
27. Symptoms of a fight . . . . . ,, 636
28. "Look out! You drop that box—I'll shoot you" . . . . . . ,, 642

Smaller Illustrations.

PAGE
1. View of Bagamoyo 41
2. Portrait of Bombay and Mabruki 69
3. Woman grinding corn 106
4. Portrait of Shaw and Farquhar 121
5. Our camp at Chunyo 171
6. Mgogo man and woman 223
7. A gate of a village 239
8. Weapons of war 242
9. Youthful Wasagara 248
10. Bird's-eye view of a tembe 253
11. View in front of my tembe 258
12. Group of Wanyamwezi 287
13. Gigantic sycamore and camp 328
14. View in Uvinza 361
15. Village in Uzavira—native pottery 367
16. Our house in Ujiji 420
17. View on Lake Tanganika 475
18. Susi, the servant of Livingstone 499
19. Ujiji cow, Unyamwezi cow, pariah dog, and fat-tailed sheep 516
20. The fishes of the Tanganika 532
21. An idol 552
22. Daggers and spear-heads 556
23. Our camp at Urimba 558
24. Making the most of a halt 609
25. Unamapokera 635
26. The Memorial 719

Maps.

Map of Eastern Central Africa—*Frontispiece.*
Plan of Central Unyanyembe to face page 259.
Plan of water system in page 229.
Sketch map of Livingstone's discoveries to face page 449.
Survey of northern half of Tanganika to face page 475.
Small sketch map of Livingstone's discoveries to face page 1.



JAMES GORDON BENNETT, ESQ.

Proprietor of the "New York Herald."

INTRODUCTORY.

On the sixteenth day of October, in the year of our Lord one thousand eight hundred and sixty-nine, I am in Madrid, fresh from the carnage at Valencia. At 10 A.M. Jacopo, at No. — Calle de la Cruz, hands me a telegram: on opening it I find it reads, "Come to Paris on important business." The telegram is from Jas. Gordon Bennett, jun., the young manager of the "New York Herald."

Down come my pictures from the walls of my apartments on the second floor; into my trunks go my books and souvenirs, my clothes are hastily collected, some half washed, some from the clothes-line half dry, and after a couple of hours of hasty hard work my portmanteaus are strapped up, and labelled for "Paris."

The express-train leaves Madrid for Hendaye at 3 P.M. I have yet time to say farewell to my friends. I have one at No. 6 Calle Goya, fourth floor, who happens to be a contributor to several London dailies. He has several children, in whom I have taken a warm interest. Little Charlie and Willie are fast friends of mine; they love to hear of my adventures, and it has been a pleasure to me to talk to them. But now I must say farewell.

Then I have friends at the United States Legation whose conversation I admire—there has come a sudden ending of it all. "I hope you will write to us, we shall always be glad to hear of your welfare." How often have I not during my feverish life as a flying journalist heard the very same words, and how often have I not suffered the same pang at parting from friends just as warm as these.

But a journalist in my position must needs suffer. Like a gladiator in the arena, he must be prepared for the combat. Any flinching, any cowardice, and he is lost. The gladiator meets the sword that is sharpened for his bosom—the flying journalist or roving correspondent meets the command that may send him to his doom. To the battle or the banquet it is ever the same—"Get ready and go."

At 3 P.M. I was on my way, and being obliged to stop at Bayonne a few hours, did not arrive at Paris until the following night. I went straight to the "Grand Hotel," and knocked at the door of Mr. Bennett's room.

"Come in," I heard a voice say.

Entering, I found Mr. Bennett in bed.

"Who are you?" he asked.

"My name is Stanley!" I answered.

"Ah, yes! sit down; I have important business on hand for you."

After throwing over his shoulders his robe-de-chambre, Mr. Bennett asked, "Where do you think Livingstone is?"

"I really do not know, sir!"

"Do you think he is alive?"

"He may be, and he may not be!" I answered.

"Well, I think he is alive, and that he can be found, and I am going to send you to find him."

"What!" said I, "do you really think I can find Dr. Livingstone? Do you mean me to go to Central Africa?"

"Yes; I mean that you shall go, and find him wherever you may hear that he is, and to get what news you can of him, and perhaps"—delivering himself thoughtfully and deliberately—"the old man may be in want:—take enough with you to help him should he require it. Of course you will act according to your own plans, and do what you think best—BUT FIND LIVINGSTONE!

Said I, wondering at the cool order of sending one to Central Africa to search for a man whom I, in common with almost all other men, believed to be dead, "have you considered seriously the great expense you are likely to incur on account of this little journey?"

"What will it cost?" he asked, abruptly.

"Burton and Speke's journey to Central Africa cost between £3,000 and £5,000, and I fear it cannot be done under £2,500."

"Well, I will tell you what you will do. Draw a thousand pounds now; and when you have gone through that, draw another thousand, and when that is spent, draw another thousand, and when you have finished that, draw another thousand, and so on; but, FIND LIVINGSTONE."

Surprised but not confused at the order, for I knew that Mr. Bennett when once he had made up his mind was not easily drawn aside from his purpose, I yet thought, seeing it was such a gigantic scheme, that he had not quite considered in his own mind the pros and cons of the case; I said, "I have heard that should your father die you would sell the 'Herald' and retire from business."

"Whoever told you that is wrong, for there is not money enough in New York city to buy the 'New York Herald.' My father has made it a great paper, but I mean to make it greater. I mean that it shall be a news paper in the true sense of the word. I mean that it shall publish whatever news will be interesting to the world at no matter what cost."

"After that," said I, "I have nothing more to say. Do you mean me to go straight on to Africa to search for Dr. Livingstone?"

"No! I wish you to go to the inauguration of the Suez Canal first and then proceed up the Nile. I hear Baker is about starting for Upper Egypt. Find out what you can about his expedition, and as you go up describe as well as possible whatever is interesting for tourists; and then write up a guide—a practical one—for Lower Egypt, tell us about whatever is worth seeing and how to see it.

"Then you might as well go to Jerusalem; I hear Captain Warren is making some interesting discoveries there. Then visit Constantinople, and find out about that trouble between the Khedive and the Sultan.

"Then—let me see—you might as well visit the Crimea and those old battle-grounds. Then go across the Caucasus to the Caspian Sea, I hear there is a Russian expedition bound for Khiva. From thence you may get through Persia to India; you could write an interesting letter from Persepolis.

"Bagdad will be close on your way to India; suppose you go there, and write up something about the Euphrates Valley Railway. Then, when you have come to India, you can go after Livingstone. Probably you will hear by that time that Livingstone is on his way to Zanzibar; but if not, go into the interior and find him, if alive. Get what news of his discoveries you can; and, if you find he is dead, bring all possible proofs of his being dead. That is all. Good-night, and God be with you."

"Good-night, sir," I said; "what it is in the power of human nature to do I will do; and on such an errand as I go upon, God will be with me."

I lodged with young Edward King, who is making such a name in New England. He was just the man who would have delighted to tell the Journal he was engaged upon what young Mr. Bennett was doing, and what errand I was bound upon.

I should have liked to exchange opinions with him upon the probable results of my journey, but I dared not do so. Though oppressed with the great task before me, I had to appear as if only going to be present at the Suez Canal. Young King followed me to the express-train bound for Marseilles, and at the station we parted—he to go, and read the newspapers at Bowles' Reading-room—I to Central Africa and—who knows?

There is no need to recapitulate what I did before going to Central Africa.

I went up the Nile, and saw Mr. Higginbotham, chief-engineer in Baker's Expedition, at Philæ, and was the means of preventing a duel between him and a mad young Frenchman, who wanted to fight Mr. Higginbotham with pistols, because that gentleman resented the idea of being taken for an Egyptian, through wearing a fez cap. I had a talk with Capt. Warren at Jerusalem, and descended one of the pits with a sergeant of engineers to see the marks of the Tyrian workmen on the foundation stones of the Temple of Solomon. I visited the mosques of Stamboul with the Minister Resident of the United States, and the American Consul General. I travelled over the Crimean battle-grounds with Kinglake's glorious books for reference in my hand. I dined with the widow of General Liprandi at Odessa. I saw the Arabian traveller Palgrave at Trebizond, and Baron Nicolay, the Civil Governor of the Caucasus, at Tiflis. I lived with the Russian Ambassador while at Teheran, and wherever I went through Persia I received the most hospitable welcome from the gentlemen of the Indo-European Telegraph Company; and following the examples of many illustrious men, I wrote my name upon one of the Persepolitan monuments. In the month of August, 1870, I arrived in India.

On the 12th of October I sailed on the barque "Polly" from Bombay to Mauritius. As the "Polly" was a slow sailer, the passage lasted thirty-seven days. On board this barque was a William Lawrence Farquhar—hailing from Leith, Scotland—in the capacity of first-mate. He was an excellent navigator, and thinking he might be useful to me, I employed him; his pay to begin from the date we should leave Zanzibar for Bagamoyo. As there was no opportunity of getting to Zanzibar direct, I took ship to Seychelles. Three or four days after arriving at Mahé, one of the Seychelles group, I was fortunate enough to get a passage for myself, William Lawrence Farquhar, and Selim—a Christian Arab boy of Jerusalem, who was to act as interpreter—on board an American whaling vessel, bound for Zanzibar, at which port we arrived on the 6th of January, 1871.

I have skimmed over my travels thus far, because these do not concern the reader. They led over many lands, but this book is only a narrative of my search after Livingstone, the great African traveller. It is an Icarian flight of journalism, I confess; some even have called it Quixotic; but this is a word I can now refute, as will be seen before the reader arrives at the "Finis."

I have used the word "soldiers" in this book. The armed escort a traveller engages to accompany him into East Africa is composed of free black men, natives of Zanzibar, or freed slaves from the interior, who call themselves "askari," an Indian name which, translated, means "soldiers." They are armed and equipped like soldiers, though they engage themselves also as servants; but it would be more pretentious in me to call them servants, than to use the word "soldiers;" and as I have been more in the habit of calling them soldiers, than my watuma—servants—this habit has proved too much to be overcome. I have therefore allowed the word "soldiers" to appear, accompanied, however, with this apology.

I have also used the personal pronoun first person singular, "I," oftener, perhaps, than real modesty would admit.

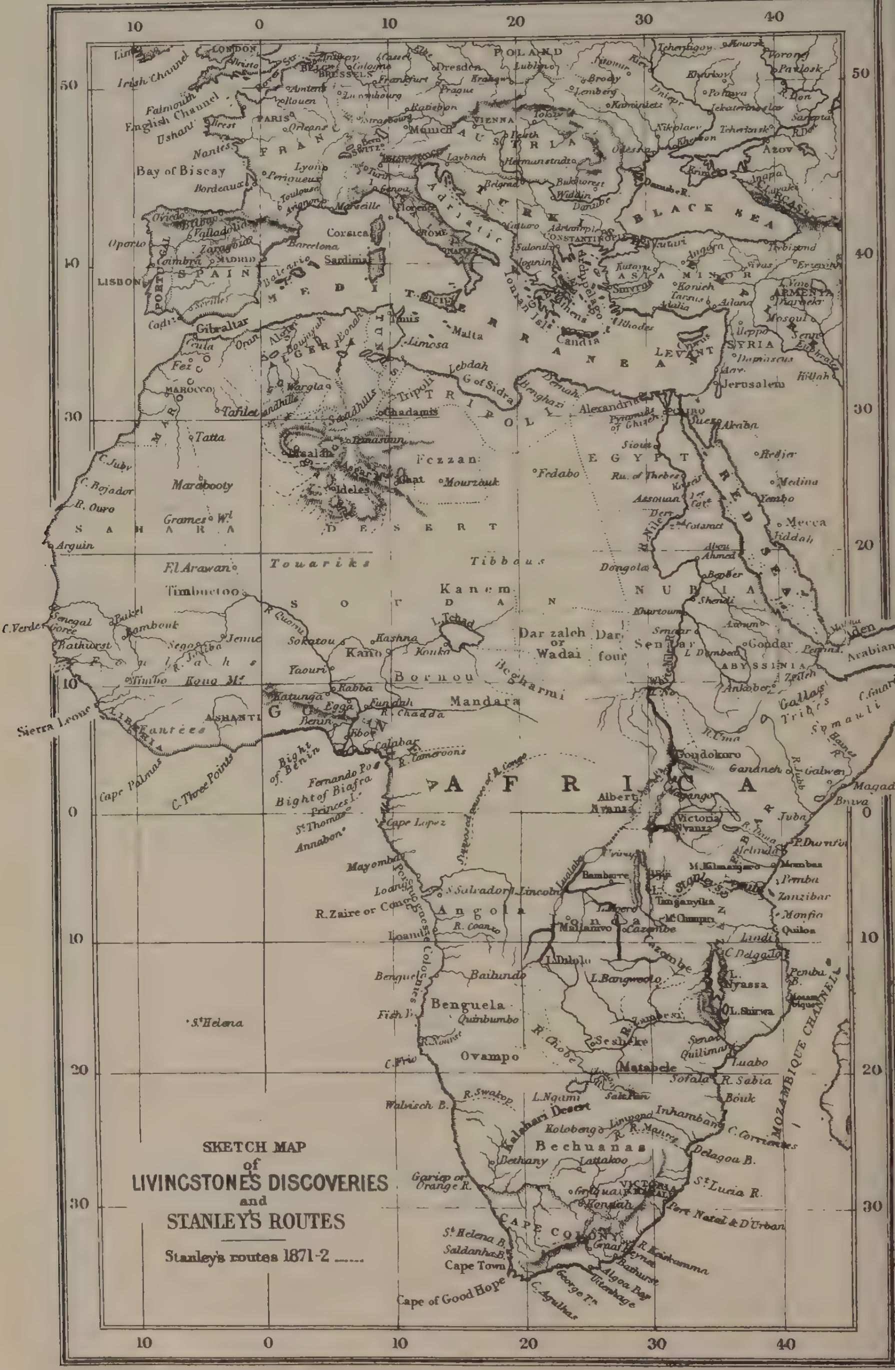
But it must be remembered that I am writing a narrative of my own adventures and travels, and that until I meet Livingstone, I presume the greatest interest is attached to myself, my marches, my troubles, my thoughts, and my impressions. Yet though I may sometimes write, "my expedition," or "my caravan," it by no means follows that I arrogate to myself this right. For it must be distinctly understood that it is the "'New York Herald' Expedition," and that I am only charged with its command by Mr. James Gordon Bennett, the proprietor of the 'New York Herald,' as a salaried employé of that gentleman.

One thing more; I have adopted the narrative form of relating the story of the search, on account of the greater interest it appears to possess over the diary form, and I think that in this manner I avoid the great fault of repetition for which some travellers have been severely criticised.

Having explained so much, I do not think it necessary to say any more in the Introduction, and shall therefore commence my narrative.

HENRY M. STANLEY.

8, *Duchess Street, Portland Place, London.*
October, 1872.



SKETCH MAP
of
LIVINGSTONE'S DISCOVERIES
and
STANLEY'S ROUTES

Stanley's routes 1871-2 ......

Stanford's Geog! Estab! London

London: Sampson Low, Marston, Low & Searle. New York: Scribner, Armstrong & C°.

HOW I FOUND LIVINGSTONE

CHAPTER I.

ZANZIBAR.

One of the fruitfulest islands of the Indian Ocean is Zanzibar. When I left Bombay for the purpose of leading the 'New York Herald' expedition into the unknown heart of Africa, my abstract conception of the island was that it was but a little better than a great sandbar, or a patch of Sahara, with a limited oasis or two, surrounded by the sea, rife with cholera, fever, and nameless but dreadful diseases; populated by ignorant blacks, with great thick lips, whose general appearance might be compared to Du Chaillu's gorillas, who were ruled over by a despotic and surly Arab.

How it had become thus distorted in my imagination I cannot conceive. I had read books and articles on Zanzibar, which were by no means unfavourably disposed towards it, yet it floated in my brain as an island whose total submersion in the sea would benefit the world. I am not certain, but I think I caught the idea from Capt. Burton's 'Lake Regions of Central Africa,' along with many other eccentric ideas. The whole book, although wonderfully clever and truthful, is somewhat bilious in tone, and I think its effect was manifest in me by a rush of a part of its bile into my head, for while I read it I saw a lethal stream, which drifted with me towards the eternal feverish region of Africa, from which a sickening presentiment said there was no return. But hail! to the blessed dawn that dispels the dreadful dream under which you groaned in agony throughout the night. Hail! to the letter that brings good news, and hail! to the verdant shores of Zanzibar, that said to me, "Hope; things are seldom so bad as they are painted."

It was in the early morning that I sailed through the channel that separates Zanzibar from Africa. The high lands of the continent loomed like a lengthening shadow in the grey of dawn. The island lay on our left, distant but a mile, coming out of its shroud of foggy folds, bit by bit as the day advanced, until it finally rose clearly into view, as fair in appearance as the fairest of the gems of creation. It appeared low, but not flat; there were gentle elevations cropping hither and yon above the languid but graceful tops of the cocoa-trees that lined the margin of the island, and there were depressions visible at agreeable intervals, to indicate where a cool gloom might be found by those who sought relief from a hot sun. With the exception of the thin line of sand, over which the sap-green water rolled itself with a constant murmur and moan, the island seemed buried under one deep stratum of verdure.

The noble bosom of the strait bore several dhows, speeding in and out of the bay of Zanzibar with bellying sails. Towards the south, above the sea line of the horizon, there appeared the naked masts of several large ships, and to the east of these a dense mass of

A VIEW OF ZANZIBAR.

white, flat-topped houses. This was Zanzibar, the capital of the island;—which soon resolved itself into a pretty large and compact city, with all the characteristics of Arab architecture. Above some of the largest houses lining the bay front of the city streamed the blood-red banner of the Sultan, Seyd Burghash, and the flags of the American, English, North German Confederation, and French Consulates. In the harbor were thirteen large ships, four Zanzibar men-of-war, one English man-of-war—the 'Nymphe,' two American, one French, one Portuguese, two English, and two German merchantmen, besides numerous dhows hailing from Johanna and Mayotte of the Comoro Islands, dhows from Muscat and Cutch—traders between India, the Persian Gulf, and Zanzibar.

It was with the spirit of true hospitality and courtesy that Capt. Francis R. Webb, United States Consul, (formerly of the United States Navy,) received me. Had this gentleman not rendered me such needful service, I must have condescended to take board and lodging at a house known as "Charley's," called after the proprietor, who is a Frenchman with a crooked nose, and withal very eccentric, who has won considerable local notoriety for harboring penniless itinerants, and manifesting a kindly spirit always, though hidden under such a rugged front; or I should have been obliged to pitch my doubled-clothed American drill tent on the sandbeach of this tropical island, an in-no-wise desirable thing.

But Capt. Webb's opportune proposal to make his commodious and comfortable house my own; to enjoy myself, with the request that I would call for whatever I might require, obviated all unpleasant alternatives.

One day's life at Zanzibar made me thoroughly conscious of my ignorance respecting African people and things in general. I imagined I had read Burton and Speke through, fairly well, and that consequently I had penetrated the meaning, the full importance and grandeur, of the work I was about to be engaged upon. But my estimates, for instance, based upon book information, were simply ridiculous,—fanciful images of African attractions were soon dissipated, anticipated pleasures vanished, and all crude ideas began to resolve themselves into shape.

I strolled through the city. My general impressions are of crooked, narrow lanes, white-washed houses, mortar-plastered streets, in the clean quarter;—of seeing alcoves on each side, with deep recesses, with a foreground of red-turbaned Banyans, and a back-ground of flimsy cottons, prints, calicoes, domestics and what not; or of floors crowded with ivory tusks; or of dark corners with a pile of unginned and loose cotton; or of stores of crockery, nails, cheap Brummagem ware, tools, &c., in what I call the Banyan quarter;—of streets smelling very strong—in fact, exceedingly malodorous, with steaming yellow and black bodies, and woolly heads, sitting at the doors of miserable huts, chatting laughing, bargaining, scolding, with a compound smell of hides, tar, filth, vegetable refuse, excrement, &c., in the negro quarter;—of streets lined with tall, solid looking houses, flat roofed, of great carved doors with large brass knockers, with baabs sitting cross-legged watching the dark entrance to their masters' houses; of a shallow sea-inlet, with some dhows, canoes, boats, an odd steam-tug or two, leaning over on their sides in a sea of mud which the tide has just left behind it; of a place called "Nazi-Moya," "One Cocoa-tree," whither

Europeans wend on evenings with most languid, moribund steps, to inhale the sweet air that glides over the sea, while the day is dying, and the red sun is sinking westward; of a few graves of dead sailors, who paid the forfeit of their lives upon arrival in this land; of a tall house wherein lives Dr. Tozer, "Missionary Bishop of Central Africa," and his school of little Africans; and of many other things, which got together into such a tangle, that I had to go to sleep, lest I should never be able to separate the moving images, the Arab from the African; the African from the Banyan; the Banyan from the Hindi; the Hindi from the European, &c.

Zanzibar is the Bagdad, the Ispahan, the Stamboul, if you like, of East Africa. It is the great mart which invites the ivory traders from the African interior. To this market come the gum-copal, the hides, the orchilla, the timber, and the black slaves from Africa. Bagdad had great silk bazaars, Zanzibar has her ivory bazaars; Bagdad once traded in jewels, Zanzibar trades in gum-copal; Stamboul imported Circassian and Georgian slaves; Zanzibar imports black beauties from Uhiyow, Ugindo, Ugogo, Unyamwezi and Galla.

The same mode of commerce obtains here as in all Mohammedan countries—nay, the mode was in vogue long before Moses was born. The Arab never changes. He brought the custom of his forefathers with him when he came to live on this island. He is as much of an Arab here, as at Muscat or Bagdad; wherever he goes to live, he carries with him his harem, his religion, his long robe, his shirt, his watta, and his dagger. If he penetrates Africa, not all the ridicule of the negroes can make him change his modes of life. Yet the land has not become Oriental; the Arab has not been able to change the atmosphere. The land is semi-African in aspect; the city is but semi-Arabian.

To a new-comer into Africa, the Muscat Arabs of Zanzibar are studies. There is a certain *empressement* about them, which we must admire. They are mostly all travellers. There are but few of them, that have not been in many dangerous positions, as they penetrated Central Africa in search of the precious ivory; and these, with their various experiences, have given their features a certain unmistakeable air of self-reliance, or of self-sufficiency; there is a calm, resolute, defiant, independent air about them, which wins unconsciously one's respect. The stories that some of these men could tell, I have often thought would fill many a book of thrilling adventures.

For the half-castes I have great contempt. They are neither black nor white, neither good nor bad, neither to be admired nor hated. They are all things, at all times, they are always fawning on the great Arabs, and always cruel to those unfortunates brought under their yoke. If I saw a miserable, half-starved negro, I was always sure to be told, he belonged to a half-caste. Cringing and hypocritical, cowardly and debased, treacherous and mean, I have always found him. He seems to be for ever ready to fall down and worship a rich Arab, but is relentless to a poor black slave. When he swears most, you may be sure he lies most, and yet this is the breed which is multiplied most at Zanzibar—this syphilitic, blear-eyed, pallid-skinned, abortion of an Africanized Arab.

The Banyan is a born trader, the beau-ideal of a sharp money-making man. Money flows to his pockets as naturally as water down a steep. No pang of conscience will prevent him from cheating his fellow man.

He excels a Jew, and his only rival in a market is a Parsee; an Arab is a babe to him. It is worth money to see him labour with all his energy, soul, and body, to get advantage by the smallest fraction of a coin over a native. Possibly the native has a tusk, and it may weigh a couple of frasilahs, but, though the scales indicate the weight, and the native declares solemnly that it must be more than two frasilahs, yet our Banyan will asseverate, and aver, and declare, and vow, that the native knows nothing whatever about it, and that the scales are wrong; he musters up courage to lift it, it is a mere song, not much more than a frasilah. "Come," he will say, "close, man, take the money and go thy way. Art thou mad?" If the native hesitates, he will scream in a fury; he pushes him about, spurns the ivory with contemptuous indifference,—never was such ado about nothing; but, though he tells the astounded native to be up and going, he never intends the ivory shall leave his shop.

The Banyans exercise, of all other classes, most influence on the trade of Central Africa. With the exception of a very few rich Arabs, almost all other traders are subject to the pains and penalties which usury imposes. A trader desirous to make a journey into the interior, whether for slaves or ivory, gum-copal, or orchilla weed, proposes to a Banyan to advance him $5,000 at 50, 60, or 70 per cent. interest. The Banyan is safe enough not to lose, whether the speculation the trader is engaged upon pays or not. An experienced trader seldom loses, or if he has been unfortunate, through no deed of his own, he does not lose credit; with the help of the Banyan, he is easily set on his feet again.

We will suppose, for the sake of illustrating how trade with the interior is managed, that the Arab conveys by his caravan $5,000 worth of goods into the interior. At Unyanyembe the goods are worth $10,000; at Ujiji, they are worth $15,000: they have trebled in price. Five doti, or $7·50, will purchase a slave in the markets of Ujiji that will fetch in Zanzibar $30·00. Ordinary men-slaves may be purchased for $6·00 which would sell for $25·00 on the coast. We will say he purchases slaves to the full extent of his means—after deducting $1,500 expenses of carriage to Ujiji and back—viz. $3,500, the slaves—464 in number, at $7·50 per head—would realize $13,920 at Zanzibar! Again, let us illustrate trade in ivory. A merchant takes $5,000 to Ujiji, and after deducting $1,500 for expenses to Ujiji, and back to Zanzibar, has still remaining $3,500 in cloth and beads, with which he purchases ivory. At Ujiji ivory is bought at $20 the frasilah, or 35 lbs., by which he is enabled with $3,500 to collect 175 frasilahs, which if good ivory is worth about $60 per frasilah at Zanzibar. The merchant thus finds that he has realized $10,500 net profit! Arab traders have often done better than this, but they almost always have come back with an enormous margin of profit.

The next people to the Banyans in power in Zanzibar are the Mohammedan Hindis. Really it has been a debateable subject in my mind whether the Hindis are not as wickedly determined to cheat in trade, as the Banyans. But, if I have conceded the palm to the latter, it has been done very reluctantly. This tribe of Indians can produce scores of unconscionable rascals where they can show but one honest merchant. One of the honestest among men, white or black, red or yellow, is a Mohammedan Hindi called Tarya Topan.

Among the Europeans at Zanzibar, he has become a proverb for honesty, and strict business integrity. He is enormously wealthy, owns several ships and dhows, and is a prominent man in the councils of Seyd Burghash. Tarya has many children, two or three of whom are grown-up sons, whom he has reared up even as he is himself. But Tarya is but a representative of an exceedingly small minority.

The Arabs, the Banyans, and the Mohammedan Hindis, represent the higher and the middle classes. These classes own the estates, the ships, and the trade. To these classes bow the half-caste and the negro.

The next most important people who go to make up the mixed population of this island are the negroes. They consist of the aborigines, Wasawahili, Somalis, Comorines, Wanyamwezi, and a host of tribal representatives of Inner Africa.

To a white stranger about penetrating Africa, it is a most interesting walk through the negro quarters of the Wanyamwezi and the Wasawahili. For here he begins to learn the necessity of admitting that negroes are men, like himself, though of a different colour; that they have passions and prejudices, likes and dislikes, sympathies and antipathies, tastes and feelings, in common with all human nature. The sooner he perceives this fact, and adapts himself accordingly, the easier will be his journey among the several races of the interior. The more plastic his nature, the more prosperous will be his travels.

Though I had lived some time among the negroes of our Southern States, my education was Northern, and I had met in the United States black men, whom I was proud to call friends. I was thus prepared to admit any black man, possessing the attributes of true manhood, or any good qualities, to my friendship, even to a brotherhood with myself; and to respect him for such, as much as if he were of my own colour and race. Neither his colour, nor any peculiarities of physiognomy should debar him with me from any rights he could fairly claim as a man. "Have these men—these black savages from pagan Africa," I asked myself, "the qualities which make man loveable among his fellows? Can these men—these barbarians—appreciate kindness or feel resentment like myself?" was my mental question as I travelled through their quarters and observed their actions. Need I say, that I was much comforted in observing that they were as ready to be influenced by passions, by loves and hates, as I was myself; that the keenest observation failed to detect any great difference between their nature and my own.

The negroes of the island probably number two-thirds of the entire population. They compose the working-class, whether enslaved or free. Those enslaved perform the work required on the plantations, the estates and gardens of the landed proprietors, or perform the work of hamals or carriers, whether in the country or the city. Outside the city they may be seen carrying huge loads on their heads, as happy as possible, not because they are kindly treated or that their work is light, but because it is their nature to be gay and light-hearted, because they have conceived neither joys nor hopes which may not be gratified at will, nor cherished any ambition beyond their reach, and therefore have not been baffled in their hopes, nor known disappointment.

Within the city, negro hamals may be heard at all hours, in couples, engaged in the transportation of clove-bags, boxes of merchandise, &c., from store to "go-down" and from "go-down" to the beach, singing a kind of monotone chant for the encouragement of each other, and for the guiding of their pace as they shuffle through the streets with bare feet. You may recognise these men readily, before long, as old acquaintances, by the consistency with which they sing the tunes they have adopted. Several times during a day have I heard the same couple pass beneath the windows of the Consulate, delivering themselves of the same invariable tune and words. Some might possibly deem the songs foolish and silly, but they had a certain attraction for me, and I considered that they were as useful as anything else for the purposes they were intended.

The town of Zanzibar, situate on the south-western shore of the island, contains a population of nearly one hundred thousand inhabitants; that of the island altogether I would estimate at not more than two hundred thousand inhabitants, including all races.

The greatest number of foreign vessels trading with this port are American, principally from New York and Salem. After the American come the German, then come the French and English. They arrive loaded with American sheeting, brandy, gunpowder, muskets, beads, English cottons, brass-wire, china-ware, and other notions, and depart with ivory, gum-copal, cloves, hides, cowries, sesamum, pepper, and cocoa-nut oil.

The value of the exports from this port is estimated at $3,000,000, and the imports from all countries at $3,500,000.

The Europeans and Americans residing in the town of Zanzibar are either Government officials, independent merchants, or agents for a few great mercantile houses in Europe and America.

The most important consulate at Zanzibar is the British. The acting British Consul and political resident, when I was at Zanzibar preparing my expedition for the African interior, was Dr. John Kirk.

I felt quite a curiosity to see this gentleman, from the fact of his name being so often coupled with the object of my search—Dr. David Livingstone.

In almost all newspapers he was mentioned as the "former companion of Dr. Livingstone." I imagined, from the tone of the articles that I saw published, and from his own letters to the Indian Government, that if I could obtain any positive information from any person regarding the whereabouts of Dr. Livingstone I should be able to procure it from Dr. Kirk.

It was with feelings of no small impatience, therefore, that I awaited the honour of an introduction to him through Capt. Webb.

On the second morning after my arrival at Zanzibar, according to the demands of Zanzibar etiquette, the American Consul and myself sallied out into the street, and in a few moments I was in the presence of this much-befamed man. To a man of rather slim figure, dressed plainly, slightly round-shouldered, hair black, face thin, cheeks rather sunk and bearded, Capt. Webb said, "Dr. Kirk, permit me to introduce Mr. Stanley, of the 'New York Herald.'"

I fancied at the moment that he lifted his eyelids perceptibly, disclosing the full circle of the eyes. If I were to define such a look, I would call it a broad stare. During the conversation, which ranged over several subjects, though watching his face intently, I never saw it kindle or become animated but once, and that was while relating some of his hunting feats to us. As the subject nearest my heart was not entered upon, I promised myself I would ask him about Dr. Livingstone the next time I called upon him.

Tuesday evenings "Dr. and Mrs. Kirk are at home," Zanzibarites are informed. The pleasures of those evenings the civilised community of Zanzibar generally ignore, but the representatives of the European colony do visit them nevertheless. This special evening, there was quite a "sprinkling" of the upper-ten-dom.

As the American party of visitors arrived early, I was enabled to note how other guests entered into conversation, and I wondered to hear each and all after the first greeting inquire anxiously of the Consul and his lady, if they had been to "Nazi-Moya" that evening, to which they responded in the negative; for it happened that they had not extended their recreative walk so far as the classic grounds of Nazi-Moya that particular evening.

"Oh," each guest said, in a tone of triumphal and delighted wonderment, "I thought I had not seen you there."

"Where, and what is Nazi-Moya?" I was fain to ask of Capt. Webb.

"Nazi-Moya," said this pleasant cynic, "Nazi-Moya means in English, 'One Cocoa-tree;' it is a rendezvous just behind Ras Shangani (Sandy Point), whither we go on afternoons to enjoy the fresh sea-breeze. It is the usual form of opening a conversation, owing to the terrible dearth of topics just now we have to talk about."

Capt. Webb spoke truly when he said there was a "terrible dearth of topics," and subsequent experience proved to me that the good Europeans of Zanzibar, in the absence of legitimate matter, were never slow to avail themselves of the least bit of scandal, in order to make the evenings pleasant and agreeable.

The entertainment which the British Consul and his lady provided for the visitors on their reception evening consists of a kind of mild wine and cigars; not, because they have nothing else in the house—no decoction of bohea, or hyson, with a few cakes—but I suppose because it is the normal and accustomed habit of a free Zanzibarized European to indulge in something of this sort, mixed with a little soda or seltzer-water, as a stimulant to the bits of refined gossip, generally promulgated under the vinous influence to sympathizing, interested, and eager listeners.

It was all very fine, I dare say, but I thought it was the dreariest evening I ever passed, until Dr. Kirk, pitying the wearisomeness under which I was labouring, called me aside to submit to my inspection a magnificent elephant rifle, which he said was a present from a governor of Bombay. Then I heard eulogies upon its deadly powers and its fatal accuracy; I heard anecdotes of jungle life, adventures experienced while hunting, and incidents of his travels with Livingstone.

"Ah, yes, Dr. Kirk," I asked carelessly, "about Livingstone—where is he, do you think, now?"

"Well, really," he replied, "you know that is very difficult to answer; he may be dead; there is nothing positive whereon we can base sufficient reliance. Of one thing I am sure, nobody has heard anything definite of him for over two years. I should fancy, though, he must be alive. We are continually sending something up for him. There is a small expedition even now at Bagamoyo about starting shortly. I really think the old man should come home now; he is growing old, you know, and if he died, the world would lose the benefit of his discoveries. He keeps neither notes nor journals; it is very seldom he takes observations. He simply makes a note or dot, or something, on a map, which nobody could understand but himself. Oh, yes, by all means if he is alive he should come home, and let a younger man take his place."

"What kind of a man is he to get along with, Doctor?" I asked, feeling now quite interested in his conversation.

"Well, I think he is a very difficult man to deal with generally. Personally, I have never had a quarrel with him, but I have seen him in hot water with fellows so often, and that is principally the reason, I think, he hates to have any one with him."

"I am told he is a very modest man; is he?" I asked.

"Oh, he knows the value of his own discoveries; no man better. He is not quite an angel," said he, with a laugh.

"Well now, supposing I met him in my travels—I might possibly stumble across him if he travels anywhere in the direction I am going—how would he conduct himself towards me?"

"To tell you the truth," said he, "I do not think he would like it very well. I know if Burton, or Grant, or Baker, or any of those fellows were going after him, and he heard of their coming, Livingstone would put a hundred miles of swamp in a very short time between himself and them. I do, upon my word I do."

This was the tenor of the interview I held with Dr. Kirk—former companion of Livingstone—as well as my journal and memory can recall it to me.

Need I say this information from a gentleman known to be well acquainted with Dr. Livingstone, rather had the effect of damping my ardor for the search, than adding vigor to it. I felt very much depressed, and would willingly have resigned my commission; but then the order was, "GO AND FIND LIVINGSTONE." Besides, I did not suppose, though I had so readily consented to search for the Doctor, that the path to Central Africa was strewn with roses. What though I were rebuked, as an impertinent interloper in the domain of Discovery, as a meddler in things that concerned not myself, as one whose absence would be far more acceptable to him than my presence—had I not been commanded to find him? Well, find him I would, if he were above ground; if not, then I would bring what concerned people to know, and keep.

Dr. Kirk very kindly promised to give all the assistance in his power, and whatever experience he possessed he was willing, he said, to give me its full benefit. But I cannot recollect, neither do I find a trace of it in my journal, that he assisted me in any way. Of course, he was not aware that my instructions were to hunt up Dr. Livingstone, otherwise Dr. Kirk, I have no doubt, would have made good his word. He believed I was about to ascend the Rufiji River to its source. But what newspaper would despatch a "special" to discover the sources of an insignificant river like the Rufiji?

The climate of Zanzibar is not the most agreeable in the world. I have heard Americans and Europeans condemn it most heartily. I have also seen nearly one-half of the white colony laid up in one day from sickness. A noxious malaria is exhaled from the shallow inlet of Malagash, and the undrained filth, the garbage, offal, dead mollusks, dead pariah dogs, dead cats, all species of carrion, remains of men and beasts unburied, assist to make Zanzibar a most unhealthy city; and, considering that it ought to be a most healthy city, nature having pointed out to man the means, and having assisted him so far, it is most wonderful that the ruling prince does not obey the dictates of reason. The bay of Zanzibar is in the form of a crescent, and on the south-western horn of it is built the city. On the east the city is bounded almost entirely by the Malagash Lagoon, an inlet of the sea. It penetrates to at least two hundred and fifty yards of the sea behind or south of Shangani Point. Were these two hundred and fifty yards cut through by a ten foot ditch, and the inlet deepened slightly, Zanzibar city would become an island of itself, and what wonders would it not effect as to health and salubrity! I have never heard this suggestion made, but it struck me that the foreign consuls resident at Zanzibar might suggest this work to the sultan, and so get the credit of having made the city as healthy a place to live in as any near the equator. But *apropos* of this, I remember what Capt. Webb, the American Consul, told me on my first arrival, when I expressed to him my wonder at the apathy and inertness of men born with the indomitable energy which characterizes Europeans and Americans, of men imbued with the progressive and stirring instincts of the white people, who yet allow themselves to dwindle into pallid phantoms of their kind, into hypochondriacal invalids, into hopeless believers in the deadliness of the climate, with hardly a trace of that daring and invincible spirit which rules the world.

"Oh," said Capt. Webb, "it is all very well for you to talk about energy and all that kind of thing, but I assure you that a residence of four or five years on this island, among such people as are here, would make you feel that it was a hopeless task to resist the influence of the example by which the most energetic spirits are subdued, and to which they must submit in time, sooner or later. We were all terribly energetic when we first came here, and struggled bravely to make things go on as we were accustomed to have them at home, but we have found that we were knocking our heads against granite walls to no purpose whatever. These fellows—the Arabs, the Banyans, and the Hindis, you can't make them go faster by ever so much scolding and praying, and in a very short time you see the folly of fighting against the unconquerable. Be patient, and don't fret, that is my advice, or you won't live long here."

There were three or four intensely busy men, though, at Zanzibar, who were out at all hours of the day. I know one, an American; I fancy I hear the quick pit-pat of his feet on the pavement beneath the Consulate, his cheery voice ringing the salutation, "Yambo!" to every one he met; and he had lived at Zanzibar twelve years.

I know another, one of the sturdiest of Scotchmen, a most pleasant-mannered and unaffected man, sincere in whatever he did or said, who has lived at Zanzibar several years, subject to the infructuosities of the business he has been engaged in, as well as to the calor and ennui of the climate, who yet presents as formidable a front as ever to the apathetic native of Zanzibar. No man can charge Capt. H. C. Fraser, formerly of the Indian Navy, with being apathetic, whatever else malice may suggest.

I might with ease give evidence of the industry of others, but they are all my friends, and they are all good. The American, English, Germans, and French residents have ever treated me with a courtesy and kindness I am not disposed to forget. Taken as a body, it would be hard to find a more generous or hospitable colony of white men in any part of the world.

In a great tall house with a certain grandeur of vastness about it, topped with the queerest of all steeples, situated on Shangani Point, Bishop Tozer, his disciples, his choristers and his flock, have found excellent quarters. The Bishop, who styles himself "Missionary Bishop of Central Africa," is one of the politest men I ever knew. I believe he is called the "fighting parson"—a plagiaristic appellation when bestowed on him, since Dr. Livingstone first received it from the Duke of Wellington. Bishop Tozer, however, is said to have fought an insolent rowdy, on his way to church; and after having punished him at a boxing-match, offered to punish his companions one after another in the same way, which offer was refused. This feat of pugilism by Bishop Tozer converted these wolves into lambs, and won for him the title of Bishop, and the happy sinecure he holds.

The Bishop in his crimson robe, and with his sacerdotal title "Missionary Bishop of Central Africa" (why he should be so named I cannot conceive), has reached the bourne of aspiring priesthood, and is consequently ineffably happy. But this High Church (very High Church indeed) prelate in his crimson robe of office, and in the queerest of all head-dresses, seen stalking through the streets of Zanzibar, or haggling over the price of a tin-pot at a tinker's stall, is the most ridiculous sight I have seen anywhere outside of a clown's show. I as a white man solemnly protest against the absurdity. A similar picture to the Bishop, in his priestly robes and a paper cap, in a tinker's stall, is the King of Dahomey in a European hat with his body naked, promenading pompously about in this exquisite full dress. Whatever the Bishop in his blissful innocence may think of the effect which it produces in the minds of the heathen, I can inform him, that to the Arabs and Wangwana who have settled in Unyanyembe he is only an object of supreme ridicule; and also, that most of his pale-faced brothers entertain something of the same opinion.

Poor, dear Bishop Tozer! I would fain love and admire thee, were it not for this exhibition of extreme High-Churchism in a place like Zanzibar!

The French missionaries have proceeded actively to work in a true practical spirit. They not only endeavour to instil into the minds of their numerous converts the principles of religion, but also to educate them in the business of life. They teach their young disciples various useful trades; they produce agriculturists, carpenters, blacksmiths, boat-builders, and mechanical engineers among them. Their various departments of instruction have able, efficient, and laborious teachers. Their shops at Zanzibar form one of the sights which a stranger would wish to see. At Bagamoyo, on the mainland, their mission station is on an extensive scale. The estate adjoining the mission station, cultivated by their young pupils, is a model of industry; and the products serve to more than supply the institution with all the necessaries of life. The converts and pupils they are educating exceed more than two hundred.

CHAPTER II.

ORGANIZATION OF THE EXPEDITION.

I was totally ignorant of the interior, and it was difficult at first to know what I needed, in order to take an expedition into Central Africa. Time was precious, also, and much of it could not be devoted to inquiry and investigation. In a case like this, it would have been a godsend, I thought, had either of the three gentlemen, Captains Burton, Speke, or Grant, given some information on these points; had they devoted a chapter upon, "How to get ready an Expedition for Central Africa." The purpose of this chapter, then, is to relate how I set about it, that other travellers coming after me may have the benefit of my experience.

These are some of the questions I asked myself, as I tossed on my bed at night:—

"How much money is required?"

"How many pagazis, or carriers?"

"How many soldiers?"

"How much cloth?"

"How many beads?"

"How much wire?"

"What kinds of cloth are required for the different tribes?"

Ever so many questions to myself brought me no nearer the exact point I wished to arrive at. I scribbled over scores of sheets of paper, making estimates, drawing out lists of material, calculating the cost of keeping one hundred men for one year, at so many yards of different kinds of cloth, etc. I studied Burton, Speke, and Grant in vain. A good deal of geographical, ethnological, and other information appertaining to the study of Inner Africa was obtainable, but information respecting the organization of an expedition requisite before proceeding to Africa, was not in any book. I threw the books from me in disgust. The Europeans at Zanzibar knew as little as possible about this particular point. There was not one white man at Zanzibar, who could tell how many dotis a day a force of one hundred men required for food on the road. Neither, indeed, was it their business to know. But what should I do at all, at all? This was a grand question.

I decided it were best to hunt up an Arab merchant who had been engaged in the ivory trade, or who was fresh from the interior.

Sheikh Hashid was a man of note and of wealth in Zanzibar. He had himself despatched several caravans into the interior, and was necessarily acquainted with several prominent traders who came to his house to gossip about their adventures and gains. He was also the proprietor of the large house Capt. Webb occupied; besides, he lived across the narrow street which separated his house from the Consulate. Of all men Sheikh Hashid was the man to be consulted, and he was accordingly invited to visit me at the Consulate.

From the grey-bearded and venerable-looking Sheikh, I elicited more information about African currency, the mode of procedure, the quantity and quality of stuffs I required, than I had obtained from three months study of books upon Central Africa; and from other Arab merchants to whom the ancient Sheikh introduced me, I received most valuable suggestions and hints, which enabled me at last to organize an expedition.

The reader must bear in mind that a traveller requires only that which is sufficient for travel and exploration; that a superfluity of goods or means will prove as fatal to him as poverty of supplies. It is on this question of quality and quantity that the traveller has first to exercise his judgment and discretion.

My informants gave me to understand that for one hundred men, 10 doti, or 40 yards of cloth per diem, would suffice for food. The proper course to pursue, I found, was to purchase 2,000 doti of American sheeting, 1,000 doti of Kaniki, and 650 doti of the coloured cloths, such as Barsati, a great favourite in Unyamwezi; Sohari, taken in Ugogo; Ismahili, Taujiri, Joho, Shash, Rehani, Jamdani or Kunguru-Cutch, blue and pink. These were deemed amply sufficient for the subsistence of one hundred men for twelve months. Two years at this rate would require 4000 doti = 16,000 yards of American sheeting; 2,000 doti = 8,000 yards of Kaniki; 1,300 doti = 5,200 yards of mixed coloured cloths. This was definite and valuable information to me, and excepting the lack of some suggestions as to the quality of the sheeting, Kaniki, and coloured cloths, I had obtained all I desired upon this point. Second in importance to the amount of cloth required was the quantity and quality of the beads necessary. Beads, I was told, took the place of cloth currency among some tribes of the interior. One tribe preferred white to black beads, brown to yellow, red to green, green to white, and so on. Thus, in Unyamwezi, red (sami-sami) beads would readily be taken, where all other kinds would be refused; black (bubu) beads, though currency in Ugogo, were positively worthless with all other tribes; the egg (sungomazzi) beads, though valuable in Ujiji and Uguhha, would be refused in all other countries; the white (Merikani) beads, though good in Ufipa, and some parts of Usagara and Ugogo, would certainly be despised in Useguhha, and Ukonongo. Such being the case, I was obliged to study closely, and calculate the probable stay of an expedition in the several countries, so as to be sure to provide a sufficiency of each kind, and guard against any great overplus. Burton and Speke, for instance, were obliged to throw away as worthless several hundred fundo of beads.

For example, supposing the several nations of Europe had each its own currency, without the means of exchange, and supposing a man was about to travel through Europe on foot, before starting he would be apt to calculate how many days it would take him to travel through France; how many through Prussia, Austria, and Russia, then to reckon the expense he would be likely to incur per day. If the expense be set down at a napoleon per day, and his journey through France would occupy thirty days, the sum required for going and returning might be properly set down at sixty napoleons, in which case, napoleons not being current money in Prussia, Austria, or Russia, it would be utterly useless for him to burden himself with the weight of a couple of thousand napoleons in gold.

My anxiety on this point was most excruciating. Over and over I studied the hard names and measures, conned again and again the polysyllables, hoping to be able to arrive some time at an intelligible definition of the terms. I revolved in my mind the words Mukunguru, Ghulabio, Sungomazzi, Kadunduguru, Mutunda, Sami-sami, Bubu, Merikani, Hafde, Lunghio-Rega, and Lakhio, until I was fairly beside myself. Finally, however, I came to the conclusion that if I reckoned my requirements at fifty khete, or five fundo per day, for two years, and if I purchased only eleven varieties, I might consider myself safe enough. The purchase was accordingly made, and twenty-two sacks of the best species were packed and brought to Capt. Webb's house, ready for transportation to Bagamoyo.

After the beads came the wire question. I discovered, after considerable trouble, that Nos. 5 and 6—almost of the thickness of telegraph wire—were considered the best numbers for trading purposes. While beads stand for copper coins in Africa, cloth measures for silver; wire is reckoned as gold in the countries beyond the Tan-ga-ni-ka.* Ten frasilah, or 350 lbs., of brass-wire, my Arab adviser thought, would be ample.

Having purchased the cloth, the beads, and the wire, it was with no little pride that I surveyed the comely bales and packages lying piled up, row above row, in Capt. Webb's capacious store-room. Yet my work was not ended, it was but beginning; there were provisions, cooking-utensils, boats, rope, twine, tents, donkeys, saddles, bagging, canvas, tar, needles, tools, ammunition, guns, equipments, hatchets, medicines, bedding, presents for chiefs—in short, a thousand things not yet purchased. The ordeal of chaffering and haggling with steel-hearted Banyans, Hindis, Arabs, and half-castes was most trying. For instance, I purchased twenty-two donkeys at Zanzibar. $40 and $50 were asked, which I had to reduce to $15 or $20 by an infinite amount of argument worthy, I think, of a nobler cause. As was my experience with the ass-dealers so it was with the petty merchants; even a paper of pins was not purchased without a five per cent. reduction from the price demanded, involving, of course, a loss of much time and patience.

---

* It will be seen that I differ from Capt. Burton in the spelling of this word, as I deem the letter "y" superfluous.

After collecting the donkeys, I discovered there were no pack-saddles to be obtained in Zanzibar. Donkeys without pack-saddles were of no use whatever. I invented a saddle to be manufactured by myself and my white man Farquhar, wholly from canvas, rope, and cotton.

Three or four frasilahs of cotton, and ten bolts of canvas were required for the saddles. A specimen saddle was made by myself in order to test its efficiency. A donkey was taken and saddled, and a load of 140 lbs. was fastened to it, and though the animal—a wild creature of Unyamwezi—struggled and reared frantically, not a particle gave way. After this experiment, Farquhar was set to work to manufacture twenty-one more after the same pattern. Woollen pads were also purchased to protect the animals from being galled. It ought to be mentioned here, perhaps, that the idea of such a saddle as I manufactured, was first derived from the Otago saddle, in use among the transport-trains of the English army in Abyssinia.

A man named John William Shaw—a native of London, England, lately third-mate of the American ship 'Nevada'—applied to me for work. Though his discharge from the 'Nevada' was rather suspicious, yet he possessed all the requirements of such a man as I needed, and was an experienced hand with the palm and needle, could cut canvas to fit anything, was a pretty good navigator, ready and willing, as far as his professions went. I saw no reason to refuse his services, and he was accordingly engaged at $300 per annum, to rank second to William L. Farquhar.

Farquhar was a capital navigator and excellent mathematician; was strong, energetic, and clever; but, I am sorry to say, a hard drinker. Every day, while we lived at Zanzibar, he was in a muddled condition, and the dissipated, vicious life he led at this place proved fatal to him, as will be seen, shortly after penetrating into the interior.

The next thing I was engaged upon was to enlist, arm, and equip, a faithful escort of twenty men for the road. Johari, the chief dragoman of the American Consulate, informed me that he knew where certain of Speke's "Faithfuls" were yet to be found. The idea had struck me before, that if I could obtain the services of a few men acquainted with the ways of white men, and who could induce other good men to join the expedition I was organizing, I might consider myself fortunate. More especially had I thought of Seedy Mbarak Mombay, commonly called "Bombay," who though his head was "woodeny," and his hands "clumsy," was considered to be the "faithfulest" of the "Faithfuls."

With the aid of the dragoman Johari, I secured in a few hours the services of Uledi (Capt. Grant's former valet), Ulimengo, Baruti, Ambari, Mabruki (Muinyi Mabruki—Bull-headed Mabruki, Capt. Burton's former unhappy valet)—five of Speke's "Faithfuls." When I asked them if they were willing to join another white man's expedition to Ujiji, they replied very readily that they were willing to join any brother of "Speke's."

Dr. John Kirk, Her Majesty's Consul at Zanzibar, who was present, told them that though I was no brother of "Speke's," I spoke his language. This distinction mattered little to them, and I heard them, with great delight, declare their readiness to go anywhere with me, or do anything I wished.

Mombay, as they called him, or Bombay, as we Wasungu know him, had gone to Pemba, an island lying north of Zanzibar. Uledi was sure Mombay would jump with joy at the prospect of another expedition. Johari was therefore commissioned to write to him at Pemba, to inform him of the good fortune in store for him.

On the fourth morning after the letter had been despatched, the famous Bombay made his appearance, followed in decent order and due rank by the "Faithfuls" of "Speke." I looked in vain for the "woodeny head" and "alligator teeth" with which his former master had endowed him. I saw a slender short man of fifty or thereabouts, with a grizzled head, an uncommonly high, narrow forehead, with a very large mouth, showing teeth very irregular, and wide apart. An ugly rent in the upper front row of Bombay's teeth was made with the clenched fist of Capt. Speke in Uganda when his master's patience was worn out, and prompt punishment became necessary. That Capt. Speke had spoiled him with kindness was evident, from the fact that Bombay had the audacity to stand up for a boxing match with him. But these things I only found out when, months afterwards, I was called upon to administer punishment to him myself. But, at his first appearance, I was favourably impressed with Bombay, though his face was rugged, his mouth large, his eyes small, and his nose flat.

"Salaam aliekum," were the words he greeted me with.

"Aliekum salaam," I replied, with all the gravity I could muster. I then informed him I required him as captain of my soldiers to Ujiji. His reply was that he was ready to do whatever I told him, go wherever I liked—in short, be a pattern to servants, and a model to soldiers. He hoped I would give him a uniform, and a good gun, both of which were promised.

Upon inquiring for the rest of the "Faithfuls" who accompanied Speke into Egypt, I was told that at Zanzibar there were but six. Ferrajji, Maktub, Sadik, Sunguru, Manyu, Matajari, Mkata, and Almas, were dead; Uledi and Mtamani were in Unyanyembe; Hassan had gone to Kilwa, and Ferahan was supposed to be in Ujiji.

Out of the six "Faithfuls," each of whom still retained his medal for assisting in the "Discovery of the Sources of the Nile," one, poor Mabruki, had met with a sad misfortune which I feared would incapacitate him from active usefulness.

Mabruki the "Bull-headed," owned a shamba (or a house with a garden attached to it), of which he was very proud. Close to him lived a neighbour in similar circumstances, who was a soldier of Seyd Majid, with whom Mabruki, who was of a quarrelsome disposition, had a feud, which culminated in the soldier inducing two or three of his comrades to assist him in punishing the malevolent Mabruki, and this was done in a manner that only the heart of an African could conceive. They tied the unfortunate fellow by his wrists to a branch of a tree, and after indulging their brutal appetite for revenge in torturing him, left him to hang in that position for two days. At the expiration of the second day, he was accidentally discovered in a most pitiable condition. His hands had swollen to an immense size, and the veins of one hand having been ruptured, he had lost its use. It is needless to say that, when the affair came to Seyd Majid's ears, the miscreants were severely punished. Dr. Kirk, who attended the poor fellow, succeeded in restoring one hand to something of a resemblance of its former shape, but the other hand is sadly marred, and its former usefulness gone for ever.

However, I engaged Mabruki, despite his deformed hands, his ugliness and vanity, despite Burton's bad report of him, because he was one of Speke's "Faithfuls." For if he but wagged his tongue in my service, kept his eyes open, and opened his mouth at the proper time, I assured myself I could make him useful.

Bombay, my captain of escort, succeeded in getting eighteen more free men to volunteer as "askari" (soldiers), men whom he knew would not desert, and for whom he declared himself responsible. They were an exceedingly fine-looking body of men, far more intelligent in appearance than I could ever have believed African barbarians could be. They hailed principally from Uhiyow, others from Unyamwezi, some came from Useguhha and Ugindo.

Their wages were set down at $36 each man per annum, or $3 each per month. Each soldier was provided with a flintlock, musket, powder horn, bullet, pouch, knife, and hatchet, besides enough powder and ball for 200 rounds.

Bombay, in consideration of his rank, and previous faithful services to Burton, Speke, and Grant, was engaged at $80 a year, half that sum in advance, a good muzzle-loading rifle, besides, a pistol, knife, and hatchet were given to him, while the other five "Faithfuls," Ambari, Mabruki, Ulimengo, Baruti, and Uledi, were engaged at $40 a year, with proper equipments as soldiers.

Having studied fairly well all the East African travellers' books regarding Eastern and Central Africa my mind had conceived the difficulties which would present themselves during the prosecution of my search, after Dr. Livingstone.

To obviate all of these, as well as human wit could suggest, was my constant thought and aim.

"Shall I permit myself, while looking from Ujiji over the waters of the Tanganika Lake to the other side, to be balked on the threshold of success by the insolence of a King Kannena or the caprice of a Hamed bin Sulayyam ?" was a question I asked myself. To guard against such a contingency I determined to carry my own boats. "Then," I thought, "if I hear of Livingstone being on the Tanganika, I can launch my boat and proceed after him."

I procured one large boat, capable of carrying twenty persons, with stores and goods sufficient for a cruise, from the American Consul, for the sum of $80, and a smaller one from another American gentleman for $40. The latter would hold comfortably six men, with suitable stores.

I did not intend to carry the boats whole or bodily, but to strip them of their boards, and carry the timbers and thwarts only. As a substitute for the boards, I proposed to cover each boat with a double canvas skin well tarred. The work of stripping them and taking them to pieces fell to me. This little job occupied me five days. I also packed them up, for the pagazis, Each load was carefully weighed, and none exceeded 68 lbs. in weight.

John Shaw excelled himself in the workmanship displayed on the canvas boats; when finished, they fitted their frames admirably. The canvas—six bolts of English hemp, No. 3—was procured from Ludhai Damj, who furnished it from the Sultan's storeroom.

An insuperable obstacle to rapid transit in Africa is the want of carriers, and as speed was the main object of the Expedition under my command, my duty was to lessen this difficulty as much as possible. My carriers could only be engaged after arriving at Bagamoyo, on the mainland. I had over twenty good donkeys ready, and I thought a cart adapted for the goat-paths of Africa might prove an advantage. Accordingly I had a cart constructed, eighteen inches wide and five feet long, supplied with two fore-wheels of a light American wagon, more for the purpose of conveying the narrow ammunition-boxes. I estimated that if a donkey could carry to Unyanyembe a load of four frasilahs, or 140 lbs., he ought to be able to draw eight frasilahs on such a cart, which would be equal to the carrying capacity of four stout pagazis or carriers. Events will prove, how my theories were borne out by practice.

When my purchases were completed, and I beheld them piled up, tier after tier, row upon row, here a mass of cooking-utensils, there bundles of rope, tents, saddles, a pile of portmanteaus and boxes, containing every imaginable thing, I confess I was rather abashed at my own temerity. Here were at least six tons of material! "How will it ever be possible," I thought, "to move all this inert mass across the wilderness stretching between the sea, and the great lakes of

Africa? Bah, cast all doubts away, man, and have at them! 'Sufficient for the day is the evil thereof,' without borrowing from the morrow."

The traveller, with a lake in the centre of that broad African continent before him, must needs make his way there after a fashion very different from that to which he has been accustomed in other countries. He requires to take with him just what a ship must have when about to sail on a long voyage. He must have his slop chest, his little store of canned dainties, and his medicines, besides which, he must have enough guns, powder, and ball to be able to make a series of good fights if necessary. He must have men to convey these miscellaneous articles; and as a man's maximum load does not exceed 70 lbs., to convey 11,000 lbs. requires nearly 160 men.

Europe and the Orient, even Arabia and Turkestan, have royal ways of travelling compared to Africa. Specie is received in all those countries, by which a traveller may carry his means about with him on his own person. Eastern and Central Africa, however, demand a necklace, instead of a cent; two yards of American sheeting, instead of half a dollar, or a florin, and a kitindi of thick brass-wire, in place of a gold piece.

The African traveller can hire neither wagons nor camels, neither horses nor mules, to proceed with him into the interior. His means of conveyance are limited to black and naked men, who demand at least $15 a head for every 70 lbs. weight carried only as far as Unyanyembe.

One thing amongst others my predecessors omitted to inform men bound for Africa, which is of importance, and that is, that no traveller should ever think of coming to Zanzibar with his money in any other shape than gold coin. Letters of credit, circular notes, and such civilized things I have found to be a century ahead of Zanzibar people.

Twenty and twenty-five cents deducted out of every dollar I drew on paper is one of the unpleasant, if not unpleasantest things I have committed to lasting memory. For Zanzibar is a spot far removed from all avenues of European commerce, and coin is at a high premium. A man may talk and entreat, but though he may have drafts, cheques, circular notes, letters of credit, a carte-blanche to get what he wants, out of every dollar must be deducted twenty, twenty-five and thirty cents, so I was told, and so was my experience. What a pity there is no branch-bank here!

I had intended to have gone into Africa incognito. But the fact that a white man, even an American, was about to enter Africa was soon known all over Zanzibar. This fact was repeated a thousand times in the streets, proclaimed in all shop alcoves, and at the custom-house. The native bazaar laid hold of it, and agitated it day and night until my departure. The foreigners, including the Europeans, wished to know the pros and cons of my coming in and going out.

My answer to all questions, pertinent and impertinent, was, I am going to Africa. Though my card bore the words

HENRY M. STANLEY.

New York Herald.

very few, I believe, ever coupled the words "New

York Herald" with a search after "Doctor Livingstone." It was not my fault, was it?

Ah, me! what hard work it is to start an expedition alone! What with hurrying through the baking heat of the fierce relentless sun from shop to shop, strengthening myself with far-reaching and enduring patience for the haggling contest with the livid-faced Hindi, summoning courage and wit to brow-beat the villainous Goanese, and match the foxy Banyan, talking volumes throughout the day, correcting estimates, making up accounts, superintending the delivery of purchased articles, measuring and weighing them, to see that everything was of full measure and weight, overseeing the white men Farquhar and Shaw, who were busy on donkey saddles, sails, tents, and boats for the Expedition, I felt, when the day was over, as though limbs and brain well deserved their rest. Such labours were mine unremittingly for a month.

Having bartered drafts on Mr. James Gordon Bennett to the amount of several thousand dollars for cloth, beads, wire, donkeys, and a thousand necessaries, having advanced pay to the white men, and black escort of the Expedition, having fretted Capt. Webb and his family more than enough with the din of preparation, and filled his house with my goods, there was nothing further to do but to leave my formal adieus with the Europeans, and thank the Sultan and those gentlemen who had assisted me, before embarking for Bagamoyo.

The day before my departure from Zanzibar the American Consul, having just habited himself in his black coat, and taking with him an extra black hat, in order to be in state apparel, proceeded with me to the Sultan's palace. The Prince had been generous to me; he had presented me with an Arab horse, had furnished me with letters of introduction to his agents, his chief men, and representatives in the interior, and in many other ways had shown himself well disposed towards me.

The palace is a large, roomy, lofty, square house close to the fort, built of coral, and plastered thickly with lime mortar. In appearance it is half Arabic and half Italian. The shutters are Venetian blinds painted a vivid green, and presenting a striking contrast to the whitewashed walls. Before the great, lofty, wide door were ranged in two crescents several Baluch and Persian mercenaries, armed with curved swords and targes of rhinoceros hide. Their dress was a muddy-white cotton shirt, reaching to the ancles, girdled with a leather belt thickly studded with silver bosses.

As we came in sight a signal was passed to some person inside the entrance. When within twenty yards of the door, the Sultan, who was standing waiting, came down the steps, and, passing through the ranks, advanced toward us, with his right hand stretched out, and a genial smile of welcome on his face. On our side we raised our hats, and shook hands with him, after which, doing according as he bade us, we passed forward, and arrived on the highest step near the entrance door. He pointed forward; we bowed, and arrived at the foot of an unpainted and narrow staircase to turn once more to the Sultan. "Go on," he said, and we ascended the stairs with my feelings greatly shocked, for the Sultan coming immediately after me, was placed in a most ignominious position for a sovereign prince. The Consul, I perceived, was ascending sideways, a mode of progression which I saw was intended for a compromise with decency and dignity; I imitated him as well as I was able, but I nevertheless thought my position rather peculiar. At the top of the stairs we waited, with our faces towards the up-coming Prince. Again we were waved magnanimously forward, for before us was the reception hall and throne-room. I noticed, as I marched forward to the furthest end, that the room was high, and painted in the Arabic style, that the carpet was thick and of Persian fabric, that the furniture consisted of a dozen gilt chairs and a chandelier.

We were seated; Ludha Damji, the Banyan collector of customs, a venerable-looking old man, with a shrewd intelligent face, sat on the right of the Sultan; next to him was the great Mohammedan merchant, Tarya Topan, who had come to be present at the interview, not only because he was one of the councillors of His Highness, but because he also took a lively interest in this American Expedition.. Opposite to Ludha sat Capt. Webb, and next to him I was seated, opposite Tarya Topan. The Sultan sat in a gilt chair between the Americans and the councillors. Johari the dragoman stood humbly before the Sultan, expectant and ready to interpret what we had to communicate to the Prince.

The Sultan, so far as dress goes, might be taken for a Mingrelian gentleman, excepting, indeed, for the turban, whose ample folds in alternate colours of red, yellow, brown, and white, encircled his head. His long robe was of dark cloth, cinctured round the waist with his rich sword-belt, from which was suspended a gold-hilted scimitar, encased in a scabbard also enriched with gold. His legs and feet were bare, and had a ponderous look about them, since he suffered from that strange curse of Zanzibar — elephantiasis. His feet were slipped into a pair of watta (Arabic for slippers), with thick soles, and a strong leathern band over the instep. His light complexion and his correct features, which are intelligent and regular, bespeak the Arab patrician. They indicate, however, nothing except his high descent and blood; no traits of character are visible unless there is just a trace of amiability, and perfect contentment with himself and all around.

Such is Prince, or Seyd Burghash, Sultan of Zanzibar and Pemba, and the East coast of Africa, from Somali Land to the Mozambique, as he appeared to me.

Coffee was served in cups supported by golden finjans, also some cocoa-nut milk, and rich sweet sherbet.

The conversation began with the question addressed to the Consul,

"Are you well?"

Consul.—"Yes, thank you. How is His Highness?"

Highness.—"Quite well!"

Highness to me.—"Are you well?"

Answer.—"Quite well, thanks!"

The Consul now introduces business; and questions about my travels follow from His Highness—

"How do you like Persia?"

"Have you seen Kerbela, Bagdad, Masr, Stamboul?"

"Have the Turks many soldiers?"

"How many has Persia?"

"Is Persia fertile?"

"How do you like Zanzibar?"

Having answered each question to his Highness' satisfaction, he handed me letters of introduction to his officers at Bagamoyo and Kaole, and a general introductory letter to all Arab merchants whom I might meet on the road, and concluded his remarks to me, with the expressed hope, that on whatever mission I was bound, I should be perfectly successful.

We bowed ourselves out of his presence in much the same manner that we had bowed ourselves in, he accompanying us to the great entrance door.

Mr. Goodhue of Salem, an American merchant long resident in Zanzibar, presented me, as I gave him my adieu, with a blooded bay horse, imported from the Cape of Good Hope, and worth, at least at Zanzibar, $500.

Feb. 4.—By the 4th of February, twenty-eight days from the date of my arrival at Zanzibar, the organization and equipment of the "New York Herald Expedition" was complete; tents and saddles had been manufactured, boats and sails were ready. The donkeys brayed, and the horses neighed impatiently for the road.

Etiquette demanded that I should once more present my card to the European and American Consuls at Zanzibar, and the word "farewell" was said to everybody.

On the fifth day, four dhows were anchored before the American Consulate. Into one were lifted the two horses, into two others the donkeys, into the fourth, the largest, the black escort, and bulky moneys of the Expedition.

When about to give the order to sail, the two white men, Farquhar and Shaw, were absent. They were found, after a vigorous hunt, among the liquor shops, surrounded by about a dozen boon companions, holding forth upon the greatness of the art of African exploration, trying to stave off with the aid of whisky the dread presentiments that would insidiously now and then obtrude themselves into their minds, warning them that though new lands were about to be revealed to them, with all the fantastic scenes credited to the new country, there might be something in these strange parts that might—"well, what?"

"Get into the dhows at once, men. This is rather a bad beginning after signing contracts," I said, as I saw them reeling to the beach in company of Bombay, and four or five of the newly-enlisted escort.

"If you please, sir, may I ask if—if—if you think I have done quite right in promising to go with you to Afriky?" asked Shaw, in a most hesitating and dolorous tone.

"Have you not received your advance? Have you not signed the contract?" I asked; "and do you now wish to withdraw? Get into the boat, man, at once. We are all in for it now, sink or swim, live or die—none can desert his duty."

A little before noon we set sail. The American flag, a present to the Expedition by that kind-hearted lady, Mrs. Webb, was raised to the mast-head; the Consul, his lady, and exuberant little children, Mary and Charley, were on the housetop waving the starry banner, hats, and handkerchiefs, a token of farewell to me and mine. Happy people, and good! may their course and ours be prosperous, and may God's blessing rest on us all!

VIEW OF BAGAMOYO.

CAMP AT BAGAMOYO.

CHAPTER III.

LIFE AT BAGAMOYO.

THE Isle of Zanzibar with its groves of cocoa-nut, mango, clove, and cinnamon, and its sentinel islets of Chumbi and French, with its whitewashed city and jack-fruit odor, with its harbor and ships that tread the deep, faded slowly from view, and looking westward, the African continent rose, a similar bank of green verdure to that which had just receded till it was a mere sinuous line above the horizon, looming in a northerly direction to the sublimity of a mountain chain. The distance across from Zanzibar to Bagamoyo may be about twenty-five miles, yet it took the dull and lazy dhows ten hours before they dropped anchor on the top of the coral reef plainly visible a few feet above the surface of the water, within a hundred yards of the beach.

The newly-enlisted soldiers, fond of noise and excitement, discharged repeated salvos by way of a salute to the mixed crowd of Arabs, Banyans and Wasawahili, who stood on the beach to receive the Musungu (white man), which they did with a general stare and a chorus of "Yambo, bana?" (how are you, master?)

In our own land the meeting with a large crowd is rather a tedious operation, as our independent citizens insist on an interlacing of digits, and a vigorous shaking thereof before their pride is satisfied, and the peaceful manifestation endorsed; but on this beach, well lined with spectators, a response of "Yambo, bana!" sufficed, except with one who of all there was acknowledged the greatest, and who, claiming, like all great men, individual attention, came forward to exchange another "Yambo!" on his own behalf, and to shake hands. This personage with a long trailing turban, was Jemadar Esau, commandant (French), commander (English), of the Zanzibar force of soldiers, police, or Baluch gendarmes stationed at Bagamoyo. He had accompanied Speke and Grant a good distance into the interior, and they, like all English travellers, had rewarded him liberally. He took upon himself the responsibility of assisting in the debarkation of the Expedition, and unworthy as was his appearance, disgraceful as he was in his filth, and with his hirsute face, I here commend him for his influence over the rabble to all future East African travellers. Foremost among those who welcomed us was a Father of the Society of St.-Esprit, who with other Jesuits, under Father Superior Horner, have established a missionary post of considerable influence and merit at Bagamoyo. We were invited to partake of the hospitality of the Mission, to take our meals there, and, should we desire it, to pitch our camp on their grounds. But however strong the geniality of the welcome and sincere the heartiness of the invitation, I am one of those who prefer independence to dependence if it is possible. Besides, my sense of the obligation between host and guest had just had a fine edge put upon it by the delicate forbearance of my kind host at Zanzibar, who had betrayed no sign of impatience at the trouble I was only too conscious of having caused him. I therefore informed the hospitable Padre, that only for one night could I suffer myself to be enticed from my camp.

I selected a house near the western outskirts of the town, where there is a large open square through which the road from Unyanyembe enters. Had I been at Bagamoyo a month, I could not have bettered my location. My tents were pitched fronting the tembe (house) I had chosen, enclosing a small square, where business could be transacted, bales looked over, examined, and marked, free from the intrusion of curious sightseers. After driving the twenty-seven animals of the Expedition into the enclosure in the rear of the house, storing the bales of goods, and placing a cordon of soldiers round, I proceeded to the Jesuit Mission, to a late dinner, being tired and ravenous, leaving the newly-formed camp in charge of the white men and Capt. Bombay.

The Mission is distant from the town a good half mile, to the north of it; it is quite a village of itself, numbering some fifteen or sixteen houses. There are more than ten padres engaged in the establishment, and as many sisters, and all find plenty of occupation in educing from native crania the fire of intelligence. Truth compels me to state that they are very successful, having over two hundred pupils, boys and girls, in the Mission, and, from the oldest to the youngest, they show the impress of the useful education they have received.

The dinner furnished to the padres and their guest consisted of as many plats as a first-class hotel in Paris usually supplies, and cooked with nearly as much skill, though the surroundings were by no means equal. I feel assured also that the padres, besides being tasteful in their potages and entrées, do not stultify their ideas for lack of that element which Horace, Hafiz, and Byron have praised so much. The champagne—think of champagne Cliquot in East Africa!—Lafitte, La Rose, Burgundy, and Bordeaux were of first-rate quality, and the meek and lowly eyes of the fathers were not a little brightened under the vinous influence. Ah! those fathers understand life, and appreciate its duration. Their festive board drives the mukunguru (African jungle fever) from their doors, while it soothes the gloom and isolation which strike one with awe, as one emerges from the lighted room and plunges into the depths of the darkness of an African night, enlivened only by the wearying monotone of the frogs and crickets, and the distant ululation of the hyæna. It requires somewhat above human effort, unaided by the ruby liquid that cheers, to be always suave and polite amid the dismalities of native life in Africa.

After the evening meal, which replenished my failing strength, and for which I felt the intensest gratitude, the most advanced of the pupils came forward, to the number of twenty, with brass instruments, thus forming a full band of music. It rather astonished me to hear the sounds issue forth in such harmony from such woolly-headed youngsters; to hear well-known French music at this isolated port, to hear negro boys, that a few months ago knew nothing beyond the traditions of their ignorant mothers, stand forth and chant Parisian songs about French valor and glory, with all the sang-froid of gamins from the purlieus of Saint-Antoine.

I had a most refreshing night's rest, and at dawn I sought out my camp, with a will to enjoy the new life now commencing. On counting the animals, two donkeys were missing; and on taking notes of my African moneys, one coil of No. 6 wire was not to be found. Everybody had evidently fallen on the ground to sleep, oblivious of the fact that on the Mrima there are many dishonest prowlers at night. Soldiers were despatched to search through the town and neighbourhood, and Jemadar Esau, he of the trailing turban, the filthy face and neck, was apprised of our loss, and stimulated to discover the animals by the promise of a reward. Before night one of the missing donkeys was found outside the town nibbling at manioc-leaves, but the other animal and the coil of wire were never found.

Among my visitors this first day at Bagamoyo was Ali bin Salim, a brother of the famous Sayd bin Salim, formerly Ras Kafilah to Burton and Speke, and subsequently to Speke and Grant. His salaams were very profuse, and moreover, his brother was to be my agent in Unyamwezi, so that I did not hesitate to accept his offer of assistance. But, alas, for my white face and too trustful nature! This Ali bin Salim turned out to be a snake in the grass, a very sore thorn in my side. I was invited to his comfortable house to partake of coffee. I went there: the coffee was good though sugarless, his promises were many, but they proved valueless. Said he to me, "I am your friend; I wish to serve you; what can I do for you?" Replied I, "I am obliged to you, I need a good friend who, knowing the language and customs of the Wanyamwezi, can procure me the pagazis I need and send me off quickly. Your brother is acquainted with the Wasungu (white men), and knows that what they promise they make good. Get me a hundred and forty pagazis and I will pay you your price." With unctuous courtesy, the reptile I was now warmly nourishing, said, "I do not want anything from you, my friend, for such a slight service, rest content and quiet; you shall not stop here fifteen days. To-morrow morning I will come and overhaul your bales to see what is needed." I bade him good morning, elated with the happy thought that I was soon to tread the Unyanyembe road.

The reader must be made acquainted with two good and sufficient reasons why I was to devote all my energy to lead the Expedition as quickly as possible from Bagamoyo. First, I wished to reach Ujiji before the news reached Livingstone that I was in search of him, for my impression of him was that he was a man who would try to put as much distance as possible between us, rather than make an effort to shorten it, and I should have my long journey for nothing. Second, the Masika, or rainy season, would soon be on me, which, if it caught me at Bagamoyo, would prevent my departure until it was over, which meant a delay of forty days, and exaggerated as the rains were by all men with whom I came in contact, it rained every day for forty days without intermission. This I knew was a thing to dread; for I had my memory stored with all kinds of rainy unpleasantnesses. For instance, there was the rain of Virginia and its concomitant horrors—wetness, mildew, agues, rheumatics, and such like; then there were the English rains, a miserable drizzle causing the blue devils; then the rainy season of Abyssinia with the flood-gates of the firmament opened, and an universal down-pour of rain, enough to submerge half a continent in a few hours; lastly, there was the pelting monsoon of India, a steady shut-in-house kind of rain. To which of these rains should I compare this dreadful Masika of East Africa? Did not Burton write much about black mud in Uzaramo? Well, a country whose surface soil is called black mud in fine weather, what can it be called when forty days' rain beat on it, and feet of pagazis and donkeys make paste of it? These were natural reflections, induced by the circumstances of the hour, and I found myself much exercised in mind in consequence.

Ali bin Salim, true to his promise, visited my camp on the morrow, with a very important air, and after looking at the pile of cloth bales, informed me that I must have them covered with mat-bags (makandas). He said he would send a man to have them measured, but he enjoined me not to make any bargain for the bags, as he would make it all right.

While awaiting with commendable patience the 140 pagazis promised by Ali bin Salim we were all employed upon everything that thought could suggest needful for crossing the sickly maritime region, so that we might make the transit before the terrible fever could unnerve us, and make us joyless. A short experience at Bagamoyo showed us what we lacked, what was superfluous, and what was necessary. We were visited one night by a squall, accompanied by furious rain. I had $1,500 worth of pagazi cloth in my tent. In the morning I looked, and lo! the drilling had let in rain like a sieve, and every yard of cloth was wet. It occupied two days afterwards to dry the cloths, and fold them again. The drill-tent was condemned, and a No. 5 hemp-canvas tent at once prepared. After which I felt convinced that my cloth bales, and one year's ammunition, were safe, and that I could defy the Masika. In the hurry of departure from Zanzibar, and in my ignorance of how bales should be made, I had submitted to the better judgment and ripe experience of one Jetta, a commission merchant, to prepare my bales for carriage. Jetta did not weigh the bales as he made them up, but piled the Merikani, Kaniki, Barsati, Jamdani, Joho, Ismahili, in alternate layers, and roped the same into bales. One or two pagazis came to my camp and began to chaffer; they wished to see the bales first, before they would make a final bargain. They tried to raise them up—ugh! ugh! it was of no use, and withdrew. A fine Salter's spring balance was hung up, and a bale suspended to the hook; the finger indicated 105 lbs. or 3 frasilah, which was just 35 lbs. or one frasilah overweight. Upon putting all the bales to this test, I perceived that Jetta's guess-work, with all his experience, had caused considerable trouble to me. The soldiers were set to work to reopen and repack, which latter task is performed in the following manner:—We cut a doti, or four yards of Merikani, ordinarily sold at Zanzibar for $2·75 the piece of thirty yards, and spread it out. We take a piece or bolt of good Merikani, and instead of the double fold given it by the Nashua and Salem mills, we fold it into three parts, by which the folds have a breadth of a foot; this piece forms the first layer, and will weigh nine pounds; the second layer consists of six pieces of Kaniki, a blue stuff similar to the blue blouse stuff of France, and the blue jeans of America, though much lighter; the third layer is formed of the second piece of Merikani, the fourth of six more pieces of Kaniki, the fifth of Merikani, the sixth of Kaniki as before, and the seventh and last of Merikani. We have thus four pieces of Merikani, which weigh

36 lbs., and 18 pieces of Kaniki weighing also 36 lbs., making a total of 72 lbs., or a little more than two frasilahs; the cloth is then folded singly over these layers, each corner tied to another. A bundle of coir-rope is then brought, and two men, provided with a wooden mallet for beating and pressing the bale, proceed to tie it up with as much nicety as sailors serve down rigging.

When complete a bale is a solid mass three feet and a half long, a foot deep, and a foot wide. Of these bales I had to convey eighty-two to Unyanyembe, forty of which consisted solely of the Merikani and Kaniki. The other forty-two contained the Merikani and colored cloths, which latter were to serve as honga or tribute cloths, and to engage another set of pagazis from Unyanyembe to Ujiji, and from Ujiji to the regions beyond.

The fifteenth day asked of me by Ali bin Salim for the procuring of the pagazis passed by, and there was not the ghost of a pagazi in my camp. I sent Mabruki the Bull-headed—one of Burton's men—to Ali bin Salim, to convey my salaams and express a hope that he had kept his word. In half an hour's time Mabruki returned with the reply of the Arab, that in a few days he would be able to collect them all; but, added Mabruki, slyly, "Bana, I don't believe him. He said aloud to himself, in my hearing, 'Why should I get the Musungu pagazis? Seyd Burghash did not send a letter to me, but to the Jemadar. Why should I trouble myself about him? Let Seyd Burghash write me a letter to that purpose, and I will procure them within two days.'"

To my mind this was a time for action: Ali bin Salim should see that it was ill trifling with a white man in earnest to start. I rode down to his house to ask him what he meant.

His reply was, Mabruki had told a lie as black as his face. He had never said anything approaching to such a thing. He was willing to become my slave—to become a pagazi himself. But here I stopped the voluble Ali, and informed him that I could not think of employing him in the capacity of a pagazi, neither could I find it in my heart to trouble Seyd Burghash to write a direct letter to him, or to require of a man who had deceived me once, as Ali bin Salim had, any service of any nature whatsoever. It would be better, therefore, if Ali bin Salim would stay away from my camp, and not enter it either in person or by proxy.

I had lost fifteen days, for Jemadar Sadur, at Kaole, had never stirred from his fortified house in that village in my service, save to pay a visit, after the receipt of the Sultan's letter. Naranji, custom-house agent at Kaole, solely under the thumb of the great Ludha Damji, had not responded to Ludha's worded request that he would procure pagazis, except with winks, nods, and promises, and it is but just stated how I fared at the hands of Ali bin Salim. In this extremity I remembered the promise made to me by the great merchant of Zanzibar—Tarya Topan—a Mohammedan Hindi—that he would furnish me with a letter to a young man named Soor Hadji Palloo, who was said to be the best man in Bagamoyo to procure a supply of pagazis.

I despatched Selim, my Arab interpreter, by a dhow to Zanzibar, with a very earnest request to Capt. Webb that he would procure from Tarya Topan the introductory letter so long delayed. It was the last card in my hand.

On the third day the boy Selim returned, bringing with him not only the letter to Soor Hadji Palloo, but an abundance of good things from the ever-hospitable house of Mr. Webb. In a very short time after the receipt of his letter, the eminent young man Soor Hadji Palloo came to visit me, and informed me he had been requested by Tarya Topan to hire for me one hundred and forty pagazis to Unyanyembe in the shortest time possible. This he said would be very expensive, for there were scores of Arabs and Wasawahili merchants on the look-out for every caravan that came in from the interior, and they paid 20 doti, or 80 yards of cloth, to each pagazi. Not willing or able to pay more, many of these merchants had been waiting as long as six months before they could get their quota. "If you," continued he, "desire to depart quickly, you must pay from 25 to 40 doti, and I can send you off before one month is ended." In reply, I said, "Here are my cloths for pagazis to the amount of $1,750, or 3,500 doti, sufficient to give one hundred and forty men 25 doti each. The most I am willing to pay is 25 doti: send one hundred and forty pagazis to Unyanyembe with my cloth and wire, and I will make your heart glad with the richest present you have ever received." With a refreshing naïveté, the "young man" said he did not want any present, he would get me my quota of pagazis, and then I could tell the "Wasungu" what a good "young man" he was, and consequently the benefit he would receive, would be an increase of business. He closed his reply with the astounding remark that he had ten pagazis at his house already, and if I would be good enough to have four bales of cloth, two bags of beads, and twenty coils of wire carried to his house, the pagazis could leave Bagamoyo the next day, under charge of three soldiers. "For," he remarked, "it is much better and cheaper to send many small caravans than one large one. Large caravans invite attack, or are delayed by avaricious chiefs upon the most trivial pretexts, while small ones pass by without notice."

The bales and beads were duly carried to Soor Hadji Palloo's house, and the day passed with me in mentally congratulating myself upon my good fortune, in complimenting the young Hindi's talents for business, the greatness and influence of Tarya Topan, and the goodness of Mr. Webb in thus hastening my departure from Bagamoyo. I mentally vowed a handsome present, and a great puff in my book, to Soor Hadji Palloo, and it was with a glad heart I prepared these soldiers for their march to Unyanyembe.

The task of preparing the first caravan for the Unyanyembe road informed me upon several things that have escaped the notice of my predecessors in East Africa, a timely knowledge of which would have been of infinite service to me at Zanzibar, in the purchase and selection of sufficient and proper cloth. I append here, as an example, the bill of costs for the sending of a caravan of ten pagazis, and three soldiers as guards, to Unyanyembe.

Cost of Carriage.	
To 10 pagazis' hire, at 25 doti, each doti of cloth being 50c.	$125·00
Matama grain for 4 days' food	1·00
For Food on the Road.	
Merikani, 25 doti	12·50
Kaniki, 20 doti 25cts each	5·00
Taujiri, 2 doti 50cts each	1·00
Sami-Sami, 9 lbs.	3·05
Bubu, 3 lbs.	·33
Merikani, 7 lbs.	1·05
	$148·93

Food for Three Soldiers.

3 lbs. Bubu beads	$ ·33
3 lbs. Merikani	·45
3 lbs. Sami-Sami	1·01⅔
Merikani cloths, 7½ doti	3·75
Barsati, 2 doti	1·00
Kaniki, 2 doti	·50
Wages for 3 months, at $ 9 per month	27·00
To money to pay for ferry-boat crossing the Kingani	2·00
	$ 36·04⅔

Total cost of pagazis	$ 148·93
" soldiers	36·04⅔
	$ 184·97⅔

Value of Goods carried by a portion of the First Caravan.

3 bales of cloth containing—	
90 doti of Kaniki, at 25c.	$ 22·50
112½ doti of Merikani, at 50c.	56·25
3 loads of wire, or 4 frasilahs	36·87½
1 bag of Sungomazzi, or 1000	14·00
1 bag of Sami-Sami beads, or 2 frasilahs	26·00
	$ 155·62½

Thus the cost of carriage was a little over $29 in excess of the value of the goods carried.

Supposing I despatched one hundred pagazis, the cost of carriage for ten times the quantity of goods conveyed as estimated above would amount to $1849·76⅔, while the cost of the goods themselves would reach the sum of $1556·25, and together would make $3406·01⅔.

And while I am about this system of transportation, being a methodical man, I might as well annex the bill of costs of a portion of the third caravan, led by my white man Farquhar, which consisted of ten donkeys, three soldiers, one white man, and one cook, so that the reader may compare the expenses, for he must remember I include everything in the bill.

Cost of Carriage.

To 9 donkeys bearing goods, at $18		$162·00
To 1 donkey for white man		18·00
To 10 saddles		17·60
1 saddle, thus:		
Canvas	33½	
Twine	5	
Cotton	25	
Iron rings	10	
American drill	15	
Cotton band	12½	
Rope	20	
		1·21
3 months' wages to cook at $9		27·00
3 „ white man at $25		75·00
1 tent		8·00
Sugar, 4 lbs.		25
Tea		4·00
Medicine		3·00
Rice		1·00
To 3 soldiers' wages at $9 each		27·00
Ferry money		2·00
Matama grain, 16 measures		1·00
To food on the road for donkeys, 16 doti Merikani		8·00
To food for 5 men, 25 doti		12·50
„ „ 15 lbs. of beads		3·00
		$363·83

Value of Goods conveyed.

To 18 bales of cloth containing—	
540 doti Kaniki at 25c.	$135·00
675 doti Merikani at 50c.	337·50

The cost of carriage in this case is much less, and what is in favor of the donkey as a beast of burden, is, that it carries much more than two pagazis will, upon occasion. Two pagazis with all the necessaries cost about $37·01, one donkey costs upon the same terms say about $36·40. These are only according to the sums above quoted. But Farquhar could have led into Unyanyembe, twenty donkeys as easily as ten; the cost of carriage would then be greatly in favor of the donkeys. If we take into consideration that Burton's thirty-three donkeys all died before they reached Unyanyembe, we must also remember that he states that all his pagazis deserted or tried to desert on the march. But we shall be better able to judge of the relative value of donkeys and pagazis after I have arrived at Unyanyembe; until then we will leave the question open.

The setting-out of the first caravan enlightened me also upon the subject of honga, or tribute. Tribute had to be packed by itself, all of choice cloth; for the chiefs, besides being avaricious, are also very fastidious. They will not accept the flimsy colored cloth of the pagazi, but a royal and exceedingly high-priced dabwani, Ismahili, Rehani, or a Sohari, or dotis of crimson broad cloth. The tribute for the first caravan cost $25. Having more than one hundred and forty pagazis to despatch, this tribute money would amount finally to $330 in gold, with a premium of 25c. on each dollar. Ponder on this, O traveller! I lay bare these facts for your special instruction.

But before my first caravan was destined to part company with me, Soor Hadji Palloo—worthy young man—and I, were to come to a definite understanding about money matters. The morning appointed for departure Soor Hadji Palloo came to my hut and presented his bill, with all the gravity of innocence, for supplying the pagazis with twenty-five doti each as their hire to Unyanyembe, begging immediate payment in money. Words fail to express the astonishment I naturally felt, that this sharp-looking young man should so soon have forgotten the verbal contract entered into between him and myself the morning previous, which was to the effect that out of the three thousand doti stored in my tent, and bought expressly for pagazi hire, each and every man hired for me as carriers from Bagamoyo to Unyanyembe, should be paid out of the store there in my tent. When I asked if he remembered the contract, he replied in the affirmative: his reasons for breaking it so soon were, that he wished to sell his cloths, not mine, and for his cloths he should want money, not an exchange. But I gave him to comprehend that as he was procuring pagazis for me, he was to pay my pagazis with my cloths; that all the money I expected to pay him, should be just such a sum as I thought adequate for his trouble as my agent, and that only on those terms should he act for me in this or any other matter, and that the "Musungu" was not accustomed to eat his words.

The preceding paragraph embodies many more words than are contained in it. It embodies a dialogue of an hour, an angry altercation of half-an-hour's duration, a vow taken on the part of Soor Hadji Palloo, that if I did not take his cloths he should not touch my business, many tears, entreaties, woeful penitence, and much else, all of which were responded to with, "Do as I want you to do, or do nothing." Finally came relief, and a happy ending. Soor Hadji Palloo went away with a bright face, taking with him the three soldiers' posho (food), and honga (tribute) for the caravan. Well for me that it ended so, and that subsequent quarrels of a similar nature terminated so peaceably, otherwise I doubt whether my departure from Bagamoyo would have happened so early as it did. While I am on this theme, and as it really engrossed every moment of my time at Bagamoyo, I may as well be more explicit regarding Soor Hadji Palloo and his connection with my business.

Soor Hadji Palloo was a smart young man of business, energetic, quick at mental calculation, and seemed to be born for a successful salesman. His eyes were never idle, they wandered over every part of my person, over the tent, the bed, the guns, the clothes, and having swung clear round, began the silent circle over again. His fingers were never at rest, they had a fidgety, nervous action at their tips, constantly in the act of feeling something; while in the act of talking to me, he would lean over and feel the texture of the cloth of my trousers, my coat, or my shoes or socks; then he would feel his own light jamdani shirt or dabwain loin-cloth, until his eyes casually resting upon a novelty, his body would lean forward, and his arm was stretched out with the willing fingers. His jaws also were in perpetual motion, caused by vile habits he had acquired of chewing betel-nut and lime, and sometimes tobacco and lime. They gave out a sound similar to that of a young shoat, in the act of sucking. He was a pious Mohammedan, and observed the external courtesies and ceremonies of the true believers. He would affably greet me, take off his shoes, enter my tent protesting he was not fit to sit in my presence, and after being seated, would begin his ever-crooked errand. Of honesty, literal and practical honesty, this youth knew nothing; to the pure truth he was an utter stranger; the falsehoods he had uttered during his short life seemed already to have quenched the bold gaze of innocence from his eyes, to have banished the color of truthfulness from his features, to have transformed him—yet a stripling of twenty—into a most accomplished rascal, and consummate expert in dishonesty.

During the six weeks I encamped at Bagamoyo, waiting for my quota of men, this lad of twenty gave me as much trouble as all the scoundrelism of New York gives to her Chief of Police. He was found out half a dozen times a day in dishonesty, yet was in no way abashed by it. He would send in his account of the cloths supplied to the pagazis, stating them to be 25 paid to each; on sending a man to inquire I would find the greatest number to have been 20, and the smallest 12. Soor Hadji Palloo described the cloths to be of first-class quality, Ulyah cloths, worth in the market four times more than the ordinary quality given to the pagazis, yet a personal examination would prove them to be the flimsiest goods sold, such as American sheeting $2\frac{1}{2}$ feet broad, and worth $2·75 per 30 yards a piece at Zanzibar, or the most inferior Kaniki which is generally sold at $9 per score. He would personally come to my camp and demand 40 lbs. of Sami-Sami, Merikani, and Bubu beads for posho, or caravan rations; an inspection of their store before departure from their first camp from Bagamoyo would show a deficiency ranging from 5 to 30 lbs. Moreover, he cheated in cash-money, such as demanding $4 for crossing the Kingani Ferry for every ten pagazis, when the fare was $2 for the same number; and an unconscionable amount of pice (copper coins equal in value to $\frac{3}{4}$ of a cent) was required for posho. It was every day for four weeks that this system of roguery was carried out. Each day conceived a dozen new schemes; every instant of his time he seemed to be devising how to plunder, until I was fairly at my wits' end how to thwart him. Exposure before a crowd of his fellows brought no blush of shame to his sallow cheeks; he would listen with a mere shrug of the shoulders and that was all, which I might interpret any way it pleased me. A threat to reduce his present had no effect; a bird in the hand was certainly worth two in the bush for him, so ten dollars' worth of goods stolen and in his actual possession was of more intrinsic value, than the promise of $20 in a few days, though it was that of a Musungu's.

Readers will of course ask themselves why I did not, after the first discovery of these shameless proceedings, close my business with him, to which I make reply, that I could not do without him unless his equal were forthcoming, that I never felt so thoroughly dependent on any one man as I did upon him; without his or his duplicate's aid, I must have stayed at Bagamoyo at least six months, at the end of which time the Expedition would have become valueless, the rumour of it having been blown abroad to the four winds. It was immediate departure that was essential to my success—departure from Bagamoyo—after which it might be possible for me to control my own future in a great measure.

These troubles were the greatest that I could at this time imagine. I have already stated that I had $1,750 worth of pagazis' clothes, or 3,500 doti, stored in my tent, and above what my bales contained. Calculating one hundred and forty pagazis at 25 doti each, I supposed I had enough, yet, though I had been trying to teach the young Hindi that the Musungu was not a fool, nor blind to his pilfering tricks, though the 3,500 doti were all spent; though I had only obtained one hundred and thirty pagazis at 25 doti each, which in the aggregate amounted to 3,200 doti: Soor Hadji Palloo's bill was $1,400 cash extra. His plea was that he had furnished Ulyah clothes for Muhongo 240 doti, equal in value to 960 of my doti, that the money was spent in ferry pice, in presents to chiefs of caravans of tents, guns, red broad cloth, in presents to people on the Mrima (coast) to induce them to hunt up pagazis. Upon this exhibition of most ruthless cheating I waxed indignant, and declared to him that if he did not run over his bill and correct it, he should go without a pice.

But before the bill could be put into proper shape, my words, threats, and promises falling heedlessly on a stony brain, a man, Kanjee by name, from the store of Tarya Topan, of Zanzibar, had to come over, when the bill was finally reduced to $738. Without any disrespect to Tarya Topan, I am unable to decide which is the most accomplished rascal, Kanjee, or young Soor Hadji Palloo; in the words of a white man who knows them both, "there is not the splitting of a straw between them." Kanjee is deep and sly, Soor Hadji Palloo is bold and incorrigible. But peace be to them both, may their shaven heads never be covered with the troublous crown I wore at Bagamoyo!

My dear friendly reader, do not think, if I speak out my mind in this or in any other chapter upon matters seemingly trivial and unimportant, that seeming such they should be left unmentioned. Every tittle related is a fact, and to know facts is to receive knowledge. How could I ever recite my experience to you if I did not enter upon these miserable details, which sorely distract the stranger upon his first arrival? Had I been a Government official, I had but wagged my finger and my quota of pagazis had been furnished me within a week, but as an individual arriving without the graces of official recognition, armed with no Government influence, I had to be patient, bide my time, and chew the cud of irritation quietly, but the bread I ate was not all sour, as this was.

The white men, Farquhar and Shaw, were kept steadily at work upon water-proof tents of hemp canvas, for I perceived, by the premonitory showers of rain that marked the approach of the Masika that an ordinary tent of light cloth would subject myself to damp and my goods to mildew, and while there was time to rectify all errors that had crept into my plans through ignorance or over haste, I thought it was not wise to permit things to rectify themselves. Now that I have returned uninjured in health, though I have suffered the attacks of twenty-three fevers within the short space of thirteen months, I must confess I owe my life, first, to the mercy of God; secondly, to the enthusiasm for my work, which animated me from the beginning to the end; thirdly, to having never ruined my constitution by indulgence in vice and intemperance; fourthly, to the energy of my nature; fifthly, to a native hopefulness which never died; and, sixthly, to having furnished myself with a capacious water and damp proof canvas house. And here, if my experience may be of value, I would suggest that travellers, instead of submitting their better judgment to the caprices of a tent-maker, who will endeavour to pass off a handsomely made fabric of his own, which is unsuited to all climes, to use his own judgment, and get the best and strongest that money will buy. In the end it will prove the cheapest, and perhaps be the means of saving his life.

On one point I failed, and lest new and young travellers fall into the same error which marred much of my enjoyment, this paragraph is written. One must be extremely careful in his choice of weapons, whether for sport or defence. A traveller should have at least three different kinds of guns. One should be a fowling-piece, the second should be a double-barrelled rifle, No. 10 or 12, the third should be a magazine-rifle, for defence. For the fowling-piece I would suggest No. 12 bore, with barrels at least four feet in length. For the rifle for larger game, I would point out, with due deference to old sportsmen, of course, that the best guns for African game are the English Lancaster and Reilly rifles; and for a fighting weapon, I maintain that the best yet invented is the American Winchester repeating rifle, or the "sixteen-shooter" as it is called, supplied with the London Eley's ammunition. If I suggest as a fighting weapon the American Winchester, I do not mean that the traveller need take it for the purpose of offence, but as the best means of efficient defence, to save his own life against African banditti, when attacked, a thing likely to happen any time.

I met a young man soon after returning from the interior, who declared his conviction that the "Express" rifle was the most perfect weapon ever invented to destroy African game. Very possibly the young man may be right, and that the "Express rifle" is all he declares it to be, but he had never practised with it against African game, and as I had never tried it, I could not combat his assertion: but I could relate my experiences with weapons, having all the penetrating powers of the "Express," and could inform him that though the bullets penetrated through the animals, they almost always failed to bring down the game at the first fire. On the other hand, I could inform him, that during the time I travelled with Dr. Livingstone the Doctor lent me his heavy Reilly rifle with which I seldom failed to bring an animal or two home to the camp, and that I found the Fraser shell answer all purposes for which it was intended. The feats related by Capt. Speke and Sir Samuel Baker are no longer matter of wonderment to the young sportsman, when he has a Lancaster or a Reilly in his hand. After a very few trials he can imitate them, if not excel their deeds, provided he has a steady hand. And it is to forward this end that this paragraph is written. African game require "bone-crushers;" for any ordinary carbine possesses sufficient penetrative qualities, yet has not the disabling qualities which a gun must possess, to be useful in the hands of an African explorer.

I had not been long at Bagamoyo before I went over to Mussoudi's camp, to visit the "Livingstone caravan" which the British Consul had despatched on the first day of November, 1870, to the relief of Livingstone. The number of packages was thirty-five, which required as many men to convey them to Unyanyembe. The men chosen to escort this caravan were composed of Johannese and Wahiyow, seven in number. Out of the seven, four were slaves. They lived in clover here—thoughtless of the errand they had been sent upon, and careless of the consequences. What these men were doing at Bagamoyo all this time I never could conceive, except indulging their own vicious propensities. It would be nonsense to say there were no pagazis; because I know there were at least fifteen caravans which had started for the interior since the Ramadan (December 15th, 1870). Yet Livingstone's caravan had arrived at this little town of Bagamoyo November 2nd, and here it had been lying until the 10th February, in all, 100 days, for lack of the limited number of thirty-five pagazis, a number that might be procured within two days through consular influence.

If the British Consul puts forward a plea that he was not aware that his supplies to Livingstone were still halted at Bagamoyo, it will only prove to me that he was more culpably negligent than ever of his duty to a British subject and a brother official, who was left completely dependent on him for even the means to live. For it was at Zanzibar on the first evening of my arrival that I was first informed that there was a caravan at Bagamoyo about to start for the interior with supplies for Dr. Livingstone; I then did not know whether it was an easy or a difficult thing to despatch a caravan into the interior. My surprise may be better imagined than described, when I discovered that this caravan, requiring only thirty-five men, despatched by the British Consul, had left Zanzibar on about the 1st or 2nd of November, 1870, and was still encamped at Bagamoyo on the 10th February, 1871, a period of ONE HUNDRED DAYS! "Why," I asked myself, "if a small body of thirty-five men cannot be collected within one hundred days by a British Consul, how many days must elapse before a mere private individual like myself can collect one hundred and forty men?"

On or about the 10th of February, a rumour was spread throughout the bazaars at Bagamoyo, which reached my camp, that the "Balyuz"—technically interpreted "ambassador"—was coming to visit Bagamoyo, for the purpose of despatching Livingstone's caravan. That same evening or the next morning Livingstone's caravan in a fright started for the interior with but four of the escort.

Two days afterwards H.M.S. 'Columbine,' Capt. Tucker, appeared off Bagamoyo, with Dr. Kirk, the acting British Consul and political resident, on board. The evening of the 'Columbine's' arrival off our African port, I rode up to the French mission, whither Dr. Kirk, Capt. Tucker, and his executive officer, accompanied by M. de Vienne, the French Consul, had gone, according to a hospitable invitation from Père Horner, superior of the Mission. I found them at dinner and was invited to take wine with them. The conversation turned partly upon the anticipated pleasures of a hunt which they were organizing.

At 6 A.M. the next morning Dr. Kirk, Capt. Tucker, his executive officer, Consul de Vienne, and Père Horner started for the Kingani River; later in the day I also proceeded to the Kingani with Farquhar, Shaw, and Sayd bin Sayf, to shoot hippopotami.

As we were returning to camp, in the plain of the Kingani, we met Père Horner, coming, so he said, from Kikoka, the first camp on the Unyanyembe road from Bagamoyo, whither he had gone to accompany the sportsmen.

On the following Friday evening the English Consul's party returned from the hunt. I dined with them that evening, and the subject of conversation was mainly upon their experiences in the woods beyond the Kingani. I was informed by Dr. Kirk that the officers of the 'Columbine,' with their pea-rifles, had not been able to shoot a thing. The only animals killed had been shot by himself; and, to get any sport at all, he had been obliged to proceed alone into the forest. "They know now" (referring to the officers), said Dr. Kirk, "what reliance is to be placed on Sniders when levelled against African game."

At 9 A.M. the next morning Dr. Kirk and a French padre paid me a visit at my camp. The former could only be prevailed upon to take a cup of tea, as he was going, he said, to see about Livingstone's caravan.

About 11 A.M. I heard that Dr. Kirk had gone on board the 'Columbine,' and that the children of the French Mission had also gone with a full brass-band of musicians to entertain the sailors. Between 3 and 4 P.M. the 'Columbine' departed for Zanzibar.

Bagamoyo has a most enjoyable climate. It is far preferable in every sense to that of Zanzibar. We were able to sleep in the open air, and rose refreshed and healthy each morning, to enjoy our matutinal bath in the sea; and by the time the sun had risen we were engaged in multitudinous preparations for our departure for the interior. Our days were enlivened by visits from the Arabs who were also bound for Unyanyembe by comical scenes in the camp, sometimes by court-martials held on the refractory, by a boxing-match between Farquhar and Shaw, necessitating my prudent interference when they waxed too wroth; by a hunting excursion now and then to the Kingani plain and river; by social conversation with the old Jemadar and his band of Baluches, who were never tired of warning me that the Masika was at hand, and of advising me that my best course was to hurry on before the season for travelling expired.

John Shaw would get sadly out of temper when these visits were paid by the swart magnates of Bagamoyo. Upon these occasions my first duty, following the custom of the Arabs, was to offer refreshments and coffee to my visitors, and to serve them first, before passing the tray to the white men.

I observed that Shaw seemed very indignant, and upon inquiring the cause, I was informed that I had given him great offence by having the Arabs—"niggers" as he was pleased to term them—served before he—a white man—was. Poor Shaw! ignorant as a babe of the calamities in store for him in that country to which his thoughts were now directed, what would he not have given to know that this supposed slight on his colour was the least trouble to be borne on this venturesome Expedition! He fully showed the uneducated Anglo-Saxon's inaptitude for travel and intercourse with other races.

As the days passed by I found it was necessary to separate Farquhar from Shaw. The latter proved to be a character without a grain of humor, but with a fund of vanity that was easily alarmed, and a fond ambition which soared into the empyrean with him, carrying him often beyond all bounds of human conception.

Farquhar by himself I thought would be much better off than with Shaw, who had certainly a most irritating manner to a man of Farquhar's temper and intelligence. I therefore chose him to lead the third caravan into the interior, and upon this announcement of my intentions peace was immediately restored between the contumacious belligerents.

Among the employés with the Expedition were two Hindi and two Goanese. They had conceived the idea that the African interior was an El Dorado, the ground of which was strewn over with ivory tusks, and they had clubbed together, while their imaginations were thus heated, to embark in a little enterprise of their own. Their names were Jako, Abdul Kader, Bunder Salaam, and Aranselar; Jako engaged in my service as carpenter and general help; Abdul Kader as a tailor, Bunder Salaam as cook, and Aranselar as chief butler.

But Aranselar, with an intuitive eye, foresaw that I was likely to prove a vigorous employer, and while there was yet time he devoted most of it to conceive how it were possible to withdraw from the engagement. He received permission upon asking for it to go to Zanzibar to visit his friends. Two days afterwards I was informed he had blown his right eye out, and received a medical confirmation of the fact, and note of the extent of the injury, from Dr. Christie, the physician to His Highness Seyd Burghash. His compatriots I imagined were about planning the same thing, but a peremptory command to abstain from such folly, issued after they had received their advance-pay, sufficed to check any sinister designs they may have formed.

A groom was caught stealing from the bales, one night, and the chase after him into the country until he vanished out of sight into the jungle, was one of the most agreeable diversions which occurred to wear away the interval employed in preparing for the march.

I had now despatched four caravans into the interior, and the fifth, which was to carry the boats and boxes, personal luggage, and a few cloth and bead loads, was ready to be led by myself. The following is the order of departure of the caravans.

1871. Feb. 6.—Expedition arrived at Bagamoyo.

1871. Feb. 18.—First caravan departs with twenty-four pagazis and three soldiers.

1871. Feb. 21.—Second caravan departs with twenty-eight pagazis, two chiefs, and two soldiers.

1871. Feb. 25.—Third caravan departs with twenty-two pagazis, ten donkeys, one white man, one cook, and three soldiers.

1871. March 11.—Fourth caravan departs with fifty-five pagazis, two chiefs, and three soldiers.

1871. March 21.—Fifth caravan departs with twenty-eight pagazis, twelve soldiers, two white men, one tailor, one cook, one interpreter, one gun-bearer, seventeen asses, two horses, and one dog.

Total number, inclusive of all souls, comprised in caravans connected with the "New York Herald Expedition," 192.

PORTRAIT OF BOMBAY AND MABRUKI.

CHAPTER IV.

THROUGH UKWERE, UKAMI, AND UDOE TO USEGUHHA.

From Bagamoyo to—	h.	m.	From Msuwa to—	h.	m.
Shamba Gonera . .	1	30	Kisemo	4	30
Kikoka	3	40	Mussoudi	4	20
Rosako	5	0	Mikeseh	7	0
Kingaru	6	0	Muhalleh	6	45
Imbiki.	4	30	Simbamwenni . . .	3	0
Msuwa	4	30			

Before I proceed with this chapter a brief space must be given to an apology which I tender to my readers. *Ego* is first and foremost in this book. I am obliged to exhibit him as he actually was, not as he should be; as he behaved, not as he should have behaved; as he travelled, not as he ought to have travelled. I must, for conscience' sake, report all things literally as they occurred, and to the best of my ability record the incidents and accidents which befell the Expedition. However stay-at-home, chimney-corner, and easy-chair loving people may regard the merits of this book, the greatest praise and the greatest thanks will be bestowed on it by travellers who may succeed me in East Africa; for they will at once perceive the useful lessons taught them by my haps and mishaps.

On the 21st of March, exactly seventy-three days after my arrival at Zanzibar, the fifth caravan, led by myself, left the town of Bagamoyo for our first journey westward, with "Forward!" for its *mot du guet*. As the kirangozi unrolled the American flag, and put himself at the head of the caravan, and the pagazis, animals, soldiers, and idlers were lined for the march, we bade a long farewell to the *dolce far niente* of civilised life, to the blue ocean, and to its open road to home, to the hundreds of dusky spectators who were there to celebrate our departure with repeated salvoes of musketry.

Our caravan is composed of twenty-eight pagazis, including the kirangozi, or guide; twelve soldiers under Capt. Mbarak Bombay, in charge of seventeen donkeys and their loads; Selim, my boy interpreter, in charge of the donkey and cart and its load; one cook and sub, who is also to be tailor and ready hand for all, and leads the grey horse; Shaw, once mate of a ship, now transformed into rearguard and overseer for the caravan, who is mounted on a good riding-donkey, and wearing a canoe-like topee and sea-boots; and lastly, on the splendid bay horse presented to me by Mr. Goodhue, myself, called "Bana Mkuba," the "big master," by my people—the vanguard, the reporter, the thinker, and leader of the Expedition.

The several members composing the caravan are well known to me already. They have been the subjects of study and selection, and no fault has been found with them yet; still, as it is rather premature to describe their characters, I shall confine myself at this time to simply naming the principal personages in the order and rank they hold:

1. John W. Shaw, rearguard and overseer.
2. Mbarak Bombay, captain of soldiers.
3. Uledi (Speke's valet), sergeant.
4. Mabruki (Burton's valet), tentguard.
5. Mabruki the Little . . . soldier.
6. Mabruk Saleem . . . . „
7. Zaidi . . . . . „
8. Kamna . . . . . „
9. Sarmean . . . . . „
10. Ferajji (a runaway of Speke's) . „
11. Kingaru . . . . . „
12. Ambari . . . . . „
13. Selim (boy from Jerusalem), Arab interpreter.
14. Bunder Salaam (of Malabar), cook.
15. Abdul Kader „ tailor and help.
16. Hamadi (Wangwana), kirangozi.
17. Sarboko „ . . . pagazi.
18. Jafooneh „ . . . „
19. Farjalla „ . . . „
20. Khamisi „ . . . „
21. Asmani „ . . . „
22. Chamba „ . . . „
23. Shubari „ . . . „
24. Makoriga „ . . . „
25. Khamis „ . . . „

Probably some of these people above named will acquire habits or exhibit characters very different from those I imagined them to have while *en route* to Unyanyembe. We shall be better judges of them and their points when we shall have arrived at Tabora, where a general muster will be made for inspection, and to hear the reports of the four caravans which have preceded us. Altogether the Expedition numbers on the day of departure three white men, twenty-three soldiers, four supernumeraries, four chiefs, and one hundred and fifty-three pagazis, twenty-seven donkeys, and one cart, conveying cloth, beads, and wire, boat-fixings, tents, cooking utensils and dishes, medicine, powder, small shot, musket-balls, and metallic cartridges; instruments and small necessaries, such as soap, sugar, tea, coffee, Liebig's extract of meat, pemmican, candles, &c., which make a total of 153 loads. The weapons of defence which the Expedition possesses consist of one double-barrel breech-loading gun, smooth bore; one American Winchester rifle, or "sixteen-shooter;" one Henry rifle, or "sixteen-shooter;" two Starr's breech-loaders, one Jocelyn breech-loader, one elephant rifle, carrying balls eight to the pound; two breech-loading revolvers, twenty-four muskets (flint-locks), six single-barreled pistols, one battle-axe, two swords, two daggers (Persian kummers, purchased at Shiraz by myself), one boar-spear, two American axes 4 lbs. each, twenty-four hatchets, and twenty-four butcher-knives.

The Expedition has been fitted with care; whatever it needed was not stinted; everything was provided. Nothing was done too hurriedly, yet everything was purchased, manufactured, collected, and compounded with the utmost despatch consistent with efficiency and means. Should it fail of success in its errand of rapid transit to Ujiji and back, it must simply happen from an accident which could not be controlled. So much for the *personnel* of the Expedition and its purpose, until its *point de mire* be reached.

We left Bagamoyo the attraction of all the curious, with much *éclat*, and defiled up a narrow lane shaded almost to twilight by the dense umbrage of two parallel hedges of mimosas. We were all in the highest spirits. The soldiers sang, the kirangozi lifted his voice into a loud bellowing note, and fluttered the American flag, which told all on-lookers, "Lo, a Musungu's caravan!" and my heart, I thought, palpitated much too quickly for the sober face of a leader. But I could not check it; the enthusiasm of youth still clung to me—despite my travels; my pulses bounded with the full glow of staple health; behind me were the troubles which had harassed me for over two months. With that dishonest son of a Hindi, Soor Hadji Palloo, I had said my last word; of the blatant rabble of Arabs, Banyans, and Baluches I had taken my last look; with the Jesuits of the French Mission I had exchanged farewells, and before me beamed the sun of promise as he sped towards the Occident. Loveliness glowed around me. I saw fertile fields, riant vegetation, strange trees—I heard the cry of cricket and pee-wit, and sibilant sound of many insects, all of which seemed to tell me, "At last you are started." What could I do but lift my face toward the pure-glowing sky, and cry, "God be thanked!"

The first camp, Shamba Gonera, we arrived at in 1 hour 30 minutes, equal to 3¼ miles. This first, or "little journey," was performed very well, "considering," as the Irishman says. The boy Selim upset the cart not more than three times. Zaidi, the soldier, only once let his donkey, which carried one bag of my clothes and a box of ammunition, lie in a puddle of black water. The clothes had to be re-washed; the ammunition-box, thanks to my prevision, was waterproof. Kamna perhaps knew the art of donkey-driving, but, overjoyful at the departure, had sung himself into oblivion of the difficulties with which an animal of the pure asinine breed has naturally to contend, such as not knowing the right road, and inability to resist the temptation of straying into the depths of a manioc field; and the donkey, ignorant of the custom in vogue amongst ass-drivers of flourishing sticks before an animal's nose, and misunderstanding the direction in which he was required to go, ran off at full speed along an opposite road, until his pack got unbalanced, and he was fain to come to the earth. But these incidents were trivial, of no importance, and natural to the first "little journey" in East Africa.

The soldiers' points of character leaked out just a little. Bombay turned out to be honest and trusty, but slightly disposed to be dilatory. Uledi did more talking than work; while the runaway Ferajji and the useless-handed Mabruki Burton turned out to be true men and staunch, carrying loads the sight of which would have caused the strong-limbed hamals of Stamboul to sigh.

The saddles were excellent, surpassing expectation. The strong hemp canvas bore its one hundred and fifty-pounds' burden with the strength of bull hide, and the loading and unloading of miscellaneous baggage was performed with systematic despatch. In brief, there was nothing to regret—the success of the journey proved our departure to be anything but premature.

The next three days were employed in putting the finishing touches to our preparations for the long land journey and our precautions against the Masika, which was now ominously near, and in settling accounts. The soldiers and pagazis employed the interval in visiting their female friends; but I forbear the *chronique scandaleuse.*

Shamba Gonera means Gonera's Field. Gonera is a wealthy Indian widow, well disposed towards the Wasungu (whites). She exports much cloth, beads, and wire into the far interior, and imports in return much ivory. Her house is after the model of the town houses, with long sloping roof and projecting eaves, affording a cool shade, under which the pagazis love to loiter. On its southern and eastern sides stretch the cultivated fields which supply Bagamoyo with the staple grain, matama, of East Africa; on the left grow Indian corn, and muhogo, a yam-like root of whitish color, called by some manioc; when dry, it is ground and compounded into cakes similar to army slapjacks. On the north, just behind the house, winds a black quagmire, a sinuous hollow, which in its deepest parts always contains water—the muddy home of the brake- and rush-loving "kiboko" or hippopotamus. Its banks, crowded with dwarf fan-palm, tall water-reeds, acacias, and tiger-grass, afford shelter to numerous aquatic birds, pelicans, &c. After following a course north-easterly, it conflows with the Kingani, which, at the distance of four miles from Gonera's country-house, bends eastward into the sea. To the west, after a mile of cultivation, fall and recede in succession the sea-beaches of old in lengthy parallel waves, overgrown densely with forest grass and marsh reeds. On the spines of these land-swells flourish ebony, calabash, and mango.

"Sofari—sofari leo! Pakia, pakia!"—"A journey—a journey to-day! Set out!—set out!" rang the cheery voice of the kirangozi, echoed by that of my drum-major, servant, general help and useful hand, the Arab boy Selim, on the morning of the fourth day, which was that fixed for our departure in earnest. As I hurried my men to their work, and lent a hand with energy to drop the tents, I mentally resolved that, if my caravans ahead should give me clear space, Unyanyembe should be our resting-place before three months expired. By 6 A.M. our early breakfast was despatched, and the donkeys and pagazis were defiling from Camp Gonera. Even at this early hour, and in this country place, there was quite a collection of curious natives, to whom we gave the parting "Kwaheri" with sincerity. My bay horse was found to be invaluable for the service of a quarter-master of a transport-train; for to such was I compelled to compare myself. I could stay behind until the last donkey had quitted the camp, and, by a few minutes' gallop, I could put myself at the head, leaving Shaw to bring up the rear.

The road was a mere footpath, and led over a soil, which, though sandy, was of surprising fertility, producing grain and vegetables a hundredfold, the sowing and planting of which was done in the most unskilful manner. In their fields, at heedless labor, were men and women in the scantiest costumes, compared to which Adam and Eve, in their fig-leaf apparel, must have been *en grande tenue*. Nor were they at all abashed by the devouring gaze of men who were strangers to clotheless living bodies, nor did they seem to comprehend why inordinate curiosity should be returned with more than interest. They left their work as the Wasungu drew nigh; such hybrids in solar topees, white flannels, and horse-boots were they! Had the Wasungu been desirous of studying the outlines of anatomy and physiology, what a rich field for study! We passed them with serious faces, while they laughed and giggled, and pointed their index fingers at this and that, which to them seemed so strange and bizarre.

In about half an hour we had left the tall matama and fields of water-melons, cucumbers, and manioc; and, crossing a reedy slough, were in an open forest of ebony and calabash. In its depths are deer in plentiful numbers, and at night it is visited by the hippopotami of the Kingani for the sake of its grass. In another hour we had emerged from the woods, and were looking down upon the broad valley of the Kingani, and a scene presented itself so utterly different from what my foolish imagination had drawn, that I felt quite relieved by the pleasing disappointment. Here was a valley stretching four miles east and west, and about eight miles north and south, left with the richest soil to its own wild growth of grass—which in civilisation would have been a most valuable meadow for the rearing of cattle—invested as it was by dense forests, darkening the horizon at all points of the compass, and folded in by tree-clad ridges.

At the sound of our caravan the red antelope bounded away to our right and the left, and frogs hushed their croak. The sun shone hot, and while traversing the valley we experienced a little of its real African fervor. About half-way across we came to a sluice of stagnant water which, directly in the road of the caravan, had settled down into an oozy pond. The pagazis crossed a hastily-constructed bridge, thrown up a long time ago by some Washensi Samaritans. It was an extraordinary affair; rugged tree limbs resting on very unsteady forked piles, and it had evidently tested the patience of many a loaded Mnyamwezi, as it did those porters of our caravan. Our weaker animals were unloaded, the puddle between Bagamoyo and Gonera having taught us prudence. But this did not occasion much delay, the men worked smartly under Shaw's supervision.

The turbid Kingani, famous for its hippopotami, was reached in a short time, and we began to thread the jungle along its right bank until we were halted point-blank by a narrow sluice having an immeasurable depth of black mud. The difficulty presented by this was very grave, though its breadth was barely eight feet; the donkeys and least of all the horses, could not be made to traverse two poles like our biped carriers, neither could they be driven into the sluice where they would quickly founder. The only available way of crossing it in safety was by means of a bridge, to endure in this conservative land for generations as the handiwork of the Wasungu. So we set to work, there being no help for it, with American axes—the first of their kind the strokes of which ever rang in this part of the world—to build a bridge. Be sure it was made quickly, for where the civilised white is found, a difficulty must vanish. The bridge was composed of six stout trees thrown across, over these were laid crosswise fifteen pack saddles, covered again with a thick layer of grass. All the animals crossed it safely, and then for a third time that morning the process of wading was performed. The Kingani flowed northerly here, and our course lay down its right bank. A half mile in that direction through a jungle of giant reeds and extravagant climbers brought us to the ferry, where the animals had to be again unloaded—verily, I wished when I saw its deep muddy waters that I possessed the power of Moses with his magic rod, or what would have answered my purpose as well, Aladdin's ring, for then

I could have found myself and party on the opposite side without further trouble: but not having either of these gifts I issued orders for an immediate crossing, for it was ill wishing sublime things before this most mundane prospect.

Kingwere, the canoe paddler, espying us from his brake covert on the opposite side, civilly responded to our halloes, and brought his huge hollowed tree skilfully over the whirling eddies of the river to where we stood waiting for him. While one party loaded the canoe with our goods, others got ready a long rope to fasten around the animals' necks wherewith to haul them through the river to the other bank. After seeing the work properly commenced, I sat down on a condemned canoe to amuse myself with the hippopotami by peppering their thick skulls with my No. 12 smooth-bore. The Winchester rifle (calibre 44), a present from the Hon. Edward Joy Morris—our minister at Constantinople—did no more than slightly tap them, causing about as much injury as a boy's sling; it was perfect in its accuracy of fire, for ten times in succession I struck the tops of their heads between the ears. One old fellow, with the look of a sage, was tapped close to the right ear by one of these bullets. Instead of submerging himself as others had done he coolly turned round his head as if to ask, "Why this waste of valuable cartridges on us?" The response to the mute inquiry of his sageship was an ounce-and-a-quarter bullet from the smooth-bore, which made him bellow with pain, and in a few moments he rose up again tumbling in his death agonies. As his groans were so piteous, I refrained from a useless sacrifice of life, and left the amphibious horde in peace.

A little knowledge concerning these uncouth inmates of the African waters was gained even during the few minutes we were delayed at the ferry. When undisturbed by foreign sounds, they congregate in shallow water on the sand bars, with the fore half of their bodies exposed to the warm sunshine, and are in appearance, when thus somnolently reposing, very like a herd of enormous swine. When startled by the noise of an intruder, they plunge hastily into the depths, lashing the waters into a yellowish foam, and scatter themselves below the surface, when presently the heads of a few reappear, snorting the water from their nostrils, to take a fresh breath and a cautious scrutiny around them; when thus, we see but their ears, forehead, eyes, and nostrils, and as they hastily submerge again it requires a steady wrist and a quick hand to shoot them. I have heard several comparisons made of their appearance while floating in this manner: some Arabs told me before I had seen them that they looked like dead trees carried down the river; others who in some country had seen hogs, thought they resembled them, but to my mind they look more like horses when swimming—their curved necks and pointed ears, their wide eyes, and expanded nostrils, favor greatly this comparison.

At night they seek the shore, and wander several miles over the country, luxuriating among its rank grasses. To within four miles of the town of Bagamoyo (the Kingani is eight miles distant) their wide tracks are seen. Frequently, if not disturbed by the startling human voice, they make a raid on the rich corn-stalks of the native cultivators, and a dozen of them will in a few minutes make a frightful havoc in a large field of this plant. Consequently, we were not surprised, while delayed at the ferry, to hear the owners of the corn venting loud halloes, like the rosy-cheeked farmer boys in England when scaring the crows away from the young wheat.

The caravan in the meanwhile had crossed safely—bales, baggage, donkeys, and men. I had thought to have camped on the bank, so as to amuse myself with shooting antelope, and also for the sake of procuring their meat, in order to save my goats, of which I had a number constituting my live stock of provisions; but, thanks to the awe and dread which my men entertained of the hippopotami, I was hurried on to the outpost of the Baluch garrison at Bagamoyo, a small village called Kikoka, distant four miles from the river.

The western side of the river was a considerable improvement upon the eastern. The plain, slowly heaving upwards, as smoothly as the beach of a watering-place, for the distance of a mile, until it culminated in a gentle and rounded ridge, presented none of those difficulties which troubled us on the other side. There were none of those cataclysms of mire and sloughs of black mud and over-tall grasses, none of that miasmatic jungle with its noxious emissions; it was just such a scene as one may find before an English mansion—a noble expanse of lawn and sward, with boscage sufficient to agreeably diversify it. After traversing the open plain, the road led through a grove of young ebony trees, where guinea-fowls and a hartebeest were seen; it then wound, with all the characteristic eccentric curves of a goat-path, up and down a succession of land-waves crested by the dark green foliage of the mango, and the scantier and lighter-coloured leaves of the enormous calabash. The depressions were filled with jungle of more or less density, while here and there opened glades, shadowed even during noon by thin groves of towering trees. At our approach fled in terror flocks of green pigeons, jays, ibis, turtledoves, golden pheasants, quails and moorhens, with crows and hawks, while now and then a solitary pelican winged its way to the distance.

Nor was this enlivening prospect without its pairs of antelope, and monkeys which popped away like Australian kangaroos; these latter were of good size, with round bullet heads, white breasts, and long tails tufted at the end.

We arrived at Kikoka by 5 P.M., having loaded and unloaded our pack animals four times, crossing one deep puddle, a mud sluice, and a river, and performed a journey of eleven miles.

The settlement of Kikoka is a collection of straw huts, not built after any architectural style, but after a bastard form, invented by indolent settlers from the Mrima and Zanzibar, for the purpose of excluding as much sunshine as possible from the eaves and interior. A sluice and some wells provide them with water, which though sweet is not particularly wholesome or appetizing, owing to the large quantities of decayed matter which is washed into it by the rains, and is then left to corrupt in it. A weak effort has been made to clear the neighbourhood for providing a place for cultivation, but to the dire task of wood-chopping and jungle-clearing the settlers prefer occupying an open glade, which they clear of grass, so as to be able to hoe up two or three inches of soil, into which they cast their seed, confident of return.

To induce my readers to open the map which I have prepared, and which accompanies this book, I must state that the route traversed by me was never traversed by a white man previously. If they will also take the trouble of ascertaining the route undertaken by Burton and Speke, subsequently by Speke and Grant, there will be found to be a wide difference between mine and that of my predecessors. On Burton's map, the country, for five degrees of longitude directly west of Bagamoyo, is entirely barren of towns and villages and settlements; on my map this deficiency is supplied, and thus little by little the great heart of Africa is becoming better known. Whatever may be discovered by me on this route, to white men hitherto unknown or unverified, I beg to lay claim even to that little as its discoverer. My object in tendering this request is that a certain travelled gentleman at Zanzibar, who has been residing there some years, tried to deter me from proceeding by this road, by stating that such a journey would be totally devoid of interest, as the whole country was well known. His motives were most generous, he would have wished that I should ascend the Rufiji River, so that it might become known to geographers. From my heart I wished that I could, but circumstances forbade the effort. I was sent out on an errand, not as a discoverer, and the quickest and shortest method of fulfilling my duty was to be my study. If that quickest and shortest method took me along a well-known road traversed by three gentlemen, each of whom has written what he knows of it, the blame or fault is not mine; but as it has proved that it took me along an untravelled road, through a hitherto unknown country, so much the more fortunate am I. I excluded the Rufiji route from my mind as being totally impracticable with my means, and preferred to choose the road through Ukwere, Ukami, Udoe, Useguhha, Usagara, and Northern Ugogo; the result and duration of the march proves that I could not have bettered myself, it being a direct western course.

The next day was a halt at Kikoka; the fourth caravan, consisting solely of Wanyamwezi, proving a sore obstacle to a rapid advance. Maganga, its chief, devised several methods of extorting more cloth and presents from me, he having cost already more than any three chiefs together, but his efforts were of no avail further than obtaining promises of reward if he would hurry on to Unyanyembe so that I might find my road clear.

On the 27th, the Wanyamwezi having started, we broke camp soon after at 7 A.M. The country was of the same nature as that lying between the Kingani and Kikoka—a park land, attractive and beautiful in every feature.

I rode in advance to secure meat should a chance present itself, but not the shadow of vert or venison did I see. Ever in our front—westerly—rolled the land-waves, now rising, now subsiding, parallel one with the other like a ploughed field many times magnified. Each ridge had its knot of jungle or its thin combing of heavily foliaged trees, until we arrived close to Rosako, our next halting place, when the monotonous wavure of the land underwent a change, breaking into independent hummocks clad with dense jungle. On one of these, veiled by an impenetrable jungle of thorny acacia, rested Rosako, girt round by its natural fortification, neighbouring another village to the north of it similarly protected. Between them sank a valley extremely fertile and bountiful in its productions, bisected by a small stream which serves as a drain to the valley or low hills surrounding it.

Rosako is the frontier village of Ukwere, while Kikoka is the north-western extremity of Uzaramo. We entered this village, and occupied its central portion with our tents and animals. A kitanda, or square light bedstead, without valance, fringe, or any superfluity whatever, but nevertheless quite as comfortable as with them, was brought to my tent for my use by the village chief. The animals were, immediately after being unloaded, driven out to feed, and the soldiers to a man set to work to pile the baggage up, lest the rain, which during the Masika season always appears imminent, might cause irreparable damage.

Among other experiments which I was about to try in Africa was that of a good watch-dog on any unmannerly people who would insist upon coming into my tent at untimely hours and endangering valuables. Especially did I wish to try the effect of its bark on the mighty Wgogo, who, I was told by certain Arabs, would lift the door of the tent and enter whether you wished them or not; who would chuckle at the fear they inspired, and say to you, "Hi, hi, white man, I never saw the like of you before; are there many more like you? where do you come from?" Also would they take hold of your watch and ask you with a cheerful curiosity, "What is this for, white man?" to which you of course would reply that it was to tell you the hour and minute. But the Wgogo, proud of his prowess, and more unmannerly than a brute, would answer you with a snort of insult, saying, "Oh, you fool!" or, "You be damned for a liar!" I thought of a watch-dog, and procured a good one at Bombay not only as a faithful companion, but to threaten the heels of just such gentry.

But soon after our arrival at Rosako it was found that the dog, whose name was "Omar," given him from his Turkish origin, was missing; he had strayed away from the soldiers during a rain-squall and had got lost. I despatched Mabruki Burton back to Kikoka to search for him. On the following morning, just as we were about to leave Rosako, the faithful fellow returned with the lost dog, having found him at Kikoka.

Previous to our departure on the morning after this, Maganga, chief of the fourth caravan, brought me the unhappy report that three of his pagazis were sick, and he would like to have some "dowa"—medicine. Though not a doctor, or in any way connected with the profession, I had a well-supplied medicine chest—without which no traveller in Africa could live—for just such a contingency as was now present. On visiting Maganga's sick men, I found one suffering from inflammation of the lungs, another from the mukunguru (African intermittent), and the third from a venereal affection. They all imagined themselves about to die, and called loudly for "Mama!" "Mama!" though they were all grown men. It was evident that the fourth caravan could not stir that day, so leaving word with Maganga to hurry after me as soon as possible, I issued orders for the march of my own.

Excepting in the neighbourhood of the villages which we have passed there were no traces of cultivation. The country extending between the several stations is as much a wilderness as the desert of Sahara, though it possesses a far more pleasing aspect. Indeed, had the first man at the time of the Creation gazed at his world and perceived it of the beauty which belongs to this part of Africa, he would have had no cause of complaint. In the deep thickets, set like islets amid a sea of grassy verdure, he would have found shelter from the noonday heat, and a safe retirement for himself and spouse during the awesome darkness. In the morning he could have walked forth on the sloping sward, enjoyed its freshness, and performed his ablutions in one of the many small streams flowing at its foot. His garden of fruit-trees is all that is required; the noble forests, deep and cool, are round about him, and in their shade walk as many animals as one can desire. For days and days let a man walk in any direction, north, south, east, and west, and he will behold the same scene.

Earnestly as I wished to hurry on to Unyanyembe, still a heart-felt anxiety about the arrival of my goods carried by the fourth caravan, served as a drag upon me, and before my caravan had marched nine miles my anxiety had risen to the highest pitch, and caused me to order a camp there and then. The place selected for it was near a long straggling sluice, having an abundance of water during the rainy season, draining as it does two extensive slopes. No sooner had we pitched our camp, built a boma of thorny acacia, and other tree branches, by stacking them round our camp, and driven our animals to grass, than we were made aware of the formidable number and variety of the insect tribe, which for a time was another source of anxiety, until a diligent examination of the several species dispelled it.

As it was a most interesting hunt which I instituted for the several specimens of the insects, I here append the record of it for what it is worth. My object in obtaining these specimens was to determine whether the genus *Glossina morsitans* of the naturalist, or the tsetse (sometimes called setse) of Livingstone, Vardon, Cumming, and Kirk, said to be deadly to horses, was amongst them. I wished to preserve my two horses, if possible; but Dr. Kirk had, with all the enthusiasm and dogmatism of a hobbyist, foretold the certain death of my horses from the tsetse fly, which, he said, abounded in great numbers in the country west of Bagamoyo. Up to this date I had been nearly two months in East Africa, and had as yet seen no tsetse; and my horses, instead of becoming emaciated—for such is one of the symptoms of a tsetse bite—had considerably improved in condition. There were three different species of flies which sought shelter in my tent, which, unitedly, kept up a continual chorus of sounds—one performed the basso profondo, another a tenor, and the third a weak contralto. The first emanated from a voracious and fierce fly, an inch long, having a ventral capacity for blood quite astonishing.

The terrible fears engendered by Dr. Kirk's assertion made it out to be the tsetse, so this was the one chosen for the first inspection, which was of the intensest. I permitted one to alight on my flannel pyjamas, which I wore while *en déshabillé* in camp. No sooner had he alighted than his posterior was raised, his head lowered, and his weapons, consisting of four hair-like styles, unsheathed from the proboscis-like bag which concealed them, and immediately I felt pain like that caused by a dexterous lancet-cut or the probe of a fine needle. I permitted him to gorge himself, though my patience and naturalistic interest were sorely tried. I saw his abdominal parts distend with the plentitude of the repast until it had swollen to three times its former shrunken girth, when he flew away of his own accord laden with blood. On rolling up my flannel pyjamas to see the fountain whence the fly had drawn the fluid, I discovered it to be a little above the left knee, by a crimson bead resting over the incision. After wiping the blood the wound was similar to that caused by a deep thrust of a fine needle, but all pain had vanished with the departure of the fly.

Having caught a specimen of this fly, I next proceeded to institute a comparison between it and the tsetse, as described by Dr. Livingstone on pp. 56-57, 'Missionary Travels and Researches in South Africa' (Murray's edition of 1868). The points of disagreement are many, and such as to make it entirely improbable that this fly is the true tsetse, though my men unanimously stated that its bite was fatal to horses as well as to donkeys. A descriptive abstract of the tsetse would read thus: "Not much larger than a common house-fly, nearly of the same brown colour as the honey-bee. After-part of the body has yellow bars across it. It has a peculiar buzz, and its bite is death to the horse, ox, and dog. On man the bite has no effect, neither has it on wild animals. When allowed to feed on the hand, it inserts the middle prong of three portions into which the proboscis divides, it then draws the prong out a little way, and it assumes a crimson color as the mandibles come into brisk operation; a slight itching irritation follows the bite."

The fly which I had under inspection is called mabunga by the natives. It is much larger than the common house-fly, fully a third larger than the common honey-bee, and its color more distinctly marked; its head is black, with a greenish gloss to it; the after-part of the body is marked by a white line running lengthwise from its junction with the trunk, and on each side of this white line are two other lines, one of a crimson color, the other of a light brown. As for its buzz, there is no peculiarity in it, it might be mistaken for that of a honey-bee. When caught it made desperate efforts to get away, but never attempted to bite. This fly, along with a score of others, attacked my grey horse, and bit it so sorely in the legs that they appeared as if bathed in blood. Hence, I might have been a little vengeful if, with more than the zeal of an entomologist, I caused it to disclose whatever peculiarities its biting parts possessed.

In order to bring this fly as life-like as possible before my readers, I may compare its head to a most tiny miniature of an elephant's, because it has a black proboscis and a pair of horny antennæ, which in color and curve resemble tusks. The black proboscis, however, is simply a hollow sheath, which encloses, when not in the act of biting, four reddish and sharp lancets. Under the microscope these four lancets differ in thickness, two are very thick, the third is slender, but the fourth, of an opal color and almost transparent, is exceedingly fine. This last must be the sucker when the fly is about to wound, the two horny antennæ are made to embrace the part, the lancets are unsheathed, and on the instant the incision is performed. This I consider to be the African "horse-fly."

The second fly, which sang the tenor note, more nearly resembled in size and description the tsetse. It was exceedingly nimble, and it occupied three soldiers nearly an hour to capture a specimen; and, when it was finally caught, it stung most ravenously the hand, and never ceased its efforts to attack until it was pinned through. It had three or four white marks across the after-part of its body; but the biting parts of this fly consisted of two black antennæ and an opal colored style, which folded away under the neck. When about to bite this style was shot out straight, and the antennæ embraced it closely. After death the fly lost its distinctive white marks. Only one of this species did we see at this camp.

The third fly, called "chufwa," pitched a weak altocrescendo note, was a third larger than the house fly, and had long wings. If this insect sang the feeblest note, it certainly did the most work, and inflicted the most injury. Horses and donkeys streamed with blood, and reared and kicked through the pain. So determined was it not to be driven before it obtained its fill, that it was easily despatched; but this dreadful enemy to cattle constantly increased in numbers. The three species above named are, according to natives, fatal to cattle; and this may perhaps be the reason why such a vast expanse of first-class pasture is without domestic cattle of any kind, a few goats only being kept by the villagers. This fly I subsequently found to be the "tsetse."

On the second morning, instead of proceeding, I deemed it more prudent to await the fourth caravan. Burton experimented sufficiently for me on the promised word of the Banyans of Kaole and Zanzibar, and had to wait eleven months before he received the promised articles. As I did not expect to be much over that time on my errand altogether, it would be ruin, absolute and irremediable, should I be detained at Unyanyembe so long a time by my caravan. Pending its arrival, I sought the pleasures of the chase. I was but a tyro in hunting, I confess, though I had shot a little on the plains of America and Persia, yet I considered myself a fair shot; and on game ground, and within a reasonable proximity to game, I doubted not but I could bring some to camp.

After a march of a mile through the tall grass of the open, we gained the glades between the jungles. Unsuccessful here, after ever so much prying into fine hiding-places and lurking corners, I struck a trail well traversed by small antelope and hartebeest, which we followed. It led me into a jungle, and down a water-course bisecting it; but, after following it for an hour, I lost it, and, in endeavouring to retrace it, lost my way. However, my pocket-compass stood me in good stead; and by it I steered for the open plain, in the centre of which stood the camp. But it was terribly hard work — this of plunging through an African jungle, ruinous to clothes, and trying to the cuticle. In order to travel quickly, I had donned a pair of flannel pyjamas, and my feet were encased in canvas shoes. As might be expected, before I had gone a few paces a branch of the *acacia horrida*—only one of a hundred such annoyances—caught the right leg of my pyjamas at the knee, and ripped it almost clean off; succeeding which a stumpy kolquall caught me by the shoulder, and another rip was the inevitable consequence. A few yards farther on, a prickly aloëtic plant disfigured by a wide tear the other leg of my pyjamas, and almost immediately I tripped against a convolvulus strong as ratline, and was made to measure my length on a bed of thorns. It was on all fours, like a hound on a scent, that I was compelled to travel; my solar topee getting the worse for wear every minute; my skin getting more and more wounded; my clothes at each step becoming more and more tattered. Besides these discomforts, there was a pungent, acrid plant, which, apart from its strong odorous emissions, struck me smartly on the face, leaving a burning effect similar to cayenne; and the atmosphere, pent in by the density of the jungle, was hot and stifling, and the perspiration transuded through every pore, making my flannel tatters feel as if I had been through a shower. When I had finally regained the plain and could breathe free, I mentally vowed that the penetralia of an African jungle should not be visited by me again, save under most urgent necessity.

Notwithstanding the ruthless rents in my clothes and my epidermal wounds, as I looked over the grandly undulating plain, lovely with its coat of green verdure, with its boundaries of noble woods, heavy with vernal leafage, and regarded the pretty bosky islets amid its wide expanse, I could not but award it its meed of high praise. Daily the country advanced in my estimation, for hitherto I felt that I was but obeying orders; and sickly as it might be, I was in duty bound to go on; but, for fear of the terrible fever, made more terrible by the feverish perspective created in my imagination by the embitterment of Capt. Burton's book, I vowed I would not step one foot out of my way. Shall I inform you, reader, what 'The Lake Regions of Central Africa,' and subsequently the reports of European merchants of Zanzibar, caused me to imagine the interior was like? It was that of an immense swamp, curtained round about with the fever—"a species of Yellow Jack," which was sure, if it did not kill me outright, so to weaken body and brain as to render me for the future a helpless imbecile. In this swamp, which extended over two hundred miles into the interior, sported an immense number of hippopotami, crocodiles, alligators, lizards, tortoises, and toads; and the miasma rising from this vast cataclysm of mud, corruption, and putrescence, was as thick and sorely depressing as the gloomy and suicidal fog of London. Ever in my mind in the foreground of this bitter picture were the figures of poor Burton and Speke, "the former a confirmed invalid, and the other permanently affected" in the brain by this fever. The wormwood and fever tone of Capt. Burton's book I regarded as the result of African disease. But ever since my arrival on the mainland, day by day the pall-like curtain had been clearing away, and the cheerless perspective was brightening. We had been now two months on the East African soil, and not one of my men had been sick. The Europeans had gained in flesh, and their appetites were always in prime order.

The second and third day passed without any news of Maganga. Accordingly, Shaw and Bombay were sent to hurry him up by all means. On the fourth morning Shaw and Bombay returned, followed by the procrastinating Maganga and his laggard people. Questions only elicited an excuse that his men had been too sick, and he had feared to tax their strength before they were quite equal to stand the fatigue. Moreover he suggested that as they would be compelled to stay one day more at the camp, I might push on to Kingaru and camp there, until his arrival. Acting upon which suggestion I broke camp and started for Kingaru, distant five miles.

On this march the land was more broken, and the caravan first encountered jungle, which gave considerable trouble to our cart. Pisolitic limestone cropped out in boulders and sheets, and we began to imagine ourselves approaching healthy highlands, and as if to give confirmation to the thought, to the north and north-west loomed the purple cones of Udoe, and topmost of all Dilima Peak, about 1,500 feet in height above the sea level. But soon after sinking into a bowl-like valley, green with tall corn, the road slightly deviated from north-west to west, the country still rolling before us in wavy undulations.

In one of the depressions between these lengthy land-swells stood the village of Kingaru, with surroundings significant in their aspect of ague and fever. Perhaps the clouds surcharged with rain, and the overhanging ridges and their dense forests dulled by the gloom, made the place more than usually disagreeable, but my first impressions of the sodden hollow, pent in by those dull woods with the deep gully close by containing pools of stagnant water, were by no means agreeable.

Before we could arrange our camp and set the tents up, down poured the furious harbinger of the Masika season, in torrents sufficient to damp the ardor and new-born love for East Africa I had lately manifested. However, despite rain, we worked on until our camp was finished and the property was safely stored from weather and thieves, and we could regard with resignation the raindrops beating the soil into mud of a very tenacious kind, and forming lakelets and rivers of our camp-ground.

Towards night, the scene having reached its acme of unpleasantness, the rain ceased, and the natives poured into camp from the villages in the woods with their vendibles. Foremost among these, as if in duty bound, came the village sultan—lord, chief, or head—bearing three measures of matama and half a measure of rice of which he begged, with paternal smiles, my acceptance. But under the smiling mask, bleared eyes, and wrinkled front of him was visible the soul of trickery, which was of the cunningest kind. Responding under the same mask adopted by this knavish elder, I said, "The chief of Kingaru has called me a rich sultan. If I am a rich sultan why comes not the chief with a rich present to me that he might get a rich return?" Said he, with another leer of his wrinkled visage, "Kingaru is poor, there is no matama in the village." To which I replied that since there was no matama in the village I would pay him half a shukka, or a yard of cloth, which would be exactly equivalent to his present; that if he preferred to call his small basketful a present, I should be content to call my yard of cloth a present. With which logic he was fain to be satisfied.

April 1*st.*—To-day the Expedition suffered a loss in the death of the grey Arab horse presented by Seyd Burghash, Sultan of Zanzibar. The night previous I had noticed that the horse was suffering. Bearing in mind what Dr. Kirk, acting British Consul at Zanzibar, had so frequently asserted, namely, that no horses could live in the interior of Africa because of the tsetse, I had him opened, and the stomach, which I believed to be diseased, examined. Besides much undigested matama and grass there were found twenty-five short, thick, white worms, sticking like leeches into the coating of the stomach, while the intestines were almost alive with the numbers of long white worms. I was satisfied that neither man nor beast could long exist with such a mass of corrupting life within him.

In order that the dead carcase might not taint the valley, I had it buried deep in the ground, about a score of yards from the encampment. From such a slight cause ensued a tremendous uproar from Kingaru—chief of the village—who, with his brother-chiefs of neighbouring villages, numbering in the aggregate two dozen wattled huts, had taken counsel upon the best means of mulcting the Musungu of a full doti or two of Merikani, and finally had arrived at the conviction that the act of burying a dead horse in their soil without "By your leave, sir," was a grievous and fineable fault. Affecting great indignation at the unpardonable omission, he, Kingaru, concluded to send to the Musungu four of his young men to say to him that "since you have buried your horse in my ground, it is well; let him remain there, but you must pay me two doti of Merikani." For reply the messengers were told to say to the chief that I would prefer talking the matter over with himself face to face, if he would condescend to visit me in my tent once again. As the village was but a stone's throw from our encampment, before many minutes had elapsed the wrinkled elder made his appearance at the door of my tent with about half the village behind him.

The following dialogue which took place will serve to illustrate the tempers of the people with whom I was about to have a year's trading intercourse:—

White Man.—"Are you the great chief of Kingaru?"

Kingaru.—"Huh-uh. Yes."

W. M.—"The great, great chief?"

Kingaru.—"Huh-uh. Yes."

W. M.—"How many soldiers have you?"

Kingaru.—"Why?"

W. M.—"How many fighting men have you?"

Kingaru.—"None."

W. M.—"Oh! I thought you might have a thousand men with you, by your going to fine a strong white man, who has plenty of guns and soldiers, two doti for burying a dead horse."

Kingaru (rather perplexed).—"No; I have no soldiers. I have only a few young men."

W. M.—"Why do you come and make trouble, then?"

Kingaru.—"It was not I; it was my brothers who said to me, 'Come here, come here, Kingaru, see what the white man has done! Has he not taken possession of your soil, in that he has put his horse into your ground without your permission? Come, go to him and see by what right.' Therefore have I come to ask you, who gave you permission to use my soil for a burying-ground?"

W. M. "I want no man's permission to do what is right. My horse died; had I left him to fester and stink in your valley, sickness would visit your village, your water would become unwholesome, and caravans would not stop here for trade; for they would say, 'This is an unlucky spot, let us go away.' But enough said; I understand you to say that you do not want him buried in your ground; the error I have fallen into is easily put right. This minute my soldiers shall dig him out again, and cover up the soil as it was before; and the horse shall be left where he died." (Then shouting to Bombay.) "Ho! Bombay, take soldiers with jembes to dig my horse out of the ground, drag him to where he died, and make everything ready for a march to-morrow morning."

Kingaru, his voice considerably higher, and his head moving to and fro with emotion, cries out, "Akuna, akuna, bana!"—"No, no, master! Let not the white man get angry. The horse is dead, and now lies buried; let him remain so, since he is already there, and let us be friends again."

The Sheikh of Kingaru being thus brought to his senses, we bid each other the friendly "Kwaheri," and I was left alone to ruminate over my loss. Barely half an hour had elapsed, it was 9 P.M., the camp was in a semi-doze, when I heard deep groans issuing from one of the animals. Upon inquiry as to what animal was suffering, I was surprised to hear that it was my bay horse. With a bull's-eye lantern, I visited him, and perceived that the pain was located in the stomach, but whether it was from some poisonous plant he had eaten while out grazing, or from some equine disease, I did not know. He discharged copious quantities of loose matter, but there was nothing peculiar in its color. The pain was evidently very great, for the groans were truly piteous, and his struggles very violent. I was up all night, hoping that it was but a temporary effect of some strange and noxious plant; but at 6 o'clock the next morning, after a short period of great agony, he also died; exactly fifteen hours after his companion. When the stomach was opened, it was found that death was caused by the internal rupture of a large cancer, which had affected the larger half of the coating of his stomach, and had extended an inch or two up the larynx. The contents of the stomach and intestines were deluged with the yellow viscous efflux from the cancer.

I was thus deprived of both my horses, and that within the short space of fifteen hours. With my limited knowledge of veterinary science, however strengthened by the actual and positive proofs obtained by the dissection of the two stomachs, I can scarcely dare contradict the assertion of Dr. Kirk, and state that horses can live to reach Unyanyembe, or that they can travel with ease through this part of East Africa. But should I have occasion at some future day I should not hesitate to take four horses with me, though I should certainly endeavour to ascertain previous to purchase whether they were perfectly sound and healthy, and to those travellers who cherish a good horse I would say, "Try one," and be not discouraged by my unfortunate experiences.

The 1st, 2nd, and 3rd of April passed, and nothing had we heard or seen of the ever-lagging fourth caravan. In the meanwhile the list of casualties was being augmented. Besides the loss of this precious time, through the perverseness of the chief of the other caravan, and the loss of my two horses, a pagazi carrying boat-fixtures improved the opportunity, and deserted. My interpreter, Selim, was struck down with a severe attack of ague and fever, and was soon after followed by the cook, then by the assistant cook and tailor, Abdul Kader. Finally, before the third day was over, Bombay had rheumatism, Uledi (Grant's old valet) had a swollen throat, Zaidi had the flux, Kingaru had the mukunguru; Khamisi, a pagazi, suffered from a weakness of the loins; Farjalla had a bilious fever; and before night closed Makoviga had diarrhœa. My meditated rush towards Unyanyembe, and rapid transit through the dread maritime region, seemed destined to end somewhat similarly to the rush upon Magdala which Dr. Austin, of the London "Times," so particularly urged upon Sir Robert Napier in Abyssinia. Out of a force of twenty-five men one had deserted, and ten were on the sick-list, and the presentiment that the ill-looking neighbourhood of Kingaru would prove calamitous to me, was verified.

On the 4th April, Maganga and his people appeared, after being heralded by musketry-shots and horn-blowing, the usual signs of an approaching caravan in this land. His sick men were considerably improved, but they required one more day of rest at Kingaru. In the afternoon he came to lay siege to my generosity, by giving details of Soor Hadji Palloo's heartless cheats upon him; but I informed him, that since I had left Bagamoyo, I could no longer be generous; we were now in a land where cloth was at a high premium; that I had no more cloth than I should need to furnish food for myself and men; that he and his caravan had cost me more money and trouble than any three caravans I had, as indeed was the case. With this counter-statement he was obliged to be content. But I again solved his pecuniary doubts by promising that, if he hurried his caravan on to Unyanyembe, he should have no cause of complaint.

The 5th of April saw the fourth caravan vanish for once in our front, with a fair promise that, however fast we should follow, we should not see them the hither side of Sinbamwenni.

The following morning, in order to rouse my people from the sickened torpitude they had lapsed into, I beat an exhilarating alarum on a tin pan with an iron ladle, intimating that a sofari was about to be undertaken. This had a very good effect, judging from the extraordinary alacrity with which it was responded to. Before the sun rose we started. The Kingaru villagers were out with the velocity of hawks for any rags or refuse left behind us.

The long march to Imbiki, fifteen miles, proved that our protracted stay at Kingaru had completely demoralized my soldiers and pagazis. Only a few of them had strength enough to reach Imbiki before night. The others, attending the laden donkeys, put in an appearance next morning, in a lamentable state of mind and body. Khamisi—the pagazi with the weak loins—had deserted, taking with him two goats, the property tent, and the whole of Uledi's personal wealth, consisting of his visiting dish-dasheh—a long shirt of the Arabic pattern, 10 lbs. of beads, and a few fine cloths, which Uledi, in a generous fit, had entrusted to him, while he carried the pagazi's load, 70 lbs. of Bubu beads. This defalcation was not to be overlooked, nor should Khamisi be permitted to return without an effort to apprehend him. Accordingly Uledi and Ferajji were despatched in pursuit while we rested at Imbiki, in order to give the dilapidated soldiers and animals time to recruit.

On the 8th we continued our journey, and arrived at Msuwa. This march will be remembered by our caravan as the most fatiguing of all, though the distance was but ten miles. It was one continuous jungle, except three interjacent glades of narrow limits, which gave us three breathing pauses in the dire task of jungle travelling. The odour emitted from its fell plants was so rank, so pungently acrid, and the miasma from its decayed vegetation so dense, that I expected every moment to see myself and men drop down in paroxysms of acute fever. Happily this evil was not added to that of loading and unloading the frequently falling packs. Seven soldiers to attend seventeen laden donkeys were entirely too small a number while passing through a jungle; for while the path is but a foot wide, with a wall of thorny plants and creepers bristling on each side, and projecting branches darting across it, with knots of spikey twigs stiff as spike-nails, ready to catch and hold anything above four feet in height, it is but reasonable to suppose that donkeys standing four feet high, with loads measuring across from bale to bale four feet, would come to grief. This grief was of frequent recurrence here, causing us to pause every few minutes for rearrangements. So often had this task to be performed, that the men got perfectly discouraged, and had to be spoken to sharply before they set to work. By the time I reached Msuwa there was nobody with me and the ten donkeys I drove, but Mabruk the Little, who, though generally stolid, stood to his work like a man. Bombay and Uledi were far behind, with the most jaded donkeys. Shaw was in charge of the cart, and his experiences were most bitter, as he informed me he had expended a whole vocabulary of stormy abuse known to sailors, and a new one which he had invented *ex tempore*. He did not arrive until two o'clock next morning, and was completely worn out. Truly I doubt if the most pious divine, in travelling through that long jungle under such circumstances, with such oft-recurring annoyances and Sisyphean labor, could have avoided cursing his folly for coming hither. How in this difficult march I regretted my former easy circumstances—the soft repose of my too easy chair in Madrid! The man who first said that travelling was a fool's paradise must certainly have been inspired by the experiences of a similar day to this.

Another halt was fixed at Msuwa that we and our animals might recuperate. The chief of the village, a white man in everything but color, sent me and mine the fattest broad-tailed sheep of his flock, with five measures of matama grain. The mutton was excellent, unapproachable. For his timely and needful present I gave him two doti, and amused him with an exhibition of the wonderful mechanism of the Winchester rifle, and my breechloading revolvers.

He and his people were intelligent enough to comprehend the utility of these weapons at an emergency, and illustrated in expressive pantomime the powers they possessed against numbers of people armed only with spears and bows, by extending their arms with an imaginary gun and describing a clear circle. "Verily," said they, "the Wasungu are far wiser than the Washensi. What heads they have! What wonderful things they make! Look at their tents, their guns, their time-pieces, their clothes, and that little rolling thing (the cart) which carries more than five men,—que!"

On the 10th, recovered from the excessive strain of the last march, my caravan marched out of Msuwa, accompanied by the hospitable villagers as far as their stake defence, receiving their unanimous "Kwaheris." Outside the village the march promised to be less arduous than between Imbiki and Msuwa. After crossing a beautiful little plain intersected by a dry gully or mtoni, the route led by a few cultivated fields, where the tillers greeted us with one grand unwinking stare, as if fascinated.

Soon after we met one of those sights common in this part of the world, to wit, a chained slave-gang, bound east. The slaves did not appear to be in any way down-hearted; on the contrary, they seemed imbued with the philosophic jollity of the jolly servant of Martin Chuzzlewit. Were it not for their chains, it would have been difficult to discover master from slave; the physiognomic traits were alike—the mild benignity with which we were regarded was equally visible on all faces. The chains were ponderous, they might have held elephants captive; but as the slaves carried nothing but themselves, their weight could not have been insupportable.

The jungle was scant on this march, and though in some places the packs met with accidents, they were not such as seriously to retard progress. By 10 A.M. we were in camp in the midst of an imposing view of green sward and forest domed by a cloudless sky. We had again pitched our camp in the wilderness, and, as is the custom of caravans, fired two shots to warn any Washensi having grain to sell, that we were willing to trade.

Our next halting-place was Kisemo, distant but eleven miles from Msuwa, a village situated in a populous district, having in its vicinity no less than five other villages, each fortified by stakes and thorny abattis, with as much fierce independence as if their petty lords were so many Percys and Douglases. Each topped a ridge, or a low hummock, with an assumption of defiance of the cock-on-its-own-dunghill type. Between these humble eminences and low ridges of land, wind narrow vales which are favored with the cultivation of matama and Indian corn. Behind the village flows the Ungerengeri River, an impetuous Tramontana during the Masika season, capable of overflowing its steep banks, but in the dry season it subsides into its proper status, which is that of a small stream of very clear sweet water. Its course from Kisemo is south-west, then easterly; it is the main feeder of the Kingani River.

The belles of Kisemo, of gigantic posterioral proportions, are noted for their vanity in brass wire, which is wound in spiral rings round their wrists and ancles, and the varieties of style which their hispid heads exhibit; while their poor lords, obliged to be contented with dingy torn clouts and split ears, show what wide sway Asmodeus holds over this terrestrial sphere—for it must have been an unhappy time when the hard-besieged husbands finally gave way before their hotly-pressing spouses. Besides these brassy ornaments on their extremities, and the various hair-dressing styles, the women of Kisemo frequently wear lengthy necklaces which run in rivers of colors down their black bodies.

But a more comical picture is seldom presented than that of one of these highly-dressed females with the magnificent development already noted, engaged in the homely and necessary task of grinding corn for herself and family. The grinding apparatus consists of two portions: one, a thick pole of hard wood about six feet long, answering for a pestle; the other, a capacious wooden mortar, three feet in height. Swaying with the pestle as it rises and falls the pectoral and posterioral exuberances alternate to her strokes in the very drollest rhythm; so strongly marked that I feared for the walls of the hut before which I saw the corn-pounding going on.

WOMAN GRINDING CORN.

While engaged in setting his tent, Shaw was obliged to move a small flat stone, to drive a peg into the ground. The village chief, who saw him do it, rushed up in a breathless fashion, and replaced the stone instantly, then stood on it in an impressive manner, indicative of the great importance attached to that stone and location. Bombay seeing Shaw standing in silent wonder at the act, volunteered to ask the chief what was the matter. The Sheikh solemnly answered, with a finger pointing downward, "Uganga!" Whereupon I implored him to let me see what was under the stone. With a graciousness quite affecting he complied. My curiosity was gratified with the sight of a small whittled stick, which pinned fast to the ground an insect, the cause of a miscarriage to a young female of the village.

During the afternoon, Uledi and Ferajji, who had been despatched after the truant Khamisi, returned with him and all the missing articles. Khamisi, soon after leaving the road and plunging into the jungle, where he was mentally triumphing in his booty, was met by some of the plundering Washensi, who are always on the *qui vive* for stragglers, and unceremoniously taken to their village in the woods, and bound to a tree preparatory to being killed. Khamisi said that he asked them why they tied him up, to which they answered, that they were about to kill him, because he was a Mgwana, whom they were accustomed to kill as soon as they were caught. But Uledi and Ferajji shortly after coming upon the scene, both well armed, put an end to the debates upon Khamisi's fate, by claiming him as an absconding pagazi from the Musungu's camp, as well as all the articles he possessed at the time of capture. The robbers did not dispute the claim for the pagazi, goats, tent, or any other valuable found with him, but intimated that they deserved a reward for apprehending him. The demand being considered just, a reward to the extent of two doti and a fundo or ten necklaces of beads was given.

Khamisi, for his desertion and attempted robbery, could not be pardoned without first suffering punishment. He had asked at Bagamoyo, before enlisting in my service, an advance of $5 in money, and had received it; and a load of Bubu beads, no heavier than a pagazi's load, had been given him to carry; he had, therefore, no excuse for desertion. Lest I should overstep prudence, however, in punishing him, I convened a court of eight pagazis and four soldiers to sit in judgment, and asked them to give me their decision as to what should be done. Their unanimous verdict was that he was guilty of a crime almost unknown among the Wanyamwezi pagazis, and as it was likely to give bad repute to the Wanyamwezi carriers, they therefore sentenced him to be flogged with the "Great Master's" donkey whip. I then ordered him to be bound, and considering that by his act the pagazis had suffered in name, the soldiers, in the master's estimation, as efficient guards, Shaw in being reprimanded by me for not looking better after the stragglers, I ordered that each of the pagazis and soldiers and Shaw should punish him with one blow each, which was accordingly done, to poor Khamisi's crying sorrow.

Before night arrived a small caravan of Wangwana, who brought with them a long letter from the kind-hearted American Consul at Zanzibar, as well as a file of late 'Heralds,' latest date of which was February 4. Among other gratifying intelligence found in them concerning the doings of Congress and the New York Legislature, and the revelations of startling crimes in America, was an account of President Grant's second levee, in which Jenkins described with laboured verbosity the toilets of the ladies who attended this notable reception; how a lavender ostrich plume waved among the lovely grey curls of Mrs. ——; how diamonds finished the magnificent toilet of Mrs. ——, that lady who presented such an imposing appearance; how Mrs. —— had an overskirt with ruchings of crimson satin; how Mrs. —— radiated a blaze of light from her diamonds, as she moved along in royal purple satin; and how the President, with the deep manly voice and the pair of searching grey eyes, was sacrificing himself for the sovereign people on this occasion of his second levee; and much else of the same adulatory tenor.

Looking up from this refreshing reading, I beheld my tent door crowded with the dark-skinned bodies of Kisemo's daughters, who had become lost in vain endeavours to penetrate the mystery of those long sheets of paper over which I had been bending so long. So sudden and vast was the contrast between what my friend Jenkins had been describing, and this most real sight visible to my naked eyes, that it required a strong effort of mind and memory to recall what such grandly-dressed ladies were like, to decide where lay the difference between a "blonde beauty with a mass of glittering, golden hair, with eyes which vied with the lustre of her diamonds," and one of these plump black girls of twelve or thirteen, ripening into womanhood, with a cock's-comb of woolly hair on the top of her head, with the redundant luxuriance behind veiled but by two yards of old sheeting, with 3 lbs. of brass wire ornament on each limb, and streams of beads round her neck; one out of the many who were attending *my* levee in the natural glory and beauty of nakedness. But indeed and indeed there is a vast difference between my court and that of the President, which has such an able Jenkins for its reporter!

On the 12th the caravan reached Mussoudi, on the Ungerengeri river. Happily for our patient donkeys this march was free from all the annoying troubles of the jungle. Happily for ourselves also, for we had no more the care of the packs and the anxiety about arriving at camp before night. The packs once put firmly on the backs of our good donkeys, they marched into camp—the road being excellent—without a single displacement or cause for one impatient word. If the road to Unyanyembe were all like this I should consider it as comfortable as crossing over to Staten Island for a Sunday holiday, or riding in the horse-cars to Central Park. Take away the gravelled paths, the lakes and ponds, the museums within, the trellised arbors, the kiosk, the uniformed policemen and well-dressed visitors,—in short, all particulars and evidences of the presence of ripe civilization, and Central Park thus denuded, with only its refreshing lawns, gentle hollows, and grove-clad ridges, would present, to those who could imagine the New York park in this state, a not unfaithful image of the country which opened before us soon after leaving Kisemo. This beautiful prospect, glorious in its wild nature, fragrant with its numerous flowers and variety of sweetly-smelling shrubs, among which I recognised the wild sage, the indigo plant, &c., terminated at the foot of Kira Peak and sister cones, which mark the boundaries between Udoe and Ukami, yet distant twenty miles. Those distant mountains formed a not unfit background to this magnificent picture of open plain, forest patches, and sloping lawns—there was enough of picturesqueness and sublimity in the blue mountains to render it one complete whole.

When drawing near the valley of Ungerengeri, granite knobs and protuberances of dazzling quartz showed their heads above the reddish soil. Descending the ridge where these rocks were prominent, we found ourselves in the sable loam deposit of the Ungerengeri, and in the midst of teeming fields of sugar-cane and matama, Indian corn, muhogo, and gardens of curry, egg, and cucumber plants. On the banks of the Ungerengeri flourished the banana, and overtopping it by seventy feet and more shot up the stately mparamusi, the rival in beauty of the Persian chenar and Abyssinian plane. Its trunk is straight and comely enough for the mainmast of a first-class frigate, while its expanding crown of leafage is distinguished from all others by its density and vivid greenness. There were a score of varieties of the larger kind of trees whose far-extending branches embraced across the narrow but swift river. The depressions of the valley and the immediate neighbourhood of the river were choked with young forests of tiger-grass and stiff reeds.

Mussoudi is situated on a higher elevation than the average level of the village, and consequently looks down upon its neighbours, which number a hundred and more. It is the western extremity of Ukwere. On the western bank of the Ungerengeri the territory of the Wakami commences. We had to halt one day at Mussoudi because the poverty of the people prevented us from procuring the needful amount of grain. The cause of this scantiness in such a fertile and populous valley was, that the numerous caravans which had preceded us had drawn heavily for their stores for the up-marches.

On the 14th we crossed the Ungerengeri, which here flows southerly to the southern extremity of the valley, where it bends easterly as far as Kisemo. After crossing the river here, fordable at all times and only twenty yards in breadth, we had another mile of the valley with its excessivly moist soil and rank growth of grass. It then ascended into a higher elevation, and led through a forest of mparamusi, tamarind, tamarisk, acacia, and the blooming mimosa. This ascent was continued for two hours, when we stood upon the spine of the largest ridge, where we could obtain free views of the wooded plain below and the distant ridges of Kisemo which we had but lately left. A descent of a few hundred feet terminated in a deep but dry mtoni with a sandy bed, on the other side of which we had to regain the elevation we had lost, and a similar country opened into view until we found a newly-made boma with well-built huts of grass near a pool of water, which we at once occupied as a halting-place for the night. The cart gave us considerable trouble; not even our strongest donkey, though it carried with ease on its back 196 lbs., could draw the cart with a load of only 225 lbs. weight.

Early on the morning of the 15th we broke camp and started for Mikeseh. By 8.30 A.M. we were ascending the southern face of the Kira Peak. When we had gained the height of two hundred feet above the level of the surrounding country, we were gratified with a magnificent view of a land whose soil knows no Sabbath, which, had Professor Malthus himself but seen, he had never penned that foolish book of his about legislating for the prevention of early marriages, and raved like "Adversity Hume" about over-crowded populations and certain ruin to England. If there are too many English-speaking people in any one place I have as much faith in them as the far-seeing editor of 'Noctes Ambrosianæ' had in "Brother Jonathan," and know that their stout elbows will make room somewhere, let the weal or woe of those who withstand them light where it may. There are plenty of Hengists and Horsas, Capt. John Smiths, and Pilgrim Fathers among the Anglo-Saxon race yet, and when America is filled up with their descendants, who shall say that Africa, and especially this glorious part of it, shall not be their next resting-place?

After travelling the spine of a ridge abutting against the southern slope of Kira we again descended into the little valley of Kiwrima, the first settlement we meet in Udoe, where there is always an abundant supply of water. Two miles west of Kiwrima is Mikiseh.

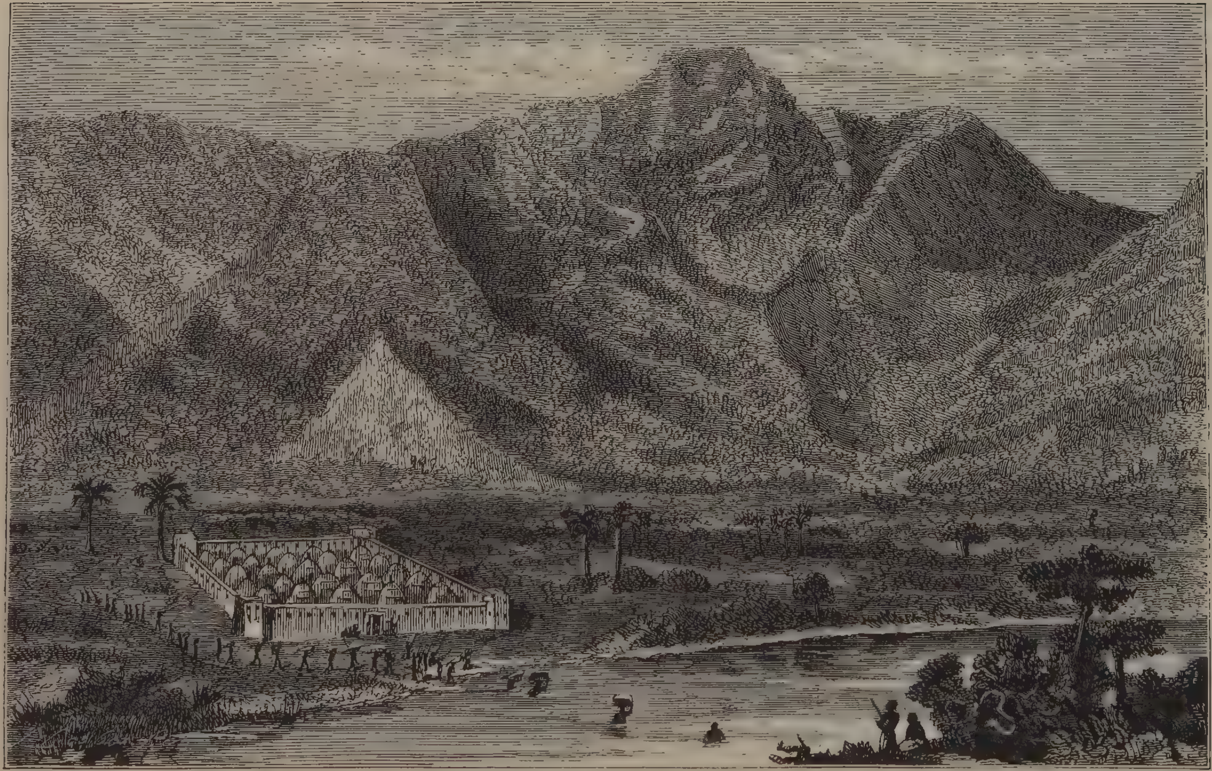
On the 16th we reached Ulagalla after a few hours' march. Ulagalla is the name of a district, or a portion of a district, lying between the mountains of Uruguru which bound it southerly, and the mountains of Udoe lying northerly and parallel with them, and but ten miles apart. The principal part of the basin thus formed is called Ulagalla.

Muhalleh is the next settlement, and here we found ourselves in the territory of the Waseguhha. On this march we were hemmed in by mountains—on our left by those of Uruguru, on our right by those of Udoe and Useguhha—a most agreeable and welcome change to us after the long miles of monotonous level we had hitherto seen. When tired of looking into the depths of the forest that still ran on either side of the road, we had but to look up to the mountain's base, to note its strange trees, its plants and vari-colored flowers, we had but to raise our heads to vary this pleasant occupation by observing the lengthy and sinuous spine of the mountains, and mentally report upon their outline, their spurs, their projections and ravines, their bulging rocks and deep clefts, and, above all, the dark green woods clothing them from summit to base. And when our attention was not required for the mundane task of regarding the donkeys' packs, or the pace of the cautious-stepping pagazis, it was gratifying to watch the vapors play about the mountain summits—to see them fold into fleecy crowns and fantastic clusters, dissolve, gather together into a pall that threatened rain, and sail away again before the brightening sun.

At Muhalleh was the fourth caravan under Maganga with three more sick men, who turned with eager eyes to myself, "the dispenser of medicine," as I approached. Salvos of small arms greeted me, and a present of rice and ears of Indian corn for roasting were awaiting my acceptance; but, as I told Maganga, I would have preferred to hear that his party were eight or ten marches ahead. At this camp, also, we met Salim bin Rashid, bound eastward, with a huge caravan carrying three hundred ivory tusks. This good Arab, besides welcoming the new-comer with a present of rice, gave me news of Livingstone. He had met the old traveller at Ujiji, had lived in the next hut to him for two weeks, described him as looking old, with long grey moustaches and beard, just recovered from severe illness, looking very wan; when fully recovered Livingstone intended to visit a country called Manyema by way of Marungu.

The valley of the Ungerengeri with Muhalleh exhibits wonderful fertility. Its crops of matama were of the tallest, and its Indian corn would rival the best crops ever seen in the Arkansas bottoms. The numerous mountain-fed streams rendered the great depth of loam very sloppy, in consequence of which several accidents occurred before we reached the camp, such as wetting cloth, mildewing tea, watering sugar, and rusting tools; but prompt attention to these necessary things saved us from considerable loss.

There was a slight difference noticed in the demeanour and bearing of the Waseguhha compared with the Wadoe, Wakami, and Wakwere heretofore seen.



SIMPA-MWENNI—THE "LION CITY."

There was none of that civility we had been until now pleased to note: their express desire to barter was accompanied with insolent hints that we ought to take their produce at their own prices. If we remonstrated they became angry; retorting fiercely, impatient of opposition, they flew into a passion, and were glib in threats. This strange conduct, so opposite to that of the calm and gentle Wakwere, may be excellently illustrated by comparing the manner of the hot-headed Greek with that of the cool and collected German. Necessity compelled us to purchase eatables of them, and, to the credit of the country and its productions be it said, their honey had the peculiar flavour of that of famed Hymettus.

Following the latitudinal valley of the Ungerengeri, within two hours on the following morning we passed close under the wall of the capital of Useguhha—Simbamwenni. The first view of the walled town at the western foot of the Uruguru mountains, with its fine valley abundantly beautiful, watered by two rivers, and several pellucid streams of water distilled by the dew and cloud-enriched heights around, was one that we did not anticipate to meet in Eastern Africa. In Mazanderan, Persia, such a scene would have answered our expectations, but here it was totally unexpected. The town may contain a population of 3,000, having about 1,000 houses; being so densely crowded perhaps 5,000 would more closely approximate. The houses in the town are eminently African, but of the best type of construction. The fortifications are on an Arabic-Persic model—combining Arab neatness with Persian plan. Through a ride of 950 miles in Persia I never met a town outside of the great cities better fortified than Simbamwenni. In Persia the fortifications were of mud, even those of Kasvin, Teheran, Ispahan, and Shiraz; those of Simbamwenni are of stone, pierced with two rows of loopholes for musketry. The area of the town is about half a square mile, its plan being quadrangular. Well-built towers of stone guard each corner; four gates, one facing each cardinal point, and set half-way between the several towers, permit ingress and egress for its inhabitants. The gates are closed with solid square doors made of African teak, and carved with the infinitesimally fine and complicated devices of the Arabs, from which I suspect that the doors were made either at Zanzibar or on the coast, and conveyed to Simbamwenni plank by plank; yet as there is much communication between Bagamoyo and Simbamwenni, it is just possible that native artisans are the authors of this ornate workmanship, as several doors chiselled and carved in the same manner, though not quite so elaborately, were visible in the largest houses. The palace of the Sultan is after the style of those on the coast, with long sloping roof, wide eaves, and veranda in front.

The Sultana is the eldest daughter of the famous Kisabengo, a name infamous throughout the neighbouring countries of Udoe, Ukami, Ukwere, Kingaru, Ukwenni, and Kiranga-Wanna, for his kidnapping propensities. Kisabengo was another Theodore on a small scale. Sprung from humble ancestry, he acquired distinction for his personal strength, his powers of harangue, and his amusing and versatile address, by which he gained great ascendency over fugitive slaves, and was chosen a leader among them. Fleeing from justice which awaited him at the hands of the Zanzibar Sultan, he arrived in Ukami, which extended at that time from Ukwere to Usagara, and here he commenced a career of conquest, the result of which was the cession by the

Wakami of an immense tract of fertile country, in the valley of the Ungerengeri. On its most desirable site, with the river flowing close under the walls, he built his capital, and called it Simbamwenni, which means "The Lion," or the strongest, City. In old age the successful robber and kidnapper changed his name of Kisabengo, which had gained such a notoriety, to Simbamwenni, after his town; and when dying, after desiring that his eldest daughter should succeed him, he bestowed the name of the town upon her also, which name of Simbamwenni the Sultana now retains and is known by.

While crossing a rapid stream, which, as I said before, flowed close to the walls, the inhabitants of Simbamwenni had a fine chance of gratifying their curiosity of seeing the "Great Musungu," whose several caravans had preceded him, and who unpardonably, because unlicensed, had spread a report of his great wealth and power. I was thus the object of a universal stare. At one time on the banks there were considerably over a thousand natives going through the several tenses and moods of the verb "to stare," or exhibiting every phase of the substantive, viz.—the stare peremptory, insolent, sly, cunning, modest, and casual. The warriors of the Sultana, holding in one hand the spear, the bow, and sheaf or musket, embraced with the other their respective friends, like so many models of Nisus and Euryalus, Theseus and Pirithous, Damon and Phintias, or Achilles and Patroclus, to whom they confidentially related their divers opinions upon my dress and color. The words "Musungu kuba" had as much charm for these people as the music of the Pied Piper had for the rats of Hamelin, since they served to draw from within the walls across their stream so large a portion of the population; and when I continued the journey to the Ungerengeri, distant four miles, I feared that the Hamelin catastrophe might have to be repeated before I could rid myself of them. But fortunately for my peace of mind, they finally proved vincible under the hot sun, and the distance we had to go to camp.

As we were obliged to overhaul the luggage, and repair saddles, as well as to doctor a few of the animals, whose backs had by this time become very sore, I determined to halt here two days. Provisions were very plentiful also at Simbamwenni, though comparatively dear.

On opening the Makanda-bound luggage, we found it to be much better than we had anticipated, considering the series of thorough drenchings it had lately stood; it being now the full height of the Masika season. But several valuable things, such as cases of ammunition and gun-boxes and tea, had suffered, all of which I ascribed to Shaw's thoughtlessness in driving the donkeys across gulleys breast deep with water, when common prudence could have told him to unload. In calling Shaw to my tent to exhibit to him the loss, my gentleman flew into a passion, and charged me with requiring from him too much work, with being too fastidious, and impossible to please, with much else of the same tenor, ending his stormy reply with stating his intention to quit my service, and to return by the first caravan we should meet. Responding, I informed him that, as he had proved himself inefficient and careless, loving his ease better than work, I would oppose no obstacle to his departure; that he might depart that moment if he pleased, but must go without his personal baggage, which I should retain in lieu of the money advanced to him at Zanzibar. This pertinent announcement of my intention restored Shaw to his proper equilibrium, which he had somewhat lost during his wrathful mood; and before many hours had elapsed he was purposely busy on my concerns, and peace was restored.

On the second day I was, for the first time, made aware that my acclimatization in the ague-breeding swamps of Arkansas was powerless against the mukunguru of East Africa. The premonitory symptoms of the African type were felt in my system at 10 A.M. First, general lassitude prevailed, with a disposition to drowsiness; secondly, came the spinal ache which, commencing from the loins, ascended the vertebræ, and extended around the ribs, until it reached the shoulders, where it settled into a weary pain; thirdly, came a chilliness over the whole body, which was quickly followed by a heavy head, swimming eyes, and throbbing temples, with vague vision, which distorted and transformed all objects of sight. This lasted until 10 P.M., and the mukunguru left me, much prostrated in strength.

The remedy, applied for three mornings in succession after the attack, was such as my experience in Arkansas had taught me was the most powerful corrective, viz., a quantum of fifteen grains of quinine, taken in three doses of five grains each, every other hour from dawn to meridian—the first dose to be taken immediately after the first effect of the purging medicine taken at bed-time the night previous. I may add that this treatment was perfectly successful in my case, and in all others which occurred in my camp. After the mukunguru had declared itself, there was no fear, with such a treatment of it, of a second attack, until at least some days afterwards.

On the third day the camp was visited by the ambassadors of Her Highness the Sultana of Simbamwenni, who came as her representatives to receive the tribute which she regards herself as powerful enough to enforce. But they, as well as Madame Simbamwenni, were informed, that as we knew it was their custom to charge owners of caravans but one tribute, and as they remembered the Musuṇgu (Farquhar) had paid already, it was not fair that I should have to pay again. The ambassadors replied with a "Ngema" (very well), and promised to carry my answer back to their mistress. Though it was by no means "very well in fact," as it will be seen in a subsequent chapter how the female Simbamwenni took advantage of an adverse fortune which befell me to pay herself. With this I close the chapter of incidents experienced during our transit across the maritime region.

PORTRAIT OF SHAW AND FARQUHAR.

CHAPTER V.

TO UGOGO.

USEGUHHA.	h.	m.
Ungerengeri River to—		
Simbo	2	0
Camp in plain	4	10
Makata River	2	30
USAGARA.		
Camp west of Makata	0	5
Camp in plain	4	30
Camp ,,	2	0
Rehenneko	3	15
Rehenneko to—		
Camp on mountain	3	30
Kiora	3	40
Camp on river	4	50
Madete	2	30
Lake Ugombo	3	0
Matamombo	6	0
Mpwapwa	7	0
Kisokweh	2	0
Chunyo	1	30

THE distance from Bagamoyo to Simbamwenni we found to be 119 miles, and was accomplished in fourteen marches. But these marches, owing to difficulties arising from the Masika season, and more especially to the lagging of the fourth caravan under Maganga, extended to twenty-nine days, thus rendering our progress very slow indeed—but a little more than four miles a-day. I infer, from what I have seen of the travelling, that had I not been encumbered by the sick Wanyamwezi porters, I could have accomplished the distance in sixteen days. For it was not the donkeys that proved recreant to my confidence; they, poor animals, carrying a weight of 150 lbs. each, arrived at Simbamwenni in first-rate order; but it was Maganga, composed of greed and laziness, and his weakly-bodied, syphilitic tribe, who were ever falling sick. In dry weather the number of marches might have been much reduced. Of the half-dozen of Arabs or so who preceded this Expedition along this route, two accomplished the entire distance in eight days. From the brief descriptions given of the country, as it day by day expanded to our view, enough may be gleaned to give readers a fair idea of it. But, casting a retrospective glance away from Simbamwenni to distant Bagamoyo on the coast, I know of one state in our country that might be very well compared to this tract in fertility, in physical contour, in its forests and bits of level prairie inclosed by tall woods, in its cones, in its ridges and grand undulations, verdure-clad—and that is Missouri. The elevation of Simbamwenni cannot be much over 1,000 feet above the level, the rise of the land having been gradual. It being the rainy season, about which so many ominous statements were doled out to us by those ignorant of the character of the country, we naturally saw it under its worst aspect; but, even in this adverse phase of it, with all its depth of black mud, its excessive dew, its dripping and chill grass, its density of rank jungle, and its crouching fevers, I look back upon the scene with pleasure, for the wealth and prosperity it promises to some civilized nation, which in some future time will come and take possession of it. A railroad from Bagamoyo to Simbamwenni might be constructed with as much ease and rapidity as, and at far less cost than the Union Pacific Railway, whose rapid strides day by day towards completion the world heard of and admired. A residence in this part of Africa, after a thorough system of drainage had been carried out, would not be attended with any more discomfort than generally follows upon the occupation of new land. The temperature at this season during the day never exceeded 85° Fahrenheit. The nights were pleasant—too cold without a pair of blankets for covering; and, as far as Simbamwenni, they were without that pest which is so dreadful on the Nebraska and Kansas prairies, the mosquito. The only annoyances I know of that would tell hard on the settler is the determined ferocity of the mabungu, or horse-fly, the chufwa, &c., already described, which, until the dense forests and jungles were cleared, would be certain to render the keeping of domestic cattle unremunerative.

Contrary to expectation the Expedition was not able to start at the end of two days; the third and the fourth days were passed miserably enough in the desponding valley of Ungerengeri. This river, small as it is in the dry seasons, becomes of considerable volume and power during the Masika, as we experienced to our sorrow. It serves as a drain to a score of peaks and two long ranges of mountains; winding along their base, it is the recipient of the cascades seen flashing during the few intervals of sunlight, of all the nullahs and ravines which render the lengthy frontage of the mountain slopes so rugged and irregular, until it glides into the valley of Simbamwenni a formidable body of water, opposing a serious obstacle to caravans without means to build bridges; added to which was an incessant downfall of rain—such a rain as shuts people in-doors and renders them miserable and unamiable—a real London rain—an eternal drizzle accompanied with mist and fog. When the sun shone it appeared but a pale image of itself, and old pagazis, wise in their traditions as old whaling captains, shook their heads ominously at the dull spectre, and declared it was doubtful if the rain would cease for three weeks yet. The site of the caravan camp on the hither side of the Ungerengeri was a hot-bed of malaria, unpleasant to witness—an abomination to memory. The filth of generations of pagazis had gathered innumerable hosts of creeping things. Armies of black, white, and red ants infest the stricken soil; centipedes, like worms, of every hue, clamber over shrubs and plants; hanging to the undergrowth are the honey-combed nests of yellow-headed wasps with stings as harmful as scorpions; enormous beetles, as large as full-grown mice, roll dunghills over the ground; of all sorts, shapes, sizes, and hues are the myriad-fold vermin with which the ground teems; in short, the richest entomological collection could not vie in variety and numbers with the species which the four walls of my tent enclosed from morning until night.

On the fifth morning, or the 23rd April, the rain gave us a few hours' respite, during which we managed to wade through the Stygian quagmire reeking with noisomeness to the inundated river-bank. The soldiers commenced at 5 A.M. to convey the baggage across from bank to bank over a bridge which was the most rustic of the rustic kind. Only an ignorant African would have been satisfied with its small utility as a means to cross a deep and rapid body of water. Even for light-footed Wanyamwezi pagazis it was anything but comfortable to traverse. Only a professional tight-rope performer could have carried a load across with ease. To travel over an African bridge requires, first, a long leap from land to the limb of a tree (which may or may not be covered by water), followed by a long jump ashore. With 70 lbs. weight on his back, the carrier finds it difficult enough. Sometimes he is assisted by ropes extemporized from the long convolvuli which hang from almost every tree, but not always, these being deemed superfluities by the Washensi.

Fortunately the baggage was transferred without a single accident, and though the torrent was strong, the donkeys were dragged through the flood by vigorous efforts and much objurgation without a casualty. This performance of crossing the Ungerengeri occupied fully five hours, though energy, abuse, and fury enough were expended for an army.

Reloading and wringing our clothes dry, we set out from the horrible neighbourhood of the river, with its reek and filth, in a northerly direction, following a road which led up to easy and level ground. Two obtruding hills were thus avoided on our left, and after passing them we had shut out the view of the hateful valley.

I always found myself more comfortable and light-hearted while travelling than when chafing and fretting in camp at delays which no effort could avoid, and consequently I fear that some things, while on a march, may be tinted somewhat stronger than their appearance or merit may properly warrant. But I thought that the view opening before us was much more agreeable than the valley of Simbamwenni with all its indescribable fertility. It was a series of glades opening one after another between forest clumps of young trees, hemmed in distantly by isolated peaks and scattered mountains. Now and again, as we crested low eminences we caught sight of the blue Usagara mountains, bounding the horizon westerly and northerly, and looked down upon a vast expanse of plain which lay between.

At the foot of the lengthy slope, well-watered by bubbling springs and mountain rills, we found a comfortable khambi with well-made huts, which the natives call Simbo. It lies just two hours or five miles north-west of the Ungerengeri crossing. The ground is rocky, composed principally of quartzose detritus swept down by the constant streams. In the neighbourhood of these grow bamboo, the thickest of which was about two and a half inches in diameter; the "myombo," a very shapely tree, with a clean trunk like an ash, the "imbite," with large, fleshy leaves like the "mtamba," sycamore, plum-tree, the "ugaza," or tamarisk, and the "mgungu," a tree containing several wide branches with small leaves clustered together in a clump, and the silk-cotton tree.

Though there are no villages or settlements in view of Simbo Khambi, there are several clustered within the mountain folds, inhabited by Waseguhha somewhat prone to dishonest acts and murder.

On the morning of the 24th, as we were about to leave Simbo, an accident occurred which was the cause of much anxiety to me for many days. Bunder Salaam, a native of Malabar, employed as my cook, was caught for the fifth time pilfering the rations of my mess. His confederate and bosom-friend Abdul Kader, sub-cook, tailor, and supernumerary, and Selim the Arab boy, were the informers and witnesses, and, accordingly, after an impartial examination and forgiveness for the fourth time, Shaw was ordered to administer to him one dozen lashes. The flogging was given to him over his clothes, and consequently was not very severe, and but reasonably adequate to the offence; but the severest measure was his expulsion from camp, he and his donkey and kit, with the declaration that I would bear with no such incorrigible thief. I did not mean that he should be really driven away, and put at the mercy of every greedy Mshensi he should meet, but I thought that a good scare would have a good effect in amending his evil propensities. But the cook took it in good earnest, and as soon as his hands were released he rushed out from camp towards the mountains without regarding hat, donkey, or property. Bombay and Abdul Kader used their lungs in vain to recall the fugitive. Bunder Salaam would not return, but, thinking that he might possibly do so, his donkey, with his property, was tied to a tree near the camp, while we proceeded on our march.

The long broad plain visible from the eminences crossed between the Ungerengeri and Simbo was now before us, and became known to sorrowful memory subsequently, as the Makata Valley. The initial march was from Simbo, its terminus at Rehenneko, at the base of the Usagara mountains, six marches distant. The valley commences with broad undulations, covered with young forests of bamboo, which grow thickly along the streams, the dwarf fan-palm, the stately Palmyra, and the mgungu. These undulations soon become broken by gulleys containing water, nourishing dense crops of cane reeds and broad-bladed glass, and, emerging from this district, wide savannahs covered with tall grass open into view, with an isolated tree here and there agreeably breaking the monotony of the scene. The Makata is a wilderness containing but one village of the Waseguhha throughout its broad expanse. Venison, consequently, abounds within the forest clumps, and the kudu, hartebeest, antelope, and zebra may be seen at early dawn emerging into the open savannahs to feed. At night, the cyn-hyæna prowls about with its hideous clamour seeking for sleeping prey, man or beast.

The slushy mire of the savannahs rendered marching a work of great difficulty; its tenacious hold of the feet told terribly on men and animals. A ten-mile march required ten hours, we were therefore compelled to camp in the middle of this wilderness, and construct a new khambi, a measure which was afterwards adopted by half a dozen caravans.

The cart did not arrive until nearly midnight, and with it, besides three or four broken-down pagazis, came Bombay with the dolorous tale, that having put his load—consisting of the property tent, one large American axe, his two uniform coats, his shirts, beads and cloth, powder, pistol and hatchet—on the ground, to go and assist the cart out of a quagmire, he had returned to the place where he had left it and could not find it, that he believed that some thieving Washensi, who always lurk in the rear of caravans to pick up stragglers, had decamped with it. Which dismal tale told me at black midnight was not received at all graciously, but rather with most wrathful words, all of which the penitent captain received as his proper due. Working myself into a fury, I enumerated his sins to him: he had lost a goat at Muhalleh, he had permitted Khamisi to desert with valuable property at Imbiki; he had frequently shown culpable negligence in not looking after the donkeys, permitting them to be tied up at night without seeing that they had water, and in the mornings, when about to march, he preferred to sleep until 7 o'clock, rather than wake up early and saddle the donkeys, that we might start at 6 o'clock; he had shown of late great love for the fire, cowering like a bloodless man before it, torpid and apathetic; he had now lost the property-tent in the middle of the Masika season, by which carelessness the cloth bales would rot and become valueless; he had lost the axe which I should want at Ujiji to construct my boat; he had lost a pistol and hatchet, and a flaskful of the best powder; and, finally, had come to camp without the cook, when he well knew that I never meant that the poor fellow should be driven out by himself to be murdered. Considering all these things, how utterly incompetent he was to be captain, I would degrade him from his office and appoint Mabruki Burton instead. Uledi, also (Grant's valet), following the example of Bombay, instead of being second captain, should give no orders to any soldiers in future, but should himself obey those given by Mabruki—the said Mabruki being worth a dozen Bombays, and two dozen Uledis; and so he was dismissed with orders to return at daylight to find the tent, axe, pistol, powder, and hatchet.

The next morning the caravan, thoroughly fatigued with the last day's exertions, was obliged to halt. Bombay was despatched after the lost goods; Kingaru, Mabruki the Great, and Mabruki the Little were despatched as far as Simbamwenni after the missing cook, and on their return with him were to bring back three doti-worth of grain, on which we were to subsist in the wilderness.

Three days passed away and we were still at camp, awaiting, with what patience we possessed, the return of the soldiers sent after the foolish Hindi. In the meantime provisions ran very low, no game could be procured, the birds were so wild. Two days' shooting procured but two potfulls of birds, consisting of grouse, quail, and pigeons. Bombay returned unsuccessfully from his search after the missing property, and suffered deep disgrace.

On the fourth day I despatched Shaw with two more soldiers, to see what had become of Kingaru and the two Mabrukis. Towards night he returned completely prostrated, with a violent attack of the mukunguru, or ague; but bringing the missing soldiers, who were thus left to report for themselves.

The summary of their report amounts to this:—On leaving our camp they had marched quickly to Simbo, which place they reached by 10 A.M. After searching the neighbourhood of our late khambi at that place, for traces of Bunder Salaam, or of his donkey and property, and finding none, they decided to proceed straight to the Ungerengeri bridge, and make inquiries of its proprietors concerning the passengers who had crossed since the departure of the Musungu. At the bridge they heard that a white donkey, such as had been seen with the Musungu, crossed the river towards Simbamwenni; but no Hindi in Kisungu clothes had been seen. My three dusky detectives were spurred to quicker motion by this intelligence, believing without a doubt that the cook had been murdered by those Washensi, who were seen driving his donkey, with all the cook's property on its back. At Simbamwenni they arrived in short time, and to the wondering warriors at its western gate, they breathlessly imparted the intelligence that two Washensi, who must have passed their town driving a white donkey, had murdered a man in Kisungu clothes, belonging to the Musungu. The men of Simbamwenni conducted my messengers to the Sultana, to whom they told their story. The Sultana demanded of the watchmen of the towers if they had seen the two Washensi with the white donkey. The watchmen answered in the affirmative; upon which she at once despatched twenty of her musketeers in pursuit to Muhalleh, who returned before night, bringing with them the two Washensi, and the donkey with the cook's entire kit. The Sultana, who is evidently possessed of her father's energy, with all his lust for wealth, had my messengers, the two Washensi, the cook's donkey and property, at once brought before her. The two Washensi were questioned as to how they became possessed of the donkey, and such a store of Kisungu clothes, cloth, and beads; to which they answered that they had found the donkey tied to a tree, with the property on the ground close to it; that seeing no owner or claimant anywhere in the neighbourhood, they thought they had a right to it, and accordingly had taken it with them. My soldiers were then asked if they recognized the donkey and property, to which question they unhesitatingly made answer that they did. They further informed Her Highness that they were not only sent after the donkey and property, but also after the owner, who had deserted their master's service; they would like to know from the Washensi what they had done with him. Her Highness was also anxious to know what the Washensi had done with the Hindi, and accordingly, in order to elicit the fact, she charged them with murdering him; and informed them, she but wished to know what they had done with the body. The Washensi declared most earnestly that they had spoken the truth, that they had never seen any such man as described; and if the

Sultana desired it they would swear to such a statement. Her Highness did not wish them to swear to what she believed in her heart to be a lie; but she would chain them, and send them in charge of a caravan to Zanzibar to Seyd Burghash, who would know what to do with them. Then turning to my soldiers, she demanded to know why the Musungu had not paid the tribute for which she had sent her chiefs. The soldiers could not answer, knowing nothing of such concerns of their master. The heiress of Kisabengo, true to the character of her robber sire, then informed my trembling men, that as the Musungu had not paid the tribute, she would now take it; their guns should be taken from them, together with that of the cook—the cloth and beads found on the donkey she would also take, the Hindi's personal clothes her chiefs should retain; while they themselves should be chained until the Musungu himself should return to take them by force. And as she threatened, so was it done. For sixteen hours my soldiers were in chains in the market-place, exposed to the taunts of the servile populace. It chanced the next day, however, that Sheikh Thani, whom I had met at Kingaru, and had since passed by five days, had arrived at Simbamwenni, and proceeding to the town to purchase provisions for the crossing of the Makata wilderness, saw my men in chains, and at once recognized them as being in my employ. After hearing their story, the good-hearted Sheikh sought the presence of the Sultana, and informed her that she was doing very wrong—a wrong that could terminate only in blood. "The Musungu is strong," he said, "very strong; he has got two guns which shoot forty times without stopping, carrying bullets half an hour's distance; he has got several guns which carry bullets that burst, and tear a man in pieces. He could go to the top of that mountain, and could kill every man, woman, and child in the town, before one of your soldiers could reach the top. The road will then be stopped, Seyd Burghash will march against your country, the Wadoe and Wakami will come and take revenge on what is left; and the place that your father made so strong will know the Waseguhha no more. Set free the Musungu's soldiers; give them their food, and grain for the Musungu; return the guns to the men and let them go; for the white man may even now be on his way here."

The exaggerated report of my power and dread picture sketched by the Arab Sheikh produced good effect, inasmuch as Kingaru and the Mabrukis were at once released from durance, furnished with food sufficient to last our caravan four days, and one gun, with its accoutrements and stock of bullets and powder, was returned, as well as the cook's donkey, with a pair of spectacles, a book in Malabar print, and an old hat which belonged to one whom we all now believed to be dead. The Sheikh took charge of the soldiers as far as Simbo; and it was in his camp, partaking largely of rice and ghee, that Shaw found them, and the same bountiful hospitality was extended to him and his companions.

I heard this long story in much astonishment, with my bosom surging with the various and conflicting emotions it evoked, it was so utterly different in its entirety from what I had anticipated. First, I believed the cook would be found, and had not the least idea that any dire fate had befallen him; then there were keen regrets that I had punished him, and mental vows that, whatever member of my caravan robbed me of any valuable, I would not drive him out to perish at the hands of such ruthless assassins. Secondly, there was much astonishment at the conduct of the Amazon Simbamwenni, for it was contrary to custom that she should demand two tributes from one owner; and had it not been the custom, the four days I encamped on the Ungerengeri allowed sufficient time to rectify any error I may have committed by refusal to render tribute; and I surely would not have imperilled the safety of my caravan had her ambassadors returned to reiterate the demand. And this feeling was succeeded by hot indignation at the base robbery of my guns, which might have prompted me to retaliate on the suburbs of the town had I been nearer to Simbamwenni; but the delay of four days, which the search after the cook had occasioned, cooled my ire to such an extent, that I began to feel thankful that my ill luck was no worse. Thirdly, there was much amusement at the well-intentioned exaggerations of Sheikh Thani, and the woeful tale of the three soldiers. That night I wrote a full account of what transpired, to be despatched to the American Consul by the first caravan bound eastward, so that Seyd Burghash might know both sides of the story which the unaccountable disappearance of the cook had created.

With most thankful hearts did we quit our camp, where so much anxiety of mind and fretfulness had been suffered, not heeding a furious rain, which, after drenching us all night, might have somewhat damped our ardor for the march under other circumstances. The road for the first mile led over reddish ground, and was drained by gentle slopes falling east and west; but, leaving the cover of the friendly woods, on whose eastern margin we had been delayed so long, we

DISCOMFORTS OF AFRICAN TRAVEL.—THE MAKATA SWAMP.

emerged into one of the savannahs, whose soil during the rains is as soft as slush and tenacious as thick mortar, where we were all threatened with the fate of the famous Arkansas traveller, who had sunk so low in one of the many quagmires in Arkansas county, that nothing but his tall stove-pipe hat was left visible.

Shaw was sick, and the whole duty of driving the foundering caravan devolved upon myself. The Wanyamwezi donkeys stuck in the mire as if they were rooted to it. As fast as one was flogged from his stubborn position, prone to the depths fell another, giving me a Sisyphean labour, which was maddening under pelting rain, assisted by such men as Bombay and Uledi, who could not for a whole skin's sake stomach the storm and mire. Two hours of such a task enabled me to drag my caravan over a savannah one mile and a half broad; and barely had I finished congratulating myself over my success before I was halted by a deep ditch, which, filled with rain-water from the inundated savannahs, had become a considerable stream, breast-deep, flowing swiftly into the Makata. Donkeys had to be unloaded, led through a torrent, and loaded again on the other bank—an operation which consumed a full hour.

Presently, after straggling through a wood clump, barring our progress was another stream, swollen into a river. The bridge being swept away, we were obliged to swim and float our baggage over, which delayed us two hours more. Leaving this second river-bank, we splashed, waded, occasionally half-swimming, and reeled through mire, water-dripping grass and matama stalks, along the left bank of the Makata proper, until farther progress was effectually prevented for that day by a deep bend of the river, which we should be obliged to cross the next day.

Though but six miles were traversed during that miserable day, the march occupied ten hours.

Half dead with fatigue, I yet could feel thankful that it was not accompanied by fever, which it seemed a miracle to avoid; for if ever a district was cursed with the ague, the Makata wilderness ranks foremost of those afflicted. Surely the sight of the dripping woods enveloped in opaque mist, of the inundated country with lengthy swathes of tiger-grass laid low by the turbid flood, of mounds of decaying trees and canes, of the swollen river and the weeping sky, was enough to engender the mukunguru! The well-used khambi, and the heaps of filth surrounding it, were enough to create a cholera!

The Makata, a river whose breadth during the dry season is but forty feet, in the Masika season assumes the breadth, depth, and force of an important river. Should it happen to be an unusually rainy season, it inundates the great plain which stretches on either side, and converts it into a great lake. It is the main feeder of the Wami river, which empties into the sea between the ports of Saadani and Whnide. About ten miles north-east of the Makata crossing, the Great Makata, the Little Makata, a nameless creek, and the Rudewa river unite; and the river thus formed becomes known as the Wami. Throughout Usagara the Wami is known as the Mukondokwa. Three of these streams take their rise from the crescent-like Usagara range, which bounds the Makata plain south and south-westerly; while the Rudewa rises in the northern horn of the same range.

So swift was the flow of the Makata, and so much did its unsteady bridge, half buried in the water, imperil the safety of the property, that its transfer from bank to bank occupied fully five hours. No sooner had we landed every article on the other side, undamaged by the water, than the rain poured down in torrents that drenched them all, as if they had been dragged through the river. To proceed through the swamp which an hour's rain had formed was utterly out of the question. We were accordingly compelled to camp in a place where every hour furnished its quota of annoyance. One of the Wangwana soldiers engaged at Bagamoyo, named Kingaru, improved an opportunity to desert with another Mgwana's kit. My two detectives, Uledi (Grant's valet), and Sarmean, were immediately despatched in pursuit, both being armed with American breech-loaders. They went about their task with an adroitness and celerity which augured well for their success. In an hour they returned with the runaway, having found him hidden in the house of a Mseguhha chief called Kigondo, who lived about a mile from the eastern bank of the river, and who had accompanied Uledi and Sarmean to receive his reward, and render an account of the incident.

Kigondo said, when he had been seated, "I saw this man carrying a bundle, and running hard, by which I knew that he was deserting you. We (my wife and I) were sitting in our little watch-hut watching our corn; and, as the road runs close by, this man was obliged to come close to us. We called to him when he was near, saying, 'Master, where are you going so fast? Are you deserting the Musungu, for we know you belong to him, since you bought from us yesterday two doti worth of meat?' 'Yes,' said he, 'I am running away; I want to get to Simbamwenni. If you will take me there, I will give you a doti.' We said to him then, 'Come into our house, and we will talk it over quietly.' When he was in our house in an inner room, we locked him up, and went out again to the watch; but leaving word with the women to look out for him. We knew that, if you wanted him, you would send askari (soldiers) after him. We had but lit our pipes when we saw two men armed with short guns, and having no loads, coming along the road, looking now and then on the ground, as if they were looking at footmarks. We knew them to be the men we were expecting; so we hailed them, and said, 'Masters, what are ye looking for?' They said, 'We are looking for a man who has deserted our master. Here are his footsteps. If you have been long in your hut you must have seen him. Can you tell us where he is?' We said, 'Yes; he is in our house. If you will come with us, we will give him up to you; but your master must give us something for catching him.'"

As Kigondo had promised to deliver Kingaru up, there remained nothing further to do for Uledi and Sarmean but to take charge of their prisoner, and bring him and his captors to my camp on the western bank of the Makata. Kingaru received two dozen lashes, and was chained; his captor a doti, besides five khete of red coral beads for his wife.

That down-pour of rain which visited us the day we crossed the Makata proved the last of the Masika season. As the first rainfall which we had experienced occurred on the 23rd March, and the last on the 30th April, its duration was thirty-nine days. The seers of Bagamoyo had delivered their vaticinations concerning this same Masika with solemnity. "For forty days," said they, "rain would fall incessantly;" whereas we had but experienced eighteen days' rain. Nevertheless, we were glad that it was over, for we were tired of stopping day after day to dry the bales and grease the tools and ironware, and of seeing all things of cloth and leather rot visibly before our eyes.

The 1st of May found us struggling through the mire and water of the Makata with a caravan bodily sick, from the exertion and fatigue of crossing so many rivers and wading through marshes. Shaw was still suffering from his first mukunguru, exhibiting himself under a new phase—a phase none of the pleasantest. Besides delivering himself of certain desires not at all complimentary to the Expedition within nervous hearing, he seemed to assume by degrees the character of a chronic hypochondriac, which, at all times an unlovely character, is positively hateful to the mtongi of an African expedition battling with swamps and rain, with a sickened caravan; Zaidi, a soldier, was critically ill with the small-pox; the kichuma-chuma, "little irons," had hold of Bombay across the chest, rendering him the most useless of the unserviceables; Mabruk Saleem, a youth of lusty frame, following the example of Bombay, laid himself down on the marshy ground, professing, while imitating a man who vomits, his total inability to breast the Makata swamp, but a plaited thong vigorously laid across his naked shoulders expurged the seeming nausea from the stomach; Abdul Kader, the Hindi tailor and adventurer—the weakliest of mortal bodies—was ever ailing for lack of "force," as he expressed it in French, i.e. "strength," ever indisposed to work, shiftless, mock-sick, but ever hungry. "Oh! God," was the cry of my tired soul, "were all the men of my Expedition like this man I should be compelled to return, but not before taking summary vengeance upon the whole of them." The virtue of a good whip was well tested by me on this day, and Abdul Kader (and may he carry the tale to all his kith, kin and race), one may make sure, will never accompany a white man again to Africa. Solomon was wise perhaps from inspiration, perhaps from observation; I was becoming wise by experience, and I was compelled to observe that when mud and wet sapped the physical energy of the lazily-inclined, a dog-whip became their backs, restoring them to a sound—sometimes to an extravagant activity.

For thirty miles from our camp was the Makata plain, an extensive swamp. The water was on an average one foot in depth; in some places we plunged into holes three, four, and even five feet deep. Plash, splash, plash, splash, were the only sounds we heard from the commencement of the march until we found the bomas occupying the only dry spots along the line of march. This kind of work continued for two days, until we came in sight of the Rudewa river, another powerful stream with banks brimful of rushing rain-water. Crossing a branch of the Rudewa, and emerging from the dank reedy grass crowding the western bank, the view consisted of an immense sheet of water topped by clumps of grass tufts and foliage of thinly scattered trees, bounded ten or twelve miles off by the eastern front of the Usagara mountain range. The *acme* of discomfort and vexation was realised on the five-mile march from the Rudewa branch. As myself and the Wangwana appeared with the loaded donkeys, the pagazis were observed huddled on a mound. When asked if the mound was the camp, they replied "No." "Why, then, do you stop here?"—

"Ugh! water plenty!!" One drew a line across his loins to indicate the depth of water before us, another drew a line across his chest, another across his throat, another held his hand over his head, by which he meant that we should have to swim. Swim five miles through a reedy marsh! It was impossible; it was also impossible that such varied accounts could all be correct. Without hesitation, therefore, I ordered the Wangwana to proceed with the animals. After three hours of splashing through four feet of water we reached dry land, and had traversed the swamp of Makata. But not without the swamp with its horrors having left a durable impression upon our minds; no one was disposed to forget its fatigues, nor the nausea of travel which it almost engendered. Subsequently, we had to remember its passage still more vividly, and to regret that we had undertaken the journey during the Masika season, when the animals died from this date by twos and threes, almost every day, until but five sickly worn-out beasts remained; when the Wangwana, soldiers, and pagazis sickened of diseases innumerable; when I myself was finally compelled to lie a-bed with an attack of acute dysentery which brought me to the verge of the grave. I suffered more, perhaps, than I might have done had I taken the proper medicine, but my over-confidence in that compound, called "Collis Brown's Chlorodyne," delayed the cure which ultimately resulted from a judicious use of Dover's powder. In no one single case of diarrhœa or acute dysentery had this "Chlorodyne," about which so much has been said and written, any effect of lessening the attack whatever, though I used three bottles. To the dysentery contracted during the transit of the Makata swamp, only two fell victims, and those were a pagazi and my poor little dog "Omar," my companion from India.

The only tree of any prominence in the Makata valley was the Palmyra palm (*Borassus flabelliformis*), and this grew in some places in numbers sufficient to be called a grove; the fruit was not ripe while we passed, otherwise we might have enjoyed it as a novelty. The other vegetation consisted of the several species of thorn bush, and the graceful parachute-topped and ever-green mimosa.

The 4th of May we were ascending a gentle slope towards the important village of Rehenneko, the first village near to which we encamped in Usagara. It lay at the foot of the mountain, and its plenitude and mountain air promised us comfort and health. It was a square, compact village, surrounded by a thick wall of mud, enclosing cone-topped huts, roofed with bamboo and holcus-stalks; and contained a population of about a thousand souls. It has several wealthy and populous neighbours, whose inhabitants are independent enough in their manner, but not unpleasantly so. The streams are of the purest water, fresh, and pellucid as crystal, bubbling over round pebbles and clean gravel, with a music delightful to hear to the traveller in search of such a sweetly potable element.

The bamboo grows to serviceable size in the neighbourhood of Rehenneko, strong enough for tent and banghy poles; and in numbers sufficient to supply an army. The mountain slopes are densely wooded with trees that might supply very good timber for building purposes.

We rested four days at this pleasant spot, to recruit ourselves, and to allow the sick and feeble time to recover a little before testing their ability in the ascent of the Usagara mountains.

The 8th of May saw us with our terribly jaded men and animals winding up the steep slopes of the first line of hills; gaining the summit of which we obtained a view remarkably grand, which exhibited as in a master picture the broad valley of the Makata, with its swift streams like so many cords of silver, as the sunshine played on the unshadowed reaches of water, with its thousands of graceful palms adding not a little to the charm of the scene, with the great wall of the Uruguru and Uswapanga mountains dimly blue but sublime in their loftiness and immensity—forming a fit background to such an extensive far-embracing prospect.

Turning our faces west, we found ourselves in a mountain world, fold rising above fold, peak behind peak, cone jostling cone; away to the north, to the west, to the south, the mountain tops rolled like so many vitrified waves; not one adust or arid spot was visible in all this scene. The diorama had no sudden changes or striking contrasts, for a universal forest of green trees clothed every peak, cone, and summit.

To the men this first day's march through the mountain region of Usagara was an agreeable interlude after the successive journey over the flats and heavy undulations of the maritime region, but to the loaded and enfeebled animals it was most trying. We were minus two by the time we had arrived at our camp, but seven miles from Rehenneko, our first instalment of the debt we owed to Makata. Water, sweet and clear, was abundant in the deep hollows of the mountains, flowing sometimes over beds of solid granite, sometimes over a rich red sandstone, whose soft substance was soon penetrated by the aqueous element, and whose particles were swept away constantly to enrich the valley below; and in other ravines it dashed, and roared miniature thunder, as it leapt over granite boulders and quartz rock.

The 9th of May, after another such an up-and-down course, ascending hills and descending into the twilight depths of deepening valleys, we came suddenly upon the Mukondokwa, and its narrow pent-up valley crowded with rank reedy grass, cane, and thorny bushes; and rugged tamarisk which grappled for existence with monster convolvuli, winding their coils around their trunks with such tenacity and strength, that the tamarisk seemed grown but for their support.

The valley was barely a quarter of a mile broad in some places—at others it widened to about a mile. The hills on either side shot up into precipitous slopes, clothed with mimosa, acacia, and tamarisk, enclosing a river and valley whose curves and folds were as various as a serpent's.

Shortly after debouching into the Mukondokwa valley, we struck the road traversed by Captains Burton and Speke in 1857, between Mbumi and Kadetamare (the latter place should be called Misonghi, Kadetamare being but the name of a chief). After following the left bank of the Mukondokwa, during which our route diverged to every point from south-east to west, north and north-east, for about an hour, we came to the ford. Beyond the ford, a short half-hour's march, we came to Kiora.

At this filthy village of Kiora, which was well-grounded with goat-dung, and peopled with a wonderful number of children for a hamlet that did not number twenty families, with a hot sun pouring on the limited open space, with a fury that exceeded 128° Fahrenheit; which swarmed with flies, and insects of known and unknown species; I found, as I had been previously informed, the third caravan, which had started out of Bagamoyo so well fitted and supplied. The leader, who was no other than the white man Farquhar, was sick a-bed with swollen legs (Bright's disease, engendered by general debauchery), unable and perhaps not a little unwilling to move, knowing the condition into which he had brought his caravan.

While sick with dysentery at Rehenneko I had requested Shaw to write to Farquhar to obtain exact information respecting the state of his caravan, which had been reported to me by passing caravans as being most pitiable. Shaw accordingly nerved himself to the production of the following epistle:—

"DEAR FARQUHAR,

"At the request of Mr. Stanley I write you to asertain all your misfortunes, what quanterty of clorth you have expened and how much you have left, how many donkeys is dead, and, in fact, all the perticlurs. How many pagazis have you discharged, and how many have you with you. What have you done with all the baggage the donkeys had, and who is your parangozery. What is the matter with you. What is the matter with Jacko, and what was the matter with the donkeys that dide. What sort of baggage have you left in your camp. Send Sarmean back to-morrow morning in return with Willimingo and Barickca, and the full reply to the above questions. In two days we shall be up with you."

However ungrammatical and misspelt the above note is, it is far more intelligible to me, and I believe will be to the reader, than the reply which was received from the leader of the third caravan, worded as follows:—

"Dear Mr. Stanley,

"Everything is all right, but I have used a good bit of cloth to pay pagazis; one bale is entirely finished. The Kirangozi was a ——— rascal, I took his cloth from him and drove him from camp. He said he would come to you, I made Kiranga Kirangozi and gave him ten doti. Food is very dear here; only two chickens for a shukka, and one goat costs five doti, and I can't get out of here.

"I hired six pagazis yesterday and sent them on with Uredi. Jooma said he was starving, so I gave him two bales of Merikani. He says he will wait for you in Ugogo. Jacko has been sick, I don't know with what, and he can't do anything for me. Wellymingoe is my cook now. Can you send me some sugar? If you want any help I shall send my pagazis to help you for it is between where you are and this place that nine of my donkeys died, and I have only one left. All the Kaniki is finished, but I have got some more Merikani left.

"Give my respects to Mr. Shaw and Selim.

"Yours truly,

"W. L. Farquhar."

This was the precious response I received to an anxious inquiry as to the condition of himself and caravan. Had the man been stark crazy he could hardly have indited anything better calculated to confuse one.

In the first line he states "Everything is all right," when, according to the words immediately following, everything appears to me to be wrong. He turns the

Kirangozi away for a personal pique; and to a Mgwana soldier of mine detailed to accompany the fifth caravan, Jumah by name, he gives, upon his mere asking, two bales of Merikani, worth $150 in gold, containing 150 doti, a sufficient supply to feed a caravan of fifty men from Bagamoyo to Unyanyembe. "All his Kaniki is finished" also, which shows great carelessness. In short, the letter is incomprehensible to me unless the man Farquhar is hydrophobially insane, which fact I made haste to ascertain as I entered the enclosure of Kiora, and perceived his tent pitched on a heap of goat-muck.

As he heard my voice, Farquhar staggered out of his tent, as changed from my spruce mate who started from Bagamoyo as if he had been expressly fattened by the Wabembe of the Tanganika, as we do geese and turkeys for the Christmas dinner—as interesting a case of hypertrophy as Barnum's fat woman. I saw and regarded, not without wonder, the bloated cheeks and neck of my man Farquhar. His legs were also ponderous, elephantine, since his leg-illness was of elephantiasis, or dropsy. His face was of a deathly pallor; but that was easily accounted for afterwards, when his men informed me that he had not been out of his tent for two weeks. He had made free use of the soldiers and pagazis, as the least of his wants required their services. In return, he paid them with a goat each day, when a goat cost five doti. Sometimes he changed the gift for chickens.

A breezy hill, overlooking the village of Kiora, was chosen by me for my camping-ground, and as soon as the tents were pitched, the animals attended to, and a boma made of thorn bushes, Farquhar was carried up by four men into my tent. Upon being questioned as to the cause of his illness, he said he did not know what had caused it. He had no pain, he thought, anywhere. I asked, "Do you not sometimes feel pain on the right side?"—"Yes, I think I do; but I don't know."—"Nor over the left nipple sometimes—a quick throbbing, with a shortness of breath?"—"Yes, I think I have. I know I breathe quick sometimes." He did not suffer from constipation; he said his only trouble was in the legs, which were swollen to an immense size. Though he had the appetite of a horse, he yet felt weak in the legs.

From the scant information of the disease and its peculiarities, as given by Farquhar himself, I could only make out, by studying a little medical book I had with me, that "a swelling of the legs, purse, and sometimes of the body, might result from either heart, liver, or kidney disease." But, as the bowels were quite the reverse of being sluggish, I did not know to what to ascribe the disease, unless it was to elephantiasis—a disease most common in Zanzibar; nor did I know how to treat it in a man who could not tell me whether he felt pain in his head or in his back, in his feet or in his chest.

Having found out that Farquhar's illness did not need any immediate and paramount attention from me, I set about resolving the contents of that recondite note he had written to me at Rehenneko, and which had exercised me so much ever since. But, incomprehensible as was his note, Farquhar's verbal information as to the state of the property entrusted to him was tenfold more perplexing, complicated, and enigmatic. Not one thread of his story could be unravelled to suit a methodical mind. What he did do, and what he did not do, what he had expended on cloth and beads, and what he had not expended, were so inextricably jumbled up together, that I felt myself drifting towards helpless insanity, in endeavouring to create some order out of the chaos of verbiage. The only way to cut short the difficulty was to personally overhaul every bale of cloth and load of beads, and ascertain, by reference to my account of the third caravan, what was missing.

The reader will perhaps remember that I have stated that each caravan, before departing from Bagamoyo, or from any other part of the coast for the interior, must be furnished with cloth and beads sufficient for four months' subsistence on the road, independent of the cloth set aside for the tribute to be paid in Ugogo, and separate also from the bales for the carriage of which the owner has contracted with the pagazis.

Farquhar's caravan was not an exception to this custom and rule; but, being a white man's caravan, it was especially favoured for the leader's sake. It was composed of 23 men and 10 donkeys, and was supplied with 120 doti Merikani and Kaniki, and 35 lbs. of mixed beads to buy food. As there are 240 shukka in 120 doti, and as one shukka bought on an average 25 kubaba of grain, and as one kubaba was the customary allowance for each man, it is as self-evident as an axiom that 240 shukka were sufficient to keep the caravan in grain for eight months; but as the journey to Unyanyembe would not occupy 120 days, there would be left for the white man to buy little luxuries, such as chickens, eggs, and sometimes a goat, 120 shukkas of good marketable cloth, and 35 lbs. of beads.

Now followed the examination of the property. I was anxious to see if it corresponded with what was written on the list before the departure of the caravan from Bagamoyo. The weighing, unpacking, and repacking, occupied an hour, at the end of which I knew the exact extent of the losses the Expedition had incurred from the belly-greed and wanton carelessness of this feebly-intellectual white man. Within seventy-three days he had consumed the 240 shukka given him for provisions, and 12 doti of colored cloths; he had then broached the bales, out of which he had abstracted 82 doti, or 164 shukka, all of which had been expended to supply his lust for goatmeat, eggs, and poultry. Out of the bales of cloth which had been entrusted to him to convey to Unyanyembe there remained but two whole bales, all the other bales had been expended to purchase goats, or paid out as pagazi hire, for nine of his donkeys were dead, and one was moribund.

On making out the list of the expenditure of the sixth caravan, consisting of 43 souls and 17 donkeys led by myself for fifty days, I perceived it only amounted to 43 doti, or 86 shukka, from which I knew that Farquhar had no excuse for the waste of so much valuable cloth. "Set a beggar on horseback and he will ride to the devil" is a proverb the truth of which was manifest in this case. I had given him a capital Zanzibar riding-ass for himself which he had ridden to death. He had never condescended to dismount from the moment he left one camp until he arrived at another, and, not knowing how to ride, he had see-sawed from side to side until the poor animal's back was so terribly chafed that it soon died. Had he continued his journey to Unyanyembe —how or by what means I know not—and continued his extravagant expenditure, not one shukka or one pound of beads would have been left. It was therefore fortunate for me that I overtook him at Kiora; though he was about to prove a sore incumbrance to me, for he was not able to walk, and the donkey-carriage, after the rough experience of the Makata valley, was failing. I could not possibly leave him at Kiora, death would soon overtake him there; but how long I could convey a man in such a state, through a country devoid of carriage, was a question to be resolved by circumstances.

On the 11th of May, the third and fifth caravans, now united, followed up the right bank of the Mukondokwa, through fields of holcus, the great Mukondokwa ranges rising in higher altitude as we proceeded west, and enfolding us in the narrow river valley round about. We left Muniyi Usagara on our right, and soon after found hill-spurs athwart our road, which we were obliged to ascend and descend.

A march of eight miles from the ford of Misonghi brought us to another ford of the Mukondokwa, where we bid a long adieu to Burton's road, which led up to the Goma pass and up the steep slopes of Rubeho. Our road left the right bank and followed the left over a country quite the reverse of the Mukondokwa Valley, enclosed between mountain ranges. Fertile soils and spontaneous vegetation reeking with miasma, and overpowering from their odour, we had exchanged for a drouthy wilderness of aloetic and cactaceous plants, where the kolquall and several thorn bushes grew paramount.

Instead of the tree-clad heights, slopes and valleys, instead of cultivated fields, we saw now the confines of an uninhabited wilderness. The hill-tops were bared of their bosky crowns, and revealed their rocky natures bleached white by rain and sun. Nguru Peak, the loftiest of the Usagara cones, stood right shoulderwards of us as we ascended the long slope of dun-grey soil which rose beyond the brown Mukondokwa on the left.

At the distance of two miles from the last ford, we found a neat khambi, situated close to the river, where it first broke into a furious rapid.

The next morning the caravan was preparing for the march, when I was informed that the "Bana Mdogo"—little master—Shaw, had not yet arrived with the cart, and the men in charge of it. Late the previous night I had despatched one donkey for Shaw, who had said he was too ill to walk, and another for the load that was on the cart; and had retired satisfied that they would soon arrive. My conclusion, when I learned in the morning that the people had not yet come in, was that Shaw was not aware that for five days we should have to march through a wilderness totally uninhabited. I therefore despatched Chowpereh, a Mgwana soldier, with the following note to him:—"*You will, upon receipt of this order, pitch the cart into the nearest ravine, gulley, or river, as well as all the extra pack saddles; and come at once, for God's sake, for we must not starve here!*"

One, two, three, and four hours were passed by me in the utmost impatience, waiting, but in vain, for Shaw. Having a long march before us, I could wait no longer, but went to meet his party myself. About a quarter of a mile from the ford I met the van of the laggards—stout, burly Chowpereh—and, O cartmakers, listen! he carried the cart on his head—wheels, shafts, body, axle, and all complete; he having found that carrying it was much easier than drawing it. The sight was such a damper to my regard for it as an experiment, that the cart was wheeled into the depths of the tall reeds,

SHAW'S MODE OF MARCHING

and there left. The central figure was Shaw himself, riding at a gait which seemed to leave it doubtful on my mind whether he or his animal felt most sleepy. Upon expostulating with him for keeping the caravan so long waiting when there was a march on hand—in a most peculiar voice which he always assumed when disposed to be ugly-tempered—he said he had done the best he could; but as I had seen the solemn pace at which he rode, I felt dubious about his best endeavours; and accordingly requested him if he could not mend his gait, to dismount and permit the donkey to proceed to camp, that it might be loaded for the march. Of course there was a little scene, but the young European mtongi of an East African expedition must needs sup with the fellows he has chosen.

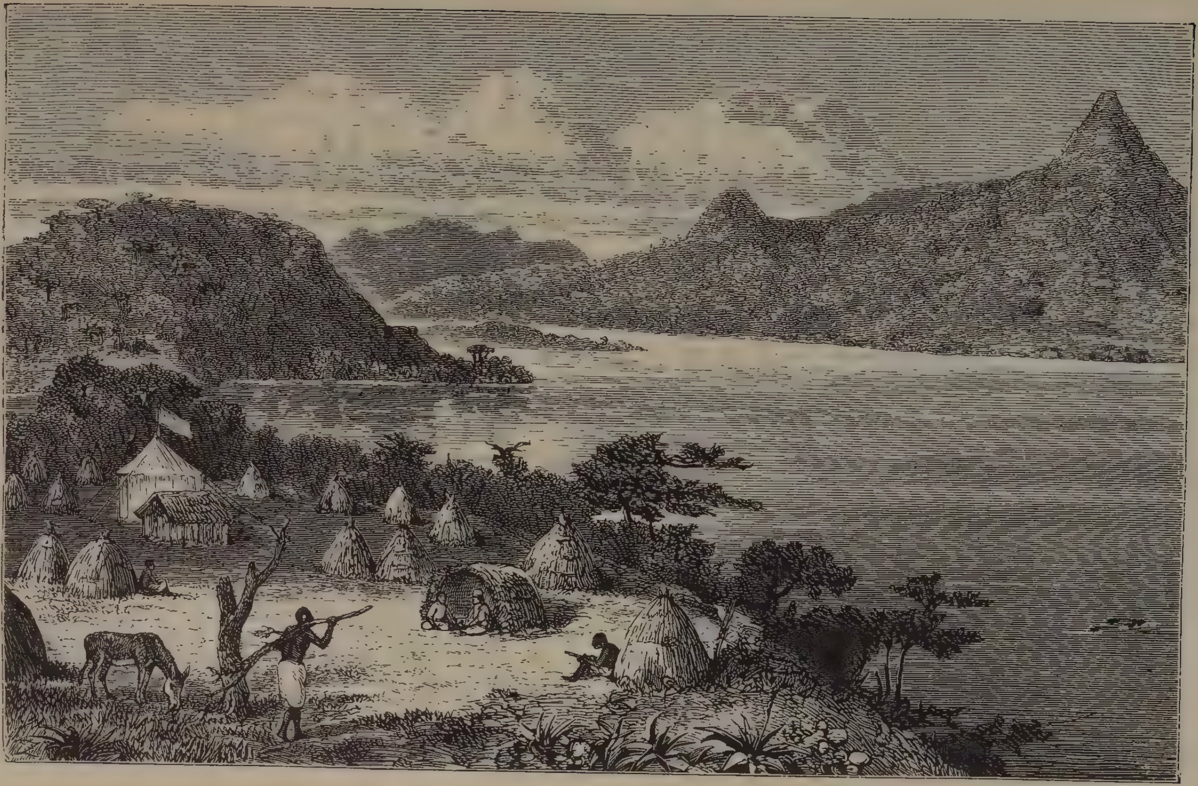
We arrived at Madete at 4 P.M., minus two donkeys which had stretched their weary limbs in death. We had crossed the Mukondokwa about 3 P.M., and after taking its bearings and course, I made sure that its rise took place near a group of mountains about forty miles north by west of Nguru Peak. Our road led W.N.W., and at this place finally diverged from the river.

On the 14th, after a march of seven miles over hills whose sandstone and granite formation cropped visibly here and there above the surface, whose stony and dry aspect seemed reflected in every bush and plant, and having gained an altitude of about eight hundred feet above the flow of the Mukondokwa, we sighted the Lake of Ugombo—a grey sheet of water lying directly at the foot of the hill, from whose summit we gazed at the scene. The view was neither beautiful nor pretty, but what I should call refreshing; it afforded a pleasant relief to the eyes fatigued from dwelling on the bleak country around. Besides, the immediate neighbourhood of the lake was too tame to call forth any enthusiasm; there were no grandly swelling mountains, no smiling landscapes—nothing but a dun-brown peak, about one thousand feet high above the surface of the lake at its western extremity, from which the lake derived its name, Ugombo; nothing but a low dun-brown irregular range, running parallel with its northern shore at the distance of a mile; nothing but a low plain stretching from its western shore far away towards the Mpwapwa Mountains and Marenga Mkali, then apparent to us from our coign of vantage, from which extensive scene of dun-brownness we were glad to rest our eyes on the quiet grey water beneath.

The outline of the lake resembles, in my mind, a map of England without Wales. Northumberland would represent very justly the western end of the lake, where the hippopotami sported in great numbers; the coast fronting the German Sea, with its bold bends and inlets, might find a miniature parallel in the northern shore of the lake; while the eastern side, which was very long, was almost the exact copy of the English coast as it is outlined from Kent to Cornwall.

Descending from the summit of the range, which bounded the lake east for about four hundred feet, we travelled along the northern shore. The time occupied in the journey from the eastern to the western extremity was exactly one hour and thirty minutes.

As this side represents its greatest length, I conclude that the lake is three miles long by two miles greatest breadth. The immediate shores of the lake on all sides, for at least fifty feet from the water's edge,



THE LAKE AND PEAK OF UGOMBO.

is one impassable morass nourishing rank reeds and rushes, where the hippopotamus' ponderous form has crushed into watery trails the soft composition of the morass as he passes from the lake on his nocturnal excursions; the lesser animals, such as the "mbogo" (buffalo), the "punda-terra" (zebra), the "twiga" (giraffe), the boar, the kudu, the hyrax or coney, and the antelope, come here also to quench their thirst by night. The surface of the lake swarms with an astonishing variety of water-fowl, such as black swan, duck, ibis sacra, cranes, pelicans; and soaring above on the look-out for their prey are fish-eagles, and hawks, while the neighbourhood is resonant with the loud chirps of the guinea-fowls calling for their young, with the harsh cry of the toucan, the cooing of the pigeon, and the "tu-whit, tu-whoo" of the owl. From the long grass in its vicinity also issue the grating and loud cry of the florican, woodcock, and grouse.

Being obliged to halt here two days, owing to the desertion of the Hindi cooper Jako with one of my best carbines, I improved the opportunity of exploring the northern and southern shores of the lake. At the rocky foot of a low, humpy hill on the northern side, about fifteen feet above the present surface of the water I detected in most distinct and definite lines the agency of waves. From its base could be traced clear to the edge of the dank morass tiny lines of comminuted shell as plainly marked as the small particles which lie in rows on a beach after a receding tide. There is no doubt that the wave marks on the sandstone might have been traced much higher by one skilled in geology; it was only its elementary character that was visible to me. Nor do I entertain the least doubt, after a two days' exploration of the neighbourhood, especially of the low plain at the western end, that this Lake of Ugombo is but the tail of what was once a large body of water equal in extent to the Tanganika; and, after ascending half way up Ugombo Peak, this opinion was confirmed when I saw the long-depressed line of plain at its base stretching towards the Mpwapwa Mountains thirty miles off, and thence round to Marenga Mkali, and covering all that extensive surface of forty miles in breadth, and an unknown length. A depth of twelve feet more, I thought, as I gazed upon it, would give the lake a length of thirty miles, and a breadth of ten. A depth of thirty feet would increase its length over a hundred miles, and give it a breadth of fifty, for such was the level nature of the plain that stretched west of Ugombo, and north of Marenga Mkali. Besides, the water of the lake partook slightly of the bitter nature of the Matamombo creek, distant fifteen miles, and in a still lesser degree of that of Marenga Mkali, forty miles off.

Towards the end of the first day of our halt the Hindi cooper Jako arrived in camp, alleging as an excuse, that feeling fatigued he had fallen asleep in some bushes a few feet from the roadside. Having been the cause of our detention in the hungry wilderness of Ugombo, I was not in a frame of mind to forgive him; so, to prevent any future truant tricks on his part, I was under the necessity of including him with the chained gangs of runaways.

Two more of our donkeys died, Farquhar having killed another with his weight and see-sawing method of riding. To prevent any of the valuable baggage being left behind, I was obliged to send Farquhar off on my own riding-ass to the village of Mpwapwa, thirty miles off, under charge of Mabruki Burton. Farquhar had become the laughing-stock of the caravan, from his utter helplessness to do anything for himself. He was continually crying out like a sick baby for half a dozen people to wait upon him, and if they did not happen to understand the English language in which he addressed them, he poured out a volley of the most profane abuse that ever offended the ears of a Christian gentleman. Jako, whom I detailed as cook for him when despatched with the third caravan, he had beaten and flogged until he was almost imbecile; and the Wangwana soldiers were in such dread of his insane violence, that they feared to go near him, and consequently Farquhar's voice, at no time one of the most harmonious, was heard night and day at the highest pitch of discordant querulousness.

For six days I bore with this annoyance, and had my donkeys lived, I might have borne longer with it, but as they were all feeble, and such a rider as Farquhar would destroy them all one after another, to save the Expedition from ruin, I was reluctantly compelled to come to the conclusion that it were better for me, for him, and all concerned, that he be left with some kind chief of a village, with a six months' supply of cloth and beads until he got well, than that he should ruin me, and make his own recovery impossible.

At breakfast time, on the 15th, as usual, Farquhar and Shaw were invited to breakfast. It was evident from their surly greeting to me, that something was the matter—or that something was about to happen. The faces of both men wore a settled dark frown, which seemed to bode no happy things for me. They did not reply to the "Good morning" with which I greeted them. They turned their faces aside as I looked at them closely. It now struck me that their conversation, the animated tones of which I had every now and then heard, was about myself.

I asked them to take seats.

"Selim," said I, "bring breakfast."

A breakfast consisting of a roast quarter of goat, stewed liver, half a dozen sweet potatoes, some hot pancakes, and coffee, was served.

"Shaw," said I, "please carve, and serve Farquhar."

"What dog's meat is this?" asked Shaw, in the most insolent way imaginable.

"What do you mean?" I asked.

"I mean, sir, that it is a downright shame the way you treat us," said he, impudently, turning his face towards me. "I mean to say, for myself, that you are walking me too hard. I thought we were to have donkeys to ride every day, and servants to wait upon us. Instead of which I have now got to walk every day through the hot sun, until I feel as if I would rather be in —— than in this ——— Expedition; and I wish every soul in this ——— may sink to —— this minute, so I do—there now!"

"Listen to me, Shaw, and you, Farquhar. Ever since you left the coast, you have had donkeys to ride. You have had servants to wait upon you; your tents have been set up for you; your meals have been cooked for you; you have eaten with me of the same food I have eaten; you have received the same treatment I have received. But now, all Farquhar's donkeys are dead; seven of my own have died, and I have had to throw away a few things in order to procure carriage for the most important goods. Farquhar is too sick to walk, he must have a donkey to ride; in yet a few days all our animals will be dead; after which I must have either over twenty more pagazis to take up the goods, or wait weeks and weeks for carriage. Yet, in the face of these things, you can grumble, and curse, and swear at me at my own table. Have you considered well your position? Do you realize where you are? Do you know that you are my servant, sir, and not my companion?"

"Servant be ——," said he.

But before Mr. Shaw could finish his sentence he had measured his length on the ground.

"Is it necessary for me to proceed further to teach you?" I asked.

"I tell you what it is, sir," he replied, raising himself up. "I think I had better go back. I have had enough, and I do not mean to go any further with you. I ask my discharge from you."

"Oh, certainly. What, who is there? Bombay, come here."

After Bombay's appearance at the tent door, I said to him, "Strike this man's tent," (pointing to Shaw). "He wants to go back. Bring his gun and pistol here to my tent, and take this man and his baggage two hundred yards outside of the camp, and there leave him."

In a few moments his tent was down, his gun and pistol in my tent, and Bombay returned to make his report, with four men under arms.

"Now go, sir. You are at perfect liberty to go. These men will escort you outside of the camp, and there leave you and your baggage."

He walked out, the men escorting him, and carrying his baggage for him.

After breakfast, I began to explain to Farquhar how necessary it was to me, to be able to proceed; that I had plenty of trouble, without having to think of men who were employed to think of me and their duties; that as he was sick, and would be probably unable to march for a time, it would be better I should leave him in some quiet place, under the care of a good chief, who would, for a consideration, look after him until he got well. To all of which Farquhar agreed.

I had barely finished speaking before Bombay came to the tent door saying, "Mr. Shaw would like to speak to you."

I went out to the gate of the camp, and there met Shaw, looking extremely penitent and ashamed. He commenced to ask my pardon, and began imploring me to take him back, and promising that I should never find fault with him again.

I held out my hand, saying, "Don't mention it, my dear fellow. Quarrels occur in the best of families. Since you apologize, there is an end to it."

That night, as I was about falling asleep, I heard a shot, and a bullet tore through my tent, a few inches above my body. I snatched my revolvers, and rushed out of my tent, and asked the men around the watch-fires, "Who shot?" They had all jumped up, rather startled at the sudden report.

"Who fired that gun?"

One said, the "Bana Mdogo"—little master.

I lit a candle, and walked with it to Shaw's tent. "Shaw, did you fire?"

There was no answer. He seemed to be asleep, he was breathing so hard.

"Shaw! Shaw! did you fire that shot?"

"Eh—eh?" said he, suddenly awaking—"me?—me fire? I have been asleep."

My eye caught sight of his gun lying near him. I seized it—felt it—put my little finger down the barrel.

The gun was warm; my finger was black from the burnt gunpowder!

"What is this?" I asked, holding my finger up; "the gun is warm. The men tell me you fired."

"Ah—yes," he replied; "I remember it. I dreamed I saw a thief pass my door, and I fired. Ah—yes—I forgot. I did fire. Why, what is the matter?"

"Oh, nothing," I said. "But I would advise you in future, in order to avoid all suspicion, not to fire into my tent, or at least so near me. I might get hurt, you know, in which case ugly reports would get about, and this perhaps would be disagreeable, as you are probably aware. Good night."

We all had our thoughts about this matter; but I never uttered a word about it to any one until I met Livingstone. The Doctor embodied my suspicions in the words, "He intended murder!"

But what a clumsy way to murder! Surely, had he done so, my own men would have punished him as the crime deserved. A thousand better opportunities than this would be presented in a month's march. I can only account for it by supposing he was momentarily insane.

The 16th of May saw us journeying over the plain which lies between Ugombo and Mpwapwa, skirting close, at intervals, a low range of trap-rock, out of which had become displaced by some violent agency several immense boulders. On its slopes grew the kolquall to a size which I had not seen in Abyssinia. In the plain grew baobab, and immense tamarind, and a variety of thorn.

Within five hours from Ugombo the mountain range deflected towards the north-east, while we continued on a north-westerly course, heading for the lofty mountain-line of the Mpwapwa. To our left towered to the blue clouds the gigantic Rubeho. The adoption of this new road to Unyanyembe by which we were travelling was now explained—we were enabled to avoid the passes and stiff steeps of Rubeho, and had nothing worse to encounter than a broad smooth plain, which sloped gently to Ugogo.

After a march of fifteen miles we camped at a dry mtoni, called Matamombo, celebrated for its pools of bitter water of the color of ochre. Monkeys and rhinoceroses, besides kudus, steinboks, and antelopes, were numerous in the vicinity. At this camp my little dog "Omar" died of inflammation of the bowels, almost on the threshold of the country—Ugogo—where his faithful watchfulness would have been invaluable to me.

The next day's march was also fifteen miles in length, through one interminable jungle of thorn-bushes. Within two miles of the camp, the road led up a small river bed, broad as an avenue, clear to the khambi of Mpwapwa, which was situated close to a number of streams of the purest water.

The following morning found us much fatigued after the long marches from Ugombo, and generally disposed to take advantage of the precious luxuries Mpwapwa offered to caravans fresh from the fly-plagued lands of the Waséguhha and Wadoe. Sheikh Thani—clever but innocently-speaking old Arab—was encamped under the grateful umbrage of a huge Mtamba sycamore, and had been regaling himself with fresh milk, luscious mutton, and rich bullock humps, ever since his arrival here, two days before; and, as he informed me, it did not suit his views to quit such a happy abundance so soon for the saline nitrous water of Marenga Mkali, with its several terekezas, and manifold disagreeables.

"No!" said he to me, emphatically, "better stop here two or three days, give your tired animals some rest; collect all the pagazis you can, fill your inside with fresh milk, sweet potatoes, beef, mutton, ghee, honey, beans, matama, maweri, and nuts;—then, Inshallah! we shall go together through Ugogo without stopping anywhere." As the advice tallied accurately with my own desires and keen appetite for the good things he named, he had not long to wait for my assent to his counsel. "Ugogo," continued he, "is rich with milk and honey—rich in flour, beans, and almost every eatable thing; and, Inshallah! before another week is gone we shall be in Ugogo!"

I had heard from passing caravans so many extremely favourable reports respecting Ugogo and its productions that it appeared to me a very Land of Promise, and I was most anxious to refresh my jaded stomach with some of the precious esculents raised in Ugogo; but when I heard that Mpwapwa also furnished some of those delicate eatables, and good things, most of the morning hours were spent in inducing the slow-witted people to part with them; and when, finally, eggs, milk, honey mutton, ghee, ground matama and beans had been collected in sufficient quantities to produce a respectable meal, my keenest attention and best culinary talents were occupied for a couple of hours in converting this crude supply into a breakfast which should be accepted by and befit a stomach at once fastidious and famished, such as mine was. The subsequent healthy digestion of it proved my endeavours to have been eminently successful. At the termination of this eventful day, the following remark was jotted down in my diary: "Thank God! After fifty-seven days of living upon matama porridge and tough goat, I have enjoyed with unctuous satisfaction a real breakfast and dinner."

It was in one of the many small villages which are situated upon the slopes of the Mpwapwa that I found a refuge and a home for Farquhar until he should be enabled by restored health to start to join us at Unyanyembe.

Food was plentiful and of sufficient variety to suit the most fastidious,—cheap also, much cheaper than we had experienced for many a day. Leucole, the chief of the village, with whom I made arrangements for Farquhar's protection and comfort, was a little old man of mild eye and very pleasing face, and on being informed that I intended to leave the Musungu entirely under his charge, suggested that I should appoint some man in my employ to wait on him, and interpret his wishes to his people. I had thought of this further charge which Farquhar's illness might impose on me, but had hoped that Leucole would have relieved me of this for extra payment. The time, however, which had elapsed between Farquhar's arrival and our own, had been enough to prove to the chief his utter inability to minister to the wants of a man like Farquhar, who persisted in calling for the least thing in modern Anglo-Saxon instead of Kisagara or Kisawahili, and who, when not understood, would first roundly curse the natives in English, and then, when he found that his cursing was of no avail, would relapse into stubborn and fierce silence. No amount of money would suffice to bribe Leucole to undertake such a charge without an interpreter. It was of no use to mourn my folly in taking such a man as Farquhar on the Expedition: he was in the interior of Africa and sick; the duty devolved on me to see that he was cared for. Accordingly I consulted with Bombay as to what man could best be spared to stop with Farquhar. To my suprise, Bombay said, "Oh! master, have you brought us to Africa to throw us away like this? We signed no contract to stop behind, but to go with you to Ujiji, Ukerewe, or Cairo. If you tell one of the soldiers to stop, he will obey you until you are gone—he will then run away. No, no, master, it will not do!" Despite Bombay's assertion—though there was no reason to doubt his word—I inquired of each man personally whether he would be willing to stay behind, and wait upon the sick Musungu.

From each man I received an answer in the negative, delivered most resolutely, and their reason they stated to be the violent conduct of the Musungu towards the three soldiers detailed to accompany his caravan from Bagamoyo. They were afraid of him, he damned them so on all occasions; and Ulimengo mimicked him so faithfully, yet so ludicrously, that it was almost impossible to abstain from laughing. As, however, the sick man absolutely needed some one to attend him, I was compelled to use my authority, and, as Jako was the only one who could speak English, except Bombay and Selim my Arab interpreter, Jako, despite his protestations and prayers, was appointed, and the chief Leucole was satisfied. Six months' provisions of white beads, Merikani and Kaniki cloth, together with two doti of handsome cloth to serve as a present to Leucole after his recovery, were taken to Farquhar by Bombay, together with a Starr's carbine, 300 rounds of cartridge, a set of cooking pots, and 3 lbs. of tea.

Abdullah bin Nasib, whom I found encamped here with five hundred pagazis, and a train of Arab and Wasawahili satellites, who revolved around his importance, treated me in somewhat the same manner that Hamed bin Sulayman treated Speke at Kasenge. Followed by his satellites, he came (a tall nervous-looking man, of fifty or thereabouts) to see me in my camp, and asked me if I wished to purchase donkeys. As all my animals were either sick or moribund, I replied very readily in the affirmative, upon which he graciously said he would sell me as many as I wanted, and for payment I could give him a draft on Zanzibar. I thought him a very considerate and kind person, fully justifying the encomiums lavished on him in Burton's 'Lake Regions of Central Africa,' and accordingly I treated him with the consideration due to so great and good a man. The morrow came, and with it went Abdullah bin Nasib, or "Kisesa," as he is called by the Wanyamwezi, with all his pagazis, his train of followers, and each and every one of his donkeys, towards Bagamoyo, without so much as giving a "Kwaheri," or good-bye.

At this place there are generally to be found from ten to thirty pagazis awaiting up-caravans. I was fortunate enough to secure twelve good people, who, upon my arrival at Unyanyembe, without an exception, voluntarily engaged themselves as carriers to Ujiji. With the formidable marches of Marenga Mkali in front, I felt thankful for this happy windfall, which resolved the difficulties I had been anticipating; for I had but ten donkeys left, and four of these were so enfeebled that they were worthless as baggage animals.

Mpwapwa—so called by the Arabs, who have managed to corrupt almost every native word—is called "Mbambwa" by the Wasagara. It is a mountain range rising over 6,000 feet above the sea, bounding on the north the extensive plain which commences at

Ugombo lake, and on the east that part of the plain which is called Marenga Mkali, which stretches away beyond the borders of Uhumba. Opposite Mpwapwa, at the distance of thirty miles or so, rises the Anak peak of Rubeho, with several other ambitious and tall brethren cresting long lines of rectilinear scarps, which ascend from the plain of Ugombo and Marenga Mkali as regularly as if they had been chiselled out by the hands of generations of masons and stonecutters.

Upon looking at Mpwapwa's greenly-tinted slopes, dark with many a densely-foliaged tree; its many rills flowing sweet and clear, nourishing besides thick patches of gum and thorn bush, giant sycamore and parachute-topped mimosa, and permitting my imagination to picture sweet views behind the tall cones above, I was tempted to brave the fatigue of an ascent to the summit. Nor was my love for the picturesque disappointed. One sweep of the eyes embraced hundreds of square miles of plain and mountain, from Ugombo Peak away to distant Ugogo, and from Rubeho and Ugogo to the dim and purple pasture lands of the wild, untameable Wahumba. The plain of Ugombo and its neighbour of Marenga Mkali, apparently level as a sea, was dotted here and there with "hillocks dropt in Nature's careless haste," which appeared like islands amid the dun and green expanse. Where the jungle was dense the color was green, alternating with dark brown; where the plain appeared denuded of bush and brake it had a whity-brown appearance, on which the passing clouds now and again cast their deep shadows. Altogether this side of the picture was not inviting; it exhibited too plainly the true wilderness in its sternest aspect; but perhaps the knowledge that in the bosom of the vast plain before me there was not one drop of water but was bitter as nitre, and undrinkable as urine, prejudiced me against it. The hunter might consider it a paradise, for in its depths were all kinds of game to attract his keenest instincts; but to the mere traveller it had a stern outlook. Nearer, however, to the base of the Mpwapwa the aspect of the plain altered. At first, the jungle thinned, openings in the wood appeared, then wide and naked clearings, then extensive fields of the hardy holcus, Indian corn, and maweri or bajri, with here and there a square tembe or village. Still nearer ran thin lines of fresh young grass, great trees surrounded a patch of alluvial meadow. A broad river-bed, containing several rivulets of water, ran through the thirsty fields, conveying the vivifying element which in this part of Usagara was so scarce and precious. Down to the river-bed sloped the Mpwapwa, roughened in some places by great boulders of basalt, or by rock masses, which had parted from a precipitous scarp, where clung the kolquall with a sure hold, drawing nourishment where every other green thing failed; clad in others by the hardy mimosa, which rose like a sloping bank of green verdure almost to the summit. And happy sight to me, so long a stranger to it, there were hundreds of cattle grazing, imparting a pleasing animation to the solitude of the deep folds of the mountain range.

But the fairest view was obtained by looking northward towards the dense group of mountains which buttressed the front range, facing towards Rubeho. It was the home of the winds, which starting here and sweeping down the precipitous slopes and solitary peaks on the western side, and gathering strength as they rushed through the prairie-like Marenga Mkali, howled through Ugogo and Unyamwezi with the force of a storm. It was also the home of the dews, where sprang the clear springs which cheered by their music the bosky dells below, and enriched the populous district of Mpwapwa. One felt better, stronger, on this breezy height, drinking in the pure air and feasting the eyes on such a varied landscape as it presented, on spreading plateaus green as lawns, on smooth rounded tops, on mountain vales containing recesses which might charm a hermit's soul, on deep and awful ravines where reigned a twilight gloom, on fractured and riven precipices, on huge fantastically-worn boulders which overtopped them, on picturesque tracts which embraced all that was wild, and all that was poetical in Nature.

Mpwapwa, though the traveller from the coast will feel grateful for the milk it furnished after being so long deprived of it, will be kept in mind as a most remarkable place for earwigs. In my tent they might be counted by thousands; in my slung cot they were by hundreds; on my clothes they were by fifties; on my neck and head they were by scores. The several plagues of locusts, fleas, and lice sink into utter insignificance compared with this damnable one of earwigs. It is true they did not bite, and they did not irritate the cuticle, but what their presence and numbers suggested was something so horrible that it drove one nearly insane to think of it. Who will come to East Africa without reading the experiences of Burton and Speke? Who is he that having read them will not remember with horror the dreadful account given by Speke of his encounters with these pests? My intense nervous watchfulness alone, I believe, saved me from a like calamity.

Second to the earwigs in importance and in numbers were the white ants, whose powers of destructiveness were simply awful. Mats, cloth, portmanteaus, clothes, in short, every article I possessed, seemed on the verge of destruction, and, as I witnessed their voracity, I felt anxious lest my tent should be devoured while I slept. This was the first khambi since leaving the coast where their presence became a matter of anxiety; at all other camping places hitherto the red and black ants had usurped our attention, but at Mpwapwa the red species were not seen, while the black were also very scarce.

After a three days' halt at Mpwapwa I decided on a march to Marenga Mkali which should be uninterrupted until we reached Mvumi in Ugogo, where I should be inducted into the art of paying tribute to the Wagogo chiefs. The first march to Kisokweh was purposely made short, being barely four miles, in order to enable Sheikh Thani, Sheikh Hamed, and five or six Wasawahili caravans to come up with me at Chunyo on the confines of Marenga Mkali.

OUR CAMP AT CHUNYO.

CHAPTER VI.

THROUGH MARENGA MKALI, UGOGO, AND UYANZI, TO UNYANYEMBE.

From Marenga Mkali to—	h.	m.	From Msalalo to—	h.	m.
Mvumi, Little Ugogo	12	30	Welled Ngaraiso . .	3	30
Mvumi, Great Ugogo	4	0	Kusuri	3	15
Matamburu ,,	4	0	Mgongo Tembo . .	3	30
Bihawana ,,	4	0	,, ,, Mtoni	3	30
Kididimo ,,	2	0	Nghwhalah Mtoni .	2	40
Pembera Pereh ,,	10	0	Madedita	2	30
Mizanza ,,	5	30	Central Tura, Unyamwezi	3	0
Mukondoku ,,	6	30	Kwala River . . .	7	0
Munieka ,,	5	0	Rubuga	7	15
Mabunguru Mtoni, Uyanzi	8	0	Kigwa	5	0
Kiti, Uyanzi . . .	6	30	Shisa	7	0
Msalalo	6	30	Kwihara	3	0

THE 22nd of May saw Thani and Hamed's caravans united with my own at Chunyo, three and a half hours' march from Mpwapwa. The road from the latter place ran along the skirts of the Mpwapwa range; at three or four places it crossed outlying spurs that stood isolated from the main body of the range. The last of these hill spurs, joined by an elevated cross ridge to the Mpwapwa, shelters the tembe of Chunyo, situated on the western face, from the stormy gusts that come roaring down the steep slopes. The water of Chunyo is eminently bad, in fact it is its saline-nitrous nature which has given the name Marenga Mkali—bitter water—to the wilderness which separates Usagara from Ugogo. Though extremely offensive to the palate, Arabs and the natives drink it without fear, and without any bad results; but they are careful to withhold their baggage animals from the pits. Being ignorant of its nature, and not exactly understanding what precise location was meant by Marenga Mkali, I permitted the donkeys to be taken to water, as usual after a march; and the consequence was calamitous in the extreme. What the fearful swamp of Makata had spared, the waters of Marenga Mkali destroyed. In less than five days after our departure from Chunyo or Marenga Mkali, five out of the nine donkeys left to me at the time—the five healthiest animals—fell victims. The water appeared to cause retention of urine, for three of the animals died from this cause.

We formed quite an imposing caravan as we emerged from inhospitable Chunyo, in number amounting to about four hundred souls. We were strong in guns, flags, horns, sounding drums and noise. To Sheikh Hamed, by permission of Sheikh Thani, and myself was allotted the task of guiding and leading this great caravan through dreaded Ugogo; which was a most unhappy selection, as will be seen hereafter.

Marenga Mkali, over thirty miles across, was at last before us. This distance had to be traversed within thirty-six hours, so that the fatigue of the ordinary march would be more than doubled by this. From Chunyo to Ugogo not one drop of water was to be found. As a large caravan, say over two hundred souls, seldom travels over one and three-quarter miles per hour, a march of thirty miles would require seventeen hours of endurance without water and but little rest. East Africa generally possessing unlimited quantities of water, caravans have not been compelled for lack of the element to have recourse to the mushok of India and the khirbeh of Egypt. Being able to cross the waterless districts by a couple of long marches, they content themselves for the time with a small gourdful, and with keeping their imaginations dwelling upon the copious quantities they will drink upon arrival at the watering-place.

The march through this waterless district was most monotonous, and a dangerous fever attacked me, which seemed to eat into my very vitals. The wonders of Africa that bodied themselves forth in the shape of flocks of zebras, giraffes, elands, or antelopes, galloping over the jungleless plain, had no charm for me; nor could they serve to draw my attention from the severe fit of sickness which possessed me. Towards the end of the first march I was not able to sit upon the donkey's back; nor would it do, when but a third of the way across the wilderness, to halt until the next day; soldiers were therefore detailed to carry me in a hammock, and, when the terekeza was performed in the afternoon, I lay in a lethargic state, unconscious of all things. With the night passed the fever, and, at 3 o'clock in the morning, when the march was resumed, I was booted and spurred, and the recognized mtongi of my caravan once more. At 8 A.M. we had performed the thirty-two miles. The wilderness of Marenga Mkali had been passed and we had entered Ugogo, which was at once a dreaded land to my caravan, and a Land of Promise to myself.

The transition from the wilderness into this Promised Land was very gradual and easy. Very slowly the jungle thinned, the cleared land was a long time appearing, and when it had finally appeared, there were no signs of cultivation until we could clearly make out the herbage and vegetation on some hill slopes to our right running parallel with our route, then we saw timber on the hills, and broad acreage under cultivation —and, lo! as we ascended a wave of reddish earth covered with tall weeds and cane, but a few feet from us, and directly across our path, were the fields of matama and grain we had been looking for, and Ugogo had been entered an hour before.

The view was not such as I expected. I had imagined a plateau several hundred feet higher than Marenga Mkali, and an expansive view which should reveal Ugogo and its characteristics at once. But instead, while travelling from the tall weeds which covered the clearing which had preceded the cultivated parts, we had entered into the depths of the taller matama stalks, and, excepting some distant hills near Mvumi, where the Great Sultan lived—the first of the tribe to whom we should pay tribute—the view was extremely limited.

However, in the neighbourhood of the first village a glimpse at some of the peculiar features of Ugogo was obtained, and there was a vast plain—now flat, now heaving upwards, here level as a table, there tilted up into rugged knolls bristling with scores of rough boulders of immense size, which lay piled one above another as if the children of a Titanic race had been playing at house-building. Indeed, these piles of rounded, angular, and riven rock formed miniature hills of themselves, and appeared as if each body had been ejected upwards by some violent agency beneath. There was one of these in particular, near Mvumi, which was so large, and being slightly obscured from view by the outspreading branches of a gigantic baobab, bore such a strong resemblance to a square tower of massive dimensions, that for a long time I cherished the idea that I had discovered something most interesting which had strangely escaped the notice of my predecessors in East Africa. A nearer view dispelled the illusion, and proved it to be a huge cube of rock, measuring about forty feet each way. The baobabs were also particularly conspicuous on this scene, no other kind of tree being visible in the cultivated parts. These had probably been left for two reasons: first, want of proper axes for felling trees of such enormous growth; secondly, because during a famine the fruit of the baobab furnishes a flour which, in the absence of anything better, is said to be eatable and nourishing.

The first words I heard in Ugogo were from a Wagogo elder, of sturdy form, who in an indolent way tended the flocks, but showed a marked interest in the stranger clad in white flannels, with a Hawkes' patent cork solar topee on his head, a most unusual thing in Ugogo, who came walking past him, and there were "Yambo, Musungu, Yambo, bana, bana," delivered with a voice loud enough to make itself heard a full mile away. No sooner had the greeting been delivered than the word "Musungu" seemed to electrify his entire village; and the people of other villages, situated at intervals near the road, noting the excitement that reigned at the first, also participated in the general frenzy which seemed suddenly to have possessed them. I consider my progress from the first village to Mvumi to have been most triumphant; for I was accompanied by a furious mob of men, women, and children, all almost as naked as Mother Eve when the world first dawned upon her in the garden of Eden, fighting, quarreling, jostling, staggering against each other for the best view of the white man, the like of whom was now seen for the first time in this part of Ugogo. The cries of admiration, such as "Hi-le!" which broke often and in confused uproar upon my ear, were not gratefully accepted, inasmuch as I deemed many of them impertinent. A respectful silence and more reserved behaviour would have won my esteem; but, ye powers, who cause etiquette to be observed in Usungu, respectful silence, reserved behaviour, and esteem are terms unknown in savage Ugogo. Hitherto I had compared myself to a merchant of Bagdad travelling among the Kurds of Kurdistan, selling his wares of Damascus silk, kefiyehs, &c.; but now I was compelled to lower my standard, and thought myself not much better than the monkey in the zoological collection at Central Park, whose funny antics elicit such bursts of laughter from young New Yorkers. One of my soldiers requested them to lessen their vociferous noise; but the evil-minded race ordered him to shut up, as a thing unworthy to speak to the Wagogo! When I imploringly turned to the Arabs for counsel in this strait, old Sheikh Thani, always worldly wise, said, "Heed them not; they are dogs who bite besides barking."

At 9 A.M. we were in our boma, near Mvumi village;

but here also crowds of Wagogo came to catch a glimpse of the Musungu, whose presence was soon made known throughout the district of Mvumi. But two hours later I was oblivious of their endeavours to see me; for, despite repeated doses of quinine, the mukunguru had sure hold of me.

The next day was a march of eight miles, from East Mvumi to West Mvumi, where lived the sultan of the district. The quantity and variety of provisions which arrived at our boma did not belie the reports respecting the productions of Ugogo. Milk, sour and sweet, honey, beans, matama, maweri, Indian corn, ghee, pea-nuts, and a species of bean-nut very like a large pistachio or an almond, water-melons, pumpkins, mush-melons, and cucumbers were brought, and readily exchanged for Merikani, Kaniki, and for the white Merikani beads and Sami-Sami, or Sam-Sam. The trade and barter which progressed in the camp from morning till night reminded me of the customs existing among the Gallas and Abyssinians. Eastward, caravans were obliged to despatch men with cloth, to purchase from the villagers. This was unnecessary in Ugogo, where the people voluntarily brought every vendible they possessed to the camp. The smallest breadth of white or blue cloth became saleable and useful in purchasing provisions—even a loin-cloth worn threadbare.

The day after our march was a halt. We had fixed to-day for bearing the tribute to the Great Sultan of Mvumi. Prudent and cautious, Sheikh Thani early began this important duty, the omission of which would have been a signal for war. Hamed and Thani sent two faithful slaves, well up to the eccentricities of the Wagogo sultans—well spoken, having glib tongues and the real instinct for trade as carried on amongst

Orientals. They bore six doti of cloths, viz, one doti of Dabwani Ulyah contributed by myself, also one doti of Barsati from me, two doti Merikani Satine from Sheikh Thani, and two doti of Kaniki from Sheikh Hamed, as a first instalment of the tribute. The slaves were absent a full hour, but having wasted their powers of pleading, in vain, they returned with the demand for more, which Sheikh Thani communicated to me in this wise.

"Auf! this Sultan is a very bad man—a very bad man indeed; he says, the Musungu is a great man, I call him a sultan; the Musungu is very rich, for he has several caravans already gone past; the Musungu must pay forty doti, and the Arabs must pay twelve doti each, for they have rich caravans. It is of no use for you to tell me you are all one caravan, otherwise why so many flags and tents? Go and bring me sixty doti, with less I will not be satisfied."

I suggested to Sheikh Thani, upon hearing this exorbitant demand, that had I twenty Wasungu armed with Winchester repeating rifles, the Sultan might be obliged to pay tribute to me; but Thani prayed and begged me to be cautious lest angry words might irritate the Sultan and cause him to demand a double tribute, as he was quite capable of doing so; "and if you preferred war," said he, "your pagazis would all desert, and leave you and your cloth to the small mercy of the Wagogo." But I hastened to allay his fears by telling Bombay, in his presence, that I had foreseen such demands on the part of the Wagogo, and that having set aside one hundred and twenty doti of honga cloths, I should not consider myself a sufferer if the Sultan demanded and I paid forty cloths to him; that he must therefore open the honga bale, and permit Sheikh Thani to extract such cloths as the Sultan might like.

Sheikh Thani, having put on the cap of consideration and joined heads with Hamed and the faithful serviles, thought if I paid twelve doti, out of which three should be of Ulyah quality, that the Sultan might possibly condescend to accept our tribute; supposing he was persuaded by the oratorical words of the "Faithfuls," that the Musungu had nothing with him but the mashiwa (boat), which would be of no use to him, come what might,—with which prudent suggestion the Musungu concurred, seeing its wisdom.

The slaves departed, bearing this time from our boma thirty doti, with our best wishes for their success. In an hour they returned with empty hands, but yet unsuccessful. The Sultan demanded six doti of Merikani, and a fundo of bubu, from the Musungu; and from the Arabs and other caravans, twelve doti more. For the third time the slaves departed for the Sultan's tembe, carrying with them six doti Merikani and a fundo of bubu from myself, and ten doti from the Arabs. Again they returned to us with the Sultan's words, "That, as the doti of the Musungu were short measure, and the cloth of the Arabs of miserable quality, the Musungu must send three doti full measure, and the Arabs five doti of Kaniki." My three doti were at once measured out with the longest fore-arm—according to Kigogo measure—and sent off by Bombay; but the Arabs almost in despair declared they would be ruined if they gave way to such demands, and out of the five doti demanded sent only two, with a pleading to the Sultan that he would consider what was paid as just and fair Muhongo, and not ask any more. But the Sultan of Mvumi was by no means disposed to consider any such proposition, but declared he must have three doti, and these to be two of Ulyah cloth, and one Kitambi Barsati, which, as he was determined to obtain, were sent to him heavy with the deep maledictions of Sheikh Hamed and the despairing sighs of Sheikh Thani.

Altogether the sultanship of a district in Ugogo must be very remunerative, besides being a delightful sinecure, so long as the sultan has to deal with timid Arab merchants who fear to exhibit anything approaching to independence and self-reliance, lest they might be mulcted in cloth. In one day from one boma the sultan received forty-seven doti, consisting of Merikani, Kaniki, Barsati, and Dabwani, equal to $35·25, besides seven doti of superior cloths, consisting of Rehani, Sohari, and Daobwani Ulyah, and one fundo of Bubu, equal to $14·00, making a total of $49·25—a most handsome revenue for a Mgogo chief.

On the 27th May we gladly shook the dust of Mvumi from our feet, and continued on our route—ever westward. Five of my donkeys had died the night before, from the effects of the water of Marenga Mkali. Before leaving the boma of Mvumi, I went to look at their carcases; but found them to have been clean picked by the hyænas, and the bones taken possession of by an army of white-necked crows.

As we passed the numerous villages, and perceived the entire face of the land to be one vast field of grain, and counted the people halted by scores on the roadside to feast their eyes with a greedy stare on the Musungu, I no longer wondered at the extortionate demands of the Wagogo. For it was manifest that they had but to stretch out their hands to possess whatever the wealth of a caravan consisted of; and I began to think better of the people who, knowing well their strength, did not use it—of people who were intellectual enough to comprehend that their interest lay in permitting the caravans to pass on without attempting any outrage.

Between Mvumi and the next sultan's district, that of Matamburu, I counted no less than twenty-five villages scattered over the clayey, colored plain. Despite the inhospitable nature of the plain, it was better cultivated than any part of any other country we had seen since leaving Bagamoyo.

When we had at last arrived at our boma of Matamburu, the same groups of curious people, the same eager looks, the same exclamations of surprise, the same peals of laughter at something they deemed ludicrous in the Musungu's dress or manner, awaited us, as at Mvumi. The Arabs being "Wakonongo" travellers, whom they saw every day, enjoyed a complete immunity from the vexations which we had to endure.

The Sultan of Matamburu, a man of herculean form, and massive head well set on shoulders that might vie with those of Milo, proved to be a very reasonable person. Not quite so powerful as the Sultan of Mvumi, he yet owned a fair share of Ugogo and about forty villages, and could, if he chose, have oppressed the mercantile souls of my Arab companions, in the same way as he of Mvumi. Four doti of cloth were taken to him as a preliminary offering to his greatness, which he said he would accept, if the Arabs and Musungu would send him four more. As his demands were so reasonable, this little affair was soon terminated to everybody's satisfaction; and soon after, the kirangozi of Sheikh Hamed sounded the signal for the morrow's march.

At the orders of the same Sheikh, the kirangozi stood up to speak before the assembled caravans. "Words, words, from the Bana," he shouted. "Give are, kirangozis! Listen, children of Unyamwezi! The journey is for to-morrow! The road is crooked and bad, bad! The jungle is there, and many Wagogo lie hidden within it! Wagogo spear the pagazis, and cut the throats of those who carry mutumba (bales and ushanga beads)! The Wagogo have been to our camp, they have seen your bales; to-night they seek the jungle: to-morrow watch well, O Wanyamwezi! Keep close together, lag not behind! Kirangozis walk slow, that the weak, the sick, and the young may keep up with the strong! Take two rests on the journey! These are the words of the Bana (master). Do you hear them, Wanyamwezi? (A loud shout in the affirmative from all.) Do you understand them well? (another chorus); then Bas;" having said which, the eloquent kirangozi retired into the dark night, and his straw hut.

The march to Bihawana, our next camp, was rugged and long, through a continuous jungle of gums and thorns, up steep hills and finally over a fervid plain, while the sun waxed hotter and hotter as it drew near the meridian, until it seemed to scorch all vitality from inanimate nature, while the view was one white blaze, unbearable to the pained sight, which sought relief from the glare in vain. Several sandy water-courses, on which were impressed many a trail of elephants, were also passed on this march. The slope of these stream-beds trended south-east and south.

In the middle of this scorching plain stood the villages of Bihawana, almost undistinguishable, from the extreme lowness of the huts, which did not reach the height of the tall bleached grass which stood smoking in the untempered heat.

Our camp was in a large boma, about a quarter of a mile from the Sultan's tembe. Soon after arriving at the camp, I was visited by three Wagogo, who asked me if I had seen a Mgogo on the road with a woman and child. I was about to answer, very innocently, "Yes," when Mabruki—cautious and watchful always for the interests of the master—requested me not to answer, as the Wagogo, as customary, would charge me with having done away with them, and would require their price from me. Indignant at the imposition they were about to practise upon me, I was about to raise my whip to flog them out of the camp, when again Mabruki, with a roaring voice, bade me beware, for every blow would cost me three or four doti of cloth. As I did not care to gratify my anger at such an expense, I was compelled to swallow my wrath, and consequently the Wagogo escaped chastisement.

We halted for one day at this place, which was a great relief to me, as I was suffering severely from intermittent fever, which lasted in this case two weeks, and entirely prevented my posting my diary in full, as was my custom every evening after a march.

The Sultan of Bihawana, though his subjects were evil-disposed, and ready-handed at theft and murder, contented himself with three doti as honga. From this chief I received news of my fourth caravan, which had distinguished itself in a fight with some outlawed subjects of his; my soldiers had killed two who had attempted, after waylaying a couple of my pagazis, to carry away a bale of cloth and a bag of beads; coming up in time, the soldiers decisively frustrated the attempt. The Sultan thought that if all caravans were as well guarded as mine were, there would be less depredations committed on them while on the road; with this I heartily agreed.

The next sultan's tembe through whose territory we marched, this being on the 30th May, was at Kididimo, but four miles from Bihawana. The road led through a flat elongated plain lying between two lengthy hilly ridges thickly dotted with the giant forms of the baobab. Kididimo is exceedingly bleak in aspect. Even the faces of the Wagogo seemed to have contracted a bleak hue from the general bleakness around. The water of the pits obtained in the neighbourhood had the flavor of warm horse-urine, and two donkeys sickened and died in less than an hour from its effects. Man suffered belly-ache, nausea in the stomach, and a general irritability of the system; and accordingly revenged himself by cursing the country and its imbecile ruler most heartily. The climax came, however, when Bombay reported, after an attempt to settle the Muhongo, that the chief's head had grown big since he heard that the Musungu had come, and that its "bigness" could not be reduced unless he could extract ten doti as tribute. Though the demand was large, I was not in a humour —being feeble, and almost nerveless, from repeated attacks of the Mukunguru—to dispute the sum: consequently it was paid without many words. But the Arabs continued the whole afternoon negociating, and at the end had to pay eight doti each.

Between Kididimo and Nyambwa, the district of the Sultan Pembera Pereh, was a broad and lengthy forest and jungle inhabited by the elephant, rhinoceros, zebra, deer, antelope, and giraffe. Starting at dawn of the 31st, we entered the jungle, whose dark lines and bosky banks were clearly visible from our bower at Kididimo; and, travelling for two hours, halted for rest and breakfast, at pools of sweet water surrounded by tracts of vivid green verdure, which were a great resort for the wild animals of the jungle, whose tracks were numerous and recent. A narrow nullah, shaded deeply with foliage, afforded excellent retreats from the glaring sunshine. At meridian, our thirst quenched, our hunger satisfied, our gourds refilled, we set out from the shade into the heated blaze of hot noon. The path serpentined in and out of jungle, and thin forest, into open tracts of grass bleached white as stubble, into thickets of gums and thorns, which emitted an odor as rank as a stable; through clumps of wide-spreading mimosa and colonies of baobab, through a country teeming with noble game, which, though we saw them frequently, were yet as safe from our rifles as if we had been on the Indian Ocean. A terekeza, such as we were now making, admits of no delay. Water we had left behind at noon: until noon of the next day not a drop was to be obtained; and unless we marched fast and long on this day, raging thirst would demoralize everybody. So for six long weary hours we toiled bravely; and at sunset we camped, and still a march of two hours, to be done before the sun was an hour high, intervened between us and our camp at Nyambwa. That night the men bivouacked under the trees, surrounded by many miles of dense forest, enjoying the cool night unprotected by hat or tent, while I groaned and tossed throughout the night in a paroxysm of fever.

The morn came; and, while it was yet young, the long caravan, or string of caravans, was under way. It was the same forest, admitting, on the narrow line which we threaded, but one man at a time. Its view was as limited. To our right and left the forest was dark and deep. Above was a riband of glassy sky flecked by the floating nimbus. We heard nothing save a few stray notes from a flying bird, or the din of the caravans as the men sang, or hummed, or conversed, or shouted, as the thought struck them that we were nearing water. One of my pagazis, wearied and sick, fell, and never rose again. The last of the caravan passed him before he died. Fortunately so, otherwise we must have committed the barbarism of leaving him unburied, whilst knowing he was dead.

At 7 A.M. we were encamped at Nyambwa, drinking the excellent water found here with the avidity of thirsty camels. Extensive fields of grain had heralded the neighbourhood of the villages, at the sight of which we were conscious that the caravan was quickening its pace, as approaching its halting-place. As the Wasungu drew within the populated area, crowds of Wagogo used their utmost haste to see them before they passed by. Young and old of both genders pressed about us in a multitude—a very howling mob. This excessive demonstrativeness elicited from my sailor overseer the characteristic remark, "Well, I declare, these must be the genuine Ugogians, for they stare! stare!—my God, there is no end to their staring. I'm almost tempted to slap 'em in the face!" In fact, the conduct of the Wagogo of Nyambwa was an exaggeration of the general conduct of Wagogo. Hitherto, those we had met had contented themselves with staring and shouting; but these outstepped all bounds, and my growing anger at their excessive insolence vented itself in gripping the rowdiest of them by the neck, and before he could recover from his astonishment administering a sound thrashing with my dog-whip, which he little relished. This proceeding educed from the tribe of starers all their native power of vituperation and abuse, in expressing which they were peculiar. Approaching in manner to angry tom-cats, they jerked their words with something of a splitting hiss and a half bark. The ejaculation, as near as I can spell it phonetically, was "hahcht" uttered in a shrill crescendo tone. They paced backwards and forwards, asking themselves, "Are the Wagogo to be beaten like slaves by this Musungu? A Mgogo is a Mgwana (a free man); he is not used to be beaten,—hahcht." But whenever I made motion, flourishing my whip, towards them, these mighty braggarts found it convenient to move to respectable distances from the irritated Musungu.

Perceiving that a little manliness and show of power was something which the Wagogo long needed, and that in this instance it relieved me from annoyance, I had recourse to my whip, whose long lash cracked like a pistol shot, whenever they overstepped moderation. So long as they continued to confine their obtrusiveness to staring, and communicating to each other their opinions respecting my complexion, and dress, and accoutrements, I philosophically resigned myself in silence for their amusement, but when they pressed on me, barely allowing me to proceed, a few vigorous and rapid slashes right and left with my serviceable thong, soon cleared the track.

Pembera Pereh is a queer old man, very small, and would be very insignificant were he not the greatest sultan in Ugogo; and enjoying a sort of dimediate power over many other tribes. Though such an important chief, he is the meanest dressed of his subjects,—is always filthy,—ever greasy—eternally foul about the mouth; but these are mere eccentricities: as a wise judge, he is without parallel, always has a dodge ever ready for the abstraction of cloth from the spiritless

Arab merchants, who trade with Unyanyembe every year; and disposes with ease of a judicial case which would overtask ordinary men.

Sheikh Hamed, who was elected guider of the united caravans now travelling through Ugogo, was of such a fragile and small make, that he might be taken for an imitation of his famous prototype "Dapper." Being of such dimensions, what he lacked for weight and size he made up by activity. No sooner was he arrived in camp than his trim dapper form was seen frisking about from side to side of the great boma, fidgeting, arranging, disturbing everything and everybody. He permitted no bales or packs to be intermingled, or to come into too close proximity to his own; he had a favourite mode of stacking his goods, which he would see carried out; he had a special eye for the best place for his tent, and no one else must trespass on that ground. One would imagine that walking ten or fifteen miles a day, he would leave such trivialities to his servants, but no, nothing could be right unless he had personally superintended it; in which work he was tireless and knew no fatigue.

Another not uncommon peculiarity pertained to Sheikh Hamed; as he was not a rich man, he laboured hard to make the most of every shukka and doti expended, and each fresh expenditure seemed to gnaw his very vitals: he was ready to weep, as he himself expressed it, at the high prices of Ugogo, and the extortionate demands of its sultans. For this reason. being the leader of the caravans, so far as he was able we were very sure not to be delayed in Ugogo, where food was so dear.

The day we arrived at Nyambwa will be remembered by Hamed as long as he lives, for the trouble and vexation which he suffered. His misfortunes arose from the fact that, being too busily engaged in fidgeting about the camp, he permitted his donkeys to stray into the matama fields of Pembera Pereh, the Sultan. For hours he and his servants sought for the stray donkeys, returning towards evening utterly unsuccessful, Hamed bewailing, as only an Oriental can do, when hard fate visits him with its inflictions, the loss of a hundred dollars worth of Muscat donkeys. Sheikh Thani, older, more experienced, and wiser, suggested to him that he should notify the Sultan of his loss. Acting upon the sagacious advice, Hamed sent an embassy of two slaves, and the information they brought back was, that Pembera Pereh's servants had found the two donkeys eating the unripened matama, and that unless the Arab who owned them would pay nine doti of first-class cloths, he, Pembera Pereh, would surely keep them to remunerate him for the matama they had eaten. Hamed was in despair. Nine doti of first-class cloths, worth $25 in Unyanyembe, for half a shukka's worth of grain, was, as he thought, an absurd demand; but then if he did not pay it, what would become of the hundred dollars worth of donkeys? He proceeded to the Sultan to show him the absurdity of the damage claim, and to endeavour to make him accept one shukka, which would be more than double the worth of what grain the donkeys had consumed. But the Sultan was sitting on pombe, he was drunk, which I believe to be his normal state—too drunk to attend to business, consequently his deputy, a renegade Unyamwezi, gave ear to the business. With most of the Wagogo chiefs lives a Unyamwezi, as their right-hand man, prime minister, counsellor, executioner, ready man at all things save the general good; a sort of harlequin Unyamwezi, who is such an intriguing, restless, unsatisfied person, that as soon as one hears that this kind of man forms one of and the chief of a Mgogo sultan's council, one feels very much tempted to do damage to his person. Most of the extortions practised upon the Arabs are suggested by these crafty renegades. Sheikh Hamed found that the Unyamwezi was far more obdurate than the Sultan—nothing under nine doti first-class cloths would redeem the donkeys. The business that day remained unsettled, and the night following was, as one may imagine, a very sleepless one to Hamed. As it turned out, however, the loss of the donkeys, the after heavy fine, and the sleepless night, proved to be blessings in disguise; for, towards midnight, a robber Mgogo visited his camp, and while attempting to steal a bale of cloth, was detected in the act by the wide-awake and irritated Arab, and was made to vanish instantly with a bullet whistling in close proximity to his ear.

From each of the principals of the caravans, the Unyamwezi had received as tribute for his drunken master fifteen doti, and from the other six caravans six doti each, altogether fifty-one doti, yet on the next morning when we took the road he was not a whit disposed to deduct a single cloth from the fine imposed on Hamed, and the unfortunate Sheikh was therefore obliged to liquidate the claim, or leave his donkeys behind.

After travelling through the corn-fields of Pembera Pereh we emerged upon a broad flat plain, as level as the still surface of a pond, whence the salt of the Wagogo is obtained. From Kanyenyi on the southern road, to beyond the confines of Uhumba and Ubanarama, this saline field extends, containing many large ponds of salt bitter water whose low banks are covered with an effervescence partaking of the nature of nitrate. Subsequently, two days afterwards, having ascended the elevated ridge which separates Ugogo from Uyanzi, I obtained a view of this immense saline plain, embracing over a hundred square miles. I may have been deceived, but I imagined I saw large expanses of greyish-blue water, which causes me to believe that this salina is but a corner of a great salt lake. The Wahumba, who are numerous, from Nyambwa to the Uyanzi border, informed my soldiers that there was a "Maji Kuba" away to the north.

Mizanza, our next camp after Nyambwa, is situated in a grove of palms, about thirteen miles from the latter place. Soon after arriving I had to bury myself under blankets, plagued with the same intermittent fever which first attacked me during the transit of Marenga Mkali. Feeling certain that one day's halt, which would enable me to take regular doses of the invaluable sulphate of quinine, would cure me, I requested Sheikh Thani to tell Hamed to halt on the morrow, as I should be utterly unable to continue thus long, under repeated attacks of a virulent disease which was fast reducing me into a mere frame of skin and bone. Hamed, in a hurry to arrive at Unyanyembe in order to dispose of his cloth before other caravans appeared in the market, replied at first that he would not, that he could not, stop for the Musungu. Upon Thani's reporting his answer to me, I requested him to inform Hamed that, as the Musungu did not wish to detain him, or any other caravan, it was his express wish that Hamed would march and leave him, as he was quite strong enough in guns to march through Ugogo alone. Whatever cause modified the Sheikh's resolution and his anxiety to depart, Hamed's horn signal for the march was not heard that night, and on the morrow he had not gone.

Early in the morning I commenced on my quinine doses; at 6 A.M. I took a second dose; before noon I had taken four more—altogether, fifty measured grains—the effect of which was manifest in the copious perspiration which drenched flannels, linen, and blankets. After noon I arose, devoutly thankful that the disease which had clung to me for the last fourteen days had at last succumbed to quinine.

On this day the lofty tent, and the American flag which ever flew from the centre pole, attracted the Sultan of Mizanza towards it, and was the cause of a visit with which he honored me. As he was notorious among the Arabs for having assisted Manwa Sera in his war against Sheikh Sny bin Amer, high eulogies upon whom have been written by Burton, and subsequently by Speke, and as he was the second most powerful chief in Ugogo, of course he was quite a curiosity to me. As the tent-door was uplifted that he might enter, the ancient gentleman was so struck with astonishment at the lofty apex, and internal arrangements, that the greasy Barsati cloth which formed his sole and only protection against the chills of night and the heat of noon, in a fit of abstraction was permitted to fall down to his feet, exposing to the Musungu's unhallowed gaze the sad and aged wreck of what must once have been a towering form. His son, a youth of about fifteen, attentive to the infirmities of his father, hastened with filial duty to remind him of his nakedness, upon which, with an idiotic titter at the incident, he resumed his scanty apparel and sat down to wonder and gibber out his admiration at the tent and the strange things which formed the Musungu's personal baggage and furniture. A Varangian soldier ushered into the blaze and magnificence of the Imperial Palace of Byzantium could not have been struck with more astonishment than was the Sultan of Mizanza at the fittings of my tent. After gazing in stupid wonder at the table, on which was placed some crockery and the few books I carried with me; at the slung hammock, which he believed was suspended by some magical contrivance; at the portmanteaus which contained my stock of clothes, he ejaculated, "Hi le! the Musungu is a great sultan, who has come from his country to see Ugogo." He then noticed me, and was again wonder-struck at my pale complexion and straight hair, and the question now propounded was, "How on earth was I white when the sun had burned his people's skins into blackness?" Whereupon he was shown my cork topee, which he tried on his woolly head, much to his own and to our amusement. The guns were next shown to him; the wonderful repeating rifle of the Winchester Company, which was fired thirteen times in rapid succession to demonstrate its remarkable murderous powers. If he was astonished before he was a thousand times more so now, and expressed his belief that the Wagogo could not stand before the Musungu in battle, for wherever a Mgogo was seen such a gun would surely kill him. Then the other firearms were brought forth, each with its peculiar mechanism explained, until, in a burst of enthusiasm at my riches and power, he said he would send me a sheep or goat, and that he would be my brother. I thanked him for the honor, and promised to accept whatever he was pleased to send me. At the instigation of Sheikh Thani, who acted as interpreter, who said that Wagogo chiefs must not depart with empty hands, I cut off a shukka of Kaniki and presented it to him, which, after being examined and measured, was refused upon the ground that, the Musungu being a great sultan should not demean himself so much as to give him only a shukka. This, after the twelve doti received as muhongo from the caravans, I thought, was rather sore; but as he was about to present me with a sheep or goat another shukka would not matter much.

Shortly after he departed, and true to his promise, I received a large, fine sheep, with a broad tail, heavy with fat; but with the words, "That being now his brother, I must send him three doti of good cloth." As the price of a sheep is but a doti and a half, I refused the sheep and the fraternal honor, upon the ground that the gifts were all on one side; and that, as I had paid muhongo, and given him a doti of Kaniki as a present, I could not afford to part with any more cloth without an adequate return.

During the afternoon one more of my donkeys died, and at night the hyænas came in great numbers to feast upon the carcase. Ulimengo, the chasseur, and best shot of my Wangwanas, stole out and succeeded in shooting two, which turned out to be some of the largest of their kind. One of them measured six feet from the tip of the nose to the extremity of the tail, and three feet around the girth.

On the 4th June we struck camp, and after travelling westward for about three miles, passing several ponds of salt water, we headed north by west, skirting the range of low hills which separates Ugogo from Uyanzi.

After a three hours' march, we halted for a short time at Little Mukondoku, to settle tribute with the brother of him who rules at Mukondoku Proper. Three doti satisfied the Sultan, whose district contains but two villages, mostly occupied by pastoral Wahumba and renegade Wahehe. The Wahumba live in plastered (cow-dung) cone huts, shaped like the Tartar tents of Turkestân.

The Wahumba, so far as I have seen them, are a fine and well-formed race. The men are positively handsome, tall, with small heads, the posterior parts of which project considerably. One will look in vain for a thick lip or a flat nose amongst them; on the contrary, the mouth is exceedingly well cut, delicately small; the nose is that of the Greeks, and so universal was the peculiar feature, that I at once named them the Greeks of Africa. Their lower limbs have not the heaviness of the Wagogo and other tribes, but are long and shapely, clean as those of an antelope. Their necks are long and slender, on which their small heads are poised most gracefully. Athletes from their youth, shepherd bred, and intermarrying among themselves, thus keeping the race pure, any of them would form a fit subject for the sculptor who would wish to immortalize in marble an Antinous, a Hylas, a Daphnis, or an Apollo. The women are as beautiful as the men are handsome. They have clear ebon skins, not coal-black, but of an inky hue. Their ornaments consist of spiral rings of brass pendent from the ears, brass ring collars about the necks, and a spiral cincture of brass wire about their loins for the purpose of retaining their calf and goat skins, which are folded about their bodies, and, depending from the shoulder, shade one half of the bosom, and fall to the knees.

The Wahehe may be styled the Romans of Africa.

Resuming our march, after a halt of an hour, in four hours more we arrived at Mukondoku Proper. This extremity of Ugogo is most populous. The villages which surround the central tembe, where the Sultan Swaruru lives, amount to thirty-six. The people who flocked from these to see the wonderful men whose faces were white, who wore the most wonderful things on their persons, and possessed the most wonderful weapons; guns which "bum-bummed" as fast as you could count on your fingers, formed such a mob of howling savages, that I for an instant thought there was something besides mere curiosity which caused such commotion, and attracted such numbers to the roadside. Halting, I asked what was the matter, and what they wanted, and why they made such noise? One burly rascal, taking my words for a declaration of hostilities, promptly drew his bow, but as prompt as he had fixed his arrow my faithful Winchester with thirteen shots in the magazine was ready and at the shoulder, and but waited to see the arrow fly to pour the leaden messengers of death into the crowd. But the crowd vanished as quickly as they had come, leaving the burly Thersites, and two or three irresolute fellows of his tribe, standing within pistol range of my levelled rifle. Such a sudden dispersion of the mob which, but a moment before, was overwhelming in numbers, caused me to lower my rifle, and to indulge in a hearty laugh at the disgraceful flight of the men-destroyers. The Arabs, who were as much alarmed at their boisterous obtrusiveness, now came up to patch a truce, in which they succeeded to everybody's satisfaction. A few words of explanation, and the mob came back in greater numbers than before; and the Thersites who had been the cause of the momentary disturbance was obliged to retire abashed before the pressure of public opinion. A chief now came up, whom I afterwards learned was the second man to

Swaruru, and lectured the people upon their treatment of the "White Stranger."

"Know ye not, Wagogo," shouted he, "that this Musungu is a sultan (mtemi—a most high title). He has not come to Ugogo like the Wakonongo (Arabs), to trade in ivory, but to see us, and give presents. Why do you molest him and his people? Let them pass in peace. If you wish to see him, draw near, but do not mock him. The first of you who creates a disturbance, let him beware; our great mtemi shall know how you treat his friends." This little bit of oratorical effort on the part of the chief was translated to me there and then by the old Sheikh Thani; which having understood, I bade the Sheikh inform the chief that, after I had rested, I should like him to visit me in my tent.

Having arrived at the khambi, which always surrounds some great baobab in Ugogo, at the distance of about half a mile from the tembe of the Sultan, the Wagogo pressed in such great numbers to the camp, that Sheikh Thani resolved to make an effort to stop or mitigate the nuisance. Dressing himself in his best clothes, he went to appeal to the Sultan for protection against his people. The Sultan was very much inebriated, and was pleased to say, "What is it you want, you thief? You have come to steal my ivory or my cloth. Go away, thief!" But the sensible chief, whose voice had just been heard reproaching the people for their treatment of the Wasungu, beckoned to Sheikh Thani to come out of the tembe, and then proceeded with him towards the khambi.

The camp was in a great uproar; the curious Wagogo monopolized almost every foot of ground; there was no room to turn anywhere. The Wanyamwezi were quarreling with the Wagogo, the Wasawahili servants were clamouring loud that the Wagogo pressed down their tents, and that the property of the masters was in danger; while I, busy on my diary within my tent, cared not how great was the noise and confusion outside as long as it confined itself to the Wagogo, Wanyamwezi, and Wangwana.

The presence of the chief in the camp was followed by such a deep silence that I was prevailed upon to go outside to see what had caused it. The chief's words were few, and to the point. He said, "To your tembes, Wagogo — to your tembes! Why do you come to trouble the Wakonongo? What have you to do with them? To your tembes: go! Each Mgogo found in the khambi without meal, without cattle to sell, shall pay to the mtemi cloth or cows. Away with you!" Saying which, he snatched up a stick and drove the hundreds out of the khambi, who were as obedient to him as so many children. During the two days we halted at Mukondoku we saw no more of the mob, and there was peace.

The muhongo of the Sultan Swaruru was settled with few words. The chief who acted for the Sultan as his prime minister having been "made glad" with a doti of Rehani Ulyah from me, accepted the usual tribute of six doti, only one of which was of first-class cloth.

There remained but one more sultan to whom muhongo must be paid after Mukondoku, and this was the Sultan of Kiwyeh, whose reputation was so bad that owners of property who had control over their pagazis seldom passed by Kiwyeh, preferring the hardships of long marches through the wilderness to the rudeness and exorbitant demands of the chief of Kiwyeh. But the pagazis, on whom no burden or responsibility fell save that of carrying their loads, who could use their legs and show clean heels in the case of a hostile outbreak, preferred the march to Kiwyeh to enduring thirst and the fatigue of a terekeza. Often the preference of the pagazis won the day, when their employers were timid, irresolute men, like Sheikh Hamed.

The 7th of June was the day fixed for our departure from Mukondoku, so the day before, the Arabs came to my tent to counsel with me as to the route we should adopt. On calling together the kirangozis of the respective caravans and veteran Wanyamwezi pagazis, we learned there were three roads leading from Mukondoku to Uyanzi. The first was the southern road, and the one generally adopted, for the reasons already stated, and led by Kiwyeh. To this Hamed raised objections. "The Sultan was bad," he said; "he sometimes charged a caravan twenty doti; our caravan would have to pay about sixty doti. The Kiwyeh road would not do at all. Besides," he added, "we have to make a terekeza to reach Kiwyeh, and then we will not reach it before the day after to-morrow." The second was the central road. We should arrive at Munieka on the morrow; the day after would be a terekeza from Mabunguru Nullah to a camp near Unyambogi; two hours the next day would bring us to Kiti, where there was plenty of water and food. As neither of the kirangozis or Arabs knew this road, and its description came from one of my ancient pagazis, Hamed said he did not like to trust the guidance of such a large caravan in the hands of an old Unyamwezi, and would therefore prefer to hear about the third road, before rendering his decision. The third road was the northern. It led past numerous villages of the Wagogo for the first two hours; then we should strike a jungle; and a three hours' march would then bring us to Simbo, where there was water, but no village. Starting early next morning, we would travel six hours when we would arrive at a pool of water. Here taking a short rest, an afternoon march of five hours would bring us within three hours of another village. As this last road was known to many, Hamed said, "Sheikh Thani, tell the Sahib that I think this is the best road." Sheikh Thani was told, after he had informed me that, as I had marched with them through Ugogo, if they decided upon going by Simbo, my caravan would follow.

The routes being settled after much discussion, I took compass bearings of the respective points. It will be remembered that I said Mukondoku had been reached after a three hours' march direct west from Mizanza, that we had then travelled for about four hours and a quarter north by west, skirting the base of a ridge which ran from the neighbourhood of Kanyenyi north by west to the borders of Uhumba, and which served as a boundary line between Ugogo and the adjacent land of the Wayanzi. Mukondoku was but two miles on the eastern side from this ridge: Kiwyeh pointed S.S.W. from Mukondoku, thence was a march of seven days to Kusuri. The direction of Simbo was N.N.W., thence to Kusuri was a march of six days. It is thus obvious enough that the shortest road was the one by Kiti, and the only objection to it was that it was unknown to any of the Arabs or kirangozis.

Immediately after the discussion among the principals respecting the merits of the several routes, arose a discussion among the pagazis which resulted in an obstinate clamour against the Simbo road, for its long terekeza and scant prospects of water, the dislike to the

Simbo road communicated itself to all the caravans, and soon it was magnified by reports of a wilderness reaching from Simbo to Kusuri, where there was neither food nor water to be obtained. Hamed's pagazis, and those of the Arab servants, rose in a body and declared they could not go on that march, and if Hamed insisted upon adopting it they would put their packs down and leave him to carry them himself.

Hamed Kimiani, as he was styled by the Arabs, rushed up to Sheikh Thani, and declared that he must take the Kiwyeh road, otherwise his pagazis would all desert. Thani replied that all the roads were the same to him, that wherever Hamed chose to go, he would follow. They then came to my tent, and informed me of the determination at which the Wanyamwezi had arrived. Calling my veteran Mnyamwezi who had given me the favourable report once more to my tent, I bade him give a correct account of the Kiti road. It was so favourable that my reply to Hamed was, that I was the master of my caravan, that it was to go wherever I told the kirangozi, not where the pagazis chose; that when I told them to halt they must halt, and when I commanded a march, a march should be made; and that as I fed them well and did not overwork them, I should like to see the pagazi or soldier that disobeyed me. "You made up your mind just now that you would take the Simbo road, and we were agreed upon it, now your pagazis say they will take the Kiwyeh road, or desert. Go on the Kiwyeh road and pay twenty doti muhongo. I and my caravan to-morrow morning will take the Kiti road, and when you find me in Unyanyembe one day ahead of you, you will be sorry you did not take the same road."

This resolution of mine had the effect of again changing the current of Hamed's thoughts, for he instantly said, "That is the best road after all, and as the Sahib is determined to go on it, and we have all travelled together through the bad land of the Wagogo, Inshallah! let us all go the same way," and Thani—good old man—not objecting, and Hamed having decided, they both joyfully went out of the tent to communicate the news.

On the 7th the caravans—apparently unanimous that the Kiti road was to be taken—were led as usual by Hamed's kirangozi. We had barely gone a mile before I perceived that we had left the Simbo road, had taken the direction of Kiti, and, by a cunning detour, were now fast approaching the defile of the mountain ridge before us, which admitted access to the higher plateau of Kiwyeh. Instantly halting my caravan, I summoned the veteran who had travelled by Kiti, and asked him whether we were not going towards Kiwyeh. He replied that we were. Calling my pagazis together, I bade Bombay tell them that the Musungu never changed his mind; that as I had said my caravan should march by Kiti, to Kiti it must go whether the Arabs followed or not. I then ordered the veteran to take up his load and show the kirangozi the proper road to Kiti. The Wanyamwezi pagazis put down their bales, and then there was every indication of a mutiny. The Wangwana soldiers were next ordered to load their guns and to flank the caravan, and shoot the first pagazis who made an attempt to run away. Dismounting, I seized my whip, and, advancing towards the first pagazi who had put down his load, I motioned to him to take up his load and march. It was unnecessary to proceed further; without an exception, all marched away obediently after the kirangozi. I was about bidding farewell to Thani and Hamed, when Thani said, "Stop a bit, Sahib; I have had enough of this child's play; I come with you," and his caravan was turned after mine. Hamed's caravan was by this time close to the defile, and he himself was a full mile behind it, weeping like a child at what he was pleased to call our desertionof him. Pitying his strait—for he was almost beside himself as thoughts of Kiwyeh's sultan, his extortion and rudeness, swept across his mind—I advised him to run after his caravan, and tell it, as all the rest had taken the other road, to think of the Sultan of Kiwyeh. Before reaching the Kiti defile I was aware that Hamed's caravan was following us.

The ascent of the ridge was rugged and steep, thorns of the prickliest nature punished us severely, the *acacia horrida* was here more horrid than usual, the gums stretched out their branches, and entangled the loads, the mimosa with its umbrella-like top served to shade us from the sun, but impeded a rapid advance. Steep outcrops of syenite and granite, worn smooth by many feet, had to be climbed over, rugged terraces of earth and rock had to be ascended, and distant shots resounding through the forest added to the alarm and general discontent, and had I not been immediately behind my caravan, watchful of every manœuvre, my Wanyamwezi had deserted to a man.

Though the height we ascended was barely 800 feet above the salina we had just left, the ascent occupied two hours.

Having surmounted the plateau and the worst difficulties, we had a fair road comparatively, which ran through jungle, forest, and small open tracts, which in three hours more brought us to Munieka, a small village, surrounded by a clearing richly cultivated by a colony of subjects of Swaruru of Mukondoku.

By the time we had arrived at camp everybody had recovered his good humour and content except Achmet. Thani's men happened to set his tent too close to Hamed's tree, around which his bales were stacked. Whether the little Sheikh imagined honest old Thani capable of stealing one is not known, but it is certain that he stormed and raved about the near neighbourhood of his best friend's tent, until Thani ordered its removal a hundred yards off. This proceeding even, it seems, did not satisfy Hamed, for it was quite midnight —as Thani said—when Hamed came, and kissing his hands and feet, on his knees implored forgiveness, which of course Thani, being the soul of good-nature, and as large-hearted as any man, willingly gave. Hamed was not satisfied, however, until, with the aid of his slaves, he had transported his friend's tent to where it had at first been pitched.

The water at Munieka was obtained from a deep depression in a hump of syenite, and was as clear as crystal, and cold as ice-water—a luxury we had not experienced since leaving Simbamwenni.

We were now on the borders of Uyanzi, or, as it is better known, "Magunda Mkali"—the Hot-ground, or Hot-field. We had passed the village populated by Wagogo, and were about to shake the dust of Ugogo from our feet. We had entered Ugogo full of hopes, believing it a most pleasant land—a land flowing with milk and honey. We had been grievously disappointed; it proved to be a land of gall and bitterness, full of trouble and vexation of spirit, where danger was imminent at every step—where we were exposed to the caprice of inebriated sultans. Is it a wonder, then, that all felt happy at such a moment? With the prospect before us of what was believed by many to be a real wilderness, our ardour was not abated, but was rather strengthened. The wilderness in Africa proves to be, in many instances, more friendly than the populated country.

The kirangozi blew his kudu horn much more merrily on this morning than he was accustomed to do while in Ugogo. We were about to enter Magunda Mkali. At 9 A.M., three hours after leaving Munieka, and two hours since we had left the extreme limits of Ugogo, we were halted at Mabunguru Nullah. The Nullah runs south-westerly after leaving its source in the chain of hills dividing Ugogo from Magunda Mkali. During the rainy season it must be nearly impassable, owing to the excessive slope of its bed. Traces of the force of the torrent are seen in the syenite and basalt boulders which encumber the course. Their rugged angles are worn smooth, and deep basins are excavated where the bed is of the rock, which in the dry season serve as reservoirs. Though the water contained in them has a slimy and greenish appearance, and is well populated with frogs, it is by no means unpalatable.

At noon we resumed our march, the Wanyamwezi cheering, shouting, and singing, the Wangwana soldiers, servants, and pagazis vieing with them in volume of voice and noise—making the dim forest through which we were now passing, resonant with their voices.

The scenery was much more picturesque than any we had yet seen since leaving Bagamoyo. The ground rose into grander waves—hills cropped out here and there—great castles of syenite appeared, giving a strange and weird appearance to the forest. From a distance it would almost seem as if we were approaching a bit of England as it must have appeared during feudalism;

the rocks assumed such strange fantastic shapes. Now they were round boulders raised one above another, apparently susceptible to every breath of wind; anon, they towered like blunt-pointed obelisks, taller than the tallest trees; again they assumed the shape of mighty waves, vitrified; here, they were a small heap of fractured and riven rock; there, they rose to the grandeur of hills.

By 5 P.M. we had travelled twenty miles, and the signal was sounded for a halt. At 1 A.M., the moon being up, Hamed's horn and voice were heard throughout the silent camp awaking his pagazis for the march. Evidently Sheikh Hamed was gone stark mad, otherwise why should he be so frantic for the march at such an early hour? The dew was falling heavily, and chilled one like frost; and an ominous murmur of deep discontent responded to the early call on all sides. Presuming, however, that he had obtained better information than we had, Sheikh Thani and I resolved to be governed as the events proved him to be right or wrong.

As all were discontented, this night march was performed in deep silence. The thermometer was at 53°, we being about 4,500 feet above the level of the sea. The pagazis, almost naked, walked quickly in order to keep warm, and by so doing many a sore foot was made by stumbling against obtrusive roots and rocks, and treading on thorns. At 3 A.M. we arrived at the village of Unyambogi, where we threw ourselves down to rest and sleep, until dawn should reveal what else was in store for the hard-dealt with caravans.

It was broad daylight when I awoke; the sun was flaring his hot beams in my face. Sheikh Thani came soon after to inform me that Hamed had gone to Kiti two hours since; but he, when asked to accompany him, positively refused, exclaiming against it as folly, and utterly unnecessary, when my advice was asked by Thani. I voted the whole thing as sheer nonsense; and, in turn, asked him what a terekeza was for? Was it not an afternoon march to enable caravans to reach water and food? Thani replied that it was. I then asked him if there was no water or food to be obtained in Unyambogi. Thani replied that he had not taken pains to inquire, but was told by the villagers that there was an abundance of matama, hindi, maweri, sheep, goats, and chickens in their village at cheap prices, such as were not known in Ugogo.

"Well, then," said I, "if Hamed wants to be a fool, and kill his pagazis, why should we? I have as much cause for haste as Sheikh Hamed; but Unyanyembe is far yet, and I am not going to endanger my property by playing the madman."

As Thani had reported, we found an abundance of provisions at the village, and good sweet water from some pits close by. A sheep cost one shukka; six chickens were also purchased at that price; six measures of matama, maweri, or hindi, were procurable for the same sum; in short, we were coming, at last, into the land of plenty.

On the 10th June we arrived at Kiti after a journey of four hours and a half, where we found the irrepressible Hamed halted in sore trouble. He who would be a Cæsar, proved to be an irresolute Antony. He had to sorrow over the death of a favourite slave girl, the loss of five dish-dashehs (Arab shirts), silvered-sleeve and gold-embroidered jackets, with which he had thought to enter Unyanyembe in state, as became a merchant of his standing, which had disappeared with three absconding servants, besides copper trays, rice, and pilau dishes, and two bales of cloth with runaway Wangwana pagazis. Selim, my Arab interpreter, asked him, "What are you doing here, Sheikh Hamed? I thought you were well on the road to Unyanyembe." Said he, "Could I leave Thani, my friend, behind?"

Kiti abounded in cattle and grain, and we were able to obtain food at easy rates. The Wakimbu, emigrants from Ukimbu, near Urori, are a quiet race, preferring the peaceful arts of agriculture to war; of tending their flocks to conquest. At the least rumor of war they remove their property and family, and emigrate to the distant wilderness, where they begin to clear the land, and to hunt the elephant for his ivory. Yet we found them to be a fine race, and well armed, and seemingly capable, by their numbers and arms, to compete with any tribe. But here, as elsewhere, disunion makes them weak. They are mere small colonies, each colony ruled by its own chief; whereas, were they united, they might make a very respectable front before an enemy.

Our next destination was Msalalo, distant fifteen miles from Kiti. Hamed, after vainly searching for his runaways and the valuable property he had lost, followed us, and tried once more, when he saw us encamped at Msalalo, to pass us; but his pagazis failed him, the march having been so long.

Welled Ngaraiso was reached on the 15th, after a three and a half hours' march. It is a flourishing little place, where provisions were almost twice as cheap as they were at Unyambogi. Two hours' march south is Jiweh la Mkoa, on the old road, towards which the road which we have been travelling since leaving Bagamoyo was now rapidly leading.

Unyanyembe being near, the pagazis and soldiers having behaved excellently during the lengthy marches we had lately made, I purchased a bullock for three doti, and had it slaughtered for their special benefit. I also gave each a khete of red beads to indulge his appetite for whatever little luxury the country afforded. Milk and honey were plentiful, and three frasilah of sweet potatoes were bought for a shukka, equal to about 40 cents of our money.

The 13th June brought us to the last village of Magunda Mkali, in the district of Jiweh la Singa, after a short march of eight miles and three-quarters. Kusuri —so called by the Arabs—is called Konsuli by the Wakimbu who inhabit it. This is, however, but one instance out of many where the Arabs have misnamed or corrupted the native names of villages and districts.

Between Ngaraiso and Kusuri we passed the village of Kirurumo, now a thriving place, with many a thriving village near it. As we passed it, the people came out to greet the Musungu, whose advent had been so long heralded by his loud-mouthed caravans, and whose soldiers had helped them win the day in a battle against their fractious brothers of Jiweh la Mkoa.

A little further on we came across a large khambi, occupied by Sultan bin Mohammed, an Omani Arab of high descent, who, as soon as he was notified of my approach, came out to welcome me, and invite me to his khambi. As his harem lodged in his tent, of course I was not invited thither; but a carpet outside was ready for his visitor. After the usual questions had been asked about my health, the news of the road, the latest from Zanzibar and Oman, he asked me if I had much cloth with me. This was a question often asked by owners of down caravans, and the reason of it is that the Arabs, in their anxiety to make as much as possible of their cloth at the ivory ports on the Tanganika and elsewhere, are liable to forget that they should retain a portion for the down marches. As, indeed, I had but a bale left of the quantity of cloth retained for provisioning my party on the road, when outfitting my caravans on the coast, I could unblushingly reply in the negative. A few minutes later Sheikh Hamed was announced, and immediately appeared, making a profound salutation before the great man, with great pretensions to kiss his hands, and his "Kaif halek" evinced great anxiety to know if Sultan bin Mohammed was "well—quite, quite well." For about five minutes the two Arabs exchanged anxious inquiries as to each other's health and prospects. Then there was a little breathing pause, and the same question which had been propounded to me about my cloth was given to Hamed. "Very little indeed," answered the Sheikh; and yet Sultan bin Mohammed and I, knew well that he had fifty-five bales with his caravan.

The stranger Arab sent his servant with a goat's skin full of the beautiful and white rice of Unyanyembe to my khambi at Kusuri, a gift I felt very much disposed to decline, after the negative I had been compelled to give him. He also offered to convey any letters or small parcels I might wish to send to Zanzibar; and, on being informed that I had left a white man sick at Mpwapwa, he promised to conduct him to Zanzibar.

Soon after arriving at Kusuri, a party of Wasawahili elephant hunters settled at Jiweh la Singa, paid me a visit, under the leadership of an old man who had once been Diwan of Bagamoyo. Though they brought nothing with them as a present, they did not fail to beg for paper, curry, and soap—three things I could very ill spare, as the Makata swamp had made such stock but small.

I halted a day at Kusuri to give my caravan a rest, after its long series of marches, before venturing on the two days' march through the uninhabited wilderness that separates the district of Jiweh la Singa Uyanzi from the district of Tura in Unyanyembe. Hamed preceded, promising to give Sayd bin Salim notice of my coming, and to request him to provide a tembe for me.

On the 15th, having ascertained that Sheikh Thani would be detained several days at Kusuri, owing to the excessive number of his people who were laid up with that dreadful plague of East Africa, the small-pox, I bade him farewell, and my caravan struck out of Kusuri once more for the wilderness and the jungle. A little before noon we halted at the khambi of Mgongo Tembo, or the Elephant's Back—so called from a wave of rock whose back, stained into dark brownness by atmospheric influences, is supposed by the natives to resemble the blue-brown back of this monster of the forest. My caravan had quite an argument with me here, as to whether we should make the terekeza on this day or on the next. The majority was of the opinion that the next day would be the best for a terekeza; but I, being the "bana," consulting my own interests, insisted, not without a flourish or two of my whip, that the terekeza should be made on this day.

Mgongo Tembo, when Burton and Speke passed by, was a promising settlement, cultivating many a fair acre of ground. But two years ago war broke out, for some bold act of its people upon caravans, and the Arabs came from Unyanyembe with their Wangwana servants, attacked them, burnt the villages, and laid waste the work of years. Since that time Mgongo Tembo has been but blackened wrecks of houses, and the fields a sprouting jungle.

A cluster of date palm-trees, overtopping a dense grove close to the mtoni of Mgongo Tembo, revived my recollections of Egypt. The banks of the stream, with their verdant foliage, presented a strange contrast to the brown and dry appearance of the jungle which lay on either side.

At 1 P.M. we resumed our loads and walking staffs, and in a short time were *en route* for the Nghwhalah Mtoni, distant eight and three quarter miles from the khambi. The sun was hot; like a globe of living, seething flame, it flared its heat full on our heads; then as it descended towards the west, scorched the air before it was inhaled by the lungs which craved it. Kibuyus of water were emptied speedily to quench the fierce heat that burned the throat and lungs. One pagazi, stricken heavily with the small-pox, succumbed, and threw himself down on the roadside to die. We never saw him afterwards, for the progress of a caravan on a terekeza, is something like that of a ship in a hurricane. The caravan must proceed—woe befall him who lags behind, for hunger and thirst will overtake him—so must a ship drive before the fierce gale to escape foundering—woe befall him who falls overboard!

An abundance of water, good, sweet, and cool, was found in the bed of the mtoni in deep stony reservoirs. Here also the traces of furious torrents were clearly visible as at Mabunguru.

The Nghwhalah commences in Ubanarama to the north—a country famous for its fine breed of donkeys—and after running south, south-south-west, crosses the

Unyanyembe road, from which point it has more of a westerly turn.

On the 16th we arrived at Madedita, so called from a village which was, but is now no more. Madedita is twelve and a half miles from the Nghwhalah Mtoni. A pool of good water a few hundred yards from the roadside is the only supply caravans can obtain, nearer than Tura in Unyamwezi. The tsetse or chufwa-fly, as called by the Wasawahili, stung us dreadfully, which is a sign that large game visit the pool sometimes, but must not be mistaken for an indication that there is any in the immediate neighbourhood of the water. A single pool so often frequented by passing caravans, which must of necessity halt here, could not be often visited by the animals of the forest, who are shy in this part of Africa of the haunts of man.

At dawn the next day we were on the road striding at a quicker pace than on most days, since we were about to quit Magunda Mkali for the more populated and better land of Unyamwezi. The forest held its own for a wearisomely long time, but at the end of two hours it thinned, then dwarfed into low jungle, and finally vanished altogether, and we had arrived on the soil of Unyamwezi, with a broad plain, swelling, subsiding, and receding in lengthy and grand undulations in our front to one indefinite horizontal line which purpled in the far distance. The view consisted of fields of grain ripening, which followed the contour of the plain, and which rustled merrily before the morning breeze that came laden with the chills of Usagara.

At 8 A.M. we had arrived at the frontier village of Unyamwezi, Eastern Tura, which we invaded without any regard to the disposition of the few inhabitants who lived there. Here we found Nondo, a runaway of Speke's, one of those who had sided with Baraka against Bombay, who, desiring to engage himself with me, was engaging enough to furnish honey and sherbet to his former companions, and lastly to the pagazis. It was only a short breathing pause we made here, having another hour's march to reach Central Tura.

The road from Eastern Tura led through vast fields of millet, Indian corn, holcus sorghum, maweri, or panicum, or bajri, as called by the Arabs; gardens of sweet potatoes, large tracts of cucumbers, water-melons, mush-melons, and pea-nuts which grew in the deep furrows between the ridges of the holcus.

Some broad-leafed plantain plants were also seen in the neighbourhood of the villages, which as we advanced became very numerous. The villages of the Wakimbu are like those of the Wagogo, square, flat-roofed, enclosing an open area, which is sometimes divided into three or four parts by fences of matama stalks.

At Central Tura, where we encamped, we had evidence enough of the rascality of the Wakimbu of Tura. Hamed, who, despite his efforts to reach Unyanyembe in time to sell his cloths before other Arabs came with cloth supplies, was unable to compel his pagazis to the double march every day, was also encamped at Central Tura, together with the Arab servants who preferred Hamed's imbecile haste, to Thani's cautious advance. Our first night in Unyamwezi was very exciting indeed. The Musungu's camp was visited by two crawling thieves, but they were soon made aware by the portentous click of a trigger that the white man's camp was well guarded.

Hamed's camp was next visited; but here also the restlessness of the owner frustrated their attempts, for he was pacing backwards and forwards through his camp, with a loaded gun in his hand; and the thieves were obliged to relinquish the chance of stealing any of his bales. From Hamed's they proceeded to Hassan's camp (one of the Arab servants), where they were successful enough to reach and lay hold of a couple of bales; but, unfortunately, they made a noise, which awoke the vigilant and quick-eared slave, who snatched his loaded musket, and in a moment had shot one of them through the heart. Such were our experiences of the Wakimbu of Tura.

The following morning the neighbouring villages were made aware of the sad accident which had befallen their number; but though they were bold thieves by night, they proved to be soulless cowards by day, and did not resent the deed by word or even a look. This day was a halt, and the inhabitants of Tura brought to the camp such abundant stores of honey and ghee, sweet potatoes and grain, that I was enabled for two doti to feast my men, for the celebration of our arrival in Unyamwezi.

On the 18th the three caravans, Hamed's, Hassan's, and my own, left Tura by a road which zig-zagged towards all points through the tall matama fields. In an hour's time we had passed Tura Perro, or Western Tura, and had entered the forest again, whence the Wakimbu of Tura obtain their honey, and where they excavate deep traps for the elephants with which the forest is said to abound. An hour's march from Western Tura brought us to a ziwa, or pond. There were two, situated in the midst of a small open mbuga, or plain, which, even at this late season, was yet soft from the water which overflows it during the rainy season. After resting three hours, we started on the tarekeza, or afternoon march.

It was one and the same forest that we had entered soon after leaving Western Tura, that we travelled through until we reached the Kwala Mtoni, or, as Burton has misnamed it on his map, "Kwale." The water of this mtoni is contained in large ponds, or deep depressions in the wide and crooked gully of Kwala. In these ponds a species of mud-fish was found, off one of which I made a meal, by no means to be despised by one who had not tasted fish since leaving Bagamoyo. Probably, if I had my choice, being, when occasion demands it, rather fastidious in my tastes, I would not select the mud-fish.

From Tura to the Kwala Mtoni is seventeen and a half miles, a distance which, however easy it may be traversed once a fortnight, assumes a prodigious length when one has to travel it almost every other day, at least, so my pagazis, soldiers, and followers found it, and their murmurs were very loud when I ordered the signal to be sounded on the march. Abdul Kader, the tailor who had attached himself to me, as a man ready-handed at all things, from mending a pair of pants, making a delicate *entremets*, or shooting an elephant, but whom the interior proved to be the weakliest of the weakly, unfit for anything except eating and drinking—almost succumbed on this march.

Long ago the little stock of goods which Abdul had brought from Zanzibar folded in a pocket-handkerchief, and with which he was about to buy ivory and slaves, and make his fortune in the famed land of Unyamwezi, had disappeared with the great eminent hopes he had built on them, like those of Alnaschar the unfortunate owner of crockery in the Arabian tale. He came to me as we prepared for the march, with a most dolorous tale about his approaching death, which he felt in his bones, and weary back: his legs would barely hold him up; in short, he had utterly collapsed—would I take mercy on him, and let him depart? The cause of this extraordinary request, so unlike the spirit with which he had left Zanzibar, eager to possess the ivory and slaves of Unyamwezi, was that on the last long march two of my donkeys being dead, I had ordered that the two saddles which they had carried, should be Abdul Kader's load to Unyanyembe. The weight of the saddles was 16 lbs., as the spring balance-scale indicated, yet Abdul Kader became weary of life, as he counted the long marches that intervened between the mtoni and Unyanyembe. On the ground he fell prone, to kiss my feet, begging me in the name of God to permit him to depart.

As I had had some experience of Hindoos, Malabarese, and coolies in Abyssinia, I knew exactly how to deal with a case like this. Unhesitatingly I granted the request as soon as asked, for as much tired as Abdul Kader said he was of life, I was with Abdul Kader's worthlessness. But the Hindi did not want to be left in the jungle, he said, but after arriving in Unyanyembe. "Oh," said I, "then you must reach Unyanyembe first; in the meanwhile you will carry those saddles there for the food which you must eat." "Have you no mercy?" he implored. "None for such an incorrigibly lazy wretch as you," I replied, accompanying my words with a vigorous and most necessary application of my donkey lash, which resuscitated the moribund into active, if not useful life.

I confess I was somewhat ill-tempered on the morning of the 18th, somewhat tired also, and my kirangozi came in for a fair share of scolding. I had no energetic Muinyi Kidogo such as Burton had, otherwise I should have valued such a man, methinks, much more highly than my predecessor. Many a time I sighed for such a man, when, all my eloquence failing to inspire my caravan for the march, I had recourse to threats, and sometimes to flogging right and left to rouse the pagazis and soldiers up. Upon every occasion of a terekeza it was I who had to order, no one ever had occasion to request that I should make one—it was I who had to argue its utility and necessity, I who was obliged to cut short Bombay's vain words of pleading, and rouse the pagazis out of the khambi by premonitory cracks of my whip.

Very passionate were my reproaches to the kirangozi for his mulish obtuseness in not perceiving that as we neared Unyanyembe I could not fail to remember when I bakshished those who had pleased me—that the kirangozi, instead of going when I told him, always abided by the advice of the pagazis. I asked him with how many doti he had been bribed by the pagazis to make small marches and long halts. He replied that not one of the pagazis was going to give him any cloth that he knew of. "Well, then," I asked, "how many doti could I give you if you pleased me, and did what I told you?" "Oh, many, many!" he answered. "Very well, then," I said, "take up your load, and let me see from here to Unyanyembe how hard and how fast you can walk;" upon which he promised most solemnly to abide by my word, only to march when I ordered him, to halt only when I deemed it necessary.

As the march to Rubuga was eighteen and three-quarter miles, the pagazis walked fast and long without resting. The kirangozi had made, as he had promised, his legs and arms strong with a vengeance, for he travelled the whole distance to Rubuga Central without a halt, much to the dismay of his train of pagazis, who thought he was gone mad. Hitherto, we had been compelled by the kirangozi to make an afternoon march when the distance was but fifteen or sixteen miles.

Rubuga, in the days of Burton, according to his book, was a prosperous district. Even when we passed, the evidences of wealth and prosperity which it possessed formerly, were plain enough in the wide extent of its grain fields, which stretched to the right and left of the Unyanyembe road for many a mile. But they were only evidences, of what once were numerous villages, a well-cultivated and populous district, rich in herds of cattle and stores of grain. All the villages are burnt down, the people have been driven north three or four days from Rubuga, the cattle were taken by force, the grain fields were left standing, to be overgrown with jungle and rank weeds. We passed village after village that had been burnt, and were mere blackened heaps of charred timber and smoked clay; field after field of grain ripe years ago was yet standing in the midst of a crop of gums and thorns, mimosa and kolquall.

We arrived at the village, occupied by about sixty Wangwana, who have settled here to make a living by buying and selling ivory. Food is provided for them in the deserted fields of the people of Rubuga. We were very tired and heated from the long march, but the pagazis had all arrived by 3 P.M.

At the Wangwana village we met Amer bin Sultan, the very type of an old Arab sheikh, such as we read of in books, with a snowy beard, and a clean reverend face, who was returning to Zanzibar after a ten years' residence in Unyanyembe. He presented me with a goat, and a goat-skin full of rice; a most acceptable gift in a place where a goat cost five shukkas.

After a day's halt at Rubuga, during which I despatched soldiers to notify Sheikh Sayd bin Salim and Sheikh bin Nasib, the two chief dignitaries of Unyanyembe, of my coming, on the 21st of June we resumed the march for Kigwa, distant five hours. The road ran through another forest similar to that which separated Tura from Rubuga, the country rapidly sloping as we proceeded westward. Kigwa we found to have been visited by the same vengeance which rendered Rubuga such a waste.

The next day, after a three and a half hours' rapid march, we crossed the mtoni—which was no mtoni—separating Kigwa from Unyanyembe district, and after a short halt to quench our thirst, in three and a half hours more arrived at Shiza. It was a most delightful march, though a long one, for its picturesqueness of scenery which every few minutes was revealed, and the proofs we everywhere saw of the peaceable and industrious disposition of the people. A short half hour from Shiza we beheld the undulating plain wherein the Arabs have chosen to situate the central depot which commands such a wide and extensive field of trade. The lowing of cattle and the bleating of the goats and sheep were everywhere heard, giving the country a happy, pastoral aspect.

The Sultan of Shiza desired me to celebrate my arrival in Unyanyembe, with a five-gallon jar of pombe, which he brought for that purpose.

As the pombe was but stale ale in taste, and milk and water in color, after drinking a small glassful I passed it to the delighted soldiers and pagazis. At my request the Sultan brought a fine fat bullock, for which he accepted four and a half doti of Merikani. The bullock was immediately slaughtered and served out to the caravan as a farewell feast.

No one slept much that night, and long before the dawn the fires were lit, and great steaks were broiling, that their stomachs might rejoice before parting with the Musungu, whose bounty they had so often tasted. Six rounds of powder were served to each soldier and pagazi who owned a gun, to fire away when we should be near the Arab houses. The meanest pagazi had his best cloth about his loins,s and some were exceedingly brave in gorgeous Ulyah "Ccombeesa Poonga" and crimson "Jawah," the glossy "Rehani," and the neat "Dabwani." The soldiers were mustered in new tarbooshes, and the long white shirts of the Mrima and the Island. For this was the great and happy day which had been on our tongues ever since quitting the coast, for which we had made those noted marches latterly—one hundred and seventy-eight and a half miles in sixteen days, including pauses—something over eleven miles a day!

The signal sounded, and the caravan was joyfully off with banners flying, and trumpets and horns blaring. A short two and a half hours' march brought us within sight of Kwikuru, which is about two miles south of Tabora, the main Arab town; on the outside of which we saw a long line of men in clean shirts, whereat we opened our charged batteries, and fired a volley of small arms such as Kwikuru seldom heard before. The pagazis closed up and adopted the swagger of veterans: the soldiers blazed away uninterruptedly, while I, seeing that the Arabs were advancing towards me, left the ranks, and held out my hand, which was immediately grasped by Sheikh Sayd bin Salim, and then by about two dozen people, and thus our *entrée* into Unyanyembe was effected.

UGOGO MAN AND WOMAN.

CHAPTER VII.

GEOGRAPHICAL AND ETHNOGRAPHICAL REMARKS.

THE geography of the country through which we have just traversed has been described already under its various aspects—as we were informed through native reports, and as we saw it ourselves—in the preceding pages. But it would be as well to summarise, as clearly as possible, in a chapter specially devoted to the geography and ethnography of the country, what additional knowledge we have gained of the interior of Africa.

There were three routes to Unyanyembe from Bagamoyo, either of which might have been taken by our Expedition; but two of them were already known by the minute description which we have received from my predecessors in this part of Africa—Messrs. Burton, Speke, and Grant. There was one, a more northern and direct route to Unyanyembe, which was said to lead through Northern Uzaramo, Ukwere, Ukami, Udoe, Useguhha or Usegura, Usagara, Ugogo, Uyanzi, thence to Unyamwezi. It was this which I adopted.

As the crow flies, or, in geographical parlance, rectilineally, the distance from Bagamoyo to Unyanyembe is nearly 6° of longitude, or three hundred and sixty miles. The sinuosity of the path taken by caravans, which in Africa is adapted to the lay of the country, and follows the easier, less dangerous, more available course, extends the distance to be traversed, to over five hundred and twenty miles. I reckon of course by the time occupied by the marches, and the rate of progress, which I presume to be neither more nor less than 2·5 miles per hour.

That portion of country extending from Bagamoyo to Kikoka is called the "Mrima"—the hill; it may also be designated Sawahili, and also Zanguebar. We recognize the latter name as figuring prominently in our ancient maps, as the designation given to a lengthy strip of sea-coast extending from the mouth of the Jub, to Cape Delgado, or from the equator to S. lat. 10° 41″. Sawahili means the "sea-coast," hence the people who live on this sea-coast of Zanguebar are called Wasawahili, and their language, Kisawahili. And it may here be mentioned that the prefix U, means country, Wa, for persons in the plural, M, is the singular for one person. Thus U-zaramo, means country of Zaramo; Wa-zaramo, would mean people of Zaramo; M-zaramo, one person of Zaramo; Ki-zaramo, language of Zaramo.

Bagamoyo is a small port on the Mrima, Sawahili, or Zanguebar coast, which stands nearly opposite the port of Zanzibar, whither caravans generally bound for Unyanyembe land. A few miles higher up, north, are the ports of Whinde and Saadani, situated one on each side of the mouth of the River Wami. Four miles south of Bagamoyo is Kaole, a small village which contains a gurayza or fort, with about a dozen Baluches for a garrison. South of Kaole is Konduchi, and southward still is Dar Salaam, a new port established by the late Sultan. South of Dar Salaam is Mbuamaji, quite an important rendezvous for caravans bound for the interior. About sixty miles south of Mbuamaji is the most northern mouth of the Rufiji river, opposite the island of Mafia or Monfia; and a degree further south we come to the famous port of Kilwa, that great entrepôt of slave traders.

The strip of land known as the Mrima is a most important one in the eyes of the civilized world, for upon here, now that the slave question is being agitated, our attention should be seriously concentrated. Its importance to us, arises from the fact that by means of its ports, Mombasah, Bueni, Saadani, Whinde, Bagamoyo, Kaole, Konduchi, Dar Salaam, Mbuamaji, and Kilwa, three-fourths of the slaves captured, kidnapped, or bought in the interior, are shipped abroad. This fact should be remembered.

Once we cross the Kingani River on our road to Unyanyembe, we may be said to have left the country of the Wamrima, and to have touched upon the most northern extremity of Uzaramo. The Sultan of Zanzibar has established a post at Kikoka, four miles west of the Kingani, and by this has made good his claim to call the ten miles of country from Bagamoyo to Kikoka his own. As there are no inhabitants between the river and Kikoka, his claim is not disputed.

On our right—which is to the north of the Unyanyembe road—stretches Ukwere, two days' march, or twenty-five miles. West, Ukwere extends from Rosako to Kisemo, a distance of sixty miles. From Kisemo, west, half-way to Mikeseh, or east of the Kira Peak, extends Ukami. This country formerly stretched as far, as and included Simbamwenni, the capital of the Waseguhha; but the Wadoe, their northern neighbours, invaded and conquered the inhabitants, who were in their turn conquered by the powerful tribes of the Waseguhha. From Kira Peak to Ulagalla is included under the name of Udoe, still a large country, which overlaps, on the north, Ukami, eastward beyond Ukwere to the Mrima, or the coast. This portion, between Kira Peak and Ulagalla is the south-western extremity of the territory of the Wadoe.

Useguhha begins at Ulagalla, and its western extremity is on the eastern bank of the Makata.

The whole of this country, embracing these several districts of Ukwere, Ukami, Udoe, and Useguhha, is drained by the Kingani, and its tributaries—or, I should say, by its chief tributary, the Ungerengeri. By adopting this northern route I was enabled to discover the principal branch of the Kingani in the Ungerengeri, called Rufu by the natives, as it enters into the main river. Speke and Grant discovered the Mgeta, another branch, flowing from west of the Mkambaku range, and circling southerly round about, thus draining the whole of Ukutu and Uzaramo. The area of land drained by the Kingani and its tributaries may be estimated at not more than twelve thousand square miles.

It will be noticed by those who study African geography, that Speke has placed on his map, near long. E. 37°, a range of mountains called the Mkambaku range, extending north at least 1°. That part of the range called the "Mkambaku" our Expedition saw, but the most northern portion of it is known as the Uruguru mountains. At the foot of its most northern extremity, as the range deflects eastward, the capital of southern Useguhha, Simbamwenni, is situated.

Speke says, in 'Journal of the Discovery of the Sources of the Nile,' p. 32: "Where the Kingani itself rises, I never could find out; though I have heard that its source lies in a gurgling spring on the eastern face of the Mkambaku; by which account the Mgeta is made the longer branch of the two." By whatever name we distinguish this river—whether it be the Kingani, or the Hamdallah, as the Wamrima call it, or the Rufu, as the Wakwere, Wakami, Wadoe, and Waseguhha call it—its source can be no longer matter of conjecture. Speke has discovered that the Mgeta, one of the two main branches, rises on the western slope of the Mkambaku, and has seen it sweeping round the south of Khutu. I have discovered that the second main branch—called Ungerengeri—rises west of the Mkambaku, or rather, the Uruguru mountains, and that it sweeps northward through Useguhha and Udoe to southern Ukwere, and Ukami, and thence into the Kingani. This river by the natives is known as the Rufu from the time it enters Ukwere, to its exit into the ocean three miles north of Bagamoyo. To the Arabs, however, this river, from the point of confluence of the several branches, is known as the Kingani. Under that name it will be best known to students of African travellers' maps.

The highest altitude reached by our Expedition between Bagamoyo and Simbamwenni in Useguhha, did not exceed one thousand feet, and, excepting for a cone here and there visible to the north of Kingaru Hera, and known as Dilima peaks, and in the neighbourhood of Mikeseh, the land appears to rise gradually, in a series of lengthy and parallel undulations, extensively wooded, jungly, or in smooth grassy ridges, the slopes falling easterly and westerly into depressions like wave-troughs, by means of which the drainage is carried southerly and south-westerly into the Ungerengeri.

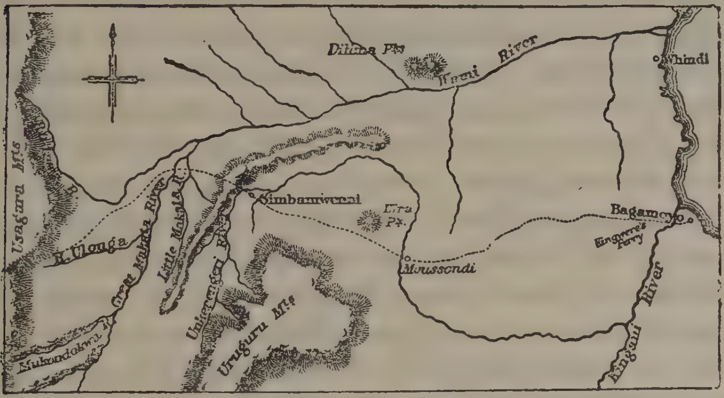
Beyond Simbamwenni and westward of the Ungerengeri we suddenly front towering and isolated cones with truncated summits, and these cones connected one with another by means of low saddles, or ridges, to an isolated group of mountains at least two thousand feet above the Ungerengeri, at the base of which, on the northern side of this stream, a lengthy, wooded ridge sweeps easterly, separating the Ungerengeri from the Wami.

This bold aspect of the country is most gratifying to the eye of the stranger, who fancies that he is about to ascend higher altitudes, and obtain immunity from the fevers, which those ignorant of the nature of the African interior attribute only to the jungles and marshes of the maritime region.

In one march, however, from Simbamwenni by a pass between the mountain group, we arrive at Simbo, whence we may obtain a clear view of the broad valley of the Great Makata, bounded by the high and bold group at our backs, on the east, by the glorious mountain range of Usagara, whose bold peaks and aspiring summits are buried in the clouds.

I have devoted much time to the elucidation of the difference existing between the Kingani and the Wami river. It is only after satisfying myself that I have ventured to assert that the difference between these rivers is clear and positive. Arabs, Wamrima and natives, and my own personal knowledge of the country and its superficial configuration, tend to establish beyond further doubt that the Kingani and the Wami are two separate and entirely distinct rivers. The Kingani enters the sea three miles north of Bagamoyo; the Wami at nearly half-way between the ports of Whinde and Sa'adani.

The following plan will best illustrate the water-system of this region:



We have found that the Ungerengeri flows south-westerly to the Kingani, and from this point where we stand (Simbo) the formation of the country is clearly visible. On our right, as we turn our faces west, is the valley of the Makata, or the Wami, flowing northward and eastward; on our left is the valley of the Ungerengeri with the river flowing, after a bold sweep northward, to the south-east. Our line of march hither from Bagamoyo has been nearly equi-distant from each river, with the Wami on our right and the Ungerengeri, or the Kingani, on our left.

It will be seen, on reference to the above diagram, how one and the same river bears three or four distinctly different names, and how very easily travellers may be baffled in the pursuit of geographical information. Like the Kingani with its series of different designations, the river issuing into the sea between the Mohammedan ports of Whinde and Sa'adani is called the Wami, the Rudewa, the Makata, and the Mukondokwa.

The first important stream which we find as we enter the broad plain, or the valley of Makata, is the Little Makata, which, though fordable at all seasons, becomes a swift and dangerous river to travellers in the height of the Masika season. After the Little Makata we come to a deep nullah which overflows with water during the rains, and a few hundred yards beyond we come to the Great Makata—the Wami, or the Mukondokwa—a stream capable of expanding into a mighty river five or six hundred yards broad. Beyond the Great Makata we come to the Mbengerenga, a branch of the Rudewa, which here flows parallel with our line of march, emptying into the Wami at or near the confluence of the Great Makata with the Little Makata. Crossing the Mbengerenga, we presently come to another small branch of the Rudewa, and see the Rudewa itself, as it approaches our road and whirls round sharply to the east. Beyond this, as we turn our faces south-west, we come to the Uronga, a river rising in Mundu, northern Usagara, and, having reached our camp at Rehenneko, we strike across an angle of the mountains and arrive at the Makata again under the name of the Mukondokwa, as it is called by the Wasagara. Pursuing our way up the Mukondokwa Pass, along the same route pursued by Capts. Burton and Speke, we arrive at a point in this valley where our various routes diverge, that of Burton and Speke leading up and along the summit of the Rubeho range, ours inclining northward considerably, yet keeping on a parallel line with their route with an interval of from twenty to thirty miles between.

Burton, soon after leaving the valley of the Mukondokwa, came to a plateau which "ended in a descent with rapid slopes, over falls and steps of rock and boulder, into the basin of the Rumuma river. It is a southern influent, or a bifurcation of the Mukondokwa, and it drains the hills to the south-west of the Rumuma district, whereas the main stream arising in the highlands of the Wahumba, or Wamusai, carries off the waters of the lands to the west."

Not eleven miles from the ford where Burton and Speke's and my own route parted, I came to a lake, the Lake Ugombo, which, though of limited dimensions, plays a small part in the water system of East Africa. For this small lake, barely three miles in length, receives the Rumuma and discharges it through a narrow chasm into the Mukondokwa. "The main-stream does not rise in the highlands of the Wahumba, or the Wamusai, nor does it carry the waters of the lands on the west;" but rises at least one degree north of the latitude of Ugombo in the mountains of Kema Kaguru, in what is known in Kisagara as Mundu, which is also the birthplace of the stream Uronga, or Ulonga.

Among the other feeders of this Mukondokwa river besides the Rumuma are the streams Rufuta and Mdunku, which rise in Kivya, the Myombo and Mdunwi.

The "lands on the west" of the longitude of Rubeho —at least, on our route—are drained by means of nullahs, which, on account of the general drought in this dry region, fail to carry the water into any stream. These nullahs, or dry water-courses, or deepened fiumaras—which we in America would call gulches—absorb all the water that flows into them from the sterile regions beyond, or west of the Usagara mountains. The Mukondokwa river runs from north to south through the mountains of Usagara, thence swerving easterly, serves to convey the waters discharged into it by the Rufuta, Rumuma, Myombo, and Mdunwi, easterly into the Indian Ocean.

The rainfall west of Usagara is so slight that the sandy fiumaras, or gulches, seldom contribute any water to the Rufiji river. For from westward of Ugogi to Tura, in Unyamwezi, the drainage slopes southwards into the Ruhwha, or the Rufiji River.

That sterile region, which comprises the northern Marenga Mkali, the whole of Ugogo and southern Uhumba, or Umasai, Ihange, and Mbogwe, have no drainage. Whatever rain falls is received by the shallow pools or small lakes, which dot the interior of this region so thickly. During the dry season evaporation takes place, and the water is drained from these pools by the steady north-east monsoons into the grander reservoirs of the lakes occupied by the Victoria N'Yanza, and thence into the Nile. After the evaporation has taken place, the surface of this sterile region exhibits large expanses of country covered with saline incrustations, or with nitrate of soda. Those visible west of Chaga, in the district of Angaruka, the saline lagoons of Balibali, west of Kikui, and those seen by myself north of Mizanza, must tend to establish this theory.

Beyond Ugogo the only streams worth mentioning here are the Mdaburu and the Mabunguru, which flow southerly into the Kisigo, which is placed one degree south of Kiwyeh. We are told that it is an important stream, and swift, by the Wagogo of Kiwyeh, and that it is haunted by numbers of hippopotami and crocodiles. The Kisigo empties into the Rufiji.

Briefly it may be said of our march to Unyanyembe that its first stage was across the basin of the Kingani; the second, across the basin of the Wami; the third, across the water-shed of the Wami; the fourth, across the most northern portion of the basin of the Ruhwha, and the waterless region; and the fifth, into the borders of the water-shed of the Lake Tanganika.

Now, the reader might ask—and very properly too—"What profiteth it all—these tiresome descriptions of rivers, &c., with such odd, incomprehensible names?"

Patience! reader; that is precisely the point I was about to arrive at. If you look at the map accompanying this book, you will perceive the suggestion conveyed to you by my description of two particular rivers.

First, it appears to me, that the Wami river is available for commerce. I know that it can be navigated with ease by light-draught steamers drawing two or three feet—for a distance of two degrees rectilineally, or nearly two hundred miles by water—from the port of Whinde to Mbumi, Usagara. All impediments to free navigation—such as the mangrove trees which on either bank in some places, especially near Kigongo's village, interlace their far-spreading branches—could be easily removed by an axe.

Mbumi is within a couple of miles from the foot of the Usagara mountains, the sanatoria of East Africa.

The distance from Whinde to Mbumi could with ease be traversed by a steamer in four days.

Who wishes to civilize Africa? Who wishes to open trade direct with Usagara, Useguhha, Ukutu, Uhehe; to get the ivory, the sugar, the cotton, the orchilla-weed, the indigo, and the grain of these countries? Here is an opportunity!

Four days by steamer bring the missionary to the healthy uplands of Africa, where he can live amongst the gentle Wasagara without fear or alarm; where he can enjoy the luxuries of civilized life without fear of being deprived of them, amid the most beautiful and picturesque scenes a poetic fancy could imagine! Here is the greenest verdure, purest water; here are valleys teeming with grain stalks, forests of tamarind, mimosa, gum-copal tree; here is the gigantic mvule, the stately mparamusi, the beautiful palm—a scene such as only a tropic sky covers! Health and abundance of food are assured to the missionary; gentle people are at his feet ready to welcome him! Except civilized society, nothing that the soul of man can desire is lacking here!

From the village of Kadetamare a score of admirable mission sites are available, with fine health-giving breezes blowing over them, water in abundance at their feet, fertility unsurpassed around them, with docile, good-tempered people dwelling everywhere at peace with each other, and all travellers and neighbours.

As the passes of Olympus unlocked the gates of the Eastern empire to the hordes of Othman; as the passes of Kumaylé and Suru admitted the British into Abyssinia—so the passes of the Mukondokwa may admit the Gospel and its beneficent influences into the heart of savage Africa.

I can fancy old Kadetamare rubbing his hands with glee at the sight of the white man coming to teach his people the words of the "Mulungu"—the Sky Spirit; how to sow, and reap, and build houses; how to cure their sick, how to make themselves comfortable;—in short, how to be civilized. But the missionary, to be successful, must know his duties as well as a thorough sailor must know how to reef, hand, and steer. He must be no kid-glove, effeminate man, no journal writer, no disputatious polemic, no silken stole and chasuble-loving priest—but a thorough earnest laborer in the garden of the Lord—a man of the David Livingstone, or of the Robert Moffatt stamp.

The other river, the Rufiji or Ruhwha, is a still more important stream than the Wami. It is a much longer river, and discharges twice as much water into the Indian Ocean. It rises near some mountains about one hundred miles south-west of Ubena. Kisigo river, the most northern and most important affluent of the Ruhwha, is supposed to flow into it near E. longitude 35°; from the confluence to the sea, the Ruhwha has a length of 4° of direct longitude. This fact of itself must prove its importance and rank among the rivers of East Africa. Very little is known of it except that it is navigable by small boats for eight tides, or say sixty miles up; that Banyans trade for this distance up the river, and collect the ivory from the tribes on its banks.

The traveller perceives a striking contrast between the lower and upper regions, or the maritime and sterile regions, in the growth of vegetation. In the valleys of the Ungerengeri and Wami, the power of production in the soil is remarkable. The rich black alluvial, the deposit for many ages of these rivers, knows no bounds to its fertility. Every species of vegetation is shot up to gigantic proportions. The grass stalks are enlarged to the size of ordinary bamboo; and the trees, such as the mparamusi, and the mvule-trees, have stems a hundred feet high. The Indian corn grown in these valleys eclipses the finest crops in the bottom lands of Arkansas, Missouri, and Mississippi. The holcus sorghum, or matama, have stalks rivalling in thickness the finest sugar-cane, and some reach to the height of twelve feet. The density of the jungles is something appalling, and the variety of species of plants and trees would task the skill of the most learned botanists to class them.

In my diurnal accounts of our marches and experiences I have attempted to sketch out the nature of the country as it appeared to us during the time of transit. Through the maritime region our transit occurred during the Masika season, and as it progressed we were enabled to observe its effect on the grasses.

When the Masika season begins, these grasses hardly ever appear above the knee; but towards the end, they have grown to their full height. A month after the Masika, when they present quite a bleached appearance, the natives set fire to them, and the country for days afterwards, resounds with the roar of the fierce conflagrations, canopied by a thick curtain of black smoke, which even lends its sombre coloring to the sky.

When these fires have raged through the forests, and have devoured the grass, then is the best time for travelling. Progress is easy, and almost double the number of marches is effected, than while the grass presents constant impediments, from its density and height. The eye is then permitted to rove free over the swelling contours and low knolls, without the glance being disturbed by a young forest of thick grasses directly between you and the pleasing prospect, over whose tops only a man fifteen feet high could gratify his love of natural scenery.

It were a difficult task to distinguish nice ethnical differences between the Wamrima and the more occidental Washensi. I am constantly wondering how Capt. Burton has been able to draw his fine lines—which, I must assure the reader, are imperceptible to ordinary men like myself.

After Zanzibar, our *début* into Africa is made viâ Bagamoyo. At this place we may see Wangindo, Wasawahili, Warori, Wagogo, Wanyamwezi, Waseguhha, and Wasagara; yet it would be a difficult task for any person, at mere sight of their features or dresses, to note the differences. Only by certain customs or distinctive marks, such as tattooing, puncturing of the lobes of the ears, ornaments, wearing the hair, &c., which would appear at first too trivial to note, could one discriminate between the various tribal representatives. There are certainly differences, but not so varied or marked as they are reported.

The Wasawahili—of course through their intercourse with semi-civilization—present us with a race, or tribe, influenced by a state of semi-civilized society, and are, consequently, better dressed, and appear to better advantage than their more savage brethren further west. As it is said that underneath the Russian skin lies the Tartar, so it may be said that underneath the snowy dish-dasheh, or shirt, of the Msawahili one will find the true barbarian. In the street, or bazaar, he appears semi-Arabized; his suavity of manner, his prostrations and genuflexions, the patois he speaks, all prove his contact and affinity with the dominant race, whose subject he is.

Once out of the coast towns, in the Washensi villages, he sheds the shirt that had half civilized him, and appears in all his deep blackness of skin, prognathous jaws, thick lips—the pure negro and barbarian. Not the keenest eye could detect a difference between him and the Mshensi, unless his attention had been drawn to the fact that the two men were of different tribes.

The next tribe to which we are introduced are the Wakwere, who occupy a limited extent of country between the Wazaramo and the Wadoe. They are the first representatives of the pure barbarian the traveller meets when but two days' journey from the sea-coast. They are a timid tribe, and a very unlikely people to commence an attack upon any body of men for mere plunder's sake. They have not a very good reputation among the Arab and Wasawahili traders. They are said to be exceedingly dishonest, of which I have not the least doubt. They furnished me with good grounds for believing these reports while encamped at Kingaru-Hera and Imbiki. The chiefs of the more eastern part of Ukwere profess nominal allegiance to the Diwans of the Mrima. They have selected the densest jungles wherein to establish their villages. Every avenue into one of their valleys is jealously guarded by strong wooden narrow gates, seldom over 4½ feet high, and so narrow sometimes that one must enter sideways.

These jungle islets, which in particular dot the extent of Ukwere, present formidable obstacles to a naked enemy. The plants, bushes, and young trees which form their natural defence are generally of the aloetic and thorny species, growing so dense, interlaced one with another, that the hardiest and most desperate robber would not brave the formidable array of sharp thorns which bristle everywhere.

Some of these jungle islets are infested with gangs of banditti, who seldom fail to take advantage of the weakness of a single wayfarer, more especially if he be a Mgwana, a freeman of Zanzibar, as every negro resident of the island of Zanzibar is distinguished by the Washensi natives of the interior.

A GATE OF A VILLAGE.

I should estimate the population of Ukwere, allowing about 100 villages to this territory (which is not more than thirty miles square, its bounds on the south being the Rufu river, and on the north the river Wami), at not more than 5000 souls. Were all these banded together under the command of one chief, the Wakwere might become a powerful tribe.

After the Wakwere we come to the Wakami, a remnant of a once grand nation which occupied the lands from the Ungerengeri to the Great Makata River. Frequent wars with the Wadoe and the Waseguhha have reduced them to a narrow belt of country, ten rectilinear miles across, which may be said to be comprised between Kira Peak and the stony ridge bounding the valley of the Ungerengeri on the east, within a couple of miles from the east bank of the river.

They are as numerous as bees in the Ungerengeri valley. Its unsurpassed fertility has been a great inducement to retain for these people the distinction of a tribe. By the means of a spy-glass one may see, as he stands on that stony ridge looking down into the fair valley, clusters of brown huts visible amid bosky clumps, fulness and plenty all over the valley, and may count easily over a hundred villages.

From Ukami we pass to Southern Udoe, and find a warlike, fine-looking people, with a far more intelligent cast of features, and a shade lighter than the Wakami and Wakwere—a people who are full of traditions of race, a people who have boldly rushed to war upon the slightest encroachment upon their territories, and who have bravely defended themselves against the Waseguhha and Wakami, as well as against nomadic marauders from Uhumba.

Udoe, in appearance, is amongst the most picturesque countries between the sea and Unyanyembe. Great cones shoot upward above the everlasting forests, tipped by the light fleecy clouds, through which the warm glowing sun darts its rays, bathing the whole in sunlight, which brings out of those globes of foliage which rise in tier after tier to the summits of the hills, colors which would mock the most ambitious painter's efforts at imitation. Udoe first evokes the traveller's love of natural beauty after leaving the sea: her roads lead him up along the sharp spines of hilly ridges, whence he may look down upon forest-clad slopes, declining on either side of him into the depths of deep valleys, to rise up beyond into aspiring cones which kiss the sky, or into a high ridge with deep concentric folds, which almost tempt one to undergo much labor in exploring them, for the provoking air of mystery in which they seem to be enwrapped. Supposing a Byron saw some of these scenes in Udoe, he would be inclined to say,—

> Morn dawns; and with it stern Udoe's hills,
> Dark Uruguru's rocks, and Kira's peak,
> Robed half in mist, bedewed with various rills,
> Arrayed in many a dun and purple streak.

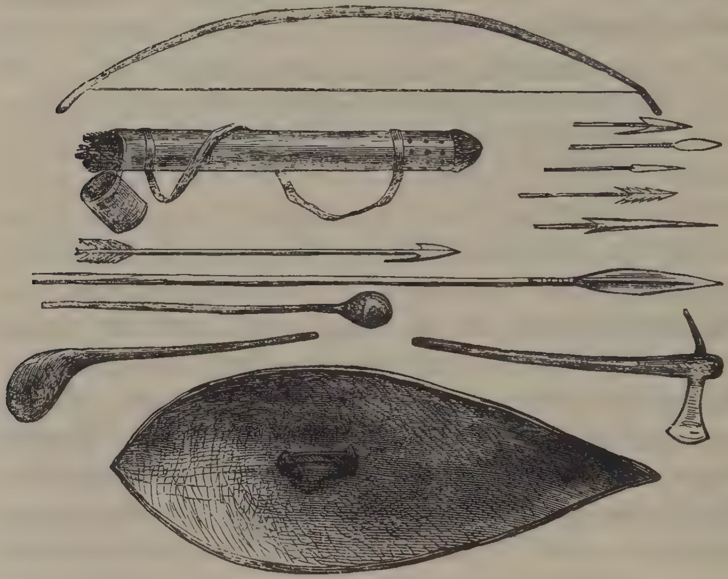
And how true each word would be!

What a tale this tribe could relate of the slave-traders' deeds! Attacked by the joint forces of the Waseguhha from the west and north, and the slave-traders of Whinde and Sa'adani from the east, the Wadoe have seen their wives and little ones carried into slavery a hundred times, and district after district taken from their country and attached to Useguhha. For the people of Useguhha were hired to attack their neighbours the Wadoe by the Whinde slave-traders, and were also armed with muskets and supplied with ammunition by them to effect large and repeated captures of Wadoe slaves. The people of this tribe, especially women and children, so superior in physique and intelligence to the servile races by which they were surrounded, were eagerly sought for as concubines and domestics by the lustful Mohammedans.

This tribe we first note to have distinctive tribal marks—by a line of punctures extending lengthwise on each side of the face, and a chipping of the two inner sides of the two middle teeth of the upper row.

The arms of this tribe are similar to the arms of the

Wakami and Wakwere, and consist of a bow and arrows, a shield, a couple of light spears or assegais, a long knife, a handy little battleaxe, and a club with a large knob at one end of it, which latter is dexterously swung at the head of an enemy, inflicting a stunning and sometimes a fatal blow.



WEAPONS OF WAR.

Emerging from the forests of Mikeseh we enter the territory of the Waseguhha, or Wasegura,* as the Arabs wrongly call this country. Useguhha extends over two degrees in length, and its greatest breadth is ninety geographical miles. It has two main divisions, that of Southern Useguhha from Uruguru to the Wami

---

* All the interior tribes know this tribe as the Waseguhha, and none other. Burton adopts the Arabic corrupted term Wasegura. Krapf, New, Wakefield and myself have adopted the native pronunciation, Waseguhha.

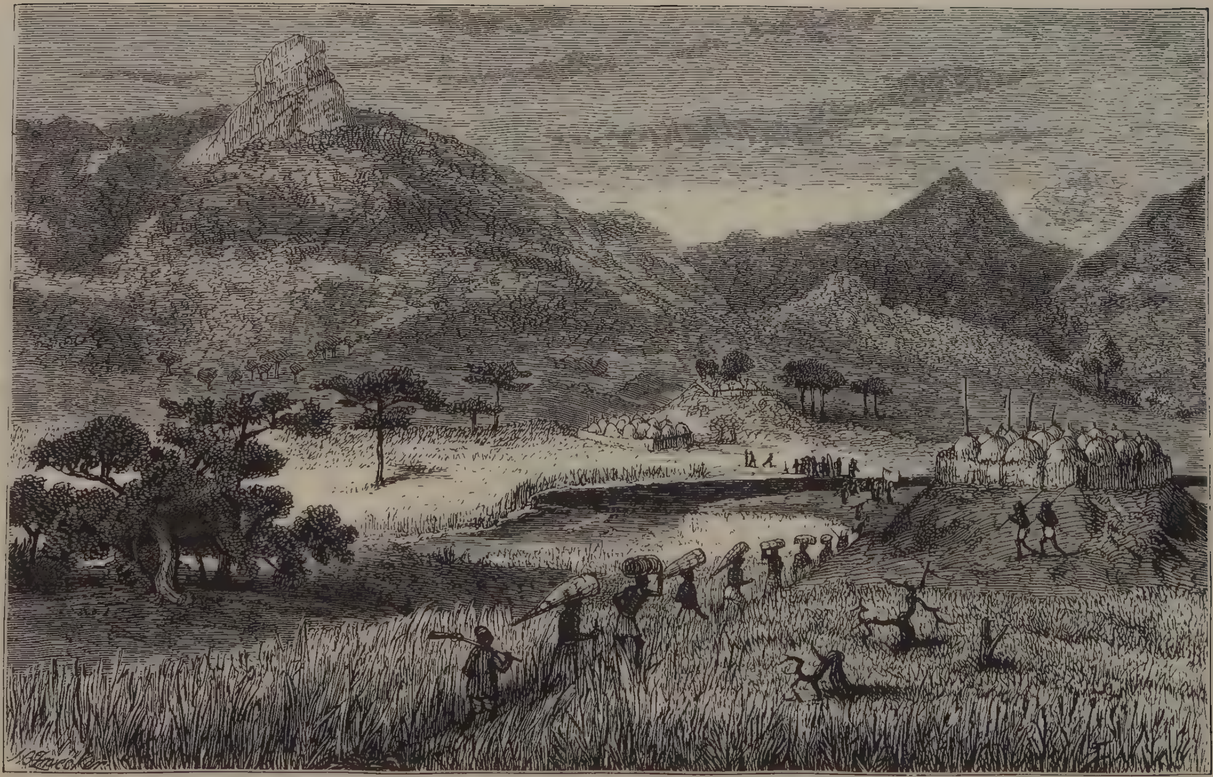
River, and Northern Useguhha, under the chieftain Moto, from the Wami River to Umagassi and Usumbara.

In the rise of this tribe into prominence and power, we have an example before us of the vicissitudes which the barbarian races have experienced during ages. Thirty years ago the Waseguhha were limited to a narrow belt of country between the Wasambara and the Wadoe. The Wadoe were the supreme race east of the Usagara mountains, but the slave-traders, bringing ruin with them, betrayed them into the hands of organized banditti, consisting of renegade Wamrima, runaway slaves, offenders against the law of Zanzibar, convicts, and kidnappers, which infested the forests between Usagara and the sea. These bands made war on some of the sub-tribes of the Wadoe, and since the slaves of this tribe were in great demand, and were readily bought owing to their beauty of form, their fine physique and general superiority, these raids against the tribe increased until in a few years the Wadoe were almost driven entirely away from the fair valleys and beauteous country of the Ungerengeri. Foremost among these raiders was the notorious Kisabengo, whom I have already traced through his nefarious career, to the time of his establishing his stronghold, Simbamwenni, near the Ungerengeri.

Mostly all the Waseguhha warriors are armed with muskets, and the Arabs supply them with enough ammunition, in return for which they attack Waruguru, Wadoe, and Wakwenni, to obtain slaves for the Arab market, and it is but five years since the Waseguhha organized a successful raid into the very heart of the Wasagara mountains, during which they desolated the populated portions of the Makata plain, capturing over five hundred slaves. Formerly wars in this country were caused by blood-feuds between different chiefs; they are now encouraged by the slave-buyers of the Mrima, for the purpose of supplying these human chattels for the market of Zanzibar.

The East African squadron has the power to crush this hornets' nest, and stop the inhuman traffic in slaves, so far as concerns Useguhha's ability to maintain it. Let a steam launch with fifty men on board be detached for this service up the Wami river. By ascending the river as far as Kigongo's they would arrive within twenty miles of the town of Simbamwenni, which could be marched in a night, and in the morning they could attack and burn the place, and break up this nucleus of the slave-trade in East Africa at once and for ever. The Waseguhha, aided by the slave-buyers, are the real scourge of this part of East Africa, and once their stronghold was taken and destroyed they would be powerless for evil.

The Waseguhha are about the most thorough believers in witchcraft, yet the professors of this dark science fare badly at their hands. It is a very common sight to see cinereous piles on the roadside, and the waving garments suspended to the branches of trees above them, which mark the fate of the unfortunate "waganga" or medicine men. So long as their predictions prove correct, and have a happy culmination, these professors of "uchawi," magic arts, are regarded with favor by the people; but if an unusual calamity overtakes a family, and they can swear that it is the result of the magician's art, a quorum of relentless inquisitors is soon formed, and a like fate to that which overtook the "witches" in the dark days of New England surely awaits him. Enough dead wood is soon found



MOUNT KIBWE, AND VALLEY OF THE MUKONDOKWA RIVER.

in their African forests, and the unhappy one perishes by fire, and as a warning to all false professors of the art, his loin-cloth is hung up to a tree above the spot where he met his doom.

The Wasagara are mountaineers. The country which they inhabit is the mountain chain and its immediate base, extending from the Makata river to the desert of Marenga Mkali, a breadth of seventy-five geographical miles, and a length of very nearly three degrees of latitude.

The mountain range lies longitudinally in a north-by-east direction. The highest peak may probably have an elevation of about 6,000 feet above the sea. Mount Kibwe must be about 2,500 feet above the Mukondokwa Valley near Kadetamare, and Kadetamare must be 2,000 feet above the sea. But there are peaks in the Nguru group near Ugombo which I should estimate to be at least 1,500 feet higher than Mount Kibwe. To the north, as we approach the range from the Makata river, the mountains loom up more stupendous and lofty than those contiguous to the Pass of the Mukondokwa. On the tops and slopes of these mountains the vapours drifted hither by the monsoon winds shed their burden of water, and become rivers as the streams trickle down the slopes and unite in the valleys at their eastern base.

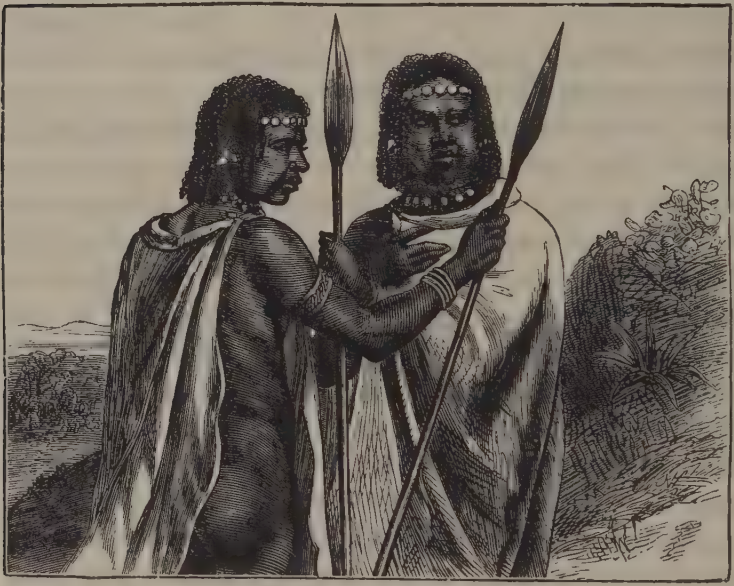
However much geographers may disagree with me, my opinion is that this chain of mountains is to East Africa what the Rocky Mountains are to Central North America. I regard it as the backbone of East Africa. Travellers place Kilima-Njaro in east longitude 37° 27′, and Mount Kenia in 37° 35′ east, and I place Mount Kibwe in longitude 36° 50′; and Burton believes that this same mountain chain of Usagara has "its culminating apex in Njésa-Uhiyou." If the Ruhwha Valley, through which the Rufiji issues into the sea from the highlands beyond, is only a gap in the Usagara range, why is not the Mukondokwa Valley a gap? Why may not the low plain of Uhumba, or Masai, be a gap? Why should the Ngaserai Hills, the mountain group of Kilima-Njaro, the snowy peak of Kenia, its southern neighbour Doeno Camwea, and its northern neighbour Msarara Mount, all heaving upward on the same line of longitude, not belong to this same Usagara range?

The same effect observable in the plains to the east and the west of the Rocky Mountains is visible at either base of the Usagara range. In Western North America it is well known that the Plain of Colorado, Wyoming, and a large portion of Nebraska, on the east, and that portion of Colorado and Utah at the western base of the Rocky Mountains, do not appear to possess that remarkable fertility observable near the Missouri River and eastward, or west of Utah. These denuded regions of America are from 500 to 800 miles in breadth on either side of the Rocky Mountains, and have a length of nearly 2,000 miles. But it must be remembered that the Rocky Mountains have an average altitude of about 11,000 or 12,000 feet above the level of the sea. Such gigantic physical features are not to be seen in East Africa. I should estimate the average altitude of the more easterly portion of the Usagara Range to be about 3,500 feet above the sea level, while the most westerly should be estimated at 1,000 feet higher. The Makata Plain or Valley, east of Usagara, has the same denuded appearance that our western plains have, and the region west of Usagara, embracing the whole of Marenga Mkali and Ugogo, may be compared, for the effect given by its denuded sterile aspect and saline incrustations, to Utah and Western Colorado.

But in Uyanzi, west of Ugogo, the country heaves upward longitudinally into an altitude of about 1,000 feet higher than the plain of Ugogo, and the consequence is that as they intercept the vapors borne westward by the monsoons, they appear more productive, second only in fertility to the Valley of the Mukondokwa. This sterile region, embracing the Marenga Mkali, though it has only a breadth of about 100 to 150 geographical miles, has a length of about 600 geographical miles, perhaps more.

In Southern Usagara the people are most amiable; but in the north, in those districts adjacent to the Wahumba, the people partake of the ferocious character of their fierce neighbours. Repeated attacks from the Waseguhha kidnappers, from the Wadirigo or Wahehe robbers on the south-west, from the Wagogo on the west, and from the Wahumba on the north—have caused them to regard strangers with suspicion, but after a short acquaintance they prove to be a frank, amiable, and brave people. Indeed, they have good cause to be distrustful of the Arabs and the Wangwana of Zanzibar. Mbumi, Eastern Usagara, has been twice burnt down within a few years by the Arab and Waseguhha kidnappers; Rehenneko has met the same fate, and it is not many years ago since Abdullah bin Nasib carried fire and sword from Misonghi to Mpwapwa. Kanyaparu, lord of the hills around Chunyo, or Kunyo, once cultivated one-fourth of the Marenga Mkali, but is now restricted to the hill-tops from fear of the Wadirigo marauders.

In Eastern Usagara the broad distinctions which mark the pure Wasagara from the Waseguhha are not to be seen. We first find them among the villages of Mpwapwa. Here the long slender ringlets, ornamented with brass and copper pendicles, balls, with bright pice from Zanzibar, with a thin line of miniature beads running here and there among the ringlets, are first seen. A youthful Msagara, with a faint tinge of ochre embrowning the dull black hue of his face, with four or five bright copper coin ranged over his forehead, with a tiny gourd's neck in each ear, distending his ear-lobes, with a thousand ringlets well greased and ornamented with tiny bits of brass and copper, with a head well thrown back, broad breast thrown well forward, and muscular arms, and full-proportioned limbs, represents the *beau idéal* of a handsome young African savage.



YOUTHFUL WASAGARA.

The Wasagara, male and female, tattoo the forehead, bosom, and arms. Besides inserting the neck of a gourd in each ear—which carries his little store of "tumbac," or tobacco, and lime which he has obtained by burning land shells—he carries quite a number of most primitive ornaments around his neck, such as two or three snowy cowrie-shells, carved pieces of wood, or a small goat's horn, or some medicine consecrated by the medicine-man of the tribe, a fundo of white or red beads, or two or three pierced Sungomazzi egg-beads, or a string of copper coin, and sometimes small brass chains, like a Cheap Jack watch-chain. These things they have either made themselves or purchased from Arab traders for chickens or goats. The children all go naked; youths wear a goat or a sheep-skin; grown men and women, blessed with progeny, wear domestic, or a loin-cloth of Kaniki, or a barsati, which is a favourite coloured cloth in Usagara; chiefs wear caps such as are worn by the Wamrima Diwans, or the Arab tarboosh.

Next on our line of march appear the Wagogo, a powerful race inhabiting the region west of Usagara to Uyanzi, which is about eighty miles in breadth, and about one hundred in length. The traveller has to exercise great prudence, discretion, and judgment in his dealings with them. Here he first hears the word "honga," after passing Simbamwenni, a word which signifies now, tribute, though it formerly meant a present to a friend. Since it is exacted from him with threats that if it is not paid, they will make war on him, its best interpretation would be, "force-extorted tribute" or toll.

The following are three routes through Ugogo, from which the traveller may take his choice, and the sum of the tribute to be paid by a caravan of a hundred and fifty men.

Northern.	Tribute.	Central.	Tribute.	Southern.	Tribute.
	Cloths.		Cloths.		Cloths.
Mvumi	35	Mvumi.	35	Kifukuru	25
Matamburu	24	Muhalata	25	Kisewah.	30
Bihawana	10	Mafanya	15	Kanyeni.	40
Kididimo.	26	Kanyenyi	50	Sanza	15
Pembera Pereh	30	Sanza	15	Usekke	21
Mizanza	22	Khonse.	20	Khonko	20
Mukondoku	32	Khonko	20	Kiwyeh	27
		Kiwyeh	27		
	179		197		178

These cloths are only paid by the up-caravans; hoes and ivory are generally taken by the return caravans.

Naturally, if the traveller desires to be mulcted of a large sum, he will find the Wagogo ready to receive every shred of cloth he gives them. Mvumi will demand sixty cloths, and will wonder at his own magnanimity in asking for such a small number of cloths from a great Musungu (white man). The traveller, however, will be wise if he permits his chief men to deal with them, after enjoining them to be careful, and not to commit themselves too hastily to any number.

They are, physically and intellectually, the best of the races between Unyamwezi and the sea. Their color is a rich dark brown. There is something in their frontal aspect which is almost leonine. Their faces are broad and intelligent. Their eyes are large and round. Their noses are flat, and their mouths are very large; but their lips, though thick, are not so monstrously thick as those our exaggerated ideal of a negro has. For all this, though the Mgogo is a ferocious man, capable of proceeding to any length upon the slightest temptation, he is an attractive figure to a white traveller. He is proud of his chief, proud of his country, sterile and unloveable though it be; he is proud of himself, his prowess, his weapons, and his belongings; he is vain, terribly egotistic, a bully, and a tyrant, yet the Mgogo is capable of forming friendships, and of exerting himself for friendship's sake. One grand vice in his character, which places him in a hostile light to travellers, is his exceeding avarice, and greed for riches; and if the traveller suffers by this, he is not likely to be amiably disposed towards him.

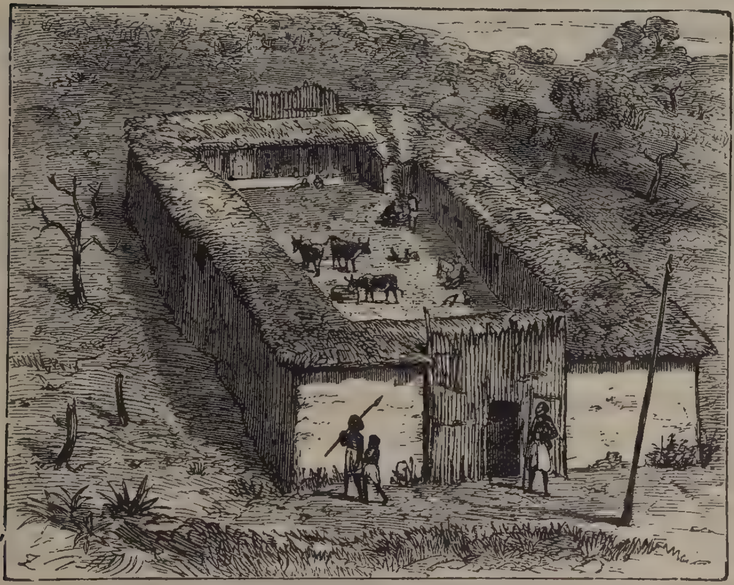
This sturdy native, with his rich complexion, his lion front, menacing aspect, bullying nature, haughty, proud, overbearing, and quarrelsome, is a mere child with a man who will devote himself to the study of his nature, and not offend his vanity. He is easily amused, as his curiosity is easily aroused. A traveller with an angular dispsition is sure to quarrel with him; but in presence of this rude child of nature, especially when he is so powerful, it is to his advantage and personal safety to soften these angles of his own nature. The Kigogo "Rob Roy" is on his native ground, and has a decided advantage over the white foreigner. He is not brave, but he is at least conscious of the traveller's weakness, and he is disposed to take advantage of it, but is prevented from committing an act because it is for his interest to keep the peace. Any violence to a traveller would close the road; caravans would seek other ways, and the chiefs would be deprived of much of their revenue.

The Mgogo warrior carries as his weapons a bow, and a sheaf of murderous-looking arrows, pointed, pronged, and barbed; a couple of light, beautifully-made assegais, a broad sword-like spear, with a blade over two feet long; a battle-axe, and a rungu, or knob-club. He has also a shield, painted with designs in black and white, oval-shaped, sometimes of rhinoceros, or elephant, or bull-hide. From the time he was a toddling urchin he has been familiar with his weapons, and by the time he was fifteen years old he was an adept with them.

He is armed for battle in a very short time. The messenger from the chief darts from village to village and blows his ox-horn, the signal for war. The warrior hears it, throws his hoe over his shoulder, enters his house, and in a few seconds issues out again, arrayed in war paint, and full fighting costume. Feathers of the ostrich, or the eagle, or the vulture, nod above his head; his long crimson robe streams behind him, his shield is on his left arm, his darting assegai in his left hand, and his ponderous man-cleaver—double-edged and pointed, heading a strong staff—is in his right hand; jingling bells are tied around his aucles and knees; ivory wristlets are on his arms, with which he sounds his approach. With the plodding peasant's hoe he has dropped the peasant's garb, and is now the proud, vain, exultant warrior—bounding aloft like a gymnast, eagerly sniffing the battle-field.

The strength and power of the Wagogo are derived from their numbers. Though caravans of Wagogo sometimes are found passing up and down along the Unyamwezi road, they are not so generally employed as the Wanyamwezi in trade. Their villages are thus always full of warriors. Weak tribes, or remnants of tribes, are very glad to be admitted under their protection. Individuals of other tribes, also, who have been obliged to exile themselves from their own tribes, for some deed of violence, are often found in the villages of the Wagogo. In the north, the Wahumba are very numerous; in the south may be found the Wahehe and Wakimbu, and in the east may be found many a family from Usagara. Wanyamwezi are also frequently found in this country. Indeed these latter people are like Scotchmen, they may be found almost everywhere throughout Central Africa, and have a knack of pushing themselves into prominence.

As in Western Usagara the houses of the Wagogo are square, arranged around the four sides of an area—to which all the doors open. The roofs are all flat on which are spread the grain, herbs, tobacco, and pumpkins. The back of each apartment is pierced with small holes for observation and for defence.



BIRD'S-EYE VIEW OF A TEMBE.

The tembe is a fragile affair as constructed in Ugogo; it merely consists of a line of slender sticks daubed over with mud, with three or four strong poles planted at intervals to support the beams and rafters on which rests the flat clay roof. A musket-ball pierces the wattled walls of a Kigogo tembe through and through. In Uyanzi the tembe is a formidable affair, because of the abundance of fine trees, which are cut down and split into rails three or four inches thick.

The tembe is divided into apartments, separated from each other by a wattled wall. Each apartment may contain a family of grown-up boys and girls, who form their beds on the floor out of dressed hides. The father of the family, only, has a kitanda, or fixed cot made of oxhide stretched over a frame, or of the bark of the myombo tree. The floor is of tamped mud, and is exceedingly filthy, smelling strongly of every abomination. In the corners, suspended to the rafters, are the fine airy dwellings of black spiders of very large size, and other monstrous insects.

Rats, a peculiarlylong-headed, d un-colored species, infest every tembe. Cows, goats, sheep, and cats are the only domestic animals permitted to dwell within the tembe. The dogs (the pariah breed) lodge outside with the cattle.

The Wagogo believe in the existence of a god, or sky spirit, whom they call Mulungu. Their prayers are generally directed to him, when their parents die. A Mgogo, after he has consigned his father to the grave, collects his father's chattels together, his cloth, his ivory, his knife, his jembe (hoe), his bows and arrows, his spears, and his cattle, and kneels before them repeating a wish that Mulungu would increase his worldly wealth, that he would bless his labous, and make him successful in trade.

The following conversation occurred between myself and a Mgogo trader:

"Who do you suppose made your parents?"

"Why, Mulungu, white man!"

"Well, who made you?"

"If God made my father, God made me, didn't he?"

"That's very good. Where do you suppose your father is gone to, now that he is dead?"

"The dead die," said he, solemnly: "they are no more. The sultan dies, he becomes nothing—he is then no better than a dead dog, he is finished, his words are finished—there are no words from him. It is true," he added, seeing a smile on my face, "the sultan becomes nothing. He who says other words is a liar. There!"

"But then he is a very great man, is he not?"

"While he lives only—after death he goes into the pit, and there is no more to be said of him than of any other man."

"How do you bury a Mgogo?"

"His legs are tied together, his right arm to his body, and his left is put under his head. He is then rolled on his left side in the grave. His cloth he wore during his life is spread over him. We put the earth over him, and put thorn bushes over it to prevent the fizi (hyæna) from getting at him. A woman is put on her right side in a grave apart from the man."

"What do you do with the sultan when he is dead?"

"We bury him too, of course, only he is buried in the middle of the village, and we build a house over it. Each time they kill an ox, they kill before his grave. When the old sultan dies, the new one calls for an ox, and kills it before his grave, calling on Mulungu to witness that he is the rightful sultan. He then distributes the meat in his father's name."

"Who succeeds the sultan. Is he the eldest son?"

"Yes, if he has a son; if childless, the great chief next to him in rank. The msagira is the next to the sultan, whose business it is to hear the cause of complaint and convey it to the sultan, who, through the sultan, dispenses justice; he receives the honga, carries it to the mtemi (sultan), places it before him, and when the sultan has taken what he wishes, the rest goes to the msagira. The chiefs are called manya-para; the msagira is the chief manya-para."

"How do the Wagogo marry?"

"Oh, they buy their women."

"What is a woman worth?"

"A very poor man can buy his wife from her father for a couple of goats."

"How much has the sultan got to pay?"

"He has got to pay about one hundred goats, or so many cows, so many sheep and goats, to his bride's father. Of course he is a chief. The sultan would not buy a common woman. The father's consent is to be obtained, and the cattle have to be given up. It takes many days to finish the talk about it. All the family and friends of the bride have to talk about it before she leaves her father's house."

"In cases of murder, what do you do to the man who kills another?"

"The murderer has to pay fifty cows. If he is too poor to pay, the sultan gives his permission to the murdered man's friends or relatives to kill him. If they catch him, they tie him to a tree, and throw spears at him—one at a time first; they then spring on him, cut his head off, then his arms, and limbs, and scatter them about the country."

"How do you punish a thief?"

"If he is found stealing, he is killed at once, and nothing is said about it. Is he not a thief?"

"But suppose you do not know who the thief is?"

"If a man is brought before us accused of stealing, we kill a chicken. If the entrails are white, he is innocent—if yellow, he is guilty."

"Do you believe in witchcraft?"

"Of course we do, and punish the man with death if he bewitches cattle, or stops rain."

Next to Ugogo is Uyanzi, or the "Magunda Mkali"—the Hot Field. In former days before the Magunda Mkali was inhabited by emigrants from Ukimbu, carriers complained of the excessive heat and thirst they suffered during its transit. Water was scarce on the route they adopted, and the all-day marches were frequent: hence it was termed by the Wanyamwezi pagazis the "Hot Field."

Uyanzi, or Magunda Mkali, is at present very populous. Along the northern route—that leading viâ Munieka—water is plentiful enough, villages are frequent, and travellers begin to perceive that the title is inappropriate. The people who inhabit the country are Wakimbu from the south. They are good agriculturists, and are a most industrious race. They are something like the Wasagara in appearance, but do not obtain a very high reputation for bravery. Their weapons consist of light spears, bows and arrows, and battle-axes. Their tembes are strongly made, showing considerable skill in the art of defensive constructions. Their bomas are so well made, that one would require cannon to effect an entrance, if the villages were at all defended. They are skilful also in constructing traps for elephants and buffaloes. A stray lion or leopard is sometimes caught by them.

After marching through Magunda Mkali, we come to Unyamwezi, or the Land of the Moon; but I shall leave a description of the people inhabiting this interesting district to a future chapter.

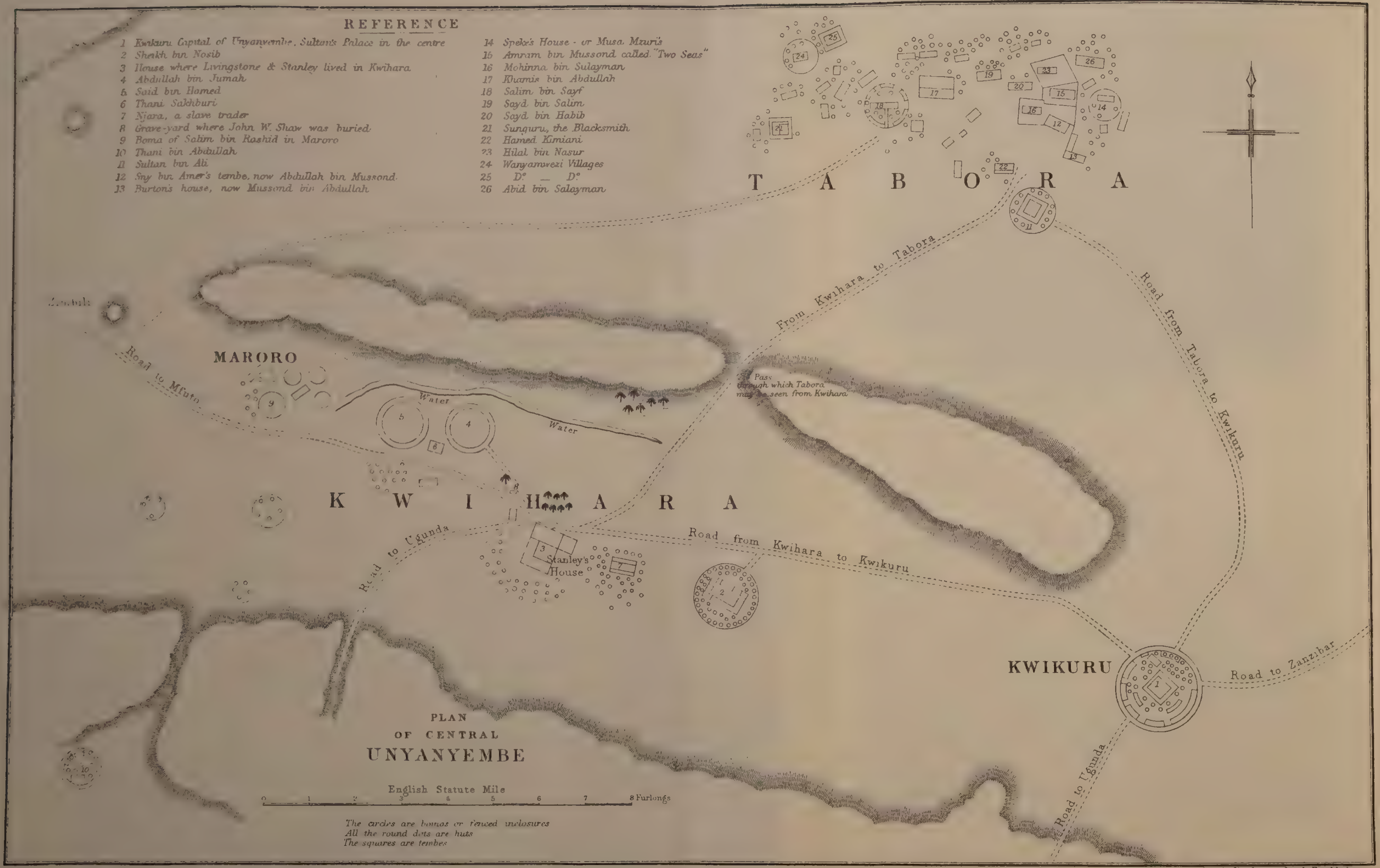
VIEW IN FRONT OF MY TEMBE.

CHAPTER VIII.

LIFE IN UNYANYEMBE.

I RECEIVED a noiseless ovation as I walked side by side with the governor, Sayd bin Salim, towards his tembe in Kwikuru, or the capital. The Wanyamwezi pagazis were out by hundreds, the warriors of Mkasiwa, the sultan, hovered around their chief, the children—naked dusky cherubs—were seen between the legs of their parents, even infants, a few months old, slung over their mothers' backs, all paid the tribute due to my color, with one grand concentrated stare. The only persons who talked with me were the Arabs, and aged Mkasiwa, ruler of Unyanyembe.

Sayd bin Salim's house was at the north-western corner of the inclosure, a stockaded boma of Kwikuru.



PLAN
OF CENTRAL
UNYANYEMBE

REFERENCE

1 *Kwikuru Capital of Unyanyembe. Sultan's Palace in the centre*
2 *Sheikh bin Nosib*
3 *House where Livingstone & Stanley lived in Kwihara*
4 *Abdullah bin Jumah*
5 *Said bin Hamed*
6 *Thani Sakhburi*
7 *Njara, a slave trader*
8 *Grave-yard where John W. Shaw was buried*
9 *Boma of Salim bin Rashid in Maroro*
10 *Thani bin Abdullah*
11 *Sultan bin Ali*
12 *Sny bin Amer's tembe, now Abdullah bin Mussond.*
13 *Burton's house, now Mussond bin Abdullah*
14 *Speke's House - or Musa Mzuri's*
15 *Amram bin Mussond called "Two Seas"*
16 *Mohinna bin Sulayman*
17 *Khamis bin Abdullah*
18 *Salim bin Sayf*
19 *Sayd bin Salim*
20 *Sayd bin Habib*
21 *Sunguru, the Blacksmith*
22 *Hamed Kimiani*
23 *Hilal bin Nasur*
24 *Wanyamwezi Villages*
25 *D° — D°*
26 *Abid bin Salayman*

The circles are bomas or fenced inclosures
All the round dots are huts
The squares are tembes

Stanford's Geographical Establishment

London: Sampson Low, Marston, Low & Searle. New York: Scribner, Armstrong & C°

We had tea made in a silver tea-pot, and a bountiful supply of "dampers" were smoking under a silver cover; and to this repast I was invited. When a man has walked eight miles or so without any breakfast, and a hot tropical sun has been shining on him for three or four hours, he is apt to do justice to a meal, especially if his appetite is healthy. I think I astonished the governor by the dexterous way in which I managed to consume eleven cups of his aromatic concoction of an Assam herb, and the easy effortless style with which I demolished his high tower of "slap-jacks," that but a minute or so smoked hotly under their silver cover.

For the meal, I thanked the Sheikh, as only an earnest and sincerely hungry man, now satisfied, could thank him. Even if I had not spoken, my gratified looks had well informed him, under what obligations I had been laid to him.

Out came my pipe and tobacco-pouch.

"My friendly Sheikh, wilt thou smoke?"

"No, thanks! Arabs never smoke."

"Oh, if you don't, perhaps you would not object to me smoking, in order to assist digestion?"

"Ngema—good—go on, master." Then began the questions, the gossipy, curious, serious, light questions:

"How came the master?"

"By the Mpwapwa road."

"It is good. Was the Makata bad?"

"Very bad."

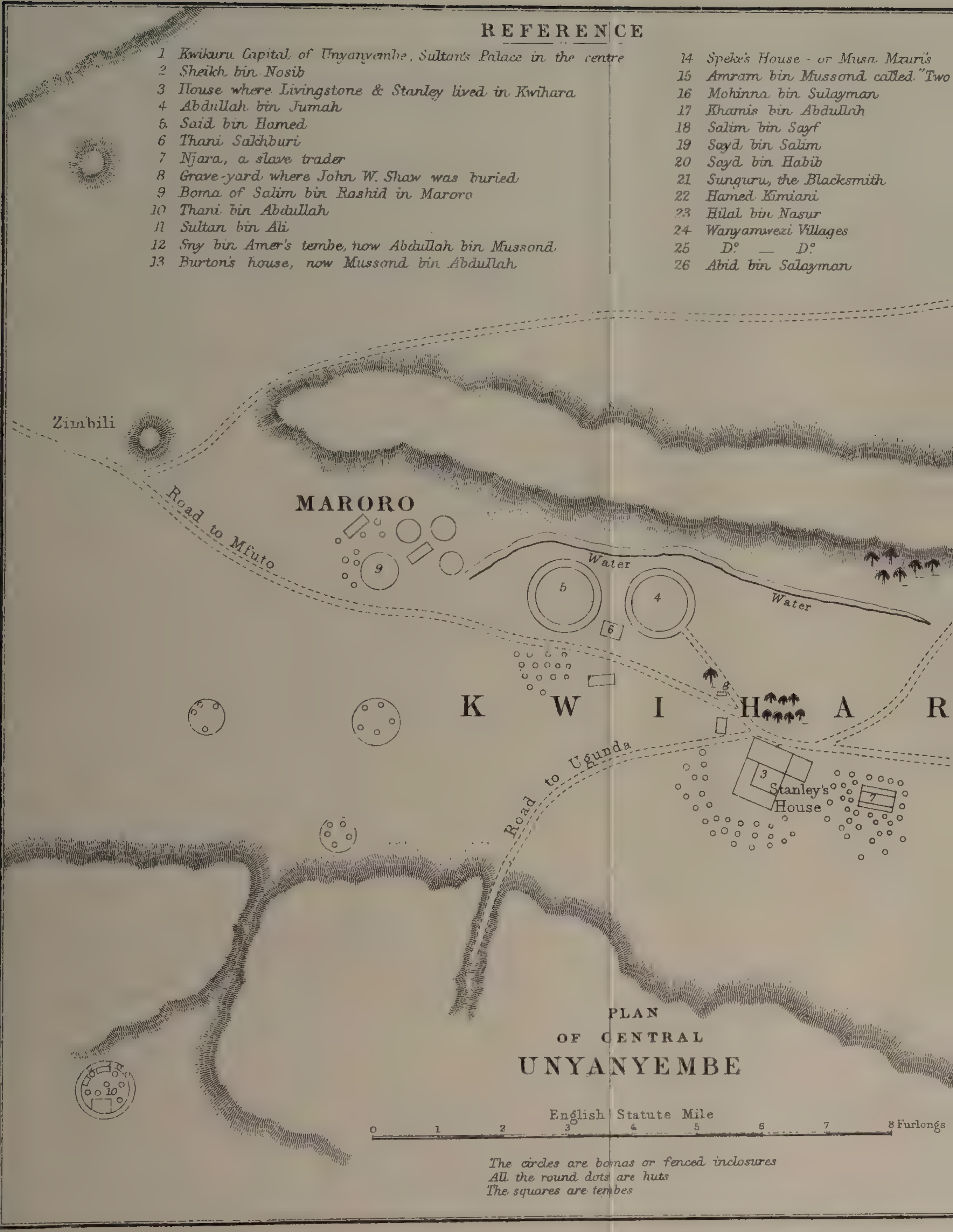
"What news from Zanzibar?"

"Good; Syed Toorkee has possession of Muscat, and Azim bin Ghis was slain in the streets."

"Is this true, Wallahi?" (by God.)

"It is true."

"Heh-heh-h! This is news;"—stroking his beard.



REFERENCE

1 Kwikuru Capital of Unyanyembe, Sultan's Palace in the centre
2 Sheikh bin Nosib
3 House where Livingstone & Stanley lived in Kwihara
4 Abdullah bin Jumah
5 Said bin Hamed
6 Thani Sakhburi
7 Njara, a slave trader
8 Grave-yard where John W. Shaw was buried
9 Boma of Salim bin Rashid in Maroro
10 Thani bin Abdullah
11 Sultan bin Ali
12 Sny bin Amer's tembe, now Abdullah bin Mussond
13 Burton's house, now Mussond bin Abdullah
14 Speke's House - or Musa Mzuri's
15 Amram bin Mussond called "Two
16 Mohinna bin Sulayman
17 Khamis bin Abdullah
18 Salim bin Sayf
19 Sayd bin Salim
20 Sayd bin Habib
21 Sunguru, the Blacksmith
22 Hamed Kimiani
23 Hilal bin Nasur
24 Wanyamwezi Villages
25 D.º — D.º
26 Abid bin Salayman

PLAN
OF CENTRAL
UNYANYEMBE

The circles are bomas or fenced inclosures
All the round dots are huts
The squares are tembes

London: Sampson Low, Marston, Low &

taste; and if one looked up, there was a sky of a pale blue, spotless, and of an awful serenity.

As I approached the tembe of Sayd bin Salim, Sheikh bin Nasib and other great Arabs joined us. Before the great door of the tembe the men had stacked the bales, and piled the boxes, and were using their tongues at a furious rate, relating to the chiefs and soldiers of the first, second, and fourth caravans, the many events which had befallen them, and which seemed to them the only things worth relating. Outside of their own limited circles they evidently cared for nothing. Then the several chiefs of the other caravans had in turn to relate their experiences of the road; and the noise of tongues was loud and furious. But as we approached, all this loud-sounding gabble ceased, and my caravan chiefs and guides rushed to me to hail me as "master," and to salute me as their friend. One fellow, faithful Baruti, threw himself at my feet, the others fired their guns and acted like madmen suddenly become frenzied, and a general cry of "welcome" was heard on all sides.

"Walk in, master, this is your house, now; here are your men's quarters; here you will receive the great Arabs, here is the cook-house, here is the store-house; here is the prison for the refractory; here are your white man's apartments; and these are your own: see, here is the bedroom, here is the gun-room, bath-room, &c.;" so Sheikh Sayd talked, as he showed me the several places.

On my honor, it was a most comfortable place, this, in Central Africa. One could almost wax poetic, but we will keep such ambitious ideas for a future day. Just now, however, we must have the goods stored, and the little army of carriers paid off and disbanded.

Bombay was ordered to unlock the strong store-room, to pile the bales in regular tiers, the beads in rows one above another, and the wire in a separate place. The boats, canvas, &c., were to be placed high above reach of white ants, and the boxes of ammunition and powder kegs were to be stored in the gun-room, out of reach of danger. Then a bale of cloth was opened, and each carrier was rewarded according to his merits, that each of them might proceed home to his friends and neighbours, and tell them how much better the white man behaved, than the Arabs.

The reports of the leaders of the first, second, and fourth caravans were then received, their separate stores inspected, and the details and events of their marches heard. The first caravan had been engaged in a war at Kirurumo, and had come out of the fight successful, and had reached Unyanyembe without loss of anything. The second had shot a thief in the forest between Pembera Pereh and Kididimo; the fourth had lost a bale in the jungle of Marenga Mkali, and the porter who carried it had received a "very sore head" from a knob stick wielded by one of the thieves, who prowl about the jungle near the frontier of Ugogo. I was delighted to find that their misfortunes were no more, and each leader was then and there rewarded with one handsome cloth, and five doti of Merikani.

Just as I began to feel hungry again, came several slaves in succession, bearing trays full of good things from the Arabs; first an enormous dish of rice, with a bowlful of curried chicken, another with a dozen huge wheaten cakes, another with a plateful of smoking hot crullers, another with papaws, another with pomegranates and lemons; after these came men driving five fat hump-backed oxen, eight sheep, and ten goats, and another man came with a dozen chickens, and a dozen fresh eggs. This was real, practical, noble courtesy, munificent hospitality, which quite took my gratitude by storm.

My people, now reduced to twenty-five, were as delighted at the prodigal plenitude visible on my tables and in my yard, as I was myself. And, as I saw their eyes light up at the unctuous anticipations presented to them by their riotous fancies, I ordered a bullock to be slaughtered and distributed.

The second day of the arrival of the "New York Herald Expedition" in the country which I now looked upon as classic ground, since Capts. Burton, Speke, and Grant years ago had visited it, and described it, came the Arab magnates from Tabora to congratulate me.

Tabora* is the principal Arab settlement in Central Africa. It contains over a thousand huts and tembes, and one may safely estimate the population, Arabs, Wangwana, and natives, at five thousand people. Between Tabora and the next settlement, Kwihara, rise two rugged hill ridges, separated from each other by a low saddle, over the top of which Tabora is always visible from Kwihara.

They were a fine, handsome body of men, these Arabs. They mostly hailed from Oman; others were Wasawahili; and each of my visitors had quite a retinue with him. At Tabora they live quite luxuriously. The plain on which the settlement is situated is exceedingly fertile, though naked of trees; the rich pasturage it furnishes permits them to keep large herds of cattle and goats, from which they have an ample supply of milk, cream, butter, and ghee. Rice is grown everywhere, sweet potatoes, yams, muhogo, holcus sorghum, maize, or Indian corn, sesame, millet, field peas, or vetches, called choroko, are cheap, and always procurable. Around their tembes the Arabs cultivate a little wheat for their own purposes, and have planted orange, lemon, papaw, and mangoes, which thrive here fairly well. Onions and garlic, chilies, cucumbers, tomatoes, and binijalls, may be procured by the white visitor from the more important Arabs, who are undoubted epicureans in their way. Their slaves convey to them from the coast, once a year at least, their stores of tea, coffee, sugar, spices, jellies, curries, wine, brandy, biscuits, sardines, salmon, and such fine cloths and articles as they require for their own personal use. Almost every Arab of any eminence is able to show a wealth of Persian carpets, and most luxurious bedding, complete tea and coffee services, and magnificently carved dishes of tinned copper and brass lavers. Several of them sport gold watches and chains, mostly all a watch and chain of some kind. And, as in Persia, Afghanistan, and Turkey, the harems form an essential feature of every Arab's household, the sensualism of the Mohammedans is as prominent here as in the Orient. Each Arab, according to his means, maintains a troop of concubines, for the pruriency of his animal nature must be gratified here as in the "City of Victory." The eye that at first despised the unclassic face of the black woman of Africa soon loses its regard for fine lines and mellow pale color; it finds itself ere long lingering wantonly over the inharmonious and heavy curves of a negroid form, and looking lovingly on the broad, unintellectual face, and into jet eyes that never flash with the dazzling lovelight that makes poor humanity beautiful.

---

* There is no such recognised place as Kazeh.

The Arabs who now stood before the front door of my tembe were the donors of the good things received the day before. As in duty bound, of course, I greeted Sheikh Sayd first, then Sheikh bin Nasib, his Highness of Zanzibar's consul at Karagwa, then I greeted the noblest Trojan amongst the Arab population, noblest in bearing, noblest in courage and manly worth—Sheikh Khamis bin Abdullah; then young Amram bin Mussoud, who is now making war on the king of Urori and his fractious people; then handsome, courageous Soud, the son of Sayd bin Majid; then dandified Thani bin Abdullah; then Mussoud bin Abdullah, and his cousin Abdullah bin Mussoud, who own the houses where formerly lived Burton and Speke; then old Suliman Dowa, Sayd bin Sayf, and the old Hetman of Tabora—Sheikh Sultan bin Ali.

As the visit of these magnates, under whose loving protection white travellers must needs submit themselves, was only a formal one, such as Arab etiquette, ever of the stateliest and truest, impelled them to, it is unnecessary to relate the discourse on my health, and their wealth, my thanks, and their professions of loyalty, and attachment to me. After having expended our mutual stock of congratulations and nonsense, they departed, having stated their wish that I should visit them at Tabora and partake of a feast which they were about to prepare for me.

Three days afterwards I sallied out of my tembe, escorted by eighteen bravely dressed men of my escort, to pay Tabora a visit. On surmounting the saddle over which the road from the valley of Kwihara leads to Tabora, the plain on which the Arab settlement is situated, lay before us, one expanse of dun pasture land, stretching from the base of the hill on our left as far as the banks of the northern Gombe, which a few miles beyond Tabora heave into purple-coloured hills and blue cones.

Within three quarters of an hour we were seated on the mud veranda of the tembe of Sultan bin Ali, who, because of his age, his wealth, and position—being a colonel in Seyd Burghash's unlovely army—is looked upon by his countrymen, high and low, as referee and counsellor. His boma or enclosure contains quite a village of hive-shaped huts and square tembes. From here, after being presented with a cup of Mocha coffee, and some sherbet, we directed our steps towards Khamis bin Abdullah's house, who had, in anticipation of my coming, prepared a feast to which he had invited his friends and neighbours. The group of stately Arabs in their long white dresses, and jaunty caps, also of a snowy white, who stood ready to welcome me to Tabora, produced quite an effect on my mind. I was in time for a council of war they were holding—and I was requested to attend—Selim, my Arab interpreter, forming one of the number.

Khamis bin Abdullah, a bold and brave man, ever ready to stand up for the privileges of the Arabs, and their rights to pass through any countries for legitimate trade, is the man who, in Speke's 'Journal of the Discovery of the Source of the Nile,' is reported to have shot Maula, an old chief who sided with Manwa Sera during the wars of 1860; and who subsequently after chasing his relentless enemy for five years through Ugogo and Unyamwezi as far as Ukonongo, had the satisfaction of beheading him, was now urging the Arabs to assert their rights against a chief called Mirambo of Uyoweh, in a crisis which was advancing.

This Mirambo of Uyoweh, it seems, had, for the last few years, been in a state of chronic discontent with the policies of the neighbouring chiefs. Formerly a pagazi for an Arab, he had now assumed regal power, with the usual knack of unconscionable rascals who care not by what means they step into power. When the chief of Uyoweh died, Mirambo, who was head of a gang of robbers infesting the forests of Wilyankuru, suddenly entered Uyoweh, and constituted himself lord paramount by force. Some feats of enterprise, which he performed to the enrichment of all those who recognised his authority, established him firmly in his position. This was but a beginning; he carried war through Ugara to Ukonongo, through Usagozi to the borders of Uvinza, and after destroying the populations over three degrees of latitude, he conceived a grievance against Mkasiwa, and against the Arabs, because they would not sustain him in his ambitious projects against their ally and friend, with whom they were living in peace.

The first outrage which this audacious man committed against the Arabs was the halting of an Ujiji-bound caravan, and the demand for five kegs of gunpowder, five guns, and five bales of cloth. This extraordinary demand, after expending more than a day in fierce controversy, was paid; but the Arabs, if they were surprised at the exorbitant black-mail demanded of them, were more than ever surprised when they were told to return the way they came; and that no Arab caravan should pass through his country to Ujiji except over his dead body.

On the return of the unfortunate Arabs to Unyanyembe, they reported the facts to Sheikh Sayd bin Salim, the governor of the Arab colony. This old man being averse to war, of course tried every means to induce Mirambo as of old to be satisfied with presents, but Mirambo this time was obdurate, and sternly determined on war unless the Arabs aided him in the warfare he was about to wage against old Mkasiwa, sultan of the Wanyamwezi of Unyanyembe.

"This is the status of affairs," said Khamis bin Abdullah. "Mirambo says: that for years he has been engaged in war against the neighbouring Washensi and has come out of it victorious, he says this is a great year with him; that he is going to fight the Arabs, and the Wanyamwezi of Unyanyembe, and that he shall not stop until every Arab is driven from Unyanyembe, and he rules over this country in place of Mkasiwa. Children of Oman, shall it be so? Speak, Salim, son of Sayf, shall we go to meet this Mshensi (pagan) or shall we return to our island?"

A murmur of approbation followed the speech of Khamis bin Abdullah, the majority of those present being young men eager to punish the audacious Mirambo. Salim, the son of Sayf, an old patriarch, slow of speech, tried to appease the passions of the young men, scions of the aristocracy of Muscat and Muttrah, and Bedaweens of the Desert, but Khamis's bold words had made too deep an impression on their minds.

Soud, the handsome Arab whom I have noticed already as the son of Sayd the son of Majid, spoke: "My father used to tell me that he remembered the days when the Arabs could go through the country from Bagamoyo to Ujiji, and from Kilwa to Lunda, and from Usenga to Uganda armed with canes. Those days are gone by. We have stood the insolence of the Wagogo long enough. Swaruru of Usui just takes from us whatever he wants; and now, here is Mirambo, who says, after taking more than five bales of cloth as tribute from one man, that no Arab caravan shall go to Ujiji, but over his body. Are we prepared to give up the ivory of Ujiji, of Urundi, of Karagwah, of Uganda, because of this one man? I say war—war until we have got his beard under our feet—war until the whole of Uyoweh and Wilyankuru is destroyed—war until we can again travel through any part of the country with only our walking canes in our hands!"

The universal assent that followed Soud's speech proved beyond a doubt that we were about to have a war. I thought of Livingstone. What if he were marching to Unyanyembe directly into the war country?

Having found from the Arabs that they intended to finish the war quickly—at most within fifteen days, as Uyoweh was only four marches distant—I volunteered to accompany them, take my loaded caravan with me as far as Mfuto, and there leave it in charge of a few guards, and with the rest march on with the Arab army. And my hope was, that it might be possible, after the defeat of Mirambo, and his forest banditti—the Ruga-Ruga—to take my Expedition direct to Ujiji by the road now closed. The Arabs were sanguine of victory, and I partook of their enthusiasm.

The council of war broke up. A great dishful of rice and curry, in which almonds, citron, raisins, and currants were plentifully mixed, was brought in, and it was wonderful how soon we forgot our warlike fervor after our attention had been drawn to this royal dish. I, of course, not being a Mohammedan, had a dish of my own, of a similar composition, strengthened by platters containing roast chicken, and kabobs, crullers, cakes, sweetbread, fruit, glasses of sherbet and lemonade, dishes of gum-drops and Muscat sweetmeats, dry raisins, prunes, and nuts. Certainly Khamis bin Abdullah proved to me that if he had a warlike soul in him, he could also attend to the cultivated tastes acquired under the shade of the mangoes on his father's estates in Zanzibar—the island.

After gorging ourselves on these uncommon dainties, some of the chief Arabs escorted me to other tembes of Tabora. When we went to visit Mussoud bin Abdullah, he showed me the very ground where Burton and Speke's house stood—now pulled down and replaced by his office—Sny bin Amer's house was also torn down, and the fashionable tembe of Unyanyembe, now in vogue, built over it,—finely-carved rafters—huge carved doors, brass knockers, and lofty airy rooms, a house built for defence an comfort.

The finest house in Unyanyembe belongs to Amram bin Mussoud, who paid sixty frasilah of ivory—over $3,000—for it. Very fair houses can be purchased for from twenty to thirty frasilah of ivory. Amram's house is called the "Two Seas"—"Baherein." It is one hundred feet in length, and twenty feet high, with walls four feet thick, neatly plastered over with mud mortar. The great door is a marvel of carving-work for Unyanyembe artisans. Each rafter within is also carved with fine designs. Before the front of the house is a young plantation of pomegranate trees, which flourish here as if they were indigenous to the soil. A shadoof, such as may be seen on the Nile, serves to draw water to irrigate the gardens.

Towards evening we walked back to our own finely situated tembe in Kwihara, well satisfied with what we had seen at Tabora. My men drove a couple of oxen, and carried three sacks of native rice—a most superior kind—the day's presents of hospitality from Khamis bin Abdullah.

In Unyanyembe I found the Livingstone caravan, which readers must remember I said started off in a fright upon the mere rumour that Kirk, the English "balyuz," was coming. As all the caravans were now halted at Unyanyembe because of the now approaching war, I suggested to Sayd bin Salim, that it were better that the men of the Livingstone caravan should live with mine in my tembe, that I might watch over the white man's goods. Of course since Dr. Kirk had never asked me or authorized me to take charge of Livingstone's goods, I could not interfere with the governor or the caravan. Fortunately Sayd bin Salim agreed with me, and the men and goods were at once brought to my tembe.

One day Asmani, who was now chief of Livingstone's caravan, the other having died of small-pox, two or three days before, brought out a tent to the veranda where I was sitting writing, and shewed me a packet of letters, which to my surprise was marked :—

"To Dr. Livingstone,
"Ujiji,
"November 1st, 1870.
"Registered letters."

Here was the best evidence in the world that the letters were sealed up in that packet on the date mentioned on the bag. From November 1st, 1870, to February 10th, 1871, just one hundred days, at Bagamoyo! A miserable small caravan of thirty-three men halting one hundred days at Bagamoyo, only twenty-five miles by water from Zanzibar! Poor Livingstone! Who knows but he may be suffering for want of these very supplies that have been detained so long within easy reach of the British Consulate, and will be detained here in Unyanyembe, now, God knows how long! The caravan arrived in Unyanyembe some time about the middle of May. About the latter part of May the first disturbances took place. Had this caravan arrived here in the middle of March, or even the middle of April, they might have travelled on to Ujiji without trouble.

I asked Asmani:

"When did you see Dr. Kirk last?"

"About five or six weeks before the Ramadan."

"When did you get this packet of letters?"

"The day before I left Zanzibar for Bagamoyo."

"Did you not see him at Bagamoyo, when he came to shoot near the Kingani?"

"No, we heard he was coming, and we left. We heard he had been there. Two days from Kikoka we stopped a week, to wait for four men of the escorting party who had not yet started from Bagamoyo.

On the 7th of July, about 2 P.M., I was sitting on the burzani as usual; I felt listless and languid, and a drowsiness came over me; I did not fall asleep, but the power of my limbs seemed to fail me. Yet the brain was busy; all my life seemed passing in review before me; when these retrospective scenes became serious, I looked serious; when they were sorrowful, I wept hysterically; when they were joyous, I laughed loudly. Reminiscences of yet a young life's battles and hard struggles came surging into the mind in quick succession; events of boyhood, of youth, and manhood; perils, travels, scenes, joys, and sorrows; loves and hates; friendships and indifferences. My mind followed the various and rapid transition of my life's passages; it drew the lengthy, erratic, sinuous lines of travel my footsteps had passed over. If I had drawn them on the sandy floor, what enigmatical problems they had been to those around me, and what plain, readable, intelligent histories they had been to me!

The loveliest feature of all to me was the form of a noble, and true man, who called me son. Of my life in the great pine forests of Arkansas, and in Missouri, I retained the most vivid impressions. The dreaming days I passed under the sighing pines on the Ouachita's shores; the new clearing, the block-house, our faithful black servant, the forest deer, and the exuberant life I led, were all well remembered. And I remembered how one day, after we had come to live near the Mississippi, I floated down, down, hundreds of miles, with a wild fraternity of knurly giants, the boatmen of the Mississippi, and how a dear old man welcomed me back, as if from the grave. I remembered also my travels on foot through sunny Spain, and France, with numberless adventures in Asia Minor, among Kurdish nomads. I remembered the battle fields of America and the stormy scenes of rampant war. I remembered gold mines, and broad prairies, Indian councils, and much experience in the new western lands. I remembered the shock it gave me to hear after my return from a barbarous country of the calamity that had overtaken the fond man whom I called father, and the hot fitful life that followed it. Stop! * * * * * * Dear me; is it the 21st of July? Yes, Shaw informed me that it was the 21st of July after I recovered from my terrible attack of fever; the true date was the 14th of July, but I was not aware that I had jumped a week, until I met Dr. Livingstone. We two together examined the 'Nautical Almanack,' which I brought with me. We found that the Doctor was three weeks out of his reckoning, and to my great surprise I was also one week out, or one week ahead of the actual date. The mistake was made by my being informed that I had been two weeks sick, and as the day I recovered my senses was Friday, and Shaw and the people were morally sure that I was in bed two weeks, I dated it on my Diary the 21st of July. That Shaw had lost his reckoning also can easily be accounted for, for the fever was rapidly destroying his memory, and indeed his reason. Selim had attended me, according to directions plainly written, which he had been ordered to follow in case of such a crisis. I had diligently taught him, until he knew every medicine in the chest, and its uses. He told me he had fed me with tea and a little brandy in it; Shaw had three or four times fed me with sago gruel. However, on the tenth day after the first of my illness, I was in excellent trim again, only, however, to see and attend to Shaw, who was in turn taken sick. By the 22nd July Shaw was recovered, then Selim was prostrated, and groaned in his delirium for four days, but by the 28th we were all recovered, and were beginning to brighten up at the prospect of a diversion in the shape of a march upon Mirambo's stronghold.

The morning of the 29th I had fifty men loaded with bales, beads, and wire, for Ujiji. When they were mustered for the march outside the tembe, the only man absent was Bombay. While men were sent to search for him, others departed to get one more look, and one more embrace with their black Delilahs. Bombay was found some time about 2 P.M., his face faithfully depicting the contending passions under which he was labouring—sorrow at parting from the fleshpots of Unyanyembe—regret at parting from his Dulcinea of Tabora—to be bereft of all enjoyment now, nothing but marches—hard, long marches—to go to the war—to be killed, perhaps. Oh! Inspired by such feelings, no wonder Bombay was inclined to be pugnacious when I ordered him to his place, and I was in a shocking bad temper for having been kept waiting from 8 A.M. to 2 P.M. for him. There was simply a word and a savage look, and my cane was flying around Bombay's shoulders, as if he were to be annihilated. I fancy that the eager fury of my onslaught broke his stubbornness more than anything else; for before I had struck him a dozen times he was crying for "pardon." At that word I ceased belaboring him, for this was the first time he had ever uttered that word. Bombay was conquered at last.

"March!" and the guide led off, followed in solemn order by forty-nine of his fellows, every man carrying a heavy load of African monies, besides his gun, hatchet, and stock of ammunition, and his ugali-pot. We presented quite an imposing sight while thus marching on in silence and order, with our flags flying, and the red blanket robes of the men streaming behind them as the furious north-easter blew right on our flank.

The men seemed to feel they were worth seeing, for I noticed that several assumed a more martial tread as they felt their royal Joho cloth tugging at their necks, as it was swept streaming behind by the wind. Maganga, a tall Mnyamwezi, stalked along like a very Goliah about to give battle alone, to Mirambo and his thousand warriors. Frisky Khamisi paced on under his load, imitating a lion; and there was the rude jester—the incorrigible Ulimengo—with a stealthy pace like a cat. But their silence could not last long. Their vanity was so much gratified, the red cloaks danced so incessantly before their eyes, that it would have been a wonder if they could have maintained such serious gravity or discontent one half hour longer.

Ulimengo was the first who broke it. He had constituted himself the kirangozi or guide, and was the standard-bearer, bearing the American flag, which the men thought would certainly strike terror into the hearts of the enemy. Growing confident first, then valorous, then exultant, he suddenly faced the army he was leading, and shouted

"Hoy! Hoy!
Chorus.—Hoy! Hoy!
Hoy! Hoy!
Chorus.—Hoy! Hoy!
Hoy! Hoy!
Chorus.—Hoy! Hoy!
Where are ye going?
Chorus.—Going to war.
Against whom?
Chorus.—Against Mirambo.
Who is your master?
Chorus.—The White Man.
Ough! Ough!
Chorus.—Ough! Ough!
Hyah! Hyah!
Chorus.—Hyah! Hyah!"

This was the ridiculous song they kept up all day without intermission.

We camped the first day at Bomboma's village, situated a mile to the south-west of the natural hill fortress of Zimbili. Bombay was quite recovered from his thrashing, and had banished the sullen thoughts that had aroused my ire, and the men having behaved themselves so well, a five-gallon pot of pombe was brought to further nourish the valour, which they one and all thought they possessed.

The second day we arrived at Masangi. I was visited soon afterwards by Soud, the son of Sayd bin Majid, who told me the Arabs were waiting for me; that they would not march from Mfuto until I had arrived.

Eastern Mfuto, after a six hours' march, was reached on the third day from Unyanyembe. Shaw gave in, laid down in the road, and declared he was dying. This news was brought to me about 4 P.M. by one of the last stragglers. I was bound to despatch men to carry him to me, into my camp, though every man was well tired after the long march. A reward stimulated half-a-dozen to venture into the forest just at dusk to find Shaw, who was supposed to be at least three hours away from camp.

About two o'clock in the morning my men returned, having carried Shaw on their backs the entire distance. I was roused up, and had him conveyed to my tent. I examined him, and I assured myself he was not suffering from fever of any kind; and in reply to my inquiries as to how he felt, he said he could neither walk nor ride, that he felt such extreme weakness and lassitude that he was incapable of moving further. After administering a glass of port wine to him in a bowlful of sago gruel, we both fell asleep.

We arrived early the following morning at Mfuto, the rendezvous of the Arab army. A halt was ordered the next day, in order to make ourselves strong by eating the beeves, which we freely slaughtered.

The personnel of our army was as follows:—

Sheikh	Sayd bin Salim	25	half castes
„	Khamis bin Abdullah	250	slaves
„	Thani bin Abdullah	80	„
„	Mussoud bin Abdullah	75	„
„	Abdullah bin Mussoud	80	„
„	Ali bin Sayd bin Nasib	250	„

Sheikh Nasur bin Mussoud	50	slaves
„ Hamed Kimiani	70	„
„ Sheikh Hamdam	30	„
„ Sayd bin Habib	50	„
„ Salim bin Sayf	100	„
„ Sunguru	25	„
„ Sarboko	25	„
„ Soud bin Sayd bin Majid	50	„
„ Mohammed bin Mussoud	30	„
„ Sayd bin Hamed	90	„
„ The 'Herald' Expedition	50	soldiers
„ Mkasiwa's Wanyamwezi	800	„
„ Half-castes and Wangwana	125	„
„ Independent chiefs and their followers	300	„

These made a total of 2,255, according to numbers given me by Thani bin Abdullah, and corroborated by a Baluch in the pay of Sheikh bin Nasib. Of these men 1,500 were armed with guns—flint-lock muskets, German and French double barrels, some English Enfields, and American Springfields — besides these muskets, they were mostly armed with spears and long knives for the purpose of decapitating, and inflicting vengeful gashes in the dead bodies. Powder and ball were plentiful: some men were served a hundred rounds each, my people received each man sixty rounds.

As we filed out of the stronghold of Mfuto, with waving banners denoting the various commanders, with booming horns, and the roar of fifty bass drums, called gomas—with blessings showered on us by the mollahs, and happiest predications from the soothsayers, astrologers, and the diviners of the Korân—who could have foretold that this grand force, before a week passed over its head, would be hurrying into that same stronghold of Mfuto, with each man's heart in his mouth from fear?

The date of our leaving Mfuto for battle with

Mirambo was the 3rd of August. All my goods were stored in Mfuto, ready for the march to Ujiji, should we be victorious over the African chief, but at least for safety, whatever befel us.

Long before we reached Umanda, I was in my hammock in the paroxysms of a fierce attack of intermittent fever, which did not leave me until late that night.

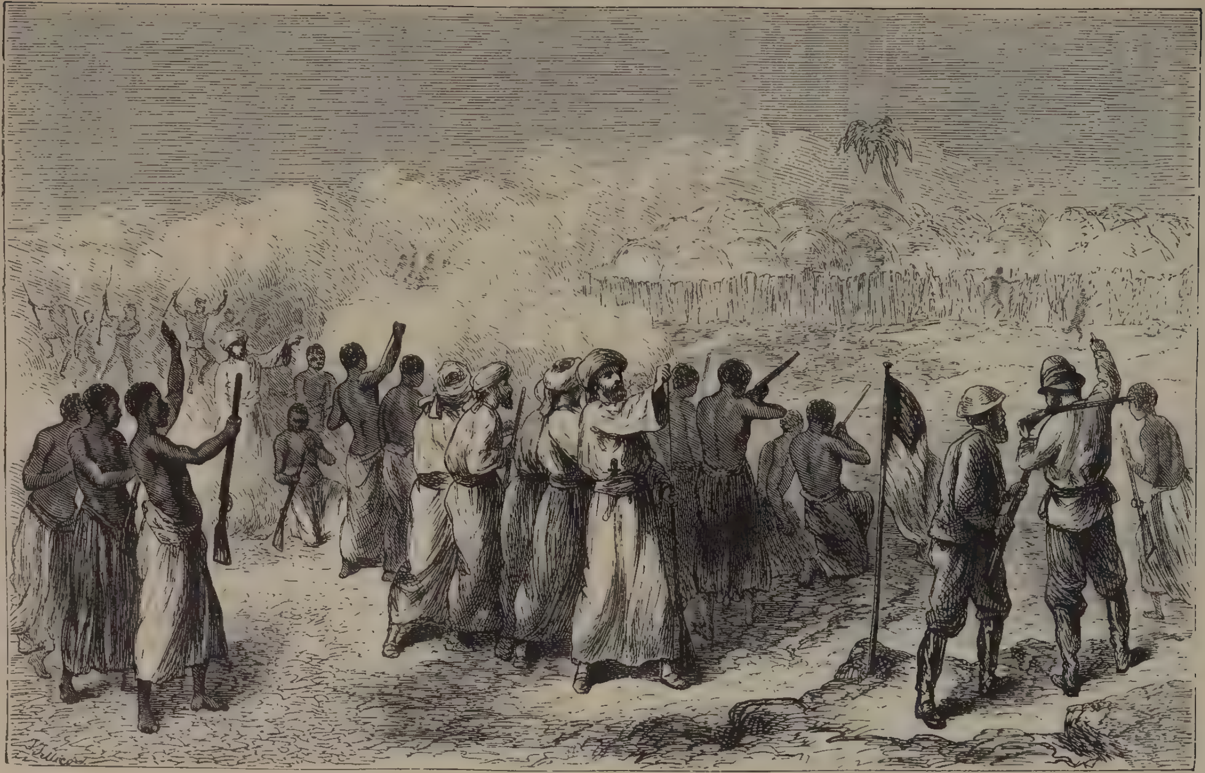
At Umanda, six hours from Mfuto, our warriors bedaubed themselves with the medicine which the wise men had manufactured for them—a compound of matama flour mixed with the juices of a herb whose virtues were only known to the Waganga of the Wanyamwezi.

At 6 A.M. on the 4th of August we were once more prepared for the road, but before we were marched out of the village, the "manneno," or speech, was delivered by the orator of the Wanyamwezi:

"Words! words! words! Listen, sons of Mkasiwa, children of Unyamwezi! the journey is before you, the thieves of the forest are waiting; yes, they are thieves, they cut up your caravans, they steal your ivory, they murder your women. Behold the Arabs are with you, El Wali of the Arab sultan, and the white man are with you. Go, the son of Mkasiwa is with you; fight, kill, take slaves, take cloth, take cattle, kill, eat, and fill yourselves! Go!"

A loud, wild shout followed this bold harangue, the gates of the village were thrown open, and blue, red, and white-robed soldiers were bounding upward like so many gymnasts, firing their guns incessantly, in order to encourage themselves with noise, or to strike terror into the hearts of those who awaited us within the strong enclosure of Zimbizo, Sultan Kolongo's place.

As Zimbizo was distant only five hours from Umanda,



WE ATTACK MIRAMBO.

at 11 A.M. we came in view of it. We halted on the verge of the cultivated area around it and its neighbours, within the shadow of the forest. Strict orders had been given by the several chiefs to their respective commands not to fire, until they were within shooting distance of the boma.

Khamis bin Abdullah crept through the forest to the west of the village. The Wanyamwezi took their position before the main gateway, aided by the forces of Soud the son of Sayd on the right, and the son of Habib on the left, Abdullah, Mussoud, myself, and others made ready to attack the eastern gates, which arrangement effectually shut them in, with the exception of the northern side.

Suddenly, a volley opened on us, as we emerged from the forest along the Unyanyembe road, in the direction they had been anticipating the sight of an enemy, and immediately the attacking forces began their firing in most splendid style. There were some ludicrous scenes of men pretending to fire, then jumping off to one side, then forward, then backward, with the agility of hopping frogs, but the battle was none the less in earnest. The breech-loaders of my men swallowed my metallic cartridges much faster than I liked to see; but happily there was a lull in the firing, and we were rushing into the village from the west, the south, the north, through the gates and over the tall palings that surrounded the village, like so many Merry Andrews; and the poor villagers were flying from the enclosure towards the mountains, through the northern gate, pursued by the fleetest runners of our force, and pelted in the back by bullets from breech-loaders and shot-guns.

The village was strongly defended, and not more than twenty dead bodies were found in it, the strong thick wooden paling having afforded excellent protection against our bullets.

From Zimbizo, after having left a sufficient force within, we sallied out, and in an hour had cleared the neighbourhood of the enemy, having captured two other villages, which we committed to the flames, after gutting them of all valuables. A few tusks of ivory, and about fifty slaves, besides an abundance of grain, composed the "loot," which fell to the lot of the Arabs.

On the 5th, a detachment of Arabs and slaves, seven hundred strong, scoured the surrounding country, and carried fire and devastation up to the boma of Wilyankuru.

On the 6th, Soud bin Sayd and about twenty other young Arabs led a force of five hundred men against Wilyankuru itself, where it was supposed Mirambo was living. Another party went out towards the low wooded hills, a short distance north of Zimbizo, near which place they surprised a youthful forest thief asleep, whose head they stretched backwards, and cut it off as though he were a goat or a sheep. Another party sallied out southward, and defeated a party of Mirambo's "bush-whackers," news of which came to our ears at noon.

In the morning I had gone to Sayd bin Salim's tembe, to represent to him how necessary it was to burn the long grass in the forest of Zimbizo, lest it might hide any of the enemy; but soon afterwards I had been struck down with another attack of intermittent fever, and was obliged to turn in and cover myself with blankets to produce perspiration, but not, however, till I had ordered Shaw and Bombay not to permit any of my men to leave the camp. But I was told soon afterwards by Selim that more than one half had gone to the attack on Wilyankuru, with Soud bin Sayd.

About 6 P.M. the entire camp of Zimbizo was electrified with the news that all the Arabs who had accompanied Soud bin Sayd had been killed; and that more than one-half of his party had been slain. Some of my own men returned, and from them I learned that Uledi, Grant's former valet, Mabruki Khatálabu (Killer of his father), Mabruki (the Little), Baruti of Useguhha, and Ferahan had been killed. I learned also that they had succeeded in capturing Wilyankuru in a very short time, that Mirambo and his son were there, that as they succeeded in effecting an entrance, Mirambo had collected his men, and after leaving the village, had formed an ambush in the grass, on each side of the road, between Wilyankuru and Zimbizo, and that as the attacking party were returning home laden with over a hundred tusks of ivory, and sixty bales of cloth, and two or three hundred slaves, Mirambo's men suddenly rose up on each side of them, and stabbed them with their spears. The brave Soud had fired his double-barrelled gun and shot two men, and was in the act of loading again when a spear was launched, which penetrated through and through him: all the other Arabs shared the same fate. This sudden attack from an enemy they believed to be conquered, so demoralized the party that, dropping their spoil, each man took to his heels, and after making a wide detour through the woods, returned to Zimbizo to repeat the dolorous tale.

The effect of this defeat is indescribable. It was impossible to sleep, from the shrieks of the women whose husbands had fallen. All night they howled their lamentations, and sometimes might be heard the groans of the wounded who had contrived to crawl through the grass unperceived by the enemy. Fugitives were continually coming in throughout the night, but none of my men who were reported to be dead, were ever heard of again.

The 7th was a day of distrust, sorrow, and retreat; the Arabs accused one another for urging war without expending all peaceful means first. There were stormy councils of war held, wherein were some who proposed to return at once to Unyanyembe, and keep within their own houses; and Khamis bin Abdullah raved, like an insulted monarch, against the abject cowardice of his compatriots. These stormy meetings and propositions to retreat were soon known throughout the camp, and assisted more than anything else to demoralize completely the combined forces of Wanyamwezi and slaves. I sent Bombay to Sayd bin Salim to advise him not to think of retreat, as it would only be inviting Mirambo to carry the war to Unyanyembe.

After despatching Bombay with this message, I fell asleep, but about 1.30 P.M. I was awakened by Selim saying, "Master, get up, they are all running away, and Khamis bin Abdullah is himself going."

With the aid of Selim I dressed myself, and staggered towards the door. My first view was of Thani bin Abdullah being dragged away, who, when he caught sight of me, shouted out "Bana — quick — Mirambo is coming." He was then turning to run, and putting on his jacket, with his eyes almost starting out of their sockets with terror. Khamis bin Abdullah was also about departing, he being the last Arab to leave. Two of my men were following him; these Selim was ordered to force back with a revolver.

Shaw was saddling his donkey with my own saddle, preparatory to giving me the slip, and leaving me in the lurch to the tender mercies of Mirambo. There were only Bombay, Mabruki Speke, Chanda who was coolly eating his dinner, Mabruk Unyanyembe, Mtamani, Juma, and Sarmean — only seven out of fifty. All the others had deserted and were by this time far away, except Uledi (Manwa Sera) and Zaidi, whom Selim brought back at the point of a loaded revolver. Selim was then told to saddle my donkey, and Bombay to assist Shaw to saddle his own. In a few moments we were on the road, the men ever looking back for the coming enemy; they belabored the donkeys to some purpose, for they went at a hard trot, which caused me intense pain. I would gladly have lain down to die, but life was sweet, and I had not yet given up all hope of being able to preserve it to the full and final accomplishment of my mission. My mind was actively at work planning and contriving during the long lonely hours of night, which we employed to reach Mfuto, whither I found the Arabs had retreated. In the night Shaw tumbled off his donkey, and would not rise, though implored to do so. As I did not despair myself, so I did not intend that Shaw should despair. He was lifted on his animal, and a man was placed on each side of him to assist him; thus we rode through the darkness. At midnight we reached Mfuto safely, and were at once admitted into the village, from which we had issued so valiantly, but to which we were now returned so ignominiously.

I found all my men had arrived here before dark. Ulimengo, the bold guide who had exulted in his weapons and in our numbers, and was so sanguine of victory, had performed the eleven hours' march in six hours; sturdy Chowpereh, whom I regarded as the faithfullest of my people, had arrived only half an hour later than Ulimengo; and frisky Khamisi, the dandy—the orator—the rampant demagogue—yes—he had come third; and Speke's "Faithfuls" had proved as cowardly as any poor "nigger" of them all. Only Selim—the Arab boy from Jerusalem, had proved brave and faithful. Shaw, though an European born, proved he possessed a soul as base and mean as, if not meaner than, that of the negroes.

I asked Selim, "Why did you not also run away, and leave your master to die?"

"Oh, sir," said the Arab boy, naïvely, "I was afraid you would whip me."

GROUP OF WANYAMWEZI.

CHAPTER IX.

LIFE IN UNYANYEMBE—(*continued*).

It never occurred to the Arab magnates that I had cause of complaint against them; it never occurred to them that I had a right to feel aggrieved at their conduct, for the base desertion of an ally, who had, as a duty to friendship, taken up arms for their sake. Their "salaams" the next morning after the retreat, were given as if nothing had transpired to mar the good feeling that had existed between us.

They were hardly seated, however, before I began to inform them that as the war was only between them and Mirambo, and that as I was afraid, if they were accustomed to run away after every little check, that the war might last a much longer time than I could afford to lose; and that as they had deserted their wounded on the field, and left their sick friends to take care of themselves, they must not consider me in the light of an ally any more. "I am satisfied," said I, "having seen your mode of fighting, that the war will not be ended in so short a time as you think it will. It took you five years, I hear, to conquer and kill Manwa Sera, you will certainly not conquer Mirambo in less than a year. I am a white man, accustomed to wars after a different style, I know something about fighting, but I never saw people run away from an encampment like ours at Zimbizo, for such slight cause as you had. By running away, you have invited Mirambo to follow you to Unyanyembe; you may be sure he will come."

The Arabs protested one after another that they had not intended to have left me, but the Wanyamwezi of Mkasiwa had shouted out that the "Musungu" was gone, and the cry had caused a panic among their people, which it was impossible to allay.

Later that day the Arabs continued their retreat to Tabora, which is twenty-two miles distant from Mfuto. I determined to proceed more leisurely, and on the second day after the flight from Zimbizo, my Expedition, with all the stores and baggage, marched back to Masangi, and on the third day to Kwihara.

The following extracts from the Diary I kept will serve to show better than anything else, my feelings and thoughts about this time, after our disgraceful retreat:

Kwihara. Friday, 11th August, 1871.—Arrived to-day from Zimbili, village of Bomboma's. I am quite disappointed and almost disheartened. But I have one consolation, I have done my duty by the Arabs, a duty

I thought I owed to the kindness they received me with; now, however, the duty is discharged, and I am free to pursue my own course. I feel happy, for some reasons, that the duty has been paid at such a slight sacrifice. Of course if I had lost my life in this enterprise, I should have been justly punished. But apart from my duty to the consideration with which the Arabs had received me, was the necessity of trying every method of reaching Livingstone. This road which the war with Mirambo has closed, is only a month's march from this place, and if the road could be opened with my aid, sooner than without it, why should I refuse my aid? The attempt has been made for the second time to Ujiji—both have failed. I am going to try another route; to attempt to go by the north would be folly. Mirambo's mother and people, and the Wasui, are between me and Ujiji, without including the Watuta, who are his allies, and robbers. The southern route seems to be the most practicable one. Very few people know anything of the country south; those whom I have questioned concerning it speak of "want of water" and robber Wazavira, as serious obstacles; they also say that the settlements are few and far between.

But before I can venture to try this new route, I have to employ a new set of men, as those whom I took to Mfuto consider their engagements at an end, and the fact of five of their number being killed rather damps their ardor for travelling. It is useless to hope that Wanyamwezi can be engaged, because it is against their custom to go with caravans, as carriers, during war time. My position is most serious. I have a good excuse for returning to the coast, but my conscience will not permit me to do so, after so much money has been expended, and so much confidence has been placed in me. In fact, I feel I must die sooner than return.

Saturday, August 12th.—My men, as I supposed they would, have gone; they said that I engaged them to go to Ujiji by Mirambo's road. I have only thirteen left. With this small body of men, whither can I go? I have over one hundred loads in the storeroom. Livingstone's caravan is also here; his goods consist of seventeen bales of cloth, twelve boxes, and six bags of beads. His men are luxuriating upon the best the country affords.

If Livingstone is at Ujiji, he is now locked up with small means of escape. I may consider myself also locked up at Unyanyembe, and I suppose cannot go to Ujiji until this war with Mirambo is settled. Livingstone cannot get his goods, for they are here with mine. He cannot return to Zanzibar, and the road to the Nile is blocked up. He might, if he has men and stores, possibly reach Baker by travelling northwards, through Urundi thence through Ruanda, Karagwah, Uganda, Unyoro, and Ubari to Gondokoro. Pagazis he cannot obtain, for the sources whence a supply might be obtained, are closed. It is an erroneous supposition to think that Livingstone, any more than any other energetic man of his calibre, can travel through Africa without some sort of an escort, and a durable supply of marketable cloth and beads.

I was told to-day by a man that when Livingstone was coming from Nyassa Lake towards the Tanganika (the very time that people thought him murdered) he was met by Sayd bin Omar's caravan, which was bound for Ulamba. He was travelling with Mohammed bin Gharib. This Arab, who was coming from Urungu, met Livingstone at Chi-cumbi's, or Kwa-chi-kumbi's, country, and travelled with him afterwards, I hear, to Manyuema or Manyema. Manyuema is forty marches from the north of Nyassa. Livingstone was walking; he was dressed in American sheeting. He had lost all his cloth in Lake Liemba while crossing it in a boat. He had three canoes with him; in one he put his cloth, another he loaded with his boxes and some of his men, into the third he went himself with two servants and two fishermen. The boat with his cloth was upset. On leaving Nyassa, Livingstone went to Ubissa, thence to Uemba, thence to Urungu. Livingstone wore a cap. He had a breech-loading double-barreled rifle with him, which fired fulminating balls. He was also armed with two revolvers. The Wahiyow with Livingstone told this man that their master had many men with him at first, but that several had deserted him.

August 13*th.*—A caravan came in to-day from the sea-coast. They reported that William L. Farquhar, whom I left sick at Mpwapwa, Usagara, and his cook, were dead. Farquhar, I was told, died a few days after I had entered Ugogo, his cook died a few weeks later. My first impulse was for revenge. I believed that Leukole had played me false, and had poisoned him, or that he had been murdered in some other manner; but a personal interview with the Msawahili who brought the news informing me that Farquhar had succumbed to his dreadful illness has done away with that suspicion. So far as I could understand him, Farquhar had in the morning declared himself well enough to proceed, but in attempting to rise, had fallen backward and died. I was also told that the Wasagara, possessing some superstitious notions respecting the dead, had ordered Jako to take the body out for burial, that

Jako, not being able to carry it, had dragged the body to the jungle, and there left it naked without the slightest covering of earth, or anything else.

"There is one of us gone, Shaw, my boy! Who will be the next?" I remarked that night to my companion.

August 14th.—Wrote some letters to Zanzibar. Shaw was taken very ill last night, whether of fever or what, I do not know. I do not think it is the fever. I suspect it is a fierce attack of a venereal affection. I have no medicines for this disease. So I have sent three soldiers to Zanzibar for them, having bribed them to haste, with a promise of $50 each.

August 19th. Saturday.—My soldiers are employed stringing beads. Shaw is still a-bed. We hear that Mirambo is coming to Unyanyembe. A detachment of Arabs and their slaves have started this morning to possess themselves of the powder left there by the redoubtable Sheikh Sayd bin Salim, the commander-in-chief of the Arab settlements.

August 21st. Monday.—Shaw still sick. One hundred fundo of beads have been strung. The Arabs are preparing for another sally against Mirambo. The advance of Mirambo upon Unyanyembe was denied by Sayd bin Salim, this morning.

August 22nd.—We were stringing beads this morning when, about 10 A.M., we heard a continued firing from the direction of Tabora. Rushing out from our work to the front door facing Tabora, we heard considerable volleying, and scattered firing, plainly;, and ascending to the top of my tembe, I saw with my glasses the smoke of the guns. Some of my men who were sent on to ascertain the cause came running back with the information that Mirambo had attacked Tabora with over two thousand men, and that a force of over one thousand Watuta, who had allied themselves with him for the sake of plunder, had come suddenly upon Tabora, attacking from opposite directions.

Later in the day, or about noon, watching the low saddle over which we could see Tabora, we saw it crowded with fugitives from that settlement, who were rushing to our settlement at Kwihara for protection. From these people we heard the sad information that the noble Khamis bin Abdullah, his little protégé, Khamis, Mohammed bin Abdullah, Ibrahim bin Rashid, and Sayf, the son of Ali, the son of Sheikh, the son of Nasib, had been slain.

When I inquired into the details of the attack, and the manner of the death of these Arabs, I was told that after the first firing which warned the inhabitants of Tabora that the enemy was upon them, Khamis bin Abdullah and some of the principal Arabs who happened to be with him, had ascended to the roof of his tembe, and with his spyglass he had looked towards the direction of the firing. To his great astonishment he saw the plain around Tabora filled with approaching savages, and about two miles off, near Kazima, a tent pitched which he knew to belong to Mirambo, from its having been presented to that chief by the Arabs of Tabora when they were on good terms with him.

Khamis bin Abdullah descended to his house saying, "Let us go to meet him. Arm yourselves, my friends, and come with me." His friends advised him strongly not to go out of his tembe; for so long as each Arab kept to his tembe they were more than a match for the Ruga-Ruga and the Watuta together. But Khamis broke out impatiently with, "Would you advise us to stop in our tembes, for fear of this Mshensi (pagan)? Who goes with me?" His little protégé, Khamis, son of a dead friend, asked to be allowed to be his gun-bearer; Mohammed bin Abdullah, Ibrahim bin Rashid, and Sayf, the son of Ali, young Arabs of good families, who were proud to live with the noble Khamis, also offered to go with him. After hastily arming eighty of his slaves, contrary to the advice of his prudent friends, he sallied out, and was soon face to face with his cunning and determined enemy Mirambo. This chief, upon seeing the Arabs advance towards him, gave orders to retreat slowly. Khamis, deceived by this, rushed on with his friends after them. Suddenly Mirambo ordered his men to advance upon them in a body, and at the sight of the precipitate rush upon their party, Khamis's slaves incontinently took to their heels, never even deigning to cast a glance behind them, leaving their master to the fate which was now overtaking him. The savages surrounded the five Arabs, and though several of them fell before the Arabs' fire, continued to shoot at the little party, until Khamis bin Abdullah received a bullet in the leg, which brought him to his knees, and, for the first time, to the knowledge that his slaves had deserted him. Though wounded, the brave man continued shooting, but he soon afterwards received a bullet through the heart. Little Khamis, upon seeing his adopted father's fall, exclaimed! "My father Khamis is dead, I will die with him," and continued fighting until he received, shortly after, his death wound. In a few minutes there was not one Arab left alive.

Late at night some more particulars arrived of this tragic scene. I was told by people who saw the bodies, that the body of Khamis bin Abdullah, who was a fine, noble, brave, portly man, was found with the skin of his forehead, the beard and skin of the lower part of his face, the fore part of the nose, the fat over the stomach and abdomen, the genital organs, and, lastly, a bit from each heel, cut off, by the savage allies of Mirambo. And in the same condition were found the bodies of his adopted son and fallen friends. The flesh and skin thus taken from the bodies was taken, of course, by the waganga or medicine men, to make what they deem to be the most powerful potion of all to enable men to be strong against their enemies. This potion is mixed up with their ugali and rice, and is taken in this manner with the most perfect confidence in its efficacy, as an invulnerable protection against bullets and missiles of all descriptions.

It was a most sorry scene to witness from our excited settlement at Kwihara, almost the whole of Tabora in flames, and to see the hundreds of people crowding into Kwihara.

Perceiving that my people were willing to stand by me, I made preparations for defence by boring loopholes for muskets into the stout clay walls of my tembe. They were made so quickly, and seemed so admirably adapted for the efficient defence of the tembe, that my men got quite brave, and Wangwana refugees with guns in their hands, driven out of Tabora, asked to be admitted into our tembe to assist in its defence. Livingstone's men were also collected, and invited to help defend their master's goods against Mirambo's supposed attack. By night I had one hundred and fifty armed men in my courtyard, stationed at every possible point where an attack might be expected. To-morrow Mirambo has threatened that he will come to Kwihara. I hope to God he will come, and if he comes within range of an American rifle, I shall see what virtue lies in American lead.

August 23rd.—We have passed a very anxious day in the valley of Kwihara. Our eyes were constantly directed towards unfortunate Tabora. It has been said that three tembes only have stood the brunt of the attack. Abid bin Suliman's house has been destroyed, and over two hundred tusks of ivory that belonged to him have become the property of the African Bonaparte. My tembe is in as efficient a state of defence as its style and means of defence will allow. Rifle-pits surround the house outside, and all native huts that obstructed the view have been torn down, and all trees and shrubs which might serve as a shelter for any one of the enemy have been cut. Provisions and water enough for six days have been brought. I have ammunition enough to last two weeks, and, without boasting, I do not think that 10,000 Africans could take it, though a body of 400 or 500 Europeans might easily do it, unassisted by cannon; with cannon 50 Europeans could easily take the place. The walls are three feet thick, and there are apartments within apartments, so that a desperate body of men could fight until the last room had been taken.

The Arabs, my neighbours, endeavour to seem brave, but it is evident they are about despairing; I have heard it rumoured that the Arabs of Kwihara, if Tabora is taken, will start *en masse* for the coast, and give the country up to Mirambo. If such are their intentions, and they are really carried into effect, I shall be in a pretty mess. However, if they do leave me, Mirambo will not reap any benefit from my stores, nor from Livingstone's either, for I shall burn the whole house, and everything in it; that's my idea. But what in the name of everything will become of Shaw? In such a crisis nobody would carry him.

August 24th.—The American flag is still waving above my house, and the Arabs are still in Unyanyembe.

About 10 A.M., a messenger came from Tabora, asking us if we were not going to assist them against Mirambo. I felt very much like going out to help them; but after debating long upon the pros and cons of it,—asking myself, Was it prudent? Ought I to go? What will become of the people if I were killed? Will they not desert me again? What was the fate of Khamis bin Abdullah?—I sent word that I would not go; that they ought to feel perfectly at home in their tembes against such a force as Mirambo had, that I should be very glad if they could induce him to come to Kwihara, in which case I would try and pick him off.

They say that Mirambo, and his principal officer, carry umbrellas over their heads, that he himself has long hair like a Mnyamwezi pagazi, and a beard. If he comes, all the men carrying umbrellas will have bullets rained on them in the hope that one lucky bullet may hit him. According to popular ideas, I should make a silver bullet, but I have no silver with me. I might make a gold one.

About noon I went over to see Sheikh bin Nasib, leaving about 100 men inside the house to guard it while I was absent. This old fellow is quite a philosopher in his way. I should call him a professor of minor philosophy. He is generally so sententious—fond of aphorisms, and a very deliberate character. I was astonished to find him so despairing. His aphorisms have deserted him, his philosophy has not been able to stand against disaster. He listened to me, more like a man moribund, than one possessing all the means of defence and offence.

I loaded his two-pounder with ball, and grape, and small slugs of iron, and advised him not to fire it until Mirambo's people were at his gates.

About 4 P.M. I heard that Mirambo had deported himself to Kazima, a place north-west of Tabora a couple of miles.

August 26th.—The Arabs sallied out this morning to attack Kazima, but refrained, because Mirambo asked for a day's grace, to eat the beef he had stolen from them. He has asked them impudently to come to-morrow morning, at which time he says he will give them a bellyful of fighting.

Kwihara is once more restored to a peaceful aspect, and fugitives no longer throng its narrow limits in fear and despair.

August 27th.—Mirambo retreated during the night; and when the Arabs went in force to attack his village of Kazima, they found it vacant.

The Arabs hold councils of war now-a-days—battle meetings, of which they seem to be very fond, but extremely slow to act upon. They were about to make friends with the northern Watuta, but Mirambo was ahead of them. They had talked of invading Mirambo's territory the second time, but Mirambo invaded Unyanyembe with fire and sword, bringing death to many a household, and he has slain the noblest of them all.

The Arabs spend their hours in talking and arguing, while the Ujiji and Karagwah roads are more firmly closed than ever. Indeed, many of the influential Arabs are talking of returning to Zanzibar; saying, "Unyanyembe is ruined." I have lost all my respect for them.

Meanwhile, with poor success, however, perceiving the impossibility of procuring Wanyamwezi pagazis, I am hiring the Wangwana renegades living in Unyanyembe to proceed with me to Ujiji, at treble prices. Each man is offered 30 doti, ordinary hire of a carrier being only from 5 to 10 doti to Ujiji. I want fifty men. I intend to leave about sixty or seventy loads here under charge of a guard. I shall leave all personal baggage behind, except one small portmanteau.

August 28th.—No news to-day of Mirambo. Shaw is getting strong again.

Sheikh bin Nasib called on me to-day, but, except on minor philosophy, he had nothing to say.

I have determined, after a study of the country, to lead a flying caravan to Ujiji, by a southern road through northern Ukonongo and Ukawendi. Sheikh bin Nasib has been informed to-night of this determination.

August 29th.—Shaw got up to-day for a little work. Alas! all my fine-spun plans of proceeding by boat over the Victoria N'Yanza, thence down the Nile, have been totally demolished, I fear, through this war with Mirambo—this black Bonaparte. Two months have been wasted here already. The Arabs take such a long time to come to a conclusion. Advice is plentiful, and words are as numerous as the blades of grass in our valley; all that is wanting is decision. The Arabs' hope and stay is dead—Khamis bin Abdullah is no more Where are the other warriors of whom the Wangwana and Wanyamwezi bards sing? Where is mighty Kisesa—great Abdullah bin Nasib? Where is Sayd, the son of Majid? Kisesa is in Zanzibar, and Sayd, the son of Majid, is in Ujiji, as yet ignorant that his son has fallen in the forest of Wilyankuru.

Shaw is improving fast. I am unsuccessful as yet in procuring soldiers. I almost despair of ever being able to move from here. It is such a drowsy, sleepy, slow, dreaming country. Arabs, Wangwana, Wanyamwezi, are all alike—all careless how time flies. Their to-morrow means sometimes within a month. To me it is simply maddening.

August 30th.—Shaw will not work. I cannot get him to stir himself. I have petted him, and coaxed him; I have even cooked little luxuries for him myself. And, while I am straining every nerve to get ready for Ujiji, Shaw is satisfied with looking on listlessly. What a change from the ready-handed bold man he was at Zanzibar!

I sat down by his side to-day with my palm and needle, in order to encourage him, and to-day, for the first time, I told him of the real nature of my mission. I told him that I did not care about the geography of the country half as much as I cared about FINDING LIVINGSTONE! I told him, for the first time, "Now, my dear Shaw, you think probably that I have been sent here to find the depth of the Tanganika. Not a bit of it, man; I was told to find Livingstone. It is to find Livingstone I am here. It is to find Livingstone I am going. Don't you see, old fellow, the importance of the mission, don't you see what reward you will get from Mr. Bennett, if you will help me. I am sure, if ever you come to New York, you will never be in want of a fifty-dollar bill. So shake yourself; jump about; look lively. Say you will not die; that is half the battle. Snap your fingers at the fever. I will guarantee the fever won't kill you. I have medicine enough for a regiment here!"

Bah! Bah! I was talking to a lifeless mummy. His eyes lit up a little, but the light that shone in them shortly faded, and died. I was quite disheartened. I made some strong punch, to put fire in his veins, that I might see life in him. I put sugar, and eggs, and seasoned it with lemon and spice. "Drink, Shaw," said I, "and forget your miserable infirmities. Don't breathe in my face, man, as if you were about to die. Leave off this pantomime. You are not sick, dear fellow; it is only *ennui* you are feeling. Look at Selim there. Now, I will bet any amount, that he will not die; that I will carry him home safe to his friends at Jerusalem! I will carry you home also, if you will let me!"

Piff-puff at his nasty pipe. Hear him breathe! You would think he was dying; but he is not even sick. He told me, only the other day, that he knew every trick of old sea-salts, when they wished to shirk duty at sea. I am sure he is practising a trick on me. This intermittent fever! I know every stage of it; and I feel convinced he has not got it.

Of one thing I feel sure, that if I took a stick I could take the nonsense out of him.

September 1st.—According to Thani bin Abdullah whom I visited to-day, at his tembe in Maroro, Mirambo lost two hundred men in the attack upon Tabora, while the Arabs' losses were, five Arabs, thirteen freemen and eight slaves, besides three tembes, and over one hundred small huts burned, two hundred and eighty ivory tusks, and sixty cows and bullocks captured.

September 3rd.—Received a packet of letters and newspapers from Capt. Webb, at Zanzibar. What a good thing it is that one's friends, even in far America, think of the absent one in Africa! They tell me, that no one dreams of my being in Africa yet!

I applied to Sheikh bin Nasib to-day to permit Livingstone's caravan to go under my charge to Ujiji, but he would not listen to it. He says he feels certain I am going to my death.

September 4th.—Shaw is quite well to-day, he says. Selim is down with the fever. My force is gradually increasing, though some of my old soldiers are falling off. Umgareza is blind; Baruti has the small-pox very badly; Bilali has a strange disease, an ulcer or something, rear-ward; Sadala has the mukunguru (the intermittent).

September 5th.—Baruti died this morning. He was one of my best soldiers; and was one of those men who accompanied Speke to Egypt. Baruti is number seven of those who have died since leaving Zanzibar.

To-day my ears have been poisoned with the reports of the Arabs, about the state of the country I am about to travel through. "The roads are bad; they are all stopped; the Ruga-Ruga are out in the forests; the Wakonongo are coming from the south to help Mirambo; the Washensi are at war, one tribe against another." My men are getting dispirited, they have imbibed the fears of the Arabs and the Wanyamwezi. Bombay begins to feel that I had better go back to the coast, and try again some other time.

We buried Barut under the shade of the banyan-tree, a few yards west of my tembe. The grave was made four and a half feet deep and three feet wide. At the bottom on one side a narrow trench was excavated, into which the body was rolled on his side, with his face turned towards Mecca. The body was dressed in a doti and a half of new American sheeting. After it was placed properly in its narrow bed, a sloping roof of sticks, covered over with matting and old canvas, was made, to prevent the earth from falling over the body. The grave was then filled, the soldiers laughing merrily. On the top of the grave was planted a small shrub, and into a small hole made with the hand, was poured water lest he might feel thirsty—they said—on his way to Paradise; water was then sprinkled all over the grave, and the gourd broken. This ceremony being ended, the men recited the Arabic Fat-hah, after which they left the grave of their dead comrade to think no more of him.

September 7th.—An Arab named Mohammed presented me to-day with a little boy slave, called "Ndugu M'hali" (my brother's wealth). As I did not like the name, I called the chiefs of my caravan together, and asked them to give him a better name. One suggested "Simba" (a lion), another said he thought "Ngombe" (a cow) would suit the boy-child, another thought he ought to be called "Mirambo," which raised a loud laugh. Bombay thought "Bombay Mdogo" would suit my black-skinned infant very well. Ulimengo, however, after looking at his quick eyes, and noting his celerity of movement, pronounced the name Ka-lu-lu as the best for him, "because," said he, "just look at his eyes, so bright! look at his form, so slim! watch his movements, how quick! Yes, Kalulu is his name." "Yes, bana," said the others, "let it be Kalulu."

"Kalulu" is a Kisawahili term for the young of the blue-buck (*perpusilla*) antelope.

"Well, then," said I, water being brought in a huge tin pan, Selim, who was willing to stand godfather holding him over the water, "let his name henceforth be Kalulu, and let no man take it from him," and thus it was that the little black boy of Mohammed's came to be called Kalulu.

The Expedition is increasing in numbers; it is now composed of:

2 white men.
1 Arab boy.
1 Hindi.
29 Wangwana.
1 boy from Londa (Cazembe's).
1 boy from Uganda.
1 boy from Liemba, or Uwemba.

We had quite an alarm before dark. Much firing was heard at Tabora, which led us to anticipate an attack on Kwihara. It turned out, however, to be a salute fired in honor of the arrival of Sultan Kitambi to pay a visit to Mkasiwa, Sultan of Unyanyembe.

September 8th.—Towards night Sheikh bin Nasib received a letter from an Arab at Mfuto, reporting that an attack was made on that place by Mirambo and his Watuta allies. It also warned him to bid the people of Kwihara hold themselves in readiness, because if Mirambo succeeded in storming Mfuto, he would march direct on Kwihara.

September 9th.—Mirambo was defeated with severe loss yesterday, in his attack upon Mfuto. He was successful in an assault he made upon a small Wanyamwezi village, but when he attempted to storm Mfuto, he was repulsed with severe loss, losing three of his principal men. Upon withdrawing his forces from the attack, the inhabitants sallied out, and followed him to the forest of Umanda, where he was again utterly routed, himself ingloriously flying from the field.

The heads of his chief men slain in the attack were brought to Kwikuru, the boma of Mkasiwa.

September 11th.—Shaw is a sentimental driveller, with a large share of the principles of Joseph Surface within his nature. He is able at times to kindle into an eloquent rant about the vices of mankind, particularly those of rich people. His philippics on this topic deserved a better audience than I furnished him.

He has a habit of being self-absorbed—is an oddity quite the reverse of Jack Bunsby. Instead of looking towards the horizon, he regards the ground at his feet with a look which seems to say, there is something wrong somewhere, and I am trying to find out where it can be, and how to rectify it.

He told me to-day his father had been a captain in Her Majesty's navy, that he had been present at four levees of Queen Victoria. This can hardly be, however, as I cannot imagine a naval captain's son being so ignorant of penmanship as scarcely to be able to write his own name, nor can I see how it is possible that he could have been presented to the Queen, for I have always understood that the Court of St. James's is the most aristocratic in Europe.

He is very angry, though, with me, because I laugh at him, and has just opened a sentimental battery on me which makes me almost cry out with vexation that I encumbered myself with such a fool.

September 14*th*.—The Arab boy Selim is delirious from constant fevers. Shaw is sick again, or pretends to be. These two occupy most of my time. I am turned into a regular nurse, for I have no one to assist me in attending upon them. If I try to instruct Abdul Kader in the art of being useful, his head is so befogged with the villainous fumes of Unyamwezi tobacco, that he wanders bewildered about, breaking dishes, and upsetting cooked dainties, until I get so exasperated that my peace of mind is broken completely for a full hour.

If I ask Ferajji, my now formally constituted cook, to assist, his thick wooden head fails to receive an idea, and I am thus obliged to play the part of *chef de cuisine.*

September 15*th.*—The third month of my residence n Unyanyembe is almost finished, and I am still here, but I hope to be gone before the 23rd inst.

All last night, until nine A.M. this morning, my soldiers danced and sang to the manes of their dead comrades, whose bones now bleach in the forests of Wilyankuru. Two or three huge pots of pombe failed to satisfy the raging thirst which the vigorous exercise they were engaged in, created. So, early this morning, I was called upon to contribute a shukka for another potful of the potent liquor.

To-day I was busy selecting the loads for each soldier and pagazi. In order to lighten their labor as much as possible, I reduced each load from 70 lbs. to 50 lbs., by which I hope to be enabled to make some long marches. I have been able to engage ten pagazis during the last two or three days.

I have two or three men still very sick, and it is almost useless to expect that they will be able to carry anything, but I am in hopes that other men may be engaged to take their places before the actual day of departure, which now seems to be drawing near rapidly.

September 16*th.*—We have almost finished our work—on the fifth day from this—God willing—we shall march. I engaged two more pagazis besides two guides, named Asmani and Mabruki. If vastness of the human form could terrify any one, certainly Asmani's appearance is well calculated to produce that effect. He stands considerably over six feet without shoes, and has shoulders broad enough for two ordinary men.

To-morrow I mean to give the people a farewell feast, to celebrate our departure from this forbidding and unhappy country.

September 17*th.*—The banquet is ended. I slaughtered two bullocks, and had a barbacue; three sheep, two goats, and fifteen chickens, 120 lbs. of rice, twenty large loaves of bread made of Indian corn-flour, one hundred eggs, 10 lbs. of butter, and five gallons of sweet-milk, were the contents of which the banquet was formed. The men invited their friends and neighbours, and about one hundred women and children partook of it.

After the banquet was ended, the pombe, or native beer, was brought in in five gallon pots, and the people commenced their dance, which continues even now as I write.

September 19*th.*—I had a slight attack of fever to-day, which has postponed our departure. Selim and Shaw are both recovered. Selim tells me that Shaw has said that I would die like a donkey; and that he said he would take charge of my journals, and trunks, and proceed to the coast immediately, if I die. This afternoon, he is stated to have said that he does not intend to go to Ujiji, but that when I am gone, he will stock the yard full of chickens, in order to be able to get fresh eggs every day, and that he will buy a cow, from which he will be able to procure fresh milk daily.

At night Shaw came to me while the fever was at its height, to ask me to whom I would like to have him write, in case I should die, because, said he, even the strongest of us may die. I told him to go and mind his own business, and not be croaking near me.

About 8 P.M. Sheik bin Nasib came to me imploring me not to go away to-morrow, because I was so sick.

Thani Sakhburi suggested to me that I might stay another month; in answer, I told them that white men are not accustomed to break their words. I had said I would go, and I intended to go.

Sheikh bin Nasib gave up all hope of inducing me to remain another day, and he has gone away, with a promise to write to Seyd Burghash to tell him how obstinate I am, and that I am determined to be killed. This was a parting shot.

About 10 P.M. the fever had gone. All were asleep in the tembe but myself, and an unutterable loneliness came on me as I reflected on my position, and my intentions, and felt the utter lack of sympathy with me in all around. Even my own white assistant, with whom I had striven hard, was less sympathizing than my little black boy Kalulu. It requires more nerve than I possess, to dispel all the dark presentiments that come upon the mind. But probably what I call presentiments are simply the impress on the mind of the warnings which these false-hearted Arabs have repeated so often. This melancholy and loneliness I feel, may probably have their origin from the same cause. The single candle, which barely lights up the dark shade that fills the corners of my room, is but a poor incentive to cheerfulness. I feel as though I were imprisoned between stone walls. But why should I feel as if baited by these stupid, slow-witted Arabs and their warnings and croakings? I fancy a suspicion haunts my mind, as I write, that there lies some motive behind all this. I wonder if these Arabs tell me all these things to keep me here, in the hope that I might be induced another time to assist them in their war with Mirambo! If they think so, they are much mistaken, for I have taken a solemn, enduring oath, an oath to be kept while the least hope of life remains in me, not to be tempted to break the resolution I have formed, never to give up the search, until I find Livingstone alive, or find his dead body; and never to return home without the strongest possible proofs that he is alive, or that he is dead. No living man, or living men, shall stop me, only death can prevent me. But death—not even this; I shall not die, I will not die, I cannot die! And something tells me, I do not know what it is—perhaps it is the ever-living hopefulness of my own nature, perhaps it is the natural presumption born out of an abundant and glowing vitality, or the outcome of an overweening confidence in one's self—anyhow and everyhow, something tells me to-night I shall find him, and—write it larger—Find him! Find him! Even the words are inspiring. I feel more happy. Have I uttered a prayer? I shall sleep calmly to-night.

I have felt myself compelled to copy out of my Diary the above notes, as they explain, written as they are on the spot, the vicissitudes of my "Life at Unyanyembe." To me they appear to explain far better than any amount of descriptive writing, even of the most graphic, the nature of the life I led. There they are, unexaggerated, in their literality and entirety, precisely as I conceived them at the time they happened. They speak of fevers without number to myself and men, without entering into any diagnosis of or disquisition upon them; they relate our dangers, and little joys, our annoyances and our pleasures, as they occurred.

CHAPTER X.

TO MRERA, UKONONGO.

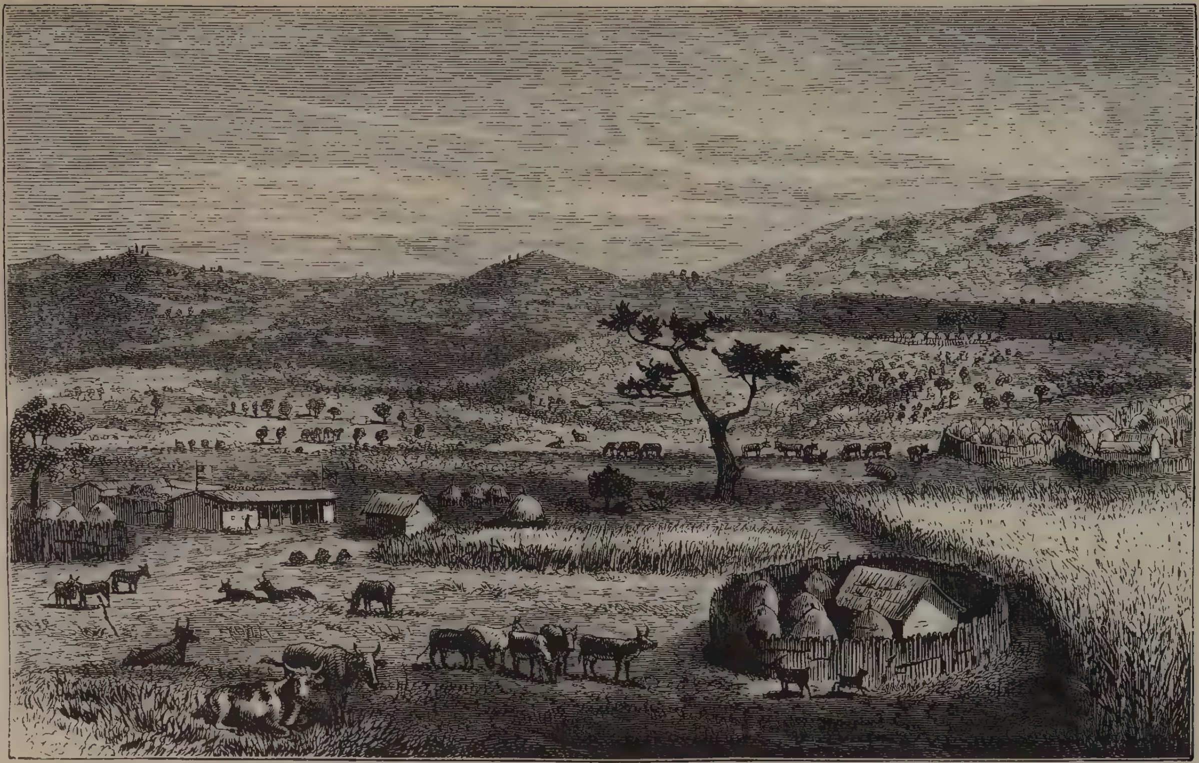
UNYAMWEZI.

From Kwihara to —	h.	m.
Mkwenkwe	1	30
Inesuka	2	0
Kasegera	3	0
Kigandu	2	45
Ugunda	7	0
Benta	3	15
Kikuru	5	0
Ziwani	4	0
Manyara	6	30

UKONONGO.

From Manyara to—	h.	m.
Gombe River	4	15
Ziwani	5	20
Tongoni	1	30
Camp	5	15
Marefu	3	0
Utende	7	15
Mtoni	4	0
Mwaru	5	15
Mrera	5	13

THE 20th of September had arrived. This was the day I had decided to cut loose from those who tormented me with their doubts, their fears; and beliefs, and commence the march to Ujiji by a southern route. I was very weak from the fever that had attacked me the day before, and it was a most injudicious act to commence a march under such circumstances. But I had boasted to



VIEW OF KWIHARA.

Sheikh bin Nasib that a white man never breaks his word, and my reputation as a white man would have been ruined had I stayed behind, or postponed the march, in consequence of feebleness.

I mustered the entire caravan outside the tembe, our flags and streamers were unfurled, the men had their loads resting on the walls, there was considerable shouting, and laughing, and negroidal fanfaronnade. The Arabs had collected from curiosity's sake to see us off—all except Sheikh bin Nasib, whom I had offended by my asinine opposition to his wishes. The old Sheikh took to his bed, but sent his son to bear me a last morsel of philosophic sentimentality, which I was to treasure up as the last words of the patriarchal Sheikh, the son of Nasib, the son of Ali, the son of Sayf. Poor Sheikh! if thou hadst only known what was at the bottom of this stubbornness—this ass-like determination to proceed the wrong way—what wouldst thou then have said, O Sheikh? But the Sheikh comforted himself with the thought that I might know what I was about better than he did, which is most likely, only neither he nor any other Arab will ever know exactly the motive that induced me to march at all westward—when the road to the east was ever so much easier.

My braves whom I had enlisted for a rapid march somewhere, out of Unyanyembe, were named as follows:—

1. John William Shaw, London, England.
2. Selim Heshmy, Jerusalem, Palestine.
3. Seedy Mbarak Mombay, Zanzibar.
4. Mabruki Speke, ditto.
5. Ulimengo, ditto.
6. Ambari, ditto.
7. Uledi, ditto.

8. Asmani, Zanzibar.
9. Sarmean, ditto.
10. Kamna, ditto.
11. Zaidi, ditto.
12. Khamisi, ditto.
13. Chowpereh, Bagamoyo.
14. Kingaru, ditto.
15. Belali, ditto.
16. Ferous, Unyanyembe.
17. Rojab, Bagamoyo.
18. Mabruk Unyanyembe, Unyanyembe.
19. Mtamani, ditto.
20. Chanda, Maroro.
21. Sadala, Zanzibar.
22. Kombo, ditto.
23. Saburi the Great, Maroro.
24. Saburi the Little, ditto.
25. Marora, ditto.
26. Ferajji (the cook), Zanzibar.
27. Mabruk Saleem, Zanzibar.
28. Baraka, ditto.
29. Ibrahim, Maroro.
30. Mabruk Ferous, ditto.
31. Baruti, Bagamoyo.
32. Umgareza, Zanzibar.
33. Hamadi (the guide), ditto.
34. Asmani, ditto ditto.
35. Mabruk, ditto ditto.
36. Hamdallah, ditto, Tabora.
37. Jumah, Zanzibar.
38. Maganga, Mkwenkwe.
39. Muccadum, Tabora.
40. Dasturi, ditto.
41. Tumayona, Ujiji.

42. Mparamoto, Ujiji.
43. Wakiri, ditto.
44. Mufu, ditto.
45. Mpepo, ditto.
46. Kapingu, ditto.
47. Mashishanga, ditto.
48. Muheruka, ditto.
49. Missossi, ditto.
50. Tufum Byah, ditto.
51. Majwara (boy), Uganda.
52. Belali (boy), Uemba.
53. Kalulu (boy), Lunda.
54. Abdul Kader (tailor), Malabar.

These are the men and boys whom I had selected to be crowned as Immortals, whom I had chosen to be my companions on the apparently useless mission of seeking for the lost traveller, David Livingstone. The goods with which I had burdened them, consisted of 1,000 doti, or 4,000 yds. of cloth, six bags of beads, four loads of ammunition, one tent, one bed and clothes, one box of medicine, sextant and books, two loads of tea, coffee, and sugar, one load of flour and candles, one load of canned meats, sardines, and miscellaneous necessaries, and one load of cooking utensils.

The men were all in their places except Bombay. Bombay had gone; he could not be found. I despatched a man to hunt him up. He was found weeping in the arms of his Delilah.

"Why did you go away, Bombay, when you knew I intended to go, and was waiting?"

"Oh, master, I was saying good-bye to my missis."

"Oh, indeed?"

"Yes, master; you no do it, when you go away?"

"Silence, sir."

"Oh! all right."

"What is the matter with you, Bombay?"

"Oh, nuffin."

As I saw he was in a humor to pick a quarrel with me before those Arabs who had congregated outside of my tembe to witness my departure, and as I was not in a humor to be balked by anything that might turn up, the consequence was, that I was obliged to thrash Bombay with my dog-whip, an operation which soon cooled his hot choler, but brought down on my head a loud chorus of remonstrances from my pretended Arab friends—"Now, master, don't, don't—stop it, master: the poor man knows better than you what he and you may expect on the road you are now taking."

If anything was better calculated to put me in a rage than Bombay's insolence before a crowd it was this gratuitous interference with what I considered my own especial business; but I restrained myself, though I told them, in a loud voice, that I did not choose to be interfered with, unless they wished to quarrel with me.

"No, no, bana," they all exclaimed; "we do not wish to quarrel with you. In the name of God! go on your way in peace."

"Fare you well, then," said I, shaking hands with them.

"Farewell, master, farewell. We wish you, we are sure, all success, and God be with you, and guide you!"

"March!"

A parting salute was fired; the flags were raised up by the guides, each pagazi rushed for his load, and in a short time, with songs and shouts, the head of the Expedition had filed round the western end of my tembe along the road to Ugunda.

"Now, Mr. Shaw, I am waiting, sir. Mount your donkey, if you cannot walk."

"Please, Mr. Stanley, I am afraid I cannot go."

"Why?"

"I don't know, I am sure. I feel very weak."

"So am I weak. It was but late last night, as you know, that the fever left me. Don't back out, man, before these Arabs; remember you are a white man. Here, Selim, Mabruki, Bombay, help Mr. Shaw on his donkey, and walk by him."

"Oh, bana, bana," said the Arabs, "don't take him. Do you not see he is sick?"

"You keep away; nothing will prevent me from taking him. He shall go."

"Go on, Bombay."

The last of my party had gone. The tembe, so lately a busy scene, had already assumed a naked, desolate appearance. I turned towards the Arabs, lifted my hat, and said again, "Farewell," then faced about for the south, followed by my four young gun-bearers, Selim, Kalulu, Majwara, and Belali.

Before we had gone five hundred yards the wild Kinyamwezi donkey, probed behind by sly Mabruki, lifted up his heels, and John Shaw, never a very good rider, measured his length on the ground near a thorn-bush. Shaw screamed, and we all ran up to assist him.

"What is it, my dear fellow?" I asked. "Are you hurt?"

"Oh dear, oh dear! Let me go back, please, Mr. Stanley."

"Why? Because you have had a fall from a donkey? Come, pluck up courage, man. I should be so sorry to have to say you backed out. In four or five days you will be laughing at this little mishap. Mostly all people feel a little downhearted when they leave a pleasant place. Get on your donkey again, old fellow. Say you will go—that's the ticket."

We assisted him once more; but I was all the time wondering, nevertheless, if it were not much better to send him back, rather than carry an unwilling man almost by force with me over the hundreds of miles that must lie between me and Ujiji. What if he died on the road! Perhaps he really is sick! No, he is not—he is only pretending! But I confess that, had I been assured that I would not be laughed at by the Arabs, I would have sent him back there and then.

After half an hour's march the scenery became more animated. Shaw began to be amused. Bombay had forgotten our quarrel, and assured me, if I could pass Mirambo's country, I should "catch the Tanganika;" Mabruki Speke believed we should. Selim was glad to leave Unyanyembe, where he had suffered so much from fever; and there was a something in the bold aspect of the hills which cropped upward above fair valleys, that enlivened and encouraged me to proceed.

In an hour and a half, we arrived at our camp in the Kinyamwezi village of Mkwenkwe, the birthplace of our famous chanter Maganga.

My tent was pitched, the goods were stored in one of the tembes; but one-half the men had returned to Kwihara, to take one more embrace of their wives and concubines.

Towards night I was attacked once again with the intermittent fever. Before morning it had departed, leaving me terribly prostrated with weakness. I had heard the men conversing with each other over their camp-fires upon the probable prospects of the next day.

It was a question with them whether I should continue the march. Mostly all were of the opinion that, since the master was sick, there would be no march. A superlative obstinacy, however, impelled me on, merely to spite their supine souls; but when I sallied out of my tent to call them to get ready, I found that at least twenty were missing; and Livingstone's letter-carrier, "Kaif-Halek"—or, How-do-ye-do?—had not arrived with Dr. Livingstone's letter-bag.

Selecting twenty of the strongest and faithfulest men, I despatched them back to Unyanyembe in search of the missing men; and Selim was sent to Sheikh bin Nasib to borrow, or buy, a long slave-chain.

Towards night my twenty detectives returned with nine of the missing men. The Wajiji had deserted in a body, and they could not be found. Selim also returned with a strong chain, capable of imprisoning within the collars attached to it, at least ten men. Kaif-Halek also appeared with the letter-bag which he was to convey to Livingstone under my escort. The men were then addressed, and the slave-chain exhibited to them. I told them that I was the first white man who had taken a slave-chain with him on his travels; but, as they were all so frightened of accompanying me, I was obliged to make use of it, as it was the only means of keeping them together. The good need never fear being chained by me—only the deserters, the thieves, who received their hire and presents, guns and ammunition, and then ran away. I would not put any one this time in chains; but whoever deserted after this day I should halt, and not continue the march till I found him, after which he should march to Ujiji with the slave-chain round his neck. "Do you hear?"—"Yes," was the answer. "Do you understand?"—"Yes."

We broke up camp at 6 P.M., and took the road for nesuka, at which place we arrived at 8 P.M.

When we were about commencing the march the next morning, it was discovered that two more had deserted. Baraka and Bombay were at once despatched to Unyanyembe to bring back the two missing men—Asmani and Kingaru—with orders not to return without them. This was the third time that the latter had deserted, as the reader may remember. While the pursuit was being effected we halted at the village of Inesuka, more for the sake of Shaw, than any one else.

In the evening the incorrigible deserters were brought back, and, as I had threatened, were well flogged and chained, to secure them against further temptation. Bombay and Baraka had a picturesque story to relate of the capture; and, as I was in an exceedingly good humor, their services were rewarded with a fine cloth each.

On the following morning another carrier had absconded, taking with him his hire of fifteen new cloths and a gun; but to halt anywhere near Unyanyembe any longer was a danger that could be avoided only by travelling without stoppages towards the southern jungle-lands. It will be remembered I had in my train the redoubted Abdul Kader, the tailor, he who had started from Bagamoyo with such bright anticipations of the wealth of ivory to be obtained in the great interior of Africa. On this morning, daunted by the reports of the dangers ahead, Abdul Kader craved to be discharged. He vowed he was sick, and unable to proceed any further. As I was pretty well tired of him, I paid him off in cloth, and permitted him to go.

About half way to Kasegera Mabruk Saleem was suddenly taken sick with vomiting, looseness, and constant discharge of worms. I treated him with a grain of calomel, and a couple of ounces of brandy. As he was unable to walk, I furnished him with a donkey. Another man named Zaidi was ill with a rheumatic attack; and Shaw tumbled twice off the animal he was riding, and required an infinite amount of coaxing to mount again. Verily, my Expedition was pursued by adverse fortunes, and it seemed as if the Fates had determined upon our return. It really appeared as if everything was going to wreck and ruin. If I were only fifteen days from Unyanyembe, thought I, I should be saved.

Kasegera was a scene of rejoicing the afternoon and evening of our arrival. Absentees had just returned from the coast, and the youths were brave in their gaudy bedizenment, their new barsatis, their soharis, and long cloths of bright new kaniki, with which they had adorned themselves behind some bush before they had suddenly appeared dressed in all this finery. The women "Hi-hi'ed" like mænads, and the "Lu-lu-lu'ing" was loud, frequent, and fervent the whole of that afternoon. Sylph-like damsels looked up to the youthful heroes with intensest admiration on their features; old women coddled and fondled them; staff-using, stooping-backed patriarchs blessed them. This is fame in Unyamwezi. All the fortunate youths had to use their tongues until the wee hours of next morning had arrived, relating all the wonders they had seen near the Great Sea, and in the "Unguja," the island of Zanzibar; of how they saw great white men's ships, and numbers of white men, of their perils and trials during their journey through the land of the fierce Wagogo, and divers other facts, with which the reader and I are by this time well acquainted.

On the 24th we struck camp, and marched through a forest of imbiti wood in a S.S.W. direction, and in about three hours came to Kigandu.

On arriving before this village, which is governed by a daughter of Mkasiwa, we were informed we could not enter unless we paid toll. As we would not pay toll, we were compelled to camp in a ruined, rat-infested boma, situated a mile to the left of Kigandu, being well scolded by the cowardly natives for deserting Mkasiwa in his hour of extremity. We were accused of running away from the war.

Almost on the threshold of our camp Shaw, in endeavouring to dismount, lost his stirrups, and fell prone on his face. This little by-play of Mr. Shaw's was getting too frequent. So, as the men rushed to assist him, I ordered them to leave him alone. The foolish fellow actually laid on the ground in the hot sun a full hour; and when I coldly asked him, if he did not feel rather uncomfortable, he sat up, and wept like a child.

"Do you wish to go back, Mr. Shaw?"

"If you please. I do not believe I can go any farther; and if you would only be kind enough, I should like to return very much."

"Well, Mr. Shaw, I have come to the conclusion that it is best you should return. My patience is worn out. I have endeavoured faithfully to lift you above these petty miseries which you nourish so devotedly. You are simply suffering from hypochondria. You imagine yourself sick, and nothing, evidently, will persuade you that you are not. Mark my words—to return to Unyanyembe, is to DIE! Should you happen to fall sick in Kwihara who knows how to administer medicine to you? Supposing you are delirious, how can any of my soldiers know what you want, or what is beneficial and necessary for you? Once again, I repeat, if you return, you DIE!"

"Ah, dear me; I wish I had never ventured to come! I thought life in Africa was so different from this. I would rather go back if you will permit me."

The next day was a halt, and arrangements were made for the transportation of Shaw back to Kwihara. A strong litter was made, and four stout pagazis were hired at Kigandu to carry him. Bread was baked, a canteen was filled with cold tea, and a leg of a kid was roasted for his sustenance while on the road.

The night before we parted we spent together. Shaw played some tunes on an accordion which I had purchased for him at Zanzibar; but, though it was only a miserable ten-dollar affair, I thought the homely tunes evoked from the instrument that night were divine melodies. The last tune played before retiring was "Home, sweet Home;" and I fancy that before it ended we had mutually softened towards each other.

The morning of the 27th we were all up early. There was considerable vis in our movements. A long, long march lay before us that day; but then I was to leave behind all the sick and ailing. Only those who were healthy, and could march fast and long, were to accompany me. Mabruk Saleem I left in charge of a native doctor, who was to medicate him for a gift of cloth which I gave him in advance.

The horn sounded to get ready. Shaw was lifted in his litter on the shoulders of his carriers. My men formed two ranks; the flags were lifted; and between these two living rows, and under those bright streamers, which were to float over the waters of the Tanganika before he should see them again, Shaw was borne away towards the north; while we filed off to the south, with quicker and more elastic steps, as if we felt an incubus had been taken from us.

We ascended a ridge bristling with syenite boulders of massive size, appearing above a forest of dwarf trees. The view which we saw was similar to that we had often seen elsewhere. An illimitable forest stretching in grand waves far beyond the ken of vision—ridges, forest-clad, rising gently one above another until they receded in the dim purple-blue distance—with a warm haze floating above them, which, though clear enough in our neighbourhood, became impenetrably blue in the far distance. Woods, woods, woods, leafy branches, foliaged globes, or parachutes, green, brown, or sere in color, forests one above another, rising, falling, and receding—a very leafy ocean. The horizon, at all points, presents the same view, there may be an indistinct outline of a hill far away, or here and there a tall tree higher than the rest conspicuous in its outlines against the translucent sky—with this exception it is the same—the same clear sky dropping into the depths of the forest, the same outlines, the same forest, the same horizon, day after day, week after week; we hurry to the summit of a ridge, expectant of a change, but the wearied eyes, after wandering over the vast expanse, return to the immediate surroundings, satiated with the ever-sameness of such scenes. Carlyle, somewhere in his writings, says, that though the Vatican is great, it is but the chip of an eggshell compared to the star-fretted dome where Arcturus and Orion glance for ever; and I say that, though the grove of Central Park, New York, is grand compared to the thin groves seen in other great cities, that, though the Windsor and the New Forests may be very fine and noble in England, yet they are but faggots of sticks compared to these eternal forests of Unyamwezi.

We marched three hours and then halted for refreshments. I perceived that the people were very tired, not yet inured to a series of long marches, or rather, not in proper trim for earnest, hard work after our long rest in Kwihara. When we resumed our march again there were several manifestations of bad temper and weariness. But a few good-natured remarks about their laziness put them on their mettle, and we reached Ugunda at 2 P.M. after another four hours' spurt.

Ugunda is a very large village in the district of Ugunda, which adjoins the southern frontier of Unyanyembe. The village probably numbers four hundred families, or two thousand souls. It is well protected by a tall and strong palisade of three-inch timber. Stages have been erected at intervals above the palisades with miniature embrasures in the timber, for the muskets of the sharpshooters, who take refuge within these box-like stages to pick out the chiefs of an attacking force. An inner ditch, with the sand or soil thrown up three or four feet high against the palings, serves as protection for the main body of the defenders, who kneel in the ditch, and are thus enabled to withstand a very large force. For a mile or two outside the village all obstructions are cleared, and the besieged are thus warned by sharp-eyed watchers to be prepared for the defence before the enemy approaches within musket range. Mirambo withdrew his force of robbers from before this strongly-defended village after two or three ineffectual attempts to storm it, and the Wagunda have been congratulating themselves ever since, upon having driven away the boldest marauder that Unyamwezi has seen for generations.

The Wagunda have about three thousand square acres under cultivation around their principal village, and this area suffices to produce sufficient grain not only for their own consumption, but also for the many caravans which pass by this way for Ufipa and Marungu.

However brave the Wagunda may be within the strong enclosure with which they have surrounded their principal village, they are not exempt from the feeling of insecurity which fills the soul of a Mnyamwezi during war-time. At this place the caravans are accustomed to recruit their numbers from the swarms of pagazis who volunteer to accompany them to the distant ivory regions south; but I could not induce a soul to follow me, so great was their fear of Mirambo and his Ruga-Ruga. They were also full of rumors of wars ahead. It was asserted that Mbogo was advancing towards Ugunda with a thousand Wakonongo, that the Wazavira had attacked a caravan four months previously, that Simba was scouring the country with a band of ferocious mercenaries, and much more of the same nature and to the same intent.

On the 28th we arrived at a small snug village embosomed within the forest called Benta, three hours and a quarter from Ugunda. The road led through the cornfields of the Wagunda, and then entered the clearings around the villages of Kisari, within one of which we found the proprietor of a caravan who was drumming up carriers for Ufipa. He had been halted here two months, and he made strenuous exertions to induce my men to join his caravan, a proceeding that did not tend to promote harmony between us. A few days afterwards I found, on my return, that he had given up the idea of proceeding south. Leaving Kisari, we marched through a thin jungle of black jack, over sun-cracked ground with here and there a dried-up pool, the bottom of which was well tramped by elephant and rhinoceros. Buffalo and zebra tracks were now frequent, and we were buoyed up with the hope that before long we should meet game.

Benta was well supplied with Indian corn and a grain which the natives called choroko, which I take to be vetches. I purchased a large supply of choroko for my own personal use, as I found it to be a most healthy food. The corn was stored on the flat roofs of the tembes in huge boxes made out of the bark of the mtundu-tree. The largest box I have ever seen in Africa was seen here. It might be taken for a Titan's hat-box; it was seven feet in diameter, and ten feet in height.

On the 29th, after travelling in a S.W. by S. direction, we reached Kikuru. The march lasted for five hours over sun-cracked plains, growing the black jack, and ebony, and dwarf shrubs, above which numerous ant-hills of light chalky-colored earth appeared like sand dunes.

The mukunguru, a Kisawahili term for fever, is frequent in this region of extensive forests and flat plains, owing to the imperfect drainage provided by nature for them. In the dry season there is nothing very offensive in the view of the country. The burnt grass gives rather a sombre aspect to the country, covered with the hard-baked tracks of animals which haunt these plains during the latter part of the rainy season. In the forest numbers of trees lie about in the last stages of decay, and working away with might and main on the prostrate trunks may be seen numberless insects of various species. Impalpably, however, the poison of the dead and decaying vegetation is inhaled into the system with a result sometimes as fatal as that which is said to arise from the vicinity of the Upas-tree.

The first evil results experienced from the presence of malaria are confined bowels and an oppressive languor, excessive drowsiness, and a constant disposition to yawn. The tongue assumes a yellowish, sickly hue, colored almost to blackness; even the teeth become yellow, and are coated with an offensive matter. The eyes of the patient sparkle lustrously, and become suffused with water. These are sure symptoms of the incipient fever which shortly will rage through the system, laying the sufferer prostrate and quivering with agony.

Sometimes this fever is preceded by a violent shaking fit, during which period blankets may be heaped on the patient's form, with but little amelioration of the deadly chill he feels. It is then succeeded by an unusually severe headache, with excessive pains about the loins and spinal column, which presently will spread over the shoulder-blades, and, running up the neck, find a final lodgment in the back and front of the head. Usually, however, the fever is not preceded by a chill, but after languor and torpitude have seized him, with excessive heat and throbbing temples, the loin and spinal column aches, and raging thirst soon possesses him. The brain becomes crowded with strange fancies, which sometimes assume most hideous shapes. Before the darkened vision of the suffering man, float in a seething atmosphere, figures of created and uncreated reptiles, which are metamorphosed every instant into stranger shapes and designs, growing every moment more confused, more complicated, more hideous and terrible. Unable to bear longer the distracting scene, he makes an effort and opens his eyes, and dissolves the delirious dream, only, however, to glide again unconsciously into another dream-land where another unreal inferno is dioramically revealed, and new agonies suffered. Oh! the many many hours that I have groaned under the terrible incubi which the fits of real delirium evoke. Oh! the racking anguish of body that a traveller in Africa must undergo! Oh! the spite, the fretfulness, the vexation which the horrible phantasmagoria of diabolisms induce! The utmost patience fails to appease, the most industrious attendance fails to gratify, the deepest humility displeases. During these terrible transitions, which induce fierce distraction, Job himself would become irritable, insanely furious, and choleric. A man in such a state regards himself as the focus of all miseries. When recovered, he feels chastened, becomes urbane and ludicrously amiable, he conjures up fictitious delights from all things which, but yesterday, possessed for him such awful portentous aspects. His men he regards with love and friendship; whatever is trite he views with ecstasy. Nature appears charming; in the dead woods and monotonous forest his mind becomes overwhelmed with delight. I speak for myself, as a careful analysation of the attack, in all its severe, plaintive, and silly phases, appeared to me. I used to amuse myself with taking notes of the humorous and the terrible, the fantastic and exaggerated pictures that were presented to me—even while suffering the paroxysms induced by fever.

We arrived at a large pool, known as the Ziwani, after a four hours' march in a S.S.W. direction, the 1st of October. We discovered an old half-burnt khambi, sheltered by a magnificent mkuyu (sycamore), the giant of the forests of Unyamwezi, which after an hour we transformed into a splendid camp.

If I recollect rightly, the stem of the tree measured thirty-eight feet in circumference. It is the finest tree of its kind I have seen in Africa. A regiment might with perfect ease have reposed under this enormous dome of foliage during a noon halt. The diameter of the shadow it cast on the ground was one hundred and twenty feet. The healthful vigor that I was enjoying about this time enabled me to regard my surroundings admiringly. A feeling of comfort and perfect contentment took possession of me, such as I knew not while fretting at Unyanyembe, wearing my life away in inactivity. I talked with my people as to my friends and equals. We argued with each other about our prospects in quite a companionable, sociable vein.

GIGANTIC SYCAMORE, AND CAMP BENEATH IT.

When daylight was dying, and the sun was sinking down rapidly over the western horizon, vividly paint-ing the sky with the colors of gold and silver, saffron, and opal, when its rays and gorgeous tints were reflected upon the tops of the everlasting forest, with the quiet and holy calm of heaven resting upon all around, and infusing even into the untutored minds of those about me, the exquisite enjoyments of such a life as we were now leading in the depths of a great expanse of forest, the only and sole human occupants of it—this was the time, after our day's work was ended, and the camp was in a state of perfect security, when we all would produce our pipes, and could best enjoy the labors which we had performed, and the contentment which follows a work well done.

Outside nothing is heard beyond the cry of a stray florican, or guinea-fowl, which has lost her mate, or the hoarse croaking of the frogs in the pool hard by, or the song of the crickets which seems to lull the day to rest; inside our camp are heard the gurgles of the gourd pipes as the men inhale the blue ether, which I also love. I am contented and happy, stretched on my carpet under the dome of living foliage, smoking my short meerschaum, indulging in thoughts—despite the beauty of the still grey light of the sky, and of the air of serenity which prevails around—of home and friends in distant America, and these thoughts soon change to my work—yet incomplete; to the man who to me is yet a myth, who, for all I know, may be dead, or may be near or far from me tramping through just such a forest, whose tops I see bound the view outside my camp. We are both on the same soil, perhaps, in the same forest—who knows?—yet is he to me so far removed that he might as well be in his own little cottage of Ulva. Though I am even now ignorant of his very existence, yet I feel a certain complacency, a certain satisfaction which would be difficult to describe. Why is man so feeble, and weak, that he must tramp, tramp hundreds of miles to satisfy the doubts his impatient and uncurbed mind feels? Why cannot my form accompany the bold flights of my mind and satisfy the craving I feel to resolve the vexed question that ever rises to my lips—"Is he alive?" O! soul of mine, be patient, thou hast a felicitous tranquillity, which other men might envy thee! Sufficient for the hour is the consciousness thou hast that thy mission is a holy one! Onward, and be hopeful!

Monday, the 2nd of October, found us traversing the forest and plain that extends from the Ziwani to Manyara, which occupied us six and a half hours. The sun was intensely hot; but the mtundu and miombo trees grew at intervals, just enough to admit free growth to each tree, while the blended foliage formed a grateful shade. The path was clear and easy, the tamped and firm red soil offered no obstructions. The only provocation we suffered was from the attacks of the tsetse, or panga (sword) fly, which swarmed here. We knew we were approaching an extensive habitat of game, and we were constantly on the alert for any specimens that might be inhabiting these forests.

While we were striding onward, at the rate of nearly three miles an hour, the caravan I perceived sheered off from the road, resuming it about fifty yards ahead of something on the road, to which the attention of the men was directed. On coming up, I found the object to be the dead body of a man, who had fallen a victim to that fearful scourge of Africa, the small-pox. He was one of Oseto's gang of marauders, or guerillas, in the service of Mkasiwa of Unyanyembe, who were hunting these forests for the guerillas of Mirambo. They had been returning from Ukonongo from a raid they had instituted against the Sultan of Mbogo, and they had left their comrade to perish in the road. He had apparently been only one day dead.

Apropos of this, it was a frequent thing with us to discover a skeleton or a skull on the roadside. Almost every day we saw one, sometimes two, of these relics of dead, and forgotten humanity.

Shortly after this we emerged from the forest, and entered a mbuga, or plain, in which we saw a couple of giraffes, whose long necks were seen towering above a bush they had been nibbling at. This sight was greeted with a shout; for we now knew we had entered the game country, and that near the Gombe creek, or river, where we intended to halt, we should see plenty of these animals.

A walk of three hours over this hot plain brought us to the cultivated fields of Manyara. Arriving before the village-gate, we were forbidden to enter, as the country was throughout in a state of war, and it behoved them to be very careful of admitting any party, lest the villagers might be compromised. We were, however, directed to a khambi to the right of the village, near some pools of clear water, where we discovered some half dozen ruined huts, which looked very uncomfortable to tired people.

After we had built our camp, the kirangozi was furnished with some cloths to purchase food from the village for the transit of a wilderness in front of us, which was said to extend nine marches, or 135 miles. He was informed that the Mtemi had strictly prohibited his people from selling any grain whatever.

This evidently was a case wherein the exercise of a little diplomacy could only be effective; because it would detain us several days here, if we were compelled to send men back to Kikuru for provisions. Opening a bale of choice goods, I selected two royal cloths, and told Bombay to carry them to him, with the compliments and friendship of the white man. The Sultan sulkily refused them, and bade him return to the white man and tell him not to bother him. Entreaties were of no avail, he would not relent; and the men, in exceedingly bad temper, and hungry, were obliged to go to bed supperless. The words of Njara, a slave-trader, and parasite of the great Sheikh bin Nasib, recurred to me. "Ah, master, master, you will find the people will be too much for you, and that you will have to return. The Wa-manyara are bad, the Wakonongo are very bad, the Wazavira are the worst of all. You have come to this country at a bad time. It is war everywhere." And, indeed, judging from the tenor of the conversations around our camp-fires, it seemed but too evident. There was every prospect of a general decamp of all my people. However, I told them not to be discouraged; that I would get food for them in the morning.

The bale of choice cloths was opened again next morning, and four royal cloths were this time selected, and two dotis of Merikani, and Bombay was again despatched, burdened with compliments, and polite words. It was necessary to be very politic with a man who was so surly, and too powerful to make an enemy of. What if he made up his mind to imitate the redoubtable Mirambo, King of Uyoweh! The effect of my munificent liberality was soon seen in the abundance of provender which came to my camp. Before an hour went by, there came boxes full of choroko, beans, rice, matama or dourra, and Indian corn, carried on the heads of a dozen villagers, and shortly after the Mtemi himself came, followed by about thirty musketeers and twenty spearmen, to visit the first white man ever seen on this road. Behind these warriors came a liberal gift, fully equal in value to that sent to him, of several large gourds of honey, fowls, goats, and enough vetches and beans to supply my men with four days' food.

I met the chief at the gate of my camp, and bowing profoundly, invited him to my tent, which I had arranged as well as my circumstances would permit, for this reception. My Persian carpet and bear skin were spread out, and a broad piece of bran-new crimson cloth covered my kitanda, or bedstead.

The chief, a tall robust man, and his chieftains, were invited to seat themselves. They cast a look of such gratified surprise at myself, at my face, my clothes, and guns, as is almost impossible to describe. They looked at me intently for a few seconds, and then at each other, which ended in an uncontrollable burst of laughter, and repeated snappings of the fingers. They spoke the Kinyamwezi language, and my interpreter Maganga was requested to inform the chief of the great delight I felt in seeing them. After a short period expended in interchanging compliments, and a competitive excellence at laughing at one another, their chief desired me to show him my guns. The "sixteen-shooter," the Winchester rifle, elicited a thousand flattering observations from the excited man; and the tiny deadly revolvers, whose beauty and workmanship they thought were superhuman, evoked such gratified eloquence that I was fain to try something else. The double-barreled guns fired with heavy charges of powder, caused them to jump up in affected alarm, and then to subside to their seats convulsed with laughter. As the enthusiasm of my guests increased, they seized each other's index fingers, screwed them, and pulled at them until I feared they would end in their dislocation. After having explained to them the difference between white men and Arabs, I pulled out my medicine chest, which evoked another burst of rapturous sighs at the cunning neatness of the array of vials. He asked what they meant.

"Dowa," I replied sententiously, a word which may be interpreted—medicine.

"Oh-h, oh-h," they murmured admiringly. I succeeded, before long, in winning unqualified admiration, and my superiority, compared to the best of the Arabs they had seen, was but too evident. "Dowa, dowa," they added.

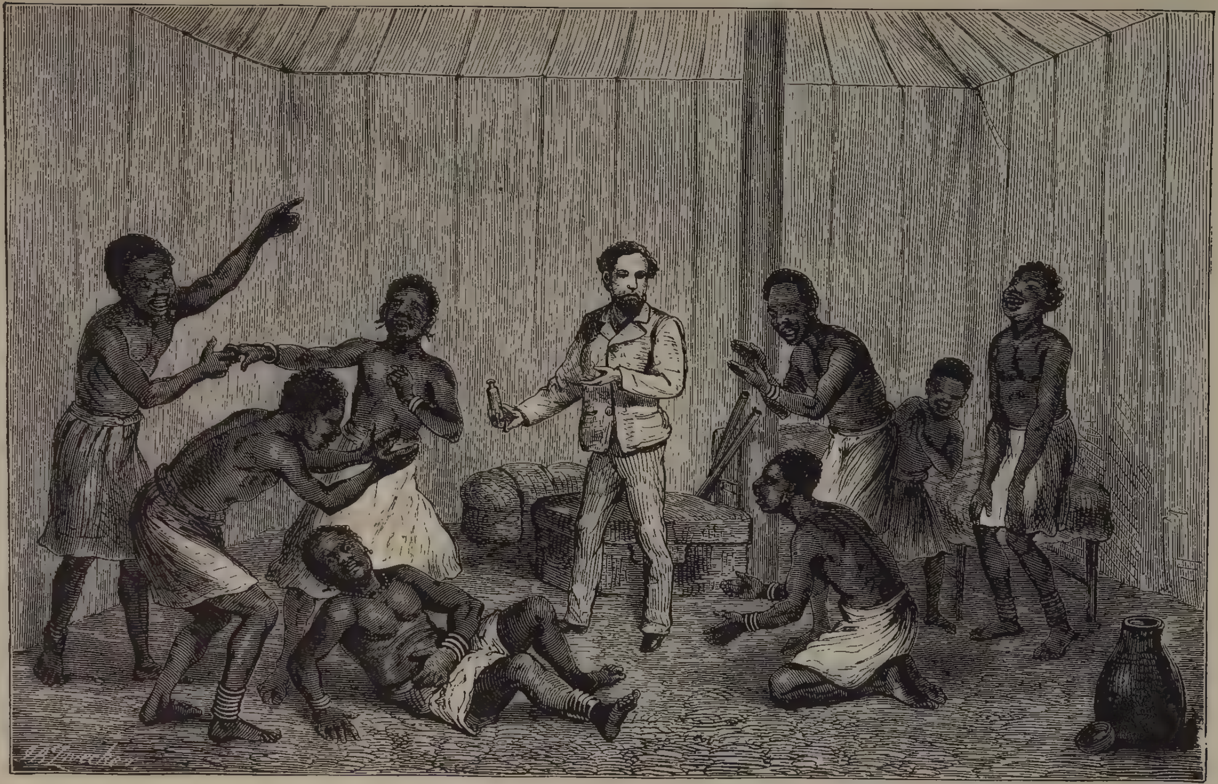
"Here," said I, uncorking a vial of medicinal brandy, "is the Kisungu pombe" (white man's beer); "take a spoonful and try it," at the same time handing it.

"Hacht, hacht, oh, hacht! what! eh! what strong beer the white men have! Oh, how my throat burns!"

"Ah, but it is good," said I, "a little of it makes men feel strong, and good; but too much of it makes men bad, and they die."

"Let me have some," said one of the chiefs; "and me," "and me," "and me," as soon as each had tasted.

I next produced a bottle of concentrated ammonia, which as I explained was for snake bites, and headaches; the Sultan immediately complained he had a head-ache, and must have a little. Telling him to close his eyes, I suddenly uncorked the bottle, and presented it to His Majesty's nose. The effect was magical, for he fell back as if shot, and such contortions



MA-MANYARA TAKES MEDICINE.

as his features underwent are indescribable. His chiefs roared with laughter, and clapped their hands, pinched each other, snapped their fingers, and committed many other ludicrous things. I verily believe if such a scene were presented on any stage in the world the effect of it would be visible instantaneously on the audience; that had they seen it as I saw it, they would have laughed themselves to hysteria and madness. Finally the Sultan recovered himself, great tears rolling down his cheeks, and his features quivering with laughter, then he slowly uttered the word "kali,"—hot, strong, quick, or ardent medicine. He required no more, but the other chiefs pushed forward to get one wee sniff, which they no sooner had, than all went into paroxysms of uncontrollable laughter. The entire morning was passed in this state visit, to the mutual satisfaction of all concerned. "Oh," said the Sultan at parting, "these white men know everything, the Arabs are dirt compared to them!"

That night Hamdallah, one of the guides, deserted, carrying with him his hire (27 doti), and a gun. It was useless to follow him in the morning, as it would have detained me many more days than I could afford; but I mentally vowed that Mr. Hamdallah should work out those 27 doti of cloths, before I reached the coast.

Wednesday, October 4th, saw us travelling to the Gombe River, which is 4 h. 15 m. march from Manyara.

We had barely left the waving cornfields of my friend Ma-manyara before we came in sight of a herd of noble zebra; two hours afterwards we had entered a grand and noble expanse of park land, whose glorious magnificence and vastness of prospect, with a far-stretching carpet of verdure, darkly flecked here and there by miniature clumps of jungle, with spreading trees growing here and there, was certainly one of the finest scenes to be seen in Africa. Added to which, as I surmounted one of the numerous small knolls, I saw herds after herds of buffalo and zebra, giraffe and antelope, which sent the blood coursing through my veins in the excitement of the moment, as when I first landed on African soil. We crept along the plain noiselessly to our camp on the banks of the sluggish waters of the Gombe.

Here at last was the hunter's Paradise! How petty and insignificant appeared my hunts after small antelope and wild boar, what a foolish waste of energies those long walks through damp grasses and through thorny jungles! Did I not well remember my first bitter experience in African jungles when in the maritime region! But this—where is the nobleman's park that can match this scene? Here is a soft, velvety expanse of young grass, grateful shade under those spreading clumps; herds of large and varied game browsing within easy rifle range. Surely I must feel amply compensated now for the long southern détour I have made, when such a prospect as this opens to the view! No thorny jungles and rank smelling swamps are here to daunt the hunter, and to sicken his aspirations after true sport! No hunter could aspire after a nobler field to display his prowess.

Having settled the position of the camp, which overlooked one of the pools found in the depression of the Gombe creek, I took my double-barreled smooth bore, and sauntered off to the park-land. Emerging from behind a clump, three fine plump spring-bok were seen browsing on the young grass just within one hundred yards. I knelt down and fired; one unfortunate antelope bounded upward instinctively, and fell dead. Its companions sprang high into the air, taking leaps about twelve feet in length, as if they were quadrupeds practising gymnastics, and away they vanished, rising up like India-rubber balls, until a knoll hid them from view. My success was hailed with loud shouts by the soldiers, who came running out from the camp as soon as they heard the reverberation of the gun, and my gun-bearer had his knife at the beast's throat, uttering a fervent "Bismillah!" as he almost severed the head from the body.

Hunters were now directed to proceed east and north to procure meat, because in each caravan it generally happens that there are fundi, whose special trade it is to hunt for meat for the camp. Some of these are experts in stalking, but often find themselves in dangerous positions, owing to the near approach necessary, before they can fire their most inaccurate weapons with any certainty.

After luncheon, consisting of spring-bok steak, hot corn-cake, and a cup of delicious Mocha coffee, I strolled towards the south-west, accompanied by Kalulu and Majwara, two boy gun-bearers. The tiny perpusilla started up like rabbits from me as I stole along through the underbrush; the honey-bird hopped from tree to tree chirping its call, as if it thought I was seeking the little sweet treasure, the hiding-place of which it only knew; but no! I neither desired perpusilla nor the honey. I was on the search for something great this day. Keen-eyed fish-eagles and bustards poised on trees above the sinuous Gombe thought, and probably with good reason, that I was after them; judging by the ready flight with which both species disappeared as they sighted my approach. Ah, no! nothing but hartebeest, zebra, giraffe, eland, and buffalo this day!

After following the Gombe's course for about a mile, delighting my eyes with long looks at the broad and lengthy reaches of water to which I was so long a stranger, I came upon a scene which delighted the innermost recesses of my soul; five, six, seven, eight, ten zebras switching their beautiful striped bodies, and biting one another, within about one hundred and fifty yards. The scene was so pretty, so romantic, never did I so thoroughly realize that I was in Central Africa. I felt momentarily proud that I owned such a vast domain, inhabited with such noble beasts. Here I possessed, within reach of a leaden ball, any one I chose of the beautiful animals, the pride of the African forests! It was at my option to shoot any of them! Mine they were without money and without price; yet, knowing this, twice I dropped my rifle, loth to wound the royal beasts, but—crack! and a royal one was on his back battling the air with his legs. Ah, it was such a pity! but, hasten, draw the keen sharp-edged knife across the beautiful stripes which fold around the throat; and—what an ugly gash! it is done, and I have a superb animal at my feet. Hurrah! I shall taste of Ukonongo zebra to-night.

I thought a spring-bok and zebra enough for one day's sport, especially after a long march. The Gombe, a long stretch of deep water, winding in and out of green groves, calm, placid, with lotus leaves lightly resting on its surface, all pretty, picturesque, peaceful as a summer's dream, looked very inviting for a bath. I sought out the most shady spot under a wide-spreading mimosa, from which the ground sloped smooth as a lawn, to the still, clear water. I ventured to undress, and had already stepped in to my ancles in the water, and had brought my hands together for a glorious dive, when my attention was attracted by an enormously long body which shot into view, occupying the spot beneath the surface that I was about to explore by a "header." Great heavens, it was a crocodile! I sprang backward instinctively, and this proved my salvation, for the monster turned away with the most disappointed look, and I was left to congratulate myself upon my narrow escape from his jaws, and to register a vow never to be tempted again by the treacherous calm of an African river.

As soon as I had dressed I turned away from the now repulsive aspect of the stream. In strolling through the jungle, towards my camp, I detected the forms of two natives, looking sharply about them, and, after bidding my young attendants to preserve perfect quiet, I crept on towards them, and, by the aid of a thick clump of under-bush, managed to arrive within a few feet of the natives undetected. Their mere presence in the immense forest, unexplained, was a cause of uneasiness in the then disturbed state of the country, and my intention was to show myself suddenly to them, and note its effect, which, if it betokened anything hostile to the Expedition, could without difficulty be settled at once, with the aid of my double-barreled smooth-bore.

As I arrived on one side of this bush, the two suspicious-looking natives arrived on the other side, and we were separated by only a few feet. I made a bound, and we were face to face. The natives cast a glance at the sudden figure of a white man, and seemed petrified for a moment, but then, recovering themselves, they shrieked out, "Bana, bana, you don't know us. We are Wakonongo, who came to your camp to accompany you to Mrera, and we are looking for honey."

"Oh, to be sure, you are the Wakonongo. Yes—Yes. Ah, it is all right now, I thought you might be Ruga-Ruga."

So the two parties, instead of being on hostile terms with each other, burst out laughing. The Wakonongo enjoyed it very much, and laughed heartily as they proceeded on their way to search for the wild honey. On a piece of bark they carried a little fire with which they smoked the bees out from their nest in the great mtundu-trees.

The adventures of the day were over; the azure of the sky had changed to a dead grey; the moon was appearing just over the trees; the water of the Gombe was like a silver belt; hoarse frogs bellowed their notes loudly by the margin of the creek; the fish-eagles uttered their dirge-like cries as they were perched high on the tallest tree; elands snorted their warning to the herds in the forest; stealthy forms of the carnivora stole through the dark woods outside of our camp. Within the high inclosure of bush and thorn, which we had raised around our camp, all was jollity, laughter, and radiant, genial comfort. Around every camp-fire dark forms of men were seen squatted: one man gnawed at a luscious bone; another sucked the rich marrow in a zebra's leg-bone; another turned the stick, garnished with huge kabobs, to the bright blaze; another held a large rib over a flame; there were others busy stirring industriously great black potfuls of ugali, and watching anxiously the meat simmering, and the soup bubbling, while the fire-light flickered and danced bravely, and cast a bright glow over the naked forms of the men, and gave a crimson tinge to the tall tent that rose in the centre of the camp, like a temple sacred to some mysterious god; the fires cast their reflections upon the massive arms of the trees, as they branched over our camp, and, in the dark gloom of their foliage, the most fantastic shadows were visible. Altogether it was a wild, romantic, and impressive scene. But little recked my men for shadows and moonlight, for crimson tints, and temple-like tents—they were all busy relating their various experiences, and gorging themselves with the rich meats our guns had obtained for us. One was telling how he had stalked a wild boar, and the furious onset the wounded beast made on him, causing him to drop his gun, and climb a tree, and the terrible grunt of the beast he well remembered, and the whole welkin rang with the peals of laughter which his mimic powers evoked. Another had shot a buffalo-calf, and another had bagged a hartebeest; the Wakonongo related their laughable rencontre with me in the woods, and were lavish in their description of the stores of honey to be found in the woods; and all this time Selim and his youthful subs were trying their sharp teeth on the meat of a young pig which one of the hunters had shot, but which nobody else would eat, because of the Mohammedan aversion to pig, which they had acquired during their transformation from negro savagery to the useful docility of the Zanzibar freed-man.

We halted the two following days, and made frequent raids on the herds of this fine country. The first day I was fairly successful again in the sport. I bagged a couple of antelopes, a kudu (*A. strepsiceros*) with fine twisting horns, and a pallah-buck (*A. melampus*), a reddish-brown animal, standing about three and a half feet, with broad posteriors. I might have succeeded in getting dozens of animals had I any of those accurate, heavy rifles manufactured by Lancaster, Reilly, or Blissett, whose every shot tells. But my weapons, save my light smooth-bore, were unfit for African game. My weapons were more for men. With the Winchester rifle, and the Starr's carbine, I was able to hit anything within two hundred yards, but the animals, though wounded, invariably managed to escape the knife, until I was disgusted with the pea-bullets. What is wanted for this country is a heavy bore—No. 10 or 12 is the real bone-crusher—that will drop every animal shot, in its tracks, by which all fatigue and disappointment are avoided. Several times during these two days was I disappointed after most laborious stalking and creeping along the ground. Once I came suddenly upon an eland while I had a Winchester rifle in my hand—the eland and myself mutually astonished—at not more than twenty-five yards apart. I fired at its chest, and the bullet, true to its aim, sped far into the internal parts, and the blood spouted from the wound: in a few minutes he was far away, and I was too much disappointed to follow him. All love of the chase seemed to be dying away before these several mishaps. What were two antelopes for one day's sport to the thousands that browsed over the plain?

The animals taken to camp during our three days' sport were two buffaloes, two wild boar, three hartebeest, one zebra, and one pallah; besides which, were shot eight guinea-fowls, three florican, two fish-eagles, one pelican, and one of the men caught a couple of large silurus fish. In the meantime the people had cut, sliced, and dried this bounteous store of meat for our transit through the long wilderness before us.

Saturday the 7th day of October, we broke up camp, to the great regret of the meat-loving, gormandizing Wangwana. They delegated Bombay early in the morning to speak to me, and entreat of me to stop one day longer. It was ever the case; they had always an unconquerable aversion to work, when in presence of meat. Bombay was well scolded for bearing any such request to me after two days' rest, during which time they had been filled to repletion of meat. And Bombay was by no means in the best of humor, flesh-pots full of meat were more to his taste than a constant tramping, and its consequent fatigues. I saw his face settle into sulky ugliness, and his great nether lip hanging down limp, which meant as if expressed in so many words, "Well, get them to move yourself, you wicked hard man! I shall not help you."

An ominous silence followed my order to the kirangozi to sound the horn, and the usual singing and chanting were not heard. The men turned sullenly to their bales, and Asmani, the gigantic guide, our fundi, was heard grumblingly to say he was sorry he had engaged to guide me to the Tanganika. However, they started, though reluctantly. I stayed behind with my gunbearers, to drive the stragglers on. In about half an hour I sighted the caravan at a dead stop, with the bales thrown on the ground, and the men standing in groups conversing angrily and excitedly.

Taking my double-barrel gun from Selim's shoulder, I selected a dozen charges of buck-shot, and slipping two of them into the barrels, and adjusting my revolvers in order for handy work, I walked on towards them. I noticed that the men seized their guns, as I advanced. When within thirty yards of the groups, I discovered the heads of two men appear above an anthill on my left, with the barrels of their guns carelessly pointed toward the road.

I halted, threw the barrel of my gun into the hollow of the left hand, and then, taking a deliberate aim at them, threatened to blow their heads off if they did not come forward to talk to me. These two men were, gigantic Asmani and his sworn companion Mabruki, the guides of Sheikh bin Nasib. As it was dangerous not to comply with such an order, they presently came, but, keeping my eye on Asmani, I saw him move his fingers to the trigger of his gun, and bring his gun to a "ready." Again I lifted my gun, and threatened him with instant death, if he did not drop his gun.

Asmani came on in a sidelong way with a smirking smile on his face, but in his eyes shone the lurid light of murder, as plainly as ever it shone in a villain's eyes. Mabruki sneaked to my rear, deliberately putting powder in the pan of his musket, but sweeping the gun sharply round, I planted the muzzle of it at about two feet from his wicked-looking face, and ordered him to drop his gun instantly. He let it fall from his hand quickly, and giving him a vigorous poke in the breast with my gun, which sent him reeling away a few feet from me, I faced round to Asmani, and ordered him to put his gun down, accompanying it with a nervous movement of my gun, pressing gently on the trigger at the same time. Never was a man nearer his death than was Asmani during those few moments. I was reluctant to shed his blood, and I was willing to try all possible means to avoid doing so; but if I did not succeed in cowing this ruffian, authority was at an end. The truth was, they feared to proceed further on the road, and the only possible way of inducing them to move was by an overpowering force, and exercise of my power and will in this instance, even though he might pay the penalty of his disobedience with death. As I was

THE MUTINY ON THE GOMBE RIVER.

beginning to feel that Asmani had passed his last moment on earth, as he was lifting his gun to his shoulder, a form came up from behind him, and swept his gun aside with an impatient, nervous movement, and I heard Mabruki Speke say in horror-struck accents:

"Man, how dare you point your gun at the master?" Mabruki then threw himself at my feet, and endeavoured to kiss them and entreated me not to punish him. "It was all over now," he said; "there would be no more quarreling, they would all go to the Tanganika, without any more noise; and Inshallah!" said he, "we shall find the old Musungu at Ujiji."

"Speak, men, freedmen, shall we not?—shall we not go to the Tanganika without any more trouble? tell the master with one voice."

"Ay Wallah! Ay Wallah! Bana yango! Hamuna manneno mgini!" which literally translated means, "Yes by God! Yes by God! my master! There are no other words," said each man loudly.

"Ask the master's pardon, man, or go thy way," said Mabruki peremptorily, to Asmani: which Asmani did, to the gratification of us all,

It remained for me only to extend a general pardon to all, except to Bombay and Ambari, the instigators of the mutiny, which was now happily quelled. For Bombay could have by a word, as my captain, nipped all manifestation of bad temper at the outset, had he been so disposed. But no, Bombay was more averse to marching than the cowardliest of his fellows, not because he was cowardly, but because he loved indolence, and made a god of his belly. So snatching up a spear, I laid its staff vigorously on his shoulders, and then sprang upon Ambari, whose mocking face soon underwent a remarkable transformation, and then clapped them both in chains, with a threat that they would be kept chained until they knew how to ask my pardon; and Asmani and Mabruki were told to be cautious not to exhibit their ugly tempers any more, lest they might taste the death they had fortunately escaped.

Again the word was given to march, and each man, with astonishing alacrity, seized his load, and filed off quickly out of sight, Bombay and Ambari in the rear in chains, with Kingaru and Asmani, the deserters, weighted with the heaviest loads.

We had barely travelled an hour from the Gombe before Bombay and Ambari in trembling accents implored my pardon, which I permitted them to continue for half-an-hour longer, when I finally relented, releasing them both from their chains, and restoring the former to his full honors as captain.

While on this subject, I may as well give here a sketch of each of the principal men whose names must often appear in the following chapters. According to rank, they consist of Bombay, Mabruki Speke, Asmani the guide, Chowpereh, Ulimengo, Khamisi, Ambari, Jumah, Ferajji the cook, Maganga the Mnyamwezi, Selim the Arab boy, and youthful Kalulu a gunbearer.

Bombay has received an excellent character from Burton, Speke, and Grant, but I am sorry to say he will never be able to have it endorsed by me. "Incarnation of honesty" Burton grandly terms him. The truth is, though, that Bombay was neither very honest nor very dishonest, i.e., he did not venture to steal much. He sometimes contrived cunningly, as he distributed the meat, to hide a very large share for his own use. This peccadillo of his did not disturb me much; he deserved as captain a larger share than the others. He required to be closely watched, and when aware that this was the case, he seldom ventured to appropriate more cloth than I would have freely given him, had he asked for it. As a personal servant, or valet, he would have been unexceptionable, but as a captain or jemadar over his fellows, he was out of his proper sphere. It was too much brain-work, and was too productive of anxiety to keep him in order. At times he was helplessly imbecile in his movements, forgot every order the moment it was given him, consistently broke or lost some valuable article, was fond of argument, and addicted to bluster. He thinks Hajji Abdullah one of the wickedest white men born, because he saw him pick up men's skulls and put them in sacks, as if he was about to prepare a horrible medicine with them. He wanted to know whether his former master had written down all he himself did, and when told that Burton had not said anything, in his books upon the Lake Regions, upon collecting skulls at Kilwa, thought I would be doing a good work if I published this important fact.* Bombay intends to make a pilgrimage to visit Speke's grave some day.

Mabruki, "Ras-bukra Mabruki," Bull-headed Mabruki, as Burton calls him, Mabruki Speke, as he was called by us in distinction from other Mabrukis, is a very much abused man in my opinion. Burton and Mabruki had glorious quarrels with each other, so the latter tells me, and if he is to be believed his master did not come off always best. The great traveller used to call to him in Arabic, and abuse him in the choice vocabulary of El Scham. "Ji'ib el haleeb Bil-alek," Mabruki says, used to be told him often; which means, "Bring the milk, you ———." Well, I am sure I am not sufficiently up in Syrian Arabic to be able to translate the last word. It is something awful, I have no doubt, because it still exercises Mabruki considerably. Mabruki says he would like to have a stand-up fight with his former master, but I do not think he would hurt him very much, after all. But Mabruki, though he is stupid, is faithful. He is entirely out of his element as valet, he might as well be *clerk*. As a watchman he is invaluable, as a second captain or fundi, whose duty it is to bring up stragglers, he is superexcellent. He is ugly, and vain, but he is no coward.

---

* I find upon returning to England, that Capt. Burton has informed the world of this "wicked and abominable deed," in his book upon Zanzibar, and that the interesting collection may be seen at the Royal College of Surgeons, London.

Asmani the guide is a large fellow, standing over six feet, with the neck and shoulders of a Hercules. Besides being guide, he is a fundi, sometimes called Fundi Asmani, or hunter. A very superstitious man, who takes great care of his gun, and talismanic plaited cord, which he has dipped in the blood of all the animals he has ever shot. He is afraid of lions, and will never venture out where lions are known to be. All other animals he regards as game, and is indefatigable in their pursuit. He is seldom seen without a smile on his face, not a kindly kind, but an apologetic, a treacherous smile. He could draw a knife across a man's throat and still smile.

Chowpereh is a sturdy short man of thirty or thereabouts; very good-natured, and humorous. When Chowpereh speaks in his dry Mark Twain style, the whole camp laughs. I never quarrel with Chowpereh, never did quarrel with him. A kind word given to Chowpereh is sure to be reciprocated with a good deed. He is the strongest, the healthiest, the amiablest, the faithfulest of all. He is the embodiment of a good follower.

Khamisi is a neat, cleanly boy of twenty or thereabouts, active, loud-voiced, a boaster, and the cowardliest of the cowardly. He will steal at every opportunity. He clings to his gun most affectionately; is always excessively anxious if a screw gets loose, or if a flint will not strike fire, yet I doubt that he would be able to fire his gun at an enemy from excessive trembling. Khamisi would rather trust his safety to his feet, which are small, and well shaped.

Ambari is a man of about forty. He is one of the "Faithfuls" of Speke, and one of my Faithfuls. He would not run away from me except when in the presence of an enemy, and imminent personal danger. He is clever in his way, but is not sufficiently clever to enact the part of captain, could take charge of a small party, and give a very good account of them. Is lazy, and an admirer of good living, abhors marching, unless he has nothing to carry but his gun.

Jumah is the best abused man of the party. Not by me, however, for I very seldom quarrel with him, because he has old-womanish ways with him, and in his old-womanish ways is disposed to do the best he can for me, though he will not carry a pound in weight without groaning terribly at his hard fate. To me he is sentimental and pathetic; to the unimportant members of the caravan he is stern and uncompromising. But the truth is, that I could well have dispensed with Jumah's presence: he was one of the incorrigible *inutiles*, eating far more than he was worth; besides being an excessively grumbling and querulous fool.

Ulimengo, a strong stalwart fellow of thirty, was the maddest and most hare-brained of my party. Though an arrant coward, he was a consummate boaster. But though a devotee of pleasure and fun, he was not averse from work. With one hundred men such as he, I could travel through Africa provided there was no fighting to do. It will be remembered that he was the martial coryphæus who led my little army to war against Mirambo, chanting the battle-song of the Wangwana; and that I stated, that when the retreat was determined upon, he was the first of my party to reach the stronghold of Mfuto. He is a swift runner, and a fair hunter. I have been indebted to him on several occasions, for a welcome addition to my larder.

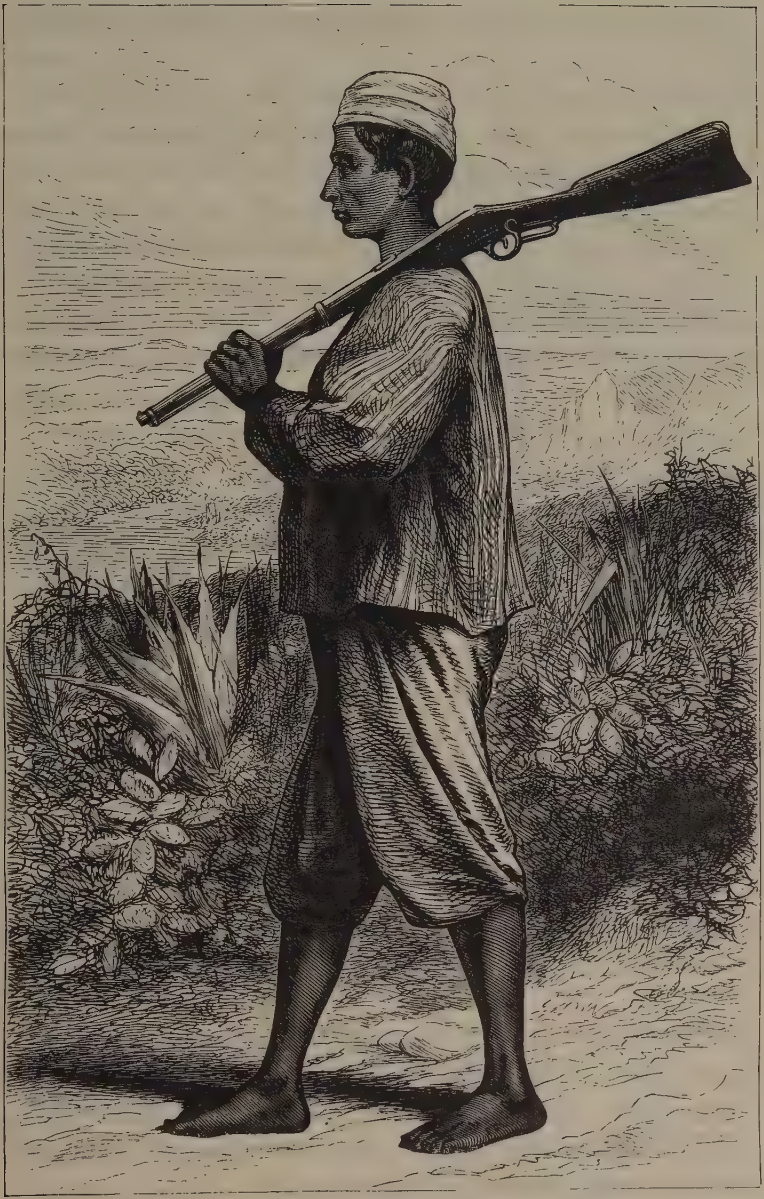
Ferajji, a former dishwasher to Speke, was my cook. He was promoted to this office upon the defection of Bunder Salaam, and the extreme non-fitness of Abdul Kader. For cleaning dishes, the first corn-cob, green twig, a bunch of leaves or grass, answered Ferajji's purposes in the absence of a cloth. If I ordered a plate, and I pointed out a black, greasy, sooty, thumbmark to him, a rub of a finger Ferajji thought sufficient to remove all objections. If I hinted that a spoon was rather dirty, Ferajji fancied that with a little saliva, and a rub of his greasy loin cloth, the most fastidious ought to be satisfied. Every pound of meat, and every three spoonfuls of musk or porridge I ate in Africa, contained at least ten grains of sand. Ferajji was considerably exercised at a threat I made to him that on arrival at Zanzibar, I would get the great English doctor there to open my stomach, and count every grain of sand found in it, for each grain of which Ferajji should be charged one dollar. The consciousness that my stomach must contain a large number, for which the forfeits would be heavy, made him feel very sad at times. Otherwise, Ferajji was a good cook, most industrious, if not accomplished. He could produce a cup of tea, and three or four hot pancakes, within ten minutes after a halt was ordered, for which I was most grateful, as I was almost always hungry after a long march. Ferajji sided with Baraka against Bombay in Unyoro, and when Speke took Bombay's side of the question, Ferajji, out of love for Baraka, left Speke's service, and so forfeited his pay.

Maganga was a Mnyamwezi, a native of Mkwenkwe, a strong, faithful servant, an excellent pagazi, with an irreproachable temper. He it was who at all times, on the march, started the wildly exuberant song of the Wanyamwezi porters, which, no matter how hot the sun, or how long the march, was sure to produce gaiety and animation among the people. At such times all hands sang, sang with voices that could be heard miles away, which made the great forests ring with the sounds, which startled every animal big or little, for miles around. On approaching a village the temper of whose people might be hostile to us, Maganga would commence his song, with the entire party joining in the chorus, by which mode we knew whether the natives were disposed to be friendly or hostile. If hostile, or timid, the gates would at once be closed, and dark faces would scowl at us from the interior; if friendly, they rushed outside of their gates to welcome us, or to exchange friendly remarks.

The most important member of the Expedition, next to myself, was Selim, the young Arab boy, a Christian from Jerusalem. He was educated by good Bishop Gobat, and if all the Arab boys of his school turn out as well as Selim, then Bishop Gobat deserves the highest praise for his noble work. Without Selim I must have perished at Mfuto; without Selim I could not have so well obtained the friendship of the chief Arabs in the interior; neither could I have well communicated with them, for though I understood Arabic, I could not speak it. I employed this boy in January 1870; since which time he had travelled with me through Southern Russia, the Caucasus, and Persia. In my service he was honest and faithful, if called to the death; he was without fear, and without reproach; and I feel while recording these praises of him that they are totally insufficient to convey my sense of the services he rendered to me.

I have already related how Kalulu came to be in my service, and how he came to bear his present name. I soon found how apt and quick he was to learn, in consequence of which, he was promoted to the rank of personal attendant. Even Selim could not vie with Kalulu in promptness and celerity, or in guessing my wants at the table. His little black eyes were constantly roving over the dishes, studying out the problem of what was further necessary, or had become unnecessary.

We arrived at the Ziwani, in about 4 h. 30 m. from the time of our quitting the scene which had well-nigh witnessed a sanguinary conflict. The Ziwani, or pool, contained no water, not a drop, until the parched tongues of my people warned them that they must proceed to excavate for water. This excavation was performed (by means of strong hard sticks sharply pointed) in the dry hard-caked bottom. After digging to a depth of six feet their labours were rewarded with the sight of a few drops of muddy liquid percolating through the sides, which were eagerly swallowed to relieve their raging thirst. Some voluntarily started with buckets, gourds, and canteens south to a deserted clearing called the "Tongoni" in Ukamba, and in about three hours returned with a



SELIM, THE INTERPRETER.

plentiful supply for immediate use, of good and clear water.

In 1 h. 30 m. we arrived at this Tongoni, or deserted clearing of the Wakamba. Here were three or four villages burnt, and an extensive clearing desolate, the work of the Wa-Ruga-Ruga of Mirambo. Those of the inhabitants who were left, after the spoliation and complete destruction of the flourishing settlement, emigrated westerly to Ugara. A large herd of buffalo now slake their thirst at the pool which supplied the villages of Ukamba with water.

Great masses of iron hæmatite cropped up above the surface in these forests. Wild fruit began to be abundant; the wood-apple and tamarind and a small plum-like fruit, furnished us with many an agreeable repast.

The honey-bird is very frequent in these forests of Ukonongo. Its cry is a loud, quick chirrup. The Wakonongo understand how to avail themselves of its guidance to the sweet treasure of honey, which the wild bees have stored in the cleft of some great tree. Daily, the Wakonongo who had joined our caravan brought me immense cakes of honey-comb containing delicious white and red honey. The red honey-comb generally contains large numbers of dead bees, but our exceedingly gluttonous people thought little of these. They not only ate the honey-bees, but they also ate a good deal of the wax.

As soon as the honey-bird descries the traveller, he immediately utters a series of wild, excited cries, hops about from twig to twig, and from branch to branch, then hops to another tree, incessantly repeating his chirruping call. The native, understanding the nature of the little bird, unhesitatingly follows him; but perhaps his steps are too slow for the impatient caller, upon which he flies back, urging with louder, more impatient cries, to hasten, and then darts swiftly forward, as if he would show how quickly he could go to the honey-store, until at last the treasure is reached, the native has applied fire to the bees' nest, and secured the honey, while the little bird preens himself, and chirrups in triumphant notes, as if he were informing the biped that without his aid he never could have found the honey.

Buffalo gnats and tsetse were very troublesome on this march, owing to the numerous herds of game in the vicinity.

On the 9th of October we made a long march in a southerly direction, and formed our camp in the centre of a splendid grove of trees. The water was very scarce on the road. The Wamrima and Wanyamwezi are not long able to withstand thirst. When water is plentiful they slake their thirst at every stream and pool; when it is scarce, as it is here and in the deserts of Marenga and Magunda Mkali, long afternoon-marches are made; the men previously, however, filling their gourds, so as to enable them to reach the water early next morning. Selim was never able to endure thirst. It mattered not how much of the precious liquid he carried, he generally drank it all before reaching camp, and he consequently suffered during the night. Besides this, he endangered his life by quaffing from every muddy pool; and on this day he began to complain that he discharged blood, which I took to be an incipient stage of dysentery.

During these marches, ever since quitting Ugunda, a favourite topic at the camp-fires were the Wa-Ruga-Ruga, and their atrocities, and a possible encounter that we might have with these bold rovers of the forest.

I verily believe that a sudden onset of half a dozen of Mirambo's people would have set the whole caravan a-running.

We reached Marefu the next day, after a short three hours' march. We there found an embassy sent by the Arabs of Unyanyembe, to the Southern Watuta, bearing presents of several bales, in charge of Hassan the Mseguhha. This valiant leader and diplomatist had halted here some ten days, because of wars, and rumours of wars in his front. It was said that Mbogo, Sultan of Mbogo in Ukonongo, was at war with the brother of Manwa Sera, and as Mbogo was a large district of Ukonongo, only two days' march from Marefu, fear of being involved in it was deterring old Hassan from proceeding. He advised me also not to proceed, as it was impossible to be able to do so without being embroiled in the conflict. I informed him that I intended to proceed on my way, and take my chances, and graciously offered him my escort as far as the frontier of Ufipa, from which he could easily and safely continue on his way to the Watuta, but he declined it.

We had now been travelling fourteen days in a south-westerly direction, having made a little more than one degree of latitude. I had intended to have gone a little further south, because it was such a good road, also since by going further south we should have labored under no fear of meeting Mirambo; but the report of this war in our front, only two days off, compelled me, in the interest of the Expedition, to strike across towards the Tanganika, on a west-by-north course through the forest, travelling, when it was advantageous, along elephant tracks and local paths. This new plan was adopted after consulting with Asmani, the guide. We were now in Ukonongo, having entered this district when we crossed the Gombe creek.

The next day after arriving at Marefu we plunged westward, in view of the villagers, and the Arab ambassador, who kept repeating until the last moment that we should "certainly catch it."

We marched eight hours through a forest, where the forest peach, or the "mbembu," is abundant. The tree that bears this fruit is very like a pear-tree, and is very productive. I saw one tree, upon which I estimated there were at least six or seven bushels. I ate numbers of the peaches on this day. So long as this fruit can be procured, a traveller in these regions need not fear starvation.

At the base of a graceful hilly cone we found a village called Utende, the inhabitants of which were in a state of great alarm, as we suddenly appeared on the ridge above them. Diplomacy urged me to send forward a present of one doti to the Sultan, who, however, would not accept it, because he happened to be drunk with pombe, and was therefore disposed to be insolent. Upon being informed that he would refuse any present, unless he received four more cloths, I immediately ordered a strong boma to be constructed on the summit of a little hill, near enough to a plentiful supply of water, and quietly again packed up the present in the bale. I occupied a strategically chosen position, as I could have swept the face of the hill, and the entire space between its base and the village of the Watende. Watchmen were kept on the look-out all night; but we were fortunately not troubled until the morning, when a delegation of the principal men came to ask if I intended to depart without having made a present to the chief. I replied to them that I did not intend passing through any country without making friends with the chiefs; and if their chief would accept a good cloth from me, I would freely give it to him. Though they demurred at the amount of the present at first, the difference between us was finally ended by my adding a fundo of red beads—sami-sami—for the chief's wife.

From the hill and ridge of Utende sloped a forest for miles and miles westerly, which was terminated by a grand and smooth-topped ridge rising 500 or 600 feet above the plain.

A four hours' march, on the 12th of October, brought us to a nullah similar to the Gombe, which, during the wet season, flows to the Gombe River, and thence into the Malagarazi River.

A little before camping we saw a herd of nimba, or pallah; I had the good fortune to shoot one, which was a welcome addition to our fast diminishing store of dried meats, prepared in our camp on the Gombe. By the quantity of bouse de vache, we judged buffaloes were plentiful here, as well as elephant and rhinoceros. The feathered species were well represented by ibis, fish-eagles, pelicans, storks, cranes, several snowy spoon-bills, and flamingoes.

From the nullah, or mtoni, we proceeded to Mwaru, the principal village of the district of Mwaru, the chief of which is Ka-mirambo. Our march lay over desolated clearings once occupied by Ka-mirambo's people, but who were driven away by Mkasiwa some ten years ago, during his warfare against Manwa Sera. Niongo, the brother of the latter, now waging war against Mbogo, had passed through Mwaru the day before we arrived, after being defeated by his enemy.

The hilly ridge that bounded the westward horizon, visible from Utende, was surmounted on this day. The western slope trends south-west, and is drained by the River Mrera, which empties into the Malagarazi River. We perceived the influence of the Tanganika, even here, though we were yet twelve or fifteen marches from the lake. The jungles increased in density, and the grasses became enormously tall; these points reminded us of the maritime districts of Ukwere and Ukami.

We heard from a caravan at this place, just come from Ufipa, that a white man was reported to be in "Urua," which I supposed to mean Livingstone.

Upon leaving Mwaru we entered the district of Mrera, a chief who once possessed great power and influence over this region. Wars, however, have limited his possessions to three or four villages snugly embosomed within a jungle, whose outer rim is so dense that it serves like a stone wall to repel invaders. There were nine bleached skulls, stuck on the top of as many poles, before the principal gate of entrance, which told us of existing feuds between the Wakonongo and the Wazavira. This latter tribe dwelt in a country a few marches west of us; whose territory we should have to avoid, unless we sought another opportunity to distinguish ourselves in battle with the natives. The Wazavira, we were told by the Wakonongo of Mrera, were enemies to all Wangwana.

In a narrow strip of marsh between Mwaru and Mrera, we saw a small herd of wild elephants. It was the first time I had ever seen these animals in their native wildness, and my first impressions of them I shall not readily forget. I am induced to think that the elephant deserves the title of "king of beasts." His huge form, the lordly way in which he stares at an intruder on his domain, and his whole appearance indicative of conscious might, afford good grounds for his claim to that title. This herd, as we passed it at the distance of a mile, stopped to survey the caravan as it passed; and, after having satisfied their curiosity, the elephants trooped into the forest which bounded the marshy plain southward, as if caravans were every-day things to them, whilst they—the free and unconquerable lords of the forest and the marsh—had nothing in common with the cowardly bipeds, who never found courage to face them in fair combat. The destruction which a herd makes in a forest is simply tremendous. When the trees are young, whole swathes may be found uprooted and prostrate, which mark the track of the elephants as they "trampled their path through wood and brake."

The boy Selim was so ill at this place that I was compelled to halt the caravan for him for three days. He seemed to be affected with a disease in the limbs, which caused him to sprawl, and tremble most painfully, besides suffering from an attack of acute dysentery. But constant attendance and care soon brought him round again; and on the fourth day he was able to endure the fatigue of riding.

I was able to shoot several animals during our stay at Mrera. The forest outside of the cultivation teems with noble animals. Zebra, giraffe, elephant, and rhinoceros are most common: ptarmigan and guinea-fowl were also plentiful.

The warriors of Mrera are almost all armed with muskets, of which they take great care. They were very importunate in their demands for flints, bullets, and powder, which I always made it a point to refuse, lest at any moment a fracas occurring they might use the ammunition thus supplied to my own disadvantage. The men of this village were an idle set, doing little but hunting, gaping, gossiping, and playing like great boys.

During the interval of my stay at Mrera I employed a large portion of my time in mending my shoes, and patching up the great rents in my clothes, which the thorn species, during the late marches, had almost destroyed. Westward, beyond Mrera, was a wilderness, the transit of which we were warned would occupy nine days; hence arose the necessity to purchase a large supply of grain, which, ere attempting the great uninhabited void in our front, was to be ground and sifted.

VIEW IN UVINZA.

CHAPTER XI.

THROUGH UKAWENDI, UVINZA, AND UHHA, TO UJIJI.

	h.	m.
Ukonongo.		
From Mrera to Mtoni	4	30
Misonghi	4	30
Mtoni	6	0
Mpokwa in Utanda	4	45
Mtoni	3	0
Ukawendi.		
Mtambu River	4	30
Imrera	4	20
Rusawa Mts.	2	30
Mtoni	4	0
Mtoni	5	0
Camp in Forest	6	0
Camp in Forest	5	30
Uvinza.		
Welled Nzogera	2	30
Camp in Forest	4	15
Siala on the Malagarazi	2	45
Ihata Island in the Malagarazi	1	30
Katalambula	1	45
Uhha.		
Kawanga in Uhha	5	30
Lukomo „	1	0
Kahirigi „	4	0
Rusugi River	5	0
Lake Musunya	4	0
Rugufu River	4	30
Sunuzzi „	3	0
Niamtaga Ukaranga	9	30
Ujiji. Port of Ujjii	6	0

We bade farewell to Mrera on the 17th of October, to continue our route north-westward. All the men and I were firm friends now; all squabbling had long ceased. Bombay and I had forgotten our quarrel; the kirangozi and myself were ready to embrace, so loving and affectionate were the terms upon which we stood towards one another. Confidence returned to all hearts —for now, as Mabruk Unyanyembe said, "we could smell the fish of the Tanganika." Unyanyembe, with all its disquietude, was far behind. We could snap our fingers at that terrible Mirambo and his unscrupulous followers, and by-and-by, perhaps, we may be able to laugh at the timid seer who always prophesied portentous events—Sheikh, the son of Nasib. We laughed joyously, as we glided in Indian file through the young forest jungle beyond the clearing of Mrera, and boasted of our prowess. Oh! we were truly brave that morning!

Emerging from the jungle, we entered a thin forest, where numerous ant-hills were seen like so many sand dunes. I imagine that these ant-hills were formed during a remarkably wet season, when, possibly, the forest-clad plain was inundated. I have seen the ants at work by thousands, engaged in the work of erecting their hills in other districts suffering from inundation. What a wonderful system of cells these tiny insects construct! A perfect labyrinth—cell within cell, room within room, hall within hall—an exhibition of engineering talents and high architectural capacity —a model city, cunningly contrived for safety and comfort!

Emerging after a short hour's march out of the forest, we welcome the sight of a murmuring translucent stream, swiftly flowing towards the north-west, which we regard with the pleasure which only men who have for a long time sickened themselves with that potable liquid of the foulest kind, found in salinas, mbugas, pools, and puddle-holes, can realize. Beyond this stream rises a rugged and steep ridge, from the summit of which our eyes are gladdened with scenes that are romantic, animated, and picturesque. They form an unusual feast to eyes sated with looking into the depths of forests, at towering stems of trees, and at tufted crowns of foliage. We have now before us scores of cones, dotting the surface of a plain which extends across Southern Ukonongo to the territory of the Wafipa, and which reaches as far as the Rikwa Plain. The immense prospect before which we are suddenly ushered is most varied; exclusive of conical hills and ambitious flat-topped and isolated mountains, we are in view of the watersheds of the Rungwa River, which empties into the Tanganika south of where we stand, and of the Malagarazi River, which the Tanganika receives, a degree or so north of this position. A single but lengthy latitudinal ridge serves as a dividing line to the watershed of the Rungwa and Malagarazi; and a score of miles or so further west of this ridge rises another, which runs north and south.

We camped on this day in the jungle, close to a narrow ravine with a marshy bottom, through the oozy, miry contents of which the waters from the watershed of the Rungwa slowly trickled southward towards the Rikwa Plain. This was only one of many ravines, however, some of which were several hundred yards broad, others were but a few yards in width, the bottoms of which were most dangerous quagmires, overgrown with dense tall reeds and papyrus. Over the surface of these great depths of mud were seen hundreds of thin threads of slimy ochre-colored water, which swarmed with animalculæ. By-and-by, a few miles south of the base of this ridge (which I call Kasera, from the country which it cuts in halves), these several ravines converge and debouch into the broad, marshy, oozy, spongy "river" of Usense, which trends in a south-easterly direction; after which, gathering the contents of the watercourses from the north and north-east into its own broader channel, it soon becomes a stream of some breadth and consequence, and meets a river flowing from the east, from the direction of Urori, with which it conflows in the Rikwa Plain, and empties about sixty rectilineal miles further west into the Tanganika Lake. The Rungwa River, I am informed, is considered as a boundary line between the country of Usowa on the north, and Ufipa on the south.

We had barely completed the construction of our camp defences when some of the men were heard challenging a small party of natives which advanced towards our camp, headed by a man who, from his garb and head-dress, we knew was from Zanzibar. After interchanging the customary salutations, I was informed that this party was an embassy from Simba ("Lion"), who ruled over Kasera, in Southern Unyamwezi. Simba, I was told, was the son of Mkasiwa, King of Unyanyembe, and was carrying on war with the Wazavira, of whom I was warned to beware. He had heard such reports of my greatness that he was sorry I did not take his road to Ukawendi, that he might have had the opportunity of seeing me, and making friends with me; but in the absence of a personal visit Simba had sent this embassy to overtake me, in the hope that I would present him with a token of my friendship in the shape of cloth. Though I was rather taken aback by the demand, still it was politic in me to make this powerful chief my friend, lest on my return from the search after Livingstone he and I might fall out. And since it was incumbent on me to make a present, for the sake of peace, it was necessary to exhibit my desire for peace by giving—if I gave at all—a royal present. The ambassador conveyed from me to Simba, or the "Lion" of Kasera, two gorgeous cloths, and two other doti consisting of Merikani and Kaniki; and, if I might believe the ambassador, I had made Simba a friend for ever.

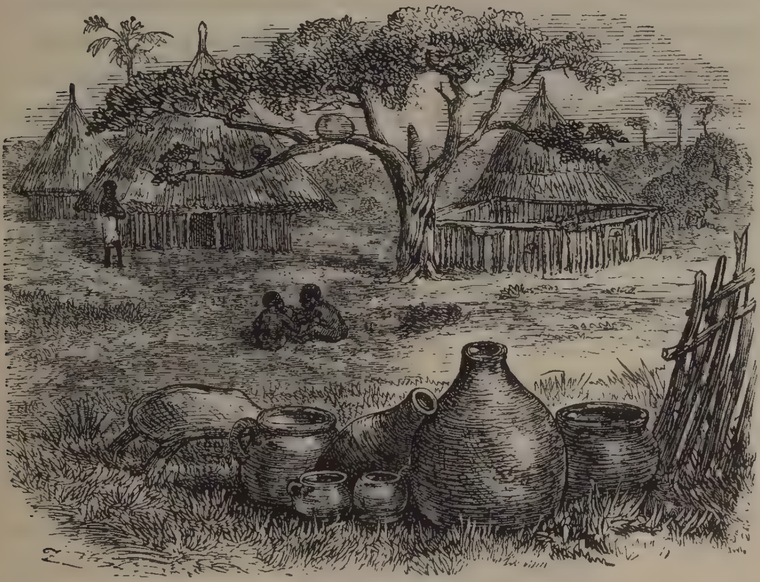
On the 18th of October, breaking camp at the usual hour, we continued our march north-westward by a road which zig-zagged along the base of the Kasera mountains, and which took us into all kinds of difficulties. We traversed at least a dozen marshy ravines, the depth of mire and water in which caused the utmost anxiety. I sunk up to my neck in deep holes in the Stygian ooze caused by elephants, and had to tramp through the oozy beds of the Rungwa sources with my clothes wet and black with mud and slime. Decency forbade that I should strip, and wade through the sedgy marsh naked; and the hot sun would also blister my body. Moreover, these morasses were too frequent to lose time in undressing and dressing, and, as each man was weighted with his own proper load, it would have been cruel to compel the men to bear me across. Nothing remained, therefore, but to march on, all encumbered as I was with my clothing and accoutrements, into these several marshy watercourses, with all the philosophical stoicism that my nature could muster for such emergencies. But it was very uncomfortable, to say the least of it.

We soon entered the territory of the dreaded Wazavira, but no enemy was in sight. Simba, in his wars, had made clean work of the northern part of Uzavira, and we encountered nothing worse than a view of the desolated country, which must have been once—judging from the number of burnt huts and débris of ruined villages—extremely populous. A young jungle was sprouting up vigorously in their fields, and was rapidly becoming the home of wild denizens of the forest. In one of the deserted and ruined villages, I found quarters for the Expedition, which were by no means uncomfortable. I shot three brace of guinea fowl in the neighborhood of Misonghi, the deserted village we occupied, and Ulimengo, one of my hunters, bagged an antelope, called the "mbawala," for whose meat some of the Wanyamwezi have a superstitious aversion. I take this species of antelope, which stands about three and a half feet high, of a reddish hide, head long, horns short, to be the "Nzoe" antelope discovered by Speke in Uganda, and whose Latin designation is, according to Dr. Sclater, "Tragelaphus Spekii." It has a short bushy tail, and long hair along the spine.

A long march in a west-by-north direction, lasting six hours, through a forest where the sable antelope was seen, and which was otherwise prolific with game, brought us to a stream which ran by the base of a lofty conical hill, on whose slopes flourished quite a forest of feathery bamboo.

On the 20th, leaving our camp, which lay between the stream and the conical hill above mentioned, and surmounting a low ridge which sloped from the base of the hill-cone, we were greeted with another picturesque view, of cones and scarped mountains, which heaved upward in all directions. A march of nearly five hours through this picturesque country brought us to the

Mpokwa River, one of the tributaries of the Rungwa, and to a village lately deserted by the Wazavira. The huts were almost all intact, precisely as they were left by their former inhabitants. In the gardens were yet found vegetables, which, after living so long on meat were most grateful to us. On the branches of trees still rested the Lares and Penates of the Wazavira, in the shape of large and exceedingly well-made earthen pots.



VILLAGE IN UZAVIRA—NATIVE POTTERY.

In the neighboring river one of my men succeeded, in a few minutes, in catching sixty fish of the silurus species by the hand alone. A number of birds hovered about the stream, such as the white-headed fish-eagle and the black kingfisher, enormous snowy spoonbills, ibis, martins, &c. This river issued from a mountain clump eight miles or so north of the village of Mpokwa, and comes flowing down a narrow thread of water, sinuously winding amongst tall reeds and dense brakes on either side—the home of hundreds of antelopes and buffaloes. South of Mpokwa, the valley broadens, and the mountains deflect eastward and westward, and beyond this point commences the plain known as the Rikwa, which, during the Masika is inundated, but which, in the dry season, presents the same bleached aspect that plains in Africa generally do when the grass has ripened.

Travelling up along the right bank of the Mpokwa, on the 21st we came to the head of the stream, and the sources of the Mpokwa, issuing out of deep defiles enclosed by lofty ranges. The mbawala and the buffalo were plentiful.

On the 22nd, after a march of four hours and a half, we came to the beautiful stream of Mtambu—the water of which was sweet, and clear as crystal, and flowed northward. We saw for the first time the home of the lion and the leopard. Hear what Freiligrath says of the place:

> Where the thorny brake and thicket
> Densely fill the interspace
> Of the trees, through whose thick branches
> Never sunshine lights the place,
> There the lion dwells, a monarch,
> Mightiest among the brutes;
> There his right to reign supremest
> Never one his claim disputes.
> There he layeth down to slumber,
> Having slain and ta'en his fill;
> There he roameth, there he croucheth,
> As it suits his lordly will.

We camped but a few yards from just such a place as the poet describes. The herd-keeper who attended the goats and donkeys, soon after our arrival in camp, drove the animals to water, and in order to obtain it they travelled through a tunnel in the brake, caused by elephants and rhinoceros. They had barely entered the dark cavernous passage, when a black-spotted leopard sprang, and fastened its fangs in the neck of one of the donkeys, causing it, from the pain, to bray hideously. Its companions set up such a frightful chorus, and so lashed their heels in the air at the feline marauder, that the leopard bounded away through the brake, as if in sheer dismay at the noisy cries which the attack had provoked. The donkey's neck exhibited some frightful wounds, but the animal was not dangerously hurt.

Thinking that possibly I might meet with an adventure with a lion or a leopard in that dark belt of tall trees, under whose impenetrable shade grew the dense thicket that formed such admirable coverts for the carnivorous species, I took a stroll along the awesome place with the gunbearer, Kalulu, carrying an extra gun, and a further supply of ammunition. We crept cautiously along, looking keenly into the deep dark dens, the entrances of which were revealed to us, as we journeyed, expectant every moment to behold the reputed monarch of the brake and thicket, bound forward to meet us, and I took a special delight in picturing, in my imagination, the splendor and majesty of the wrathful brute, as he might stand before me. I peered closely into every dark opening, hoping to see the deadly glitter of the great angry eyes, and the glowering menacing front of the lion as he would regard me. But, alas! after an hour's search for adventure, I had encountered nothing, and I accordingly waxed courageous, and crept into one of these leafy, thorny caverns, and found myself shortly standing under a canopy of foliage that was held above my head fully a hundred feet by the shapely and towering stems of the royal mvule. Who can imagine the position? A smooth lawn-like glade; a dense and awful growth of impenetrable jungle around us; those stately natural pillars—a glorious phalanx of royal trees, bearing at such sublime heights vivid green masses of foliage, through which no single sun-ray penetrated, while at our feet babbled the primeval brook, over smooth pebbles, in soft tones befitting the sacred quiet of the scene! Who could have desecrated this solemn, holy harmony of nature? But just as I was thinking it impossible that any man could be tempted to disturb the serene solitude of the place, I saw a monkey perched high on a branch over my head, contemplating, with something of an awe-struck look, the strange intruders beneath. Well, I could not help it, I laughed — laughed loud and long, until I was hushed by the chaos of cries and strange noises which seemed to respond to my laughing. A troop of monkeys, hidden in the leafy depths above, had been rudely awakened, and, startled by the noise I made, were hurrying away from the scene with a dreadful clamor of cries and shrieks.

Emerging again into the broad sunlight, I strolled further in search of something to shoot. Presently, I saw, feeding quietly in the forest which bounded the valley of the Mtambu on the left, a huge, reddish-colored wild boar, armed with most horrid tusks. Leaving Kalulu crouched down behind a tree, and my solar helmet behind another close by—that I might more safely stalk the animal — I advanced towards him some forty yards, and after taking a deliberate aim, fired at his fore shoulder. As if nothing had hurt him whatever, the animal made a furious bound, and then

THE WOUNDED BOAR COMES TO A HALT!

stood with his bristles erected, and tufted tail, curved over the back—a most formidable brute in appearance. While he was thus listening, and searching the neighborhood with his keen small eyes, I planted another shot in his chest, which ploughed its way through his body. Instead of falling, however, as I expected he would, he charged furiously in the direction the bullet had come, and as he rushed past me, another ball was fired, which went right through him; but still he kept on, until, within six or seven yards from the trees behind which Kalulu was crouching down on one side, and the helmet was resting behind another, he suddenly halted, and then dropped. But as I was about to advance on him with my knife to cut his throat, he suddenly started up; his eyes had caught sight of the little boy Kalulu, and were then, almost immediately afterwards, attracted by the sight of the snowy helmet. These strange objects on either side of him proved too much for the boar, for, with a terrific grunt, he darted on one side into a thick brake, from which it was impossible to oust him, and as it was now getting late, and the camp was about three miles away, I was reluctantly obliged to return without the meat.

On our way to camp we were accompanied by a large animal which persistently followed us on our left. It was too dark to see plainly, but a large form was visible, if not very clearly defined. It must have been a lion, unless it was the ghost of the dead boar.

That night, about 11 P.M., we were startled by the roar of a lion, in close proximity to the camp. Soon it was joined by another, and another still, and the novelty of the thing kept me awake. I peered through the gate of the camp, and endeavoured to sight a rifle —my little Winchester, in the accuracy of which I had perfect confidence; but, alas! for the cartridges, they might have been as well filled with sawdust for all the benefit I derived from them. Disgusted with the miserable ammunition, I left the lions alone, and turned in, with their roaring as a lullaby.

That terrestrial paradise for the hunter, the valley of the pellucid Mtambu, was deserted by us the next morning for the settlement commonly known to the Wakawendi as Imrera's, with as much unconcern as though it were a howling desert. The village near which we encamped was called Itaga, in the district of Rusawa. As soon as we had crossed the River Mtambu we had entered Ukawendi, commonly called "Kawendi" by the natives of the country.

The district of Rusawa is thickly populated. The people are quiet and well-disposed to strangers, though few ever come to this region from afar. One or two Wasawahili traders visit it every year or so from Pumburu and Usowa; but very little ivory being obtained from the people, the long distance between the settlements serves to deter the regular trader from venturing hither.

If caravans arrive here, the objective point to them is the district of Pumburu, situated south-westerly one day's good marching, or, say, thirty statute miles from Imrera; or they make for Usowa, on the Tanganika, viâ Pumburu, Katuma, Uyombeh, and Ugarawah. Usowa is quite an important district on the Tanganika, populous and flourishing. This was the road we had intended to adopt after leaving Imrera, but the reports received at the latter place forbade such a venture. For Mapunda, the Sultan of Usowa, though a great friend to Arab traders, was at war with the colony of the Wazavira, who we must remember were driven from Mpokwa and vicinity in Utanda, and who were said to have settled between Pumburu and Usowa.

It remained for us, like wise, prudent men, having charge of a large and valuable Expedition on our hands, to decide what to do, and what route to adopt, now that we had approached much nearer to Ujiji than we were to Unyanyembe. I suggested that we should make direct for the Tanganika by compass, trusting to no road or guide, but to march direct west until we came to the Tanganika, and then follow the lake shore on foot until we came to Ujiji. For it ever haunted my mind, that, if Dr. Livingstone should hear of my coming, which he might possibly do if I travelled along any known road, he would leave, and that my search for him would consequently be a "stern chase." But my principal men thought it better that we should now boldly turn our faces north, and march for the Malagarazi, which was said to be a large river flowing from the east to the Tanganika. But none of my men knew the road to the Malagarazi, neither could guides be hired from Sultan Imrera. We were, however, informed that the Malagarazi was but two days' march from Imrera. I thought it safe, in such a case, to provision my men with three days' rations.

The village of Itaga is situated in a deep mountain hollow, finely overlooking a large extent of cultivation. The people grow sweet potatoes, manioc—out of which tapioca is made—beans, and the holcus. Not one chicken was to be purchased for love or money, and, besides grain, only a lean, scraggy specimen of a goat, a long time ago imported from Uvinza, was procurable.

October the 25th will be remembered by me as a day of great troubles; in fact, a series of troubles began from this date. We struck an easterly road in order to obtain a passage to the lofty plateau which bounded the valley of Imrera on the west and on the north. We camped, after a two and a half hours' march, at its foot. The defile promised a feasible means of ascent to the summit of the plateau, which rose upward in a series of scarps a thousand feet above the valley of Imrera.

I was given to understand by my men that they wished to halt at this camp one day, for the purpose of eliciting further information from Imrera concerning the nature of the country between us and the Malagarazi. This was, of course, nonsense, as I had already halted one day at Imrera, and the guides had urged me to adopt this road, as—so they argued—they had obtained reliable information from the natives about the country. I remembered General Andrew Jackson's advice to a young friend of his, which was, "Look well before you attempt to do a thing, but, when you have decided to do it, go and do it, and never look behind," and this was precisely what I intended to do.

Towards night one of my men shot a buffalo, and this little incident was another cause of dissension and angry retort. The buffalo managed to escape into a jungle, where he would be sure to be found dead in the morning. I was asked by several belly-worshippers and lazy gluttons if I would stop but just one day more, that they might make their limbs strong with eating meat. "Not an hour after sunrise to-morrow," was my answer. Immediately ensued a general cry of "No 'posho'—food." "You have three days' food," I answered; "but if you wish more, here is cloth: go and buy."

But, when challenged to proceed to the village to purchase, they each and all pleaded fatigue. They insisted, however, that I was in duty bound to halt one day longer, for, even if they purchased grain, the grain required to be ground before they could eat it. The pampered fellows maintained this kind of argument long. But I was inexorable. And all night they were debating what steps to take to induce me to halt; but Bombay and Mabruki were already prohibited from coming to me with any such request, upon pain of battle à la Heenan; and Bombay always remembered the terrible punishment he received from Speke too well to ever desire a repetition of it.

The next morning, at sunrise, I issued the order to "march" in as stern and uncompromising a tone as I could assume, thus precluding any allusion to a halt. They were very sulky, and in fit mood to rebel, but, as nothing more was left whereon to hang an argument, they finally, though reluctantly, yielded to my will. By the time we arrived at our camp at the head of the Rugufu River, the men had forgotten the fat buffalo, and were in excellent humor.

While ascending that lofty arc of mountains which bounded westerly and northerly the basin of Imrera, extensive prospects southward and eastward were revealed. The character of the scenery of Ukawendi is always animated and picturesque, but never sublime. The folds of this ridge contained several ruins of bomas, which seemed to have been erected during war time.

The mbembu fruit was plentiful along this march, and every few minutes I could see from the rear one or two of the men hastening to secure a treasure of it which they discovered on the ground.

A little before reaching the camp I had a shot at a leopard, but failed to bring him down as he bounded away. At night the lions roared as at the Mtambu River.

A lengthy march under the deep twilight shadows of a great forest, which protected us from the hot sunbeams, brought us, on the next day, to a camp newly constructed by a party of Arabs from Ujiji, who had advanced thus far on their road to Unyanyembe, but, alarmed at the reports of the war between Mirambo and the Arabs, had returned. Our route was along the right bank of the Rugufu, a broad sluggish stream, well choked with the matete reeds and the papyrus. The tracks and the bouse de vache of buffaloes were numerous, and there were several indications of rhinoceros being near. In a deep clump of timber near this river we discovered a colony of bearded and leonine-looking monkeys.

As we were about leaving our camp on the morning of the 28th a herd of buffalo walked deliberately into view. Silence was quickly restored, but not before the animals, to their great surprise, had discovered the danger which confronted them. We commenced stalking them, but we soon heard the thundering sound of their gallop, after which it becomes a useless task to follow them, with a long march in a wilderness before one.

The road led on this day over immense sheets of sandstone and iron ore. The water was abominable, and scarce, and famine began to stare us in the face. We travelled for six hours, and had yet seen no sign of cultivation anywhere. According to my map we were yet two long marches from the Malagarazi—if Captain Burton had correctly laid down the position of the river; according to the natives' account, we should have arrived at the Malagarazi on this day.

On the 29th we left our camp, and after a few minutes, we were in view of the sublimest, but ruggedest scenes we had yet beheld in Africa. The country was cut up in all directions by deep, wild, and narrow ravines trending in all directions, but generally toward the north-west, while on either side rose enormous square masses of naked rock (sandstone), sometimes towering, and rounded, sometimes pyramidal, sometimes in truncated cones, sometimes in circular ridges, with sharp, rugged, naked backs, with but little vegetation anywhere visible, except it obtained a precarious tenure in the fissured crown of some gigantic hill-top, whither some soil had fallen, or at the base of the reddish ochre scarps which everywhere lifted their fronts to our view.

A long series of descents down rocky gullies, wherein we were environed by threatening masses of disintegrated rock, brought us to a dry, stony ravine, with mountain heights looming above us some thousand feet high. This ravine we followed, winding around in all directions, but which gradually widened, however, into a broad plain, with a western trend. The road, leaving this, struck across a low ridge to the north; and we were in view of deserted settlements where the villages were built on frowning castellated masses of rock. Near an upright mass of rock over seventy feet high, and about fifty yards in diameter, which dwarfed the gigantic sycamore close to it, we made our camp, after five hours and thirty minutes' continuous and rapid marching.

The people were very hungry; they had eaten every scrap of meat, and every grain they possessed, twenty hours before, and there was no immediate prospect of food. I had but a pound and a half of flour left, and this would not have sufficed to begin to feed a force of over forty-five people; but I had something like thirty pounds of tea, and twenty pounds of sugar left, and I at once, as soon as we arrived at camp, ordered every kettle to be filled and placed on the fire, and then made tea for all, giving each man a quart of a hot, grateful beverage, well sweetened. Parties stole out also into the depths of the jungle to search for wild fruit, and soon returned laden with baskets of the wood-peach and tamarind fruit, which, though it did not satisfy, relieved them. That night, before going to sleep, the Wangwana set up a loud prayer to "Allah" to give them food.

We rose betimes in the morning, determined to travel on until food could be procured, or we dropped down from sheer fatigue and weakness. Rhinoceros' tracks abounded, and buffalo seemed to be plentiful, but we never beheld a living thing. We crossed scores of short steeps, and descended as often into the depths of dry, stony gullies, and then finally entered a valley, bounded on one side by a triangular mountain with perpendicular sides, and on the other by a bold group, a triplet of hills. While marching down this valley—which soon changed its dry, bleached aspect to a vivid green—we saw a forest in the distance, and shortly found ourselves in corn-fields. Looking keenly around for a village, we descried it on the summit of the lofty triangular hill on our right. A loud exultant shout was raised at the discovery. The men threw down their packs, and began to clamor for food. Volunteers were asked to come forward to take cloth, and scale the heights to obtain it from the village, at any price. While three or four sallied off we rested on the ground, quite worn out.

In about an hour the foraging party returned with the glorious tidings that food was plentiful; that the village we saw was called, "Welled Nzogera's"—the son of Nzogera—by which, of course, we knew that we were in Uvinza, Nzogera being the principal chief in Uvinza. We were further informed that Nzogera, the father, was at war with Lokanda-Mira, about some salt-pans in the valley of the Malagarazi, and that it would be difficult to go to Ujiji by the usual road, owing to this war; but, for a consideration, the son of Nzogera was willing to supply us with guides, who would take us safely, by a northern road, to Ujiji.

Everything auguring well for our prospects, we encamped to enjoy the good cheer, for which our troubles and privations, during the transit of the Ukawendi forests and jungles, had well prepared us.

Then began a diplomatic course of arguments respecting the quantity and quality of the cloths which the son of Nzogera usually demanded from travellers. From ten doti, we succeeded in reducing the demand to seven and a half doti of Merikani and Kaniki, and were successful in procuring the guides we desired.

I am now going to extract from my diary of the march, as, without its aid, I deem it impossible to relate fully our various experiences, so as to show them properly as they occurred to us; and as these extracts were written and recorded at the close of each day, they possess more interest, in my opinion, than a cold relation of facts, now toned down in memory.

October 31*st.* *Tuesday.*—Camp in jungle. Direction of road, north-by-east. Time occupied by march, 4 hours 15 minutes.

Our road led E.N.E. for a considerable time after leaving the base of the triangular mountain whereon the son of Nzogera has established his stronghold, in order to avoid a deep and impassable portion of marsh, that stood between us and the direct route to the Malagarazi River. The valley sloped rapidly to this marsh, which received in its broad bosom the drainage of three extensive ranges. Soon we turned our faces north-west, and prepared to cross the marsh; and the guides informed us, as we halted on its eastern bank, of a terrible catastrophe which occurred a few yards above where we were preparing to cross. They told of an Arab and his caravan, consisting of thirty-five slaves, who had suddenly sunk out of sight, and who were never more heard of. This marsh, as it appeared to us, presented a breadth of some hundreds of yards, on which grew a close network of grass, with much decayed matter mixed up with it. In the centre of this, and underneath it, ran a broad, deep, and rapid stream. As the guides proceeded across, the men stole after them with cautious footsteps. As they arrived near the centre we began to see this unstable grassy bridge, so curiously provided by nature for us, move up and down in heavy languid undulations, like the swell of the sea after a storm. Where the two asses of the Expedition moved, the grassy waves rose a foot high; but suddenly one unfortunate animal plunged his feet through, and as he was unable to rise, he soon made a deep hollow, which was rapidly filling with water. With the aid of ten men, however, we were enabled to lift him bodily up and land him on a firmer part, and guiding them both across rapidly, the entire caravan crossed without accident.

On arriving at the other side, we struck off to the north, and found ourselves in a delightful country, in every way suitable for agriculturists. Great rocks rose here and there, but in their fissures rose stately trees, under whose umbrage nestled the villages of the people.

We found the various village elders greedy for cloth, but the presence of the younger son of Nzogera's men restrained their propensity for extortion. Goats and sheep were remarkably cheap, and in good condition; and, consequently, to celebrate our arrival near the Malagarazi, a flock of eight goats were slaughtered, and distributed to the men.

November 1*st.*—Striking north-west, after leaving our camp, and descending the slope of a mountain, we soon beheld the anxiously looked-for Malagarazi, a narrow but deep stream, flowing through a valley pent in by lofty mountains. Fish-eating birds lined the trees on its banks; villages were thickly scattered about. Food was abundant, and cheap.

After travelling along the left bank of the river a few miles, we arrived at the settlements recognizing Kiala as their ruler. I had anticipated we should be able at once to cross the river, but difficulties arose. We were told to camp, before any negotiations could be entered into. When we demurred, we were informed we might cross the river if we wished, but we should not be assisted by any Mvinza.

Being compelled to halt for this day, the tent was pitched in the middle of one of the villages, and the bales were stored in one of the huts, with four soldiers to guard them. After despatching an embassy to Kiala, eldest son of the great chief Nzogera, to request permission to cross the river as a peaceable caravan, Kiala sent word that the white man should cross his river after the payment of fifty-six cloths! Fifty-six cloths signified a bale nearly! Here was another opportunity for diplomacy. Bombay and Asmani were empowered to treat with Kiala about the honga, but it was not to exceed twenty-five doti. At 6 A.M., having spoken for seven hours, the two men returned, with the demand for thirteen doti for Nzogera, and ten doti for Kiala. Poor Bombay was hoarse, but Asmani still smiled; and I relented, congratulating myself that the preposterous demand, which was simply robbery, was no worse.

Three hours later another demand was made. Kiala had been visited by a couple of chiefs from his father; and the chiefs being told that a white man was at the ferry, put in a claim for a couple of guns and a keg of gunpowder. But here my patience was exhausted, and I declared that they should have to take them by force, for I would never consent to be robbed and despoiled after any such fashion.

Until 11 P.M., Bombay and Asmani were negotiating about this extra demand, arguing, quarreling, threatening, until Bombay declared they would talk him mad if it lasted much longer. I told Bombay to take two cloths, one for each chief, and, if they did not consider it enough, then I should fight. The present was taken, and the negotiations were terminated at midnight.

November 2nd.—Ihata Island, one and a half hour west of Kiala's. We arrived before the Island of Ihata, on the left bank of the Malagarazi, at 5 P.M.; the morning having been wasted in puerile talk with the owner of the canoes at the ferry. The final demand for ferriage across was eight yards of cloth and four fundo* of sami-sami, or red beads; which was at once paid. Four men, with their loads, were permitted to cross in the small, unshapely, and cranky canoes. When the boatmen had discharged their canoes of their passengers and cargoes, they were ordered to halt on the other side, and, to my astonishment, another demand was made. The ferrymen had found that two fundo of these were of short measure, and two fundo more must be paid, otherwise the contract for ferrying us across would be considered null and void. So two fundo more were added, but not without demur and much "talk," which in these lands is necessary.

---

* 4 fundo = 40 necklaces; 1 fundo being 10 necklaces.

Three times the canoes went backwards and forwards, when, lo! another demand was made, with the usual clamor and fierce wordy dispute; this time for five khete* for the man who guided us to the ferry, a shukka of cloth for a babbler, who had attached himself to the old-womanish Jumah, who did nothing but babble and increase the clamor. These demands were also settled.

About sunset we endeavoured to cross the donkeys. "Simba," a fine wild Kinyamwezi donkey, went in first, with a rope attached to his neck. He had arrived at the middle of the stream when we saw him begin to struggle—a crocodile had seized him by the throat. The poor animal's struggles were terrific. Chowpereh was dragging on the rope with all his might, but to no use, for the donkey sank, and we saw no more of him. The depth of the river at this place was about fifteen feet. We had seen the light-brown heads, the glittering eyes, and the ridgy backs, hovering about the vicinity, but we had never thought that the reptiles would advance so near such an exciting scene as the vicinity of the ferry presented during the crossing. Saddened a little by this loss, we resumed our work, and by 7 P.M. we were all across, excepting Bombay and the only donkey now left, which was to be brought across in the morning, when the crocodiles should have deserted the river.

---

* Necklaces.

November 3rd.—What contention have we not been a witness to these last three days! What anxiety have we not suffered ever since our arrival in Uvinza! The Wavinza are worse than the Wagogo, and their greed is more insatiable. We got the donkey across with the aid of a mganga, or medicine man, who spat some chewed leaves of a tree which grows close to the stream over him. He informed me he could cross the river at any time, day or night, after rubbing his body with these chewed leaves, which he believed to be a most potent medicine.

About 10 A.M. appeared from the direction of Ujiji a caravan of eighty Waguhha, a tribe which occupies a tract of country on the south-western side of the Lake Tanganika. We asked the news, and were told a white man had just arrived at Ujiji from Manyuema. This news startled us all.

"A white man?" we asked.

"Yes, a white man," they replied.

"How is he dressed?"

"Like the master," they answered, referring to me.

"Is he young, or old?"

"He is old. He has white hair on his face, and is sick."

"Where has he come from?"

"From a very far country away beyond Uguhha, called Manyuema."

"Indeed! and is he stopping at Ujiji now?"

"Yes, we saw him about eight days ago."

"Do you think he will stop there until we see him?"

"*Sigue*" (don't know).

"Was he ever at Ujiji before?"

"Yes, he went away a long time ago."

Hurrah! This is Livingstone! He must be Livingstone! He *can* be no other; but still;—he may be some one else—some one from the West Coast—or perhaps he is Baker! No; Baker has no white hair on his face. But we must now march quick, lest he hears we are coming, and runs away.

I addressed my men, and asked them if they were willing to march to Ujiji without a single halt, and then promised them, if they acceded to my wishes, two doti each man. All answered in the affirmative, almost as much rejoiced as I was myself. But I was madly rejoiced; intensely eager to resolve the burning question, "Is it Dr. David Livingstone?" God grant me patience, but I do wish there was a railroad, or, at least, horses in this country. With a horse I could reach Ujiji in about twelve hours.

We set out at once from the banks of the Malagarazi, accompanied by two guides furnished us by Usenge, the old man of the ferry, who, now that we had crossed, showed himself more amiably disposed to us. We arrived at the village of Isinga, Sultan Katalambula, after a little over an hour's march across a saline plain, but which as we advanced into the interior became fertile and productive. We were warned after camping that to-morrow's march would have to be made with caution, as a band of Wavinza, under Makumbi, a great chief of Nzogera's, were returning from war, and it was the custom of Makumbi to leave nothing behind him after a victory. Intoxicated with success, he attacked even the villages of his own tribe, capturing the live stock—slaves and cattle. The result of a month's campaign against Lokanda-Mira was the destruction of two villages, the killing of one of the children of that chief, and the slaughter of several men;

Makumbi also lost five men from thirst during the crossing of a saline desert south of the Malagarazi.

November 4th.—Started early with great caution, maintaining deep silence. The guides were sent forward, one two hundred yards ahead of the other, that we might be warned in time. The first part of the march was through a thin jungle of dwarf trees, which got thinner and thinner until finally it vanished altogether, and we had entered Uhha—a plain country. Villages were visible by the score among the tall bleached stalks of dourra and maize. Sometimes three, sometimes five, ten, or twenty beehive-shaped huts formed a village. The Wahha were evidently living in perfect security, for not one village amongst them all was surrounded with the customary defence of an African village. A narrow dry ditch formed the only boundary between Uhha and Uvinza. On entering Uhha, all danger from Makumbi vanished.

We halted at Kawanga, the chief of which lost no time in making us understand that he was the great Mutware of Kimenyi under the king, and that he was the tribute gatherer for his Kiha majesty. He declared that he was the only one in Kimenyi—an eastern division of Uhha—who could demand tribute; and that it would be very satisfactory to him, and a saving of trouble to ourselves, if we settled his claim of twelve doti of good cloths at once. We did not think it the best way of proceeding, knowing as we did the character of the native African; so we at once proceeded to diminish this demand; but, after six hours' hot argument, the Mutware only reduced it by two. This claim was then settled, upon the understanding that we should be allowed to travel through Uhha as far as the Rusugi River without being further mulcted.

November 5th.—Leaving Kawanga early in the morning, and continuing our march over the boundless plains, which were bleached white by the hot equatorial sun, we were marching westward full of pleasant anticipations that we were nearing the end of our troubles, joyfully congratulating ourselves that within five days we should see that which I had come so far from civilisation, and through so many difficulties, to see, and were about passing a cluster of villages, with all the confidence which men possess against whom no one had further claim or a word to say, when I noticed two men darting from a group of natives who were watching us, and running towards the head of the Expedition, with the object, evidently, of preventing further progress.

The caravan stopped, and I walked forward to ascertain the cause from the two natives. I was greeted politely by the two Wahha with the usual "Yambos," and was then asked,

"Why does the white man pass by the village of the King of Uhha without salutation and a gift? Does not the white man know there lives a king in Uhha, to whom the Wangwana and Arabs pay something for right of passage?"

"Why, we paid last night to the chief of Kawanga, who informed us that he was the man deputed by the King of Uhha to collect the toll."

"How much did you pay?"

"Ten doti of good cloth."

"Are you sure?"

"Quite sure. If you ask him, he will tell you so."

"Well," said one of the Wahha, a fine, handsome, intelligent-looking youth, "it is our duty to the King to halt you here until we find out the truth of this.

Will you walk to our village, and rest yourselves under the shade of our trees until we can send messengers to Kawanga?"

"No; the sun is but an hour high, and we have far to travel; but, in order to show you we do not seek to pass through your country without doing that which is right, we will rest where we now stand, and we will send with your messengers two of our soldiers, who will show you the man to whom we paid the cloth."

The messengers departed; but, in the meantime, the handsome youth, who turned out to be the nephew of the King, whispered some order to a lad, who immediately hastened away, with the speed of an antelope, to the cluster of villages which we had just passed. The result of this errand, as we saw in a short time, was the approach of a body of warriors, about fifty in number, headed by a tall, fine-looking man, who was dressed in a crimson robe called Joho, two ends of which were tied in a knot over the left shoulder; a new piece of American sheeting was folded like a turban around his head, and a large curved piece of polished ivory was suspended to his neck. He and his people were all armed with spears, and bows and arrows, and their advance was marked with a deliberation that showed they felt perfect confidence in any issue that might transpire.

We were halted on the eastern side of the Pombwe stream, near the village of Lukomo, in Kimenyi, Uhha.

The gorgeously-dressed chief was a remarkable man in appearance. His face was oval in form, high cheekbones, eyes deeply sunk, a prominent and bold forehead, a fine nose, and a well-cut mouth; he was tall in figure, and perfectly symmetrical.

When near to us, he hailed me with the words, "Yambo, bana?—How do you do, master?" in quite a cordial tone.

I replied cordially also, "Yambo, mutware?—How do you do, chief?"

We, myself and men, interchanged "Yambos" with his warriors; and there was nothing in our first introduction to indicate that the meeting was of a hostile character.

The chief seated himself, his haunches resting on his heels, laying down his bow and arrows by his side; his men did likewise.

I seated myself on a bale, and each of my men sat down on their loads, forming quite a semicircle. The Wahha slightly outnumbered my party; but, while they were only armed with bows and arrows, spears, and knob-sticks, we were armed with rifles, muskets, revolvers, pistols, and hatchets.

All were seated, and deep silence was maintained by the assembly. The great plains around us were as still in this bright noon as if they were deserted of all living creatures. Then the chief spoke:

"I am Mionvu, the great Mutware of Kimenyi, and am next to the King, who lives yonder," pointing to a large village near some naked hills about ten miles to the north. "I have come to talk with the white man. It has always been the custom of the Arabs and the Wangwana to make a present to the King when they pass through his country. Does not the white man mean to pay the King's dues? Why does the white man halt in the road? Why will he not enter the village of Lukomo, where there is food and shade—where we can discuss this thing quietly? Does the white man mean to fight? I know well he is stronger than we are. His men have guns, and the Wahha have but bows and arrows, and spears; but Uhha is large, and our villages are many. Let him look about him everywhere—all is Uhha, and our country extends much further than he can see or walk in a day. The King of Uhha is strong; yet he wishes friendship only with the white man. Will the white man have war or peace?"

A deep murmur of assent followed this speech of Mionvu from his people, and disapprobation, blended with a certain uneasiness, from my men. When about replying, the words of General Sherman, which I heard him utter to the chiefs of the Arapahoes and Cheyennes at North Platte, in 1867, came to my mind; and something of their spirit I embodied in my reply to Mionvu, Mutware of Kimenyi.

"Mionvu, the great Mutware, asks me if I have come for war. When did Mionvu ever hear of white men warring against black men? Mionvu must understand that the white men are different from the black. White men do not leave their country to fight the black people, neither do they come here to buy ivory or slaves. They come to make friends with black people; they come to search for rivers, and lakes, and mountains; they come to discover what countries, what peoples, what rivers, what lakes, what forests, what plains, what mountains and hills are in your country; to know the different animals that are in the land of the black people, that, when they go back, they may tell the white kings, and men, and children, what they have seen and heard in the land so far from them. The white people are different from the Arabs and Wangwana; the white people know everything, and are very strong. When they fight, the Arabs and the Wangwana run away. We have great guns which thunder, and when they shoot the earth trembles; we have guns which carry bullets further than you can see: even with these little things" (pointing to my revolvers) "I could kill ten men quicker than you could count. We are stronger than the Wahha. Mionvu has spoken the truth, yet we do not wish to fight. I could kill Mionvu now, yet I talk to him as to a friend. I wish to be a friend to Mionvu, and to all black people. Will Mionvu say what I can do for him?"

As these words were translated to him—imperfectly, I suppose, but still, intelligibly—the faces of the Wahha showed how well they appreciated them. Once or twice I thought I detected something like fear, but my assertions that I desired peace and friendship with them soon obliterated all such feelings.

Mionvu replied:

"The white man tells me he is friendly. Why does he not come to our village? Why does he stop on the road? The sun is hot. Mionvu will not speak here any more. If the white man is a friend he will come to the village."

"We must stop now. It is noon. You have broken our march. We will go and camp in your village," I said, at the same time rising and pointing to the men to take up their loads.

We were compelled to camp; there was no help for it; the messengers had not returned from Kawanga. Having arrived in his village, Mionvu had cast himself at full length under the scanty shade afforded by a few trees within the boma. About 2 P.M. the messengers returned, saying it was true the chief of Kawanga had taken ten cloths; not, however for the King of Uhha, but for himself!

Mionvu, who evidently was keen-witted, and knew perfectly what he was about, now roused himself, and began to make miniature faggots of thin canes, ten in each faggot, and shortly he presented ten of these small bundles, which together contained one hundred, to me, saying each stick represented a cloth, and the amount of the "honga" required by the King of Uhha was ONE HUNDRED CLOTHS!—nearly two bales!

Recovering from our astonishment, which was almost indescribable, we offered TEN.

"Ten! to the King of Uhha! Impossible. You do not stir from Lukomo until you pay us one hundred!" exclaimed Mionvu, in a significant manner.

I returned no answer, but went to my hut, which Mionvu had cleared for my use, and Bombay, Asmani, Mabruki, and Chowpereh were invited to come to me for consultation. Upon my asking them if we could not fight our way through Uhha, they became terror-stricken, and Bombay, in imploring accents, asked me to think well what I was about to do, because it was useless to enter on a war with the Wahha. "Uhha is all a plain country; we cannot hide anywhere. Every village will rise all about us, and how can forty-five men fight thousands of people? They would kill us all in a few minutes, and how would you ever reach Ujiji if you died? Think of it, my dear master, and do not throw your life away for a few rags of cloth."

"Well, but, Bombay, this is robbery. Shall we submit to be robbed? Shall we give this fellow everything he asks? He might as well ask me for all the cloth, and all my guns, without letting him see that we can fight. I can kill Mionvu and his principal men myself, and you can slay all those howlers out there without much trouble. If Mionvu and his principal were dead, we should not be troubled much, and we could strike south to the Malagarazi, and go west to Ujiji."

"No, no, dear master, don't think of it for a moment. If we went near the Malagarazi we should come across Lokanda-Mira."

"Well, then, we will go north."

"Up that way Uhha extends far; and beyond Uhha are the Watuta."

"Well, then, say what we shall do. We must do something; but we must not be robbed."

"Pay Mionvu what he asks, and let us go away from here. This is the last place we shall have to pay. And in four days we shall be in Ujiji."

"Did Mionvu tell you that this is the last time we would have to pay?"

"He did, indeed."

"What do you say, Asmani? Shall we fight or pay?"

Asmani's face wore the usual smile, but he replied, "I am afraid we must pay. This is positively the last time."

"And you, Chowpereh?"

"Pay, bana; it is better to get along quietly in this country. If we were strong enough they would pay us. Ah, if we had only two hundred guns, how these Wahha would run!"

"What do you say, Mabruki?"

"Ah, master, dear master; it is very hard, and these people are great robbers. I would like to chop their heads off, all; so I would. But you had better pay. This is the last time; and what are one hundred cloths to you?"

"Well, then, Bombay and Asmani, go to Mionvu, and offer him twenty. If he will not take twenty, give him thirty. If he refuses thirty, give him forty; then go up to eighty, slowly. Make plenty of talk; not one doti more. I swear to you I will shoot Mionvu if he demands more than eighty. Go, and remember to be wise!"

I will cut the matter short. At 9 P.M. sixty-four doti were handed over to Mionvu, for the King of Uhha; six doti for himself, and five doti for his sub; altogether seventy-five doti—a bale and a quarter! No sooner had we paid than they began to fight amongst themselves over the booty, and I was in hopes that the factions would proceed to battle, that I might have good excuse for leaving them, and plunging south to the jungle that I believed existed there, by which means, under its friendly cover, we might strike west. But no, it was only a verbose war, which portended nothing more than a noisy clamor.

November 6th.—At dawn we were on the road, very silent and sad. Our stock of cloth was much diminished; we had nine bales left, sufficient to have taken us to the Atlantic Ocean—aided by the beads, which were yet untouched—if we practised economy. If I met many more like Mionvu I had not enough to take me to Ujiji, and, though we were said to be so near, Livingstone seemed to me just as far as ever.

We crossed the Pombwe, and then struck across a slowly-undulating plain rising gradually to mountains on our right, and on our left sinking towards the valley of the Malagarazi, which river was about twenty miles away. Villages rose to our view everywhere. Food was cheap, milk was plentiful, and the butter good.

After a four hours' march, we crossed the Kanengi River, and entered the boma of Kahirigi, inhabited by several Watusi and Wahha. Here, we were told, lived the King of Uhha's brother. This announcement was anything but welcome, and I began to suspect I had fallen into another hornets' nest. We had not rested two hours before two Wangwana entered my tent, who were slaves of Thani bin Abdullah, our dandified friend of Unyanyembe. These men came, on the part of the king's brother, to claim the HONGA! The king's brother demanded thirty doti! Half a bale!

If I only dared publish all the wild, furious thoughts that raged in my mind when this was announced I should be shocked myself at some future calm moment, I dare say. But I was angry. Angry! angry is not the word. I was savage—rendered desperately savage! Able, ready, and willing to fight and die, but not to be halted by a set of miserable naked robbers! Within sight of Ujiji, one may almost say — but four days march from this white man whom I take to be Livingstone, unless there is a duplicate of him travelling about in these countries. Merciful Providence! What shall I do?

We had been told by Mionvu that the honga of Uhha was settled—and now here is another demand from the King's brother! It is the second time the lie has been told, and we have twice been deceived. We shall be deceived no more.

These two men informed us there were five more chiefs, living but two hours from each other, who would exact tribute, or black-mail, like those we had seen. Knowing this much, I felt a certain calm. It was far better to know the worst at once. Five more chiefs with their demands would assuredly ruin us. In view of which, what is to be done? How am I to reach Livingstone, without being beggared?

Dismissing the men, I called Bombay, and told him to assist Asmani in settling the honga—"as cheaply as possible." I then lit my pipe, put on the cap of consideration, and began to think. Within half an hour, I had made a plan, which was to be attempted to be put in execution that very night.

I summoned the two slaves of Thani bin Abdullah, after the honga had been settled to everybody's satisfaction—though the profoundest casuistries and diplomatic arguments failed to reduce it lower than twenty-six doti—and began asking them about the possibility of evading the tribute-taking Wahha ahead.

This rather astonished them at first, and they declared it to be impossible; but, finally, after being pressed, they replied, that one of their number should guide us at midnight, or a little after, into the jungle which grew on the frontiers of Uhha and Uvinza. By keeping a direct west course through this jungle until we came to Ukaranga we might be enabled—we were told—to travel through Uhha without further trouble. If I were willing to pay the guide twelve doti, and if I were able to impose silence on my people while passing through the sleeping village, the guide was positive I could reach Ujiji without paying another doti. It is needless to add, that I accepted the proffered assistance at such a price with joy.

But there was much to be done. Provisions were to be purchased, sufficient to last four days, for the tramp through the jungle, and men were at once sent with cloth to purchase grain at any price. Fortune favoured us, for before 8 P.M. we had enough for six days.

November 7th.—I did not go to sleep at all last night, but a little after midnight, as the moon was beginning to show itself, by gangs of four, the men stole quietly out of the village; and by 3 A.M. the entire

Expedition was outside the boma, and not the slightest alarm had been made. After whistling to the new guide, the Expedition began to move in a southern direction along the right bank of the Kanengi River. After an hour's march in this direction, we struck west, across the grassy plain, and maintained it, despite the obstacles we encountered, which were sore enough to naked men. The bright moon lighted our path: dark clouds now and then cast immense long shadows over the deserted and silent plains, and the moonbeams were almost obscured, and at such times our position seemed awful—

> Till the moon,
> Rising in clouded majesty, at length,
> Apparent queen, unveiled her peerless light,
> And o'er the dark her silver mantle threw.

Bravely toiled the men, without murmur, though their legs were bleeding from the cruel grass. "Ambrosial morn" at last appeared, with all its beautiful and lovely features. Heaven was born anew to us, with comforting omens and cheery promise. The men, though fatigued at the unusual travel, sped forward with quicker pace as daylight broke, until, at 8 A.M., we sighted the swift Rusugi River, when a halt was ordered in a clump of jungle near it, for breakfast and rest. Both banks of the river were alive with buffalo, eland, and antelope, but, though the sight was very tempting, we did not fire, because we dared not. The report of a gun would have alarmed the whole country. I preferred my coffee, and the contentment which my mind experienced at our success.

An hour after we had rested, some natives, carrying salt from the Malagarazi, were seen coming up the right bank of the river. When abreast of our hiding-place they detected us, and dropping their salt-bags, they took to their heels at once, shouting out as they ran, to alarm some villages that appeared about four miles north of us. The men were immediately ordered to take up their loads, and in a few minutes we had crossed the Rusugi, and were making direct for a bamboo jungle that appeared in our front. Almost as soon as we entered, a weak-brained woman raised a series of piercing yells. The men were appalled at this noisy demonstration, which would call down upon our heads the vengeance of the Wahha for evading the tribute, to which they thought themselves entitled. In half an hour we should have hundreds of howling savages about us in the jungle, and probably a general massacre would ensue. The woman screamed fearfully, again and again, for no cause whatever. Some of the men, with the instinct of self-preservation, at once dropped their bales and loads, and vanished into the jungle. The guide came rushing back to me, imploring me to stop her noise. The woman's husband, livid with rage and fear, drew his sword, and asked my permission to cut her head off at once. Had I given the least signal, the woman had paid with her life for her folly. I attempted to hush her cries by putting my hand over her mouth, but she violently wrestled with me, and continued her cries worse than ever. There remained nothing else for me to do but try the virtue of my whip over her shoulders. I asked her to desist after the first blow. "No!" She continued her insane cries with increased force and volume. Again my whip descended on her shoulders. "No, no, no!" Another blow. "Will you hush?" "No, no, no!" louder and louder she cried, and faster and faster I showered the blows for the taming of this shrew. However, seeing I was as determined to flog as she was to cry, she desisted before the tenth blow, and became silent. A cloth was folded over her mouth, and her arms were tied behind her; and in a few moments, the runaways having returned to their duty, the Expedition moved forward again with redoubled pace. On, on, we kept steadily until, at 1 P.M., we sighted the little lake of Musunya, as wearied as possible with our nine hours' march.

Lake Musunya is one of the many circular basins found in this part of Uhha. There was quite a group of them. The more correct term for these lakes would be immense pools. In the Masika season, Lake Musunya must extend to three or four miles in length by two in breadth. It swarms with hippopotami, and its shores abound with noble game.

We were very quiet, as may be imagined, in our bivouac; neither tent nor hut was raised, nor was fire kindled, so that, in case of pursuit, we could move off without delay. I kept my Winchester rifle (the gift of my friend Mr. Morris, and a rare gift it was for such a crisis) with its magazine full, and two hundred cartridges in a bag slung over my shoulders. Each soldier's gun was also ready and loaded, and we retired to sleep our fatigues off with a feeling of perfect security.

November 8th.—Long before dawn appeared, we were on the march, and, as daylight broke, we emerged from the bamboo jungle, and struck across the naked plain of Uhha, once more passing several large pools by the way—far-embracing prospects of undulating country, with here and there a characteristic clump of trees relieving the general nudity of the whole. Hour after hour we toiled on, across the rolling land waves, the sun shining with all his wonted African fervor, but with its heat slightly tempered by the welcome breezes, which came laden with the fragrance of young grass, and perfume of strange flowers of various hues, that flecked the otherwise pale-green sheet which extended so far around us.

We arrived at the Rugufu River—not the Ukawendi Rugufu, but the northern stream of that name, a tributary of the Malagarazi. It was a broad shallow stream, and sluggish, with an almost imperceptible flow south-west. While we halted in the deep shade afforded by a dense clump of jungle, close to the right bank, resting awhile before continuing our journey, I distinctly heard a sound as of distant thunder in the west. Upon asking if it were thunder, I was told it was Kabogo.

"Kabogo? what is that?"

"It is a great mountain on the other side of the Tanganika, full of deep holes, into which the water rolls; and when there is wind on the Tanganika, there is a sound like mvuha (thunder). Many boats have been lost there, and it is a custom with Arabs and natives to throw cloth—Merikani and Kaniki—and especially white (Merikani) beads, to appease the mulungu (god) of the lake. Those who throw beads generally get past without trouble, but those who do not throw beads into the lake get lost, and are drowned. Oh, it is a dreadful place!" This story was told me by the ever-smiling guide Asmani, and was corroborated by other former mariners of the lake whom I had with me.

At the least, this place where we halted for dinner, on the banks of the Rugufu River, is eighteen and a half hours, or forty-six miles, from Ujiji; and, as Kabogo is said to be near Uguhha, it must be over sixty miles from Ujiji; therefore the sound of the thundering surf, which is said to roll into the caves of Kabogo, was heard by us at a distance of over one hundred miles away from them.

Continuing our journey for three hours longer, through thin forests, over extensive beds of primitive rock, among fields of large boulders thickly strewn about, passing by numerous herds of buffalo, giraffe, and zebra, over a quaking quagmire which resembled peat, we arrived at the small stream of Sunuzzi, to a camping place only a mile removed from a large settlement of Wahha. But we were buried in the depths of a great forest—no road was in the vicinity, no noise was made, deep silence was preserved; nor were fires lit. We might therefore rest tranquilly secure, certain that we should not be disturbed. To-morrow morning the kirangozi has promised we shall be out of Uhha, and if we travel on to Niamtaga, in Ukaranga, the same day, the next day would see us in Ujiji. Patience, my soul! A few hours more, then the end of all this will be known! I shall be face to face with that white man with the white hairs on his face, whoever he is!

November 9th.—Two hours before dawn we left our camp on the Sunuzzi River, and struck through the forest in a north-by-west direction, having muzzled our goats previously, lest, by their bleating, they might betray us. This was a mistake which might have ended tragically, for just as the eastern sky began to assume a pale greyish tint, we emerged from the jungle on the high road. The guide thought we had passed Uhha, and set up a shout which was echoed by every member of the caravan, and marched onward with new vigor and increased energy, when plump we came to the outskirts of a village, the inhabitants of which were beginning to stir. Silence was called for at once, and the Expedition halted immediately. I walked forward to the front to advise with the guide. He did not know what to do. There was no time to consider, so I ordered the goats to be slaughtered and left on the road, and the guide to push on boldly through the village. The chickens also had their throats cut; after which the Expedition resumed the march quickly and silently, led by the guide, who had orders to plunge into the jungle south of the road. I staid until the last man had disappeared; then, after preparing my Winchester, brought up the rear, followed by my gun-bearers with their stock of ammunition. As we were about disappearing beyond the last hut, a man darted out of his hut, and uttered an exclamation of alarm, and loud voices were heard as if in dispute. But in a short time we were in the depths of the jungle, hurrying away from the road in a southern direction, and edging slightly westward. Once I thought we were pursued, and I halted behind a tree to check our foes if they persisted in following us; but a few minutes proved to me that we were not pursued. After half-an-hour's march we again turned our faces westward. It was broad daylight now, and our eyes were delighted with most picturesque and sequestered little valleys, where wild fruit-trees grew, and rare flowers blossomed, and tiny brooks tumbled over polished pebbles—where all was bright and beautiful—until, finally, wading through one pretty pure streamlet, whose soft murmurs we took for a gentle welcome, we passed the boundary of wicked Uhha, and had entered Ukaranga!—an event that was hailed with extravagant shouts of joy.

Presently we found the smooth road, and we trod gaily with elastic steps, with limbs quickened for the march which we all knew to be drawing near its end. What cared we now for the difficulties we had encountered—for the rough and cruel forests, for the thorny thickets and hurtful grass, for the jangle of all savagedom, of which we had been the joyless audience! To-morrow! Ay, the great day draws nigh, and we may well laugh and sing while in this triumphant mood. We have been sorely tried; we have been angry with each other when vexed by troubles, but we forget all these now, and there is no face but is radiant with the happiness we have all deserved.

We made a short halt at noon, for rest and refreshment. I was shown the hills from which the Tanganika could be seen, which bounded the valley of the Liuche on the east. I could not contain myself at the sight of them. Even with this short halt I was restless and unsatisfied. We resumed the march again. I spurred my men forward with the promise that to-morrow should see their reward. Fish and beer should be given them, as much as they could eat and drink.

We were in sight of the villages of the Wakaranga; the people caught sight of us, and manifested considerable excitement. I sent men ahead to reassure them, and they came forward to greet us. This was so new and welcome to us, so different from the turbulent Wavinza and the black-mailers of Uhha, that we were melted. But we had no time to loiter by the way to indulge our joy. I was impelled onward by my almost uncontrollable feelings. I wished to resolve my doubts and fears. Was HE still there? Had HE heard of my coming? Would HE fly?

How beautiful Ukaranga appears! The green hills are crowned by clusters of straw-thatched cones. The hills rise and fall; here denuded and cultivated, there in pasturage, here timbered, yonder swarming with huts. The country has somewhat the aspect of Maryland.

We cross the Mkuti, a glorious little river! We ascend the opposite bank, and stride through the forest like men who have done a deed of which they may be proud. We have already travelled nine hours, and the sun is sinking rapidly towards the west; yet, apparently, we are not fatigued.

We reach the outskirts of Niamtaga, and we hear drums beat. The people are flying into the woods; they desert their villages, for they take us to be Ruga-Ruga—the forest thieves of Mirambo, who, after conquering the Arabs of Unyanyembe, are coming to fight the Arabs of Ujiji. Even the King flies from his village, and every man, woman, and child, terror-stricken, follows him. We enter into it and quietly take possession, and my tent is set. Finally, the word is bruited about that we are Wangwana, from Unyanyembe.

"Well, then, is Mirambo dead?" they ask.

"No," we answer.

"Well, how did you come to Ukaranga?"

"By way of Ukonongo, Ukawendi, and Uhha."

"Oh—hi-le!" Then they laugh heartily at their fright, and begin to make excuses. The King is introduced to me, and he says he had only gone to the woods in order to attack us again—he meant to have come back and killed us all, if we had been Ruga-Ruga. But then we know the poor King was terribly frightened, and would never have dared to return, had we been Ruga-Ruga—not he. We are not, however, in a mood to quarrel with him about an idiomatic phrase peculiar to him, but rather take him by the hand and shake it well, and say we are so very glad to see him. And he shares in our pleasure, and immediately three of the fattest sheep, pots of beer, flour, and honey are brought to us as a gift, and I make him happier still with two of the finest cloths I have in my bales; and thus a friendly pact is entered into between us.

While I write my diary of this day's proceedings, I tell Selim to lay out my new flannel suit, to oil my boots, to chalk my helmet, and fold a new puggaree around it, that I may make as presentable an appearance as possible before the white man with the grey beard, and before the Arabs of Ujiji; for the clothes I have worn through jungle and forest are in tatters. Good-night; only let one day come again, and we shall see what we shall see.

November 10*th.* *Friday.*—The 236th day from Bagamoyo, and the 51st day from Unyanyembe. General direction to Ujiji, west-by-south. Time of march, six hours.

It is a happy, glorious morning. The air is fresh and cool. The sky lovingly smiles on the earth and her children. The deep woods are crowned in bright green leafage; the water of the Mkuti, rushing under the emerald shade afforded by the bearded banks, seems to challenge us for the race to Ujiji, with its continuous brawl.

We are all outside the village cane fence, every man of us looking as spruce, as neat, and happy as when we embarked on the dhows at Zanzibar, which seems to us to have been ages ago—we have witnessed and experienced so much.

"Forward!"

"Ay Wallah, ay Wallah, bana yango!" and the light-hearted braves stride away at a rate which must soon bring us within view of Ujiji. We ascend a hill overgrown with bamboo, descend into a ravine through which dashes an impetuous little torrent, ascend another short hill, then, along a smooth footpath running across the slope of a long ridge, we push on as only eager, light-hearted men can do.

In two hours I am warned to prepare for a view of the Tanganika, for, from the top of a steep mountain the kirangozi says I can see it. I almost vent the feelings of my heart in cries. But wait, we must behold it first. And we press forward and up the hill breathlessly, lest the grand scene hasten away. We are at last on the summit. Ah! not yet can it be seen. A little further on—just yonder, oh! there it is—a silvery gleam. I merely catch sight of it between the trees, and—but here it is at last! True—THE TANGANIKA! and there are the blue-black mountains of Ugoma and Ukaramba. An immense broad sheet, a burnished bed of silver—lucid canopy of blue above—lofty mountains are its valances, palm forests form its fringes! The Tanganika!—Hurrah! and the men respond to the exultant cry of the Anglo-Saxon with the lungs of Stentors, and the great forests and the hills seem to share in our triumph.

"Was this the place where Burton and Speke stood, Bombay, when they saw the lake first?"

"I don't remember, master; it was somewhere about here, I think."

"Poor fellows! The one was half-paralyzed, the other half-blind," said Sir Roderick Murchison, when he described Burton and Speke's arrival in view of the Tanganika.

And I? Well, I am so happy that, were I quite paralyzed and blinded, I think that at this supreme moment I could take up my bed and walk, and all blindness would cease at once. Fortunately, however, I am quite well; I have not suffered a day's sickness since the day I left Unyanyembe. How much would Shaw be willing to give to be in my place now? Who is happiest—he, revelling in the luxuries of Unyanyembe, or I, standing on the summit of this mountain, looking down with glad eyes and proud heart on the Tanganika?

We are descending the western slope of the mountain, with the valley of the Liuche before us. Something like an hour before noon we have gained the thick matete brake, which grows on both banks of the river; we wade through the clear stream, arrive on the other side, emerge out of the brake, and the gardens of the Wajiji are around us—a perfect marvel of vegetable wealth. Details escape my hasty and partial observation. I am almost overpowered with my own emotions. I notice the graceful palms, neat plots, green with vegetable plants, and small villages surrounded with frail fences of the matete-cane.

We push on rapidly, lest the news of our coming might reach the people of Bunder Ujiji before we come in sight, and are ready for them. We halt at a little brook, then ascend the long slope of a naked ridge, the very last of the myriads we have crossed. This alone prevents us from seeing the lake in all its vastness. We arrive at the summit, travel across and arrive at its western rim, and—pause, reader—the port of Ujiji is below us, embowered in the palms, only five hundred yards from us! At this grand moment we do not think of the hundreds of miles we have marched, of the hundreds of hills that we have ascended and descended, of the many forests we have traversed, of the jungles and thickets that annoyed us, of the fervid salt plains that blistered our feet, of the hot suns that scorched us, nor of the dangers and difficulties, now happily surmounted. At last the sublime hour has arrived!—our dreams, our hopes, and anticipations are now about to be realized! Our hearts and our feelings are with our eyes, as we peer into the palms and try to make out in which hut or house lives the white man with the grey beard we heard about on the Malagarazi.

"Unfurl the flags, and load your guns!"

"Ay Wallah, ay Wallah, bana!" respond the men, eagerly.

"One, two, three,—fire!"

A volley from nearly fifty guns roars like a salute from a battery of artillery: we shall note its effect presently on the peaceful-looking village below.

"Now, kirangozi, hold the white man's flag up high, and let the Zanzibar flag bring up the rear. And you men keep close together, and keep firing until we halt in the market-place, or before the white man's house. You have said to me often that you could smell the fish of the Tanganika—I can smell the fish of the Tanganika now. There are fish, and beer, and a long rest waiting for you. MARCH!"

Before we had gone a hundred yards our repeated volleys had the effect desired. We had awakened Ujiji to the knowledge that a caravan was coming, and the people were witnessed rushing up in hundreds to meet us. The mere sight of the flags informed every one immediately that we were a caravan, but the American flag borne aloft by gigantic Asmani, whose face was one vast smile on this day, rather staggered them at first. However, many of the people who now approached us remembered the flag. They had seen it float above the American Consulate, and from the mast-head of many a ship in the harbor of Zanzibar, and they were soon heard welcoming the beautiful flag with cries of "Bindera Kisungu!"—a white man's flag! "Bindera Merikani!"—the American flag!

Then we were surrounded by them: by Wajiji, Wanyamwezi, Wangwana, Warundi, Waguhha, Wamanyuema and Arabs, and were almost deafened with the shouts of "Yambo, yambo, bana! Yambo, bana! Yambo, bana!" To all and each of my men the welcome was given.

We were now about three hundred yards from the village of Ujiji, and the crowds are dense about me. Suddenly I hear a voice on my right say,

"Good morning, sir!"

Startled at hearing this greeting in the midst of such a crowd of black people, I turn sharply around in search of the man, and see him at my side, with the blackest of faces, but animated and joyous—a man dressed in a long white shirt, with a turban of American sheeting around his woolly head, and I ask:

"Who the mischief are you?"

"I am Susi, the servant of Dr. Livingstone," said he, smiling, and showing a gleaming row of teeth.

"What! Is Dr. Livingstone here?"

"Yes, sir."

"In this village?"

"Yes, sir."

"Are you sure?"

"Sure, sure, sir. Why, I leave him just now."

"Good morning, sir," said another voice.

"Hallo," said I, "is this another one?"

"Yes, sir."

"Well, what is your name?"

"My name is Chumah, sir."

"What! are you Chumah, the friend of Wekotani?"

"Yes, sir."

"And is the Doctor well?"

"Not very well, sir."

"Where has he been so long?"

"In Manyuema."

"Now, you Susi, run, and tell the Doctor I am coming."

"Yes, sir," and off he darted like a madman.

But by this time we were within two hundred yards of the village, and the multitude was getting denser, and almost preventing our march. Flags and streamers were out; Arabs and Wangwana were pushing their way through the natives in order to greet us, for according to their account, we belonged to them. But the great wonder of all was, "How did you come from Unyanyembe?"

Soon Susi came running back, and asked me my name; he had told the Doctor that I was coming, but the Doctor was too surprised to believe him, and, when the Doctor asked him my name, Susi was rather staggered.

But, during Susi's absence, the news had been conveyed to the Doctor that it was surely a white man that was coming, whose guns were firing and whose flag could be seen; and the great Arab magnates of Ujiji—Mohammed bin Sali, Sayd bin Majid, Abid bin Suliman, Mohammed bin Gharib, and others—had gathered together before the Doctor's house, and the Doctor had come out from his veranda to discuss the matter and await my arrival.

In the meantime, the head of the Expedition had halted, and the kirangozi was out of the ranks, holding his flag aloft, and Selim said to me, "I see the Doctor, sir. Oh, what an old man! He has got a white beard." And I——what would I not have given for a bit of friendly wilderness, where, unseen, I might vent my joy in some mad freak, such as idiotically biting my hand, turning a somersault, or slashing at trees, in order to allay those exciting feelings that were well-nigh uncontrollable. My heart beats fast, but I must not let my face betray my emotions, lest it shall detract from the dignity of a white man appearing under such extraordinary circumstances.

So I did that which I thought was most dignified. I pushed back the crowds, and, passing from the rear, walked down a living avenue of people, until I came in front of the semicircle of Arabs, in the front of which stood the white man with the grey beard. As I advanced slowly towards him I noticed he was pale, looked wearied, had a grey beard, wore a bluish cap with a faded gold band round it, had on a red-sleeved waistcoat, and a pair of grey tweed trousers. I would have run to him, only I was a coward in the presence of such a mob—would have embraced him, only, he being an Englishman, I did not know how he would receive me;* so I did what cowardice and false pride suggested was the best thing—walked deliberately to him, took off my hat, and said:

---

* "This Englishman, as I afterwards found, was a military man returning to his country from India, and crossing the Desert at this part in order to go through Palestine. As for me, I had come pretty straight from England, and so here we met in the wilderness at about half-way from our respective starting-points. As we approached each other, it became with me a question whether we should speak; I thought it likely that the stranger would accost me, and in the event of his doing so, I was quite ready to be as sociable and chatty as I could be, according to my nature; but still I could not think of anything particular that I had to say to him; of course among civilized people, the not having anything to say is no excuse at all

"Dr. Livingstone, I presume?"

"YES," said he, with a kind smile, lifting his cap slightly.

I replace my hat on my head, and he puts on his cap, and we both grasp hands, and I then say aloud:

"I thank God, Doctor, I have been permitted to see you."

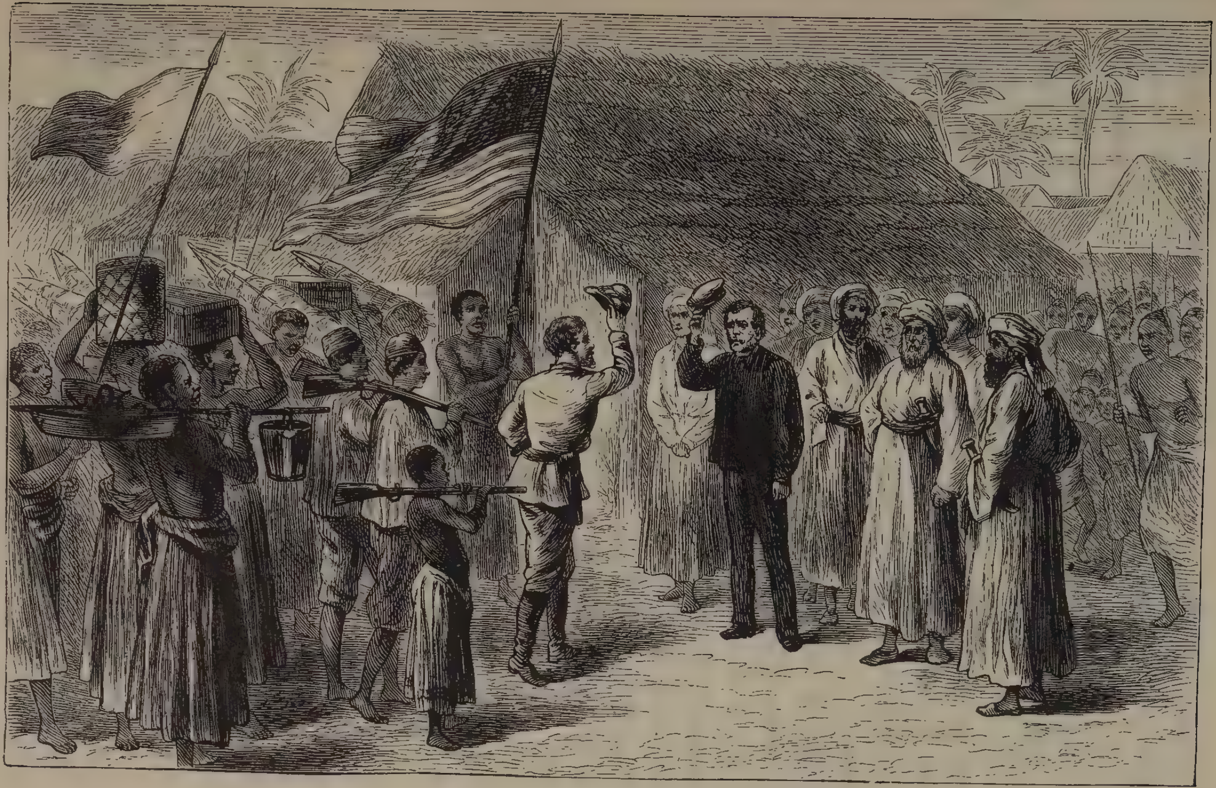
He answered, "I feel thankful that I am here to welcome you."

I turn to the Arabs, take off my hat to them in response to the saluting chorus of "Yambos" I receive, and the Doctor introduces them to me by name. Then, oblivious of the crowds, oblivious of the men who shared with me my dangers, we—Livingstone and I—turn our faces towards his tembe. He points to the veranda, or, rather, mud platform, under the broad overhanging eaves; he points to his own particular seat, which I see his age and experience in Africa has suggested, namely, a straw mat, with a goatskin over it, and another skin nailed against the wall to protect his back from contact with the cold mud. I protest against taking this seat, which so much more befits him than me, but the Doctor will not yield: I must take it.

We are seated—the Doctor and I—with our backs to the wall. The Arabs take seats on our left. More than a thousand natives are in our front, filling the whole square densely, indulging their curiosity, and discussing

---

for not speaking, but I was shy, and indolent, and I felt no great wish to stop, and talk like a morning visitor, in the midst of those broad solitudes. The traveller perhaps felt as I did, for except that we lifted our hands to our caps, and waved our arms in courtesy, we passed each other as if we had passed in Bond Street."—Kinglake's *Eöthen*.



" DR. LIVINGSTONE, I PRESUME."

the fact of two white men meeting at Ujiji—one just come from Manyuema, in the west, the other from Unyanyembe, in the east.

Conversation began. What about? I declare I have forgotten. Oh! we mutually asked questions of one another, such as:

"How did you come here?" and "Where have you been all this long time?—the world has believed you to be dead." Yes, that was the way it began; but whatever the Doctor informed me, and that which I communicated to him, I cannot correctly report, for I found myself gazing at him, conning the wonderful man at whose side I now sat in Central Africa. Every hair of his head and beard, every wrinkle of his face, the wanness of his features, and the slightly wearied look he wore, were all imparting intelligence to me—the knowledge I craved for so much ever since I heard the words, "Take what you want, but find Livingstone." What I saw was deeply interesting intelligence to me, and unvarnished truth. I was listening and reading at the same time. What did these dumb witnesses relate to me?

Oh, reader, had you been at my side on this day in Ujiji, how eloquently could be told the nature of this man's work! Had you been there but to see and hear! His lips gave me the details; lips that never lie. I cannot repeat what he said; I was too much engrossed to take my note-book out, and begin to stenograph his story. He had so much to say that he began at the end, seemingly oblivious of the fact that five or six years had to be accounted for. But his account was oozing out; it was growing fast into grand proportions—into a most marvellous history of deeds.

The Arabs rose up, with a delicacy I approved, as if they intuitively knew that we ought to be left to ourselves. I sent Bombay with them, to give them the news they also wanted so much to know about the affairs at Unyanyembe. Sayd bin Majid was the father of the gallant young man whom I saw at Masange, and who fought with me at Zimbizo, and who soon afterwards was killed by Mirambo's Ruga-Ruga in the forest of Wilyankuru; and, knowing that I had been there, he earnestly desired to hear the tale of the fight; but they had all friends at Unyanyembe, and it was but natural that they should be anxious to hear of what concerned them.

After giving orders to Bombay and Asmani for the provisioning of the men of the Expedition, I called "Kaif-Halek," or "How-do-ye-do," and introduced him to Dr. Livingstone as one of the soldiers in charge of certain goods left at Unyanyembe, whom I had compelled to accompany me to Ujiji, that he might deliver in person to his master the letter-bag he had been entrusted with by Dr. Kirk. This was that famous letter-bag marked "Nov. 1st, 1870," which was now delivered into the Doctor's hands 365 days after it left Zanzibar! How long, I wonder, had it remained at Unyanyembe had I not been despatched into Central Africa in search of the great traveller?

The Doctor kept the letter-bag on his knee, then, presently, opened it, looked at the letters contained there, and read one or two of his children's letters, his face in the meanwhile lighting up.

He asked me to tell him the news. "No, Doctor," said I, "read your letters first, which I am sure you must be impatient to read."

"Ah," said he, "I have waited years for letters, and I have been taught patience. I can surely afford to wait a few hours longer. No, tell me the general news: how is the world getting along?"

"You probably know much already. Do you know that the Suez Canal is a fact—is opened, and a regular trade carried on between Europe and India through it?"

"I did not hear about the opening of it. Well, that is grand news! What else?"

Shortly I found myself enacting the part of an annual periodical to him. There was no need of exaggeration—of any penny-a-line news, or of any sensationalism. The world had witnessed and experienced much the last few years. The Pacific Railroad had been completed; Grant had been elected President of the United States; Egypt had been flooded with savans; the Cretan rebellion had terminated; a Spanish revolution had driven Isabella from the throne of Spain, and a Regent had been appointed; General Prim was assassinated; a Castelar had electrified Europe with his advanced ideas upon the liberty of worship; Prussia had humbled Denmark, and annexed Schleswig-Holstein, and her armies were now around Paris; the "Man of Destiny" was a prisoner at Wilhelmshöhe; the Queen of Fashion and the Empress of the French was a fugitive; and the child born in the purple had lost for ever the Imperial crown intended for his head; the Napoleon dynasty was extinguished by the Prussians, Bismarck and Von Moltke; and France, the proud empire, was humbled to the dust.

What could a man have exaggerated of these facts? What a budget of news it was to one who had emerged from the depths of the primeval forests of Manyuema! The reflection of the dazzling light of civilisation was cast on him while Livingstone was thus listening in wonder to one of the most exciting pages of history ever repeated. How the puny deeds of barbarism paled before these! Who could tell under what new phases of uneasy life Europe was laboring even then, while we, two of her lonely children, rehearsed the tale of her late woes and glories? More worthily, perhaps, had the tongue of a lyric Demodocus recounted them; but, in the absence of the poet, the newspaper correspondent performed his part as well and truthfully as he could.

Not long after the Arabs had departed, a dishful of hot hashed-meat cakes was sent to us by Sayd bin Majid, and a curried chicken was received from Mohammed bin Sali, and Moeni Kheri sent a dishful of stewed goat-meat and rice; and thus presents of food came in succession, and as fast as they were brought we set to. I had a healthy, stubborn digestion—the exercise I had taken had put it in prime order; but Livingstone—he had been complaining that he had no appetite, that his stomach refused everything but a cup of tea now and then—he ate also—ate like a vigorous, hungry man; and, as he vied with me in demolishing the pancakes, he kept repeating, "You have brought me new life. You have brought me new life."

"Oh, by George!" I said, "I have forgotten something. Hasten, Selim, and bring that bottle; you know which; and bring me the silver goblets. I brought this bottle on purpose for this event, which I hoped would come to pass, though often it seemed useless to expect it."

Selim knew where the bottle was, and he soon returned with it — a bottle of Sillery champagne; and, handing the Doctor a silver goblet brimful of the exhilarating wine, and pouring a small quantity into my own, I said, "Dr. Livingstone, to your very good health, sir."

"And to yours," he responded.

And the champagne I had treasured for this happy meeting was drunk with hearty good wishes to each other.

But we kept on talking and talking, and prepared food was being brought to us all that afternoon; and we kept on eating every time it was brought, until I had eaten even to repletion, and the Doctor was obliged to confess that he had eaten enough. Still, Halimah, the female cook of the Doctor's establishment, was in a state of the greatest excitement. She had been protruding her head out of the cookhouse to make sure that there were really two white men sitting down in the veranda, when there used to be only one, who would not, because he could not, eat anything; and she had been considerably exercised in her mind about this fact. She was afraid the Doctor did not properly appreciate her culinary abilities; but now she was amazed at the extraordinary quantity of food eaten, and she was in a state of delightful excitement. We could hear her tongue rolling off a tremendous volume of clatter to the wondering crowds who halted before the kitchen to hear the current of news with which she edified them. Poor, faithful soul! While we listened to the noise of her furious gossip, the Doctor related her faithful services, and the terrible anxiety she evinced when the guns first announced the arrival of another white man in Ujiji; how she had been flying about in a state of the utmost excitement, from the kitchen into his presence, and out again into the square, asking all sorts of questions; how she was in despair at the scantiness of the general larder and treasury of the strange household; how she was anxious to make up for their poverty by a grand appearance—to make up a sort of Barmecide feast to welcome the white man. "Why," said she, "is he not one of us? Does he not bring plenty of cloth and beads? Talk about the Arabs! Who are they that they should be compared to white men? Arabs, indeed!"

The Doctor and I conversed upon many things, especially upon his own immediate troubles, and his disappointment, upon his arrival in Ujiji, when told that all his goods had been sold, and he was reduced to poverty. He had but twenty cloths or so left of the stock he had deposited with the man called Sherif, the half-caste drunken tailor, who was sent by the British Consul in charge of the goods. Besides which he had been suffering from an attack of dysentery, and his condition was most deplorable. He was but little improved on this day, though he had eaten well, and already began to feel stronger and better.

This day, like all others, though big with happiness to me, at last was fading away. We, sitting with our faces looking to the east, as Livingstone had been sitting for days preceding my arrival, noted the dark shadows which crept up above the grove of palms beyond the village, and above the rampart of mountains which we had crossed that day, now looming through the fast approaching darkness; and we listened, with our hearts full of gratitude to the great Giver of Good and Dispenser of all Happiness, to the sonorous thunder of the surf of the Tanganika, and to the chorus which the night insects sang. Hours passed, and we were still sitting there with our minds busy upon the day's remarkable events, when I remembered that the traveller had not yet read his letters.

"Doctor," I said, "you had better read your letters. I will not keep you up any longer."

"Yes," he answered, "it is getting late; and I will go and read my friends' letters. Good-night, and God bless you."

"Good-night, my dear Doctor; and let me hope that your news will be such as you desire."

And now, dear reader, having related succinctly "How I found Livingstone," I bid you also "Good-night."

OUR HOUSE IN UJIJI.

CHAPTER XII.

INTERCOURSE WITH LIVINGSTONE AT UJIJI.

"If there is love between us, inconceivably delicious, and profitable will our intercourse be; if not, your time is lost, and you will only annoy me. I shall seem to you stupid, and the reputation I have false. All my good is magnetic, and I educate not by lessons, but by going about my business."—Emerson's *Representative Men.*

I WOKE up early next morning with a sudden start. The room was strange! It was a' house, and not my tent! Ah, yes! I recollected I had discovered Livingstone, and I was in his house. I listened, that the knowledge dawning on me might be confirmed by the sound of his voice. I heard nothing but the sullen roar of the surf.

I lay quietly in bed. Bed! Yes, it was a primitive four-poster, with the leaves of the palm-tree spread upon it instead of down, and horsehair and my bearskin spread over this serving me in place of linen. I began to put myself under a rigid mental cross-examination, and to an analysation of my position.

"What was I sent for?"

"To find Livingstone."

"Have you found him?"

"Yes, of course; am I not in his house? Whose compass is that hanging on a peg there? Whose clothes, whose boots, are those? Who reads those newspapers, those 'Saturday Reviews' and numbers of 'Punch' lying on the floor?"

"Well, what are you going to do now?"

"I shall tell him this morning who sent me, and what brought me here. I will then ask him to write a letter to Mr. Bennett, and to give what news he can spare. I did not come here to rob him of his news. Sufficient for me is it that I have found him. It is a complete success so far. But it will be a greater one if he gives me letters for Mr. Bennett, and an acknowledgment that he has seen me."

"Do you think he will do so?"

"Why not? I have come here to do him a service. He has no goods. I have. He has no men with him. I have. If I do a friendly part by him, will he not do a friendly part by me? What says the poet?—

> Nor hope to find
> A friend, but who has found a friend in thee.
> All like the purchase; few the price will pay:
> And this makes friends such *wonders* here below.

I have paid the purchase, by coming so far to do him a service. But I think, from what I have seen of him last night, that he is not such a niggard and misanthrope as I was told he was by a man who said he knew him. He exhibited considerable emotion, despite the monosyllabic greeting, when he shook my hand. Neither did he run away, as I was told he would; though perhaps that was because he had no time. Still, if he was a man to feel annoyance at any person coming after him, he would not have received me as he did, nor would he ask me to live with him, but he would have surlily refused to see me, and told me to mind my own business, and he would mind his. Neither does he mind my nationality; for 'here,' said he, 'Americans and Englishmen are the same people. We speak the same language and have the same ideas.' Just so, Doctor; I agree with you. Here, at least, Americans and Englishmen shall be brothers, and whatever I can do for you, you may command me as freely as if I were flesh of your flesh, bone of your bone."

I dressed myself quietly, intending to take a stroll along the Tanganika before the Doctor should rise; opened the door, which creaked horribly on its hinges, and walked out to the veranda.

"Halloa, Doctor!—you up already? I hope you have slept well?"

"Good-morning, Mr. Stanley! I am glad to see you. Hope you rested well. I sat up late reading my letters. You have brought me good and bad news. But sit down." He made a place for me by his side. "Yes, many of my friends are dead. My eldest son has met with a sad accident—that is, my boy Tom; my second son, Oswald, is at college studying medicine, and is doing well, I am told. Agnes, my eldest daughter, has been enjoying herself in a yacht, with 'Sir Paraffine' Young and his family. Sir Roderick, also, is well, and expresses a hope that he will soon see me. You have brought me quite a budget."

The man was not an apparition, then, and yesterday's scenes were not the result of a dream! and I gazed on him intently, for thus I was assured he had not run away, which was the great fear that constantly haunted me as I was journeying to Ujiji.

"Now, Doctor," said I, "you are, probably, wondering why I came here?"

"It is true," said he; "I have been wondering. I thought you, at first, an emissary of the French Government, in the place of Lieutenant Le Saint, who died a few miles above Gondokoro. I heard you had boats, plenty of men, and stores, and I really believed you were some French officer, until I saw the American flag; and, to tell you the truth, I was rather glad it was so, because I could not have talked to him in French; and if he did not know English, we had been a pretty pair of white men in Ujiji! I did not like to ask you yesterday, because it was none of my business."

"Well," said I, laughing, "for your sake I am glad that I am an American, and not a Frenchman, and that we can understand each other perfectly without an interpreter. I see that the Arabs are wondering that you, an Englishman, and I, an American, understand each other. We must take care not to tell them that the English and Americans have fought, and that there are 'Alabama' claims left unsettled, and that we have such people as Fenians in America, who hate you. But, seriously, Doctor—now don't be frightened when I tell you that I have come after—YOU!"

"After me?"

"Yes."

"How?"

"Well. You have heard of the 'New York Herald?'"

"Oh—who has not heard of that newspaper?"

"Sh-sh! Without his father's knowledge or consent, Mr. James Gordon Bennett, son of Mr. James Gordon Bennett, the proprietor of the 'Herald,' has commissioned me to find you—to get whatever news of your discoveries you like to give—and to assist you, if I can, with means."

"Young Mr. Bennett told you to come after me, to find me out, and help me! It is no wonder, then, you praised Mr. Bennett so much last night."

"I know him—I am proud to say—to be just what I say he is. He is an ardent, generous, and true man."

"Well, indeed! I am very much obliged to him; and it makes me feel proud to think that you Americans think so much of me. You have just come in the proper time; for I was beginning to think that I should have to beg from the Arabs. Even they are in want of cloth, and there are but few beads in Ujiji. That fellow Sherif has robbed me of all. I wish I could embody my thanks to Mr. Bennett in suitable words; but if I fail to do so, do not, I beg of you, believe me the less grateful."

"And now, Doctor, having disposed of this little affair, Ferajji shall bring breakfast; if you have no objection."

"You have given me an appetite," he said. "Halimah is my cook, but she never can tell the difference between tea and coffee."

Ferajji, the cook, was ready as usual with excellent tea, and a dish of smoking cakes; "dampers," as the Doctor called them. I never did care much for this kind of a cake fried in a pan, but they were necessary to the Doctor, who had nearly lost all his teeth from the hard fare of Lunda. He had been compelled to subsist on green ears of Indian corn; there was no meat in that district; and the effort to gnaw at the corn ears had loosened all his teeth. I preferred the corn scones of Virginia, which, to my mind, were the nearest approach to palatable bread obtainable in Central Africa.

The Doctor said he had thought me a most luxurious and rich man, when he saw my great bath-tub carried on the shoulders of one of my men; but he thought me still more luxurious this morning, when my knives and forks, and plates, and cups, saucers, silver spoons, and silver tea-pot were brought forth shining and bright, spread on a rich Persian carpet, and observed that I was well attended to by my yellow and ebon Mercuries.

This was the beginning of our life at Ujiji. I knew him not as a friend before my arrival. He was only an object to me—a great item for a daily newspaper, as much as other subjects in which the voracious news-loving public delight in. I had gone over battlefields, witnessed revolutions, civil wars, rebellions, émeutes and massacres; stood close to the condemned murderer to record his last struggles and last sighs; but never had I been called to record anything that moved me so much as this man's woes and sufferings, his privations and disappointments, which now were poured into my ear. Verily did I begin to perceive that "the Gods above do with just eyes survey the affairs of men." I began to recognize the hand of an overruling and kindly Providence.

These are facts worthy for reflection. I was commissioned for the duty of discovering Livingstone sometime in October, 1869. Mr. Bennett was ready with the money, and I was ready for the journey. But, observe, reader, that I did not proceed directly upon the search mission. I had many tasks to fulfil before proceeding with it, and many thousand miles to travel over. Supposing that I had gone direct to Zanzibar from Paris, seven or eight months afterwards, perhaps, I should have found myself at Ujiji, but Livingstone would not have been found there then; he was on the Lualaba; and I should have had to follow him on his devious tracks through the primeval forests of Manyuema, and up along the crooked course of the Lualaba for hundreds of miles. The time taken by me in travelling up the Nile, back to Jerusalem, then to Constantinople, Southern Russia, the Caucasus, and Persia, was employed by Livingstone in fruitful discoveries west of the Tanganika. Again, consider that I arrived at Unyanyembe in the latter part of June, and that owing to a war I was delayed three months at Unyanyembe, leading a fretful, peevish and impatient life. But while I was thus fretting myself, and being delayed by a series of accidents, Livingstone was being forced back to Ujiji in the same month. It took him from June to October to march to Ujiji. Now, in September, I broke loose from the thraldom which accident had imposed on me, and hurried southward to Ukonongo, then westward to Kawendi, then northward to Uvinza, then westward to Ujiji, only about three weeks after the Doctor's arrival, to find him resting under the veranda of his house with his face turned eastward, the direction from which I was coming. Had I gone direct from Paris on the search I might have lost him; had I been enabled to have gone direct to Ujiji from Unyanyembe I might have lost him.

The days came and went peacefully and happily, under the palms of Ujiji. My companion was improving in health and spirits. Life had been brought back to him; his fading vitality was restored, his enthusiasm for his work was growing up again into a height that was compelling him to desire to be up and doing. But what could he do, with five men and fifteen or twenty cloths?

"Have you seen the northern head of the Tanganika, Doctor?" I asked one day.

"No; I did try to go there, but the Wajiji were doing their best to fleece me, as they did both Burton and Speke, and I had not a great deal of cloth. If I had gone to the head of the Tanganika, I could not have gone to Manyuema. The central line of drainage was the most important, and that is the Lualaba. Before this line the question whether there is a connection between the Tanganika and the Albert N'Yanza sinks into insignificance. The great line of drainage is the river flowing from latitude 11° south, which I followed for over seven degrees northward. The Chambezi, the name given to its most southern extremity, drains a large tract of country south of the southernmost source of the Tanganika; it must, therefore, be the most important. I have not the least doubt, myself, but that this lake is the Upper Tanganika, and the Albert N'Yanza of Baker is the Lower Tanganika, which are connected by a river flowing from the upper to the lower. This is my belief, based upon reports of the Arabs, and a test I made of the flow with water-plants. But I really never gave it much thought."

"Well, if I were you, Doctor, before leaving Ujiji, I should explore it, and resolve the doubts upon the subject; lest, after you leave here, you should not return by this way. The Royal Geographical Society attach much importance to this supposed connection, and declare you are the only man who can settle it. If I can be of any service to you, you may command me. Though I did not come to Africa as an explorer, I have a good deal of curiosity upon the subject, and should be willing to accompany you. I have with me about twenty men who understand rowing; we have plenty of guns, cloth, and beads; and if we can get a canoe from the Arabs we can manage the thing easily."

"Oh, we can get a canoe from Sayd bin Majid. This man has been very kind to me, and if ever there was an Arab gentleman, he is one."

"Then it is settled, is it, that we go?"

"I am ready, whenever you are."

"I am at your command. Don't you hear my men call you the 'Great Master,' and me the 'Little Master?' It would never do for the 'Little Master' to command."

By this time Livingstone was becoming known to me. I defy any one to be in his society long without thoroughly fathoming him, for in him there is no guile, and what is apparent on the surface is the thing that is in him. I hope that in my summary of his character, and of his discoveries, I offend no one. I simply write down my own opinion of the man as I have seen him, not as he represents himself; as I know him to be, not as I have heard of him. I lived with him from the 10th November, 1871, to the 14th March, 1872; witnessed his conduct in the camp, and on the march, and my feelings for him are those of unqualified admiration. The camp is the best place to discover a man's weaknesses, where, if he is flighty or wrong-headed, he is sure to develop his hobbies and weak side. I think it possible, however, that Livingstone, with an unsuitable companion, might feel annoyance.

I know I should do so very readily, if a man's character was of that oblique nature that it was an impossibility to travel in his company. I have seen men, in whose company I felt nothing but a thraldom, which it was a duty to my own self-respect to cast off as soon as possible; a feeling of utter incompatibility, with whose nature mine could never assimilate. But Livingstone's was a character that I venerated, that called forth all my enthusiasm, that evoked nothing but sincerest admiration.

Dr. Livingstone is about sixty years old, though after he was restored to health he appeared more like a man who had not passed his fiftieth year. His hair has a brownish color yet, but is here and there streaked with grey lines over the temples; his beard and moustaches are very grey. His eyes, which are hazel, are remarkably bright; he has a sight keen as a hawk's. His teeth alone indicate the weakness of age; the hard fare of Lunda has made havoc in their lines. His form, which soon assumed a stoutish appearance, is a little over the ordinary height, with the slightest possible bow in the shoulders. When walking he has a firm but heavy tread, like that of an overworked or fatigued man. He is accustomed to wear a naval cap with a semicircular peak, by which he has been identified throughout Africa. His dress, when first I saw him, exhibited traces of patching and repairing, but was scrupulously clean.

I was led to believe that Livingstone possessed a splenetic, misanthropic temper; some have said that he is garrulous, that he is demented; that he has utterly changed from the David Livingstone whom people knew as the reverend missionary; that he takes no notes or observations but such as those which no other person could read but himself; and it was reported, before I proceeded to Central Africa, that he was married to an African princess.

I respectfully beg to differ with all and each of the above statements. I grant he is not an angel, but he approaches to that being as near as the nature of a living man will allow. I never saw any spleen or misanthropy in him: as for being garrulous, Dr. Livingstone is quite the reverse; he is reserved, if anything; and to the man who says Dr. Livingstone is changed, all I can say is, that he never could have known him, for it is notorious that the Doctor has a fund of quiet humor, which he exhibits at all times whenever he is among friends. I must also beg leave to correct the gentleman who informed me that Livingstone takes no notes or observations. The huge Letts's Diary which I carried home to his daughter is full of notes, and there are no less than a score of sheets within it filled with observations which he took during the last trip he made to Manyuema alone; and in the middle of the book there is sheet after sheet, column after column, carefully written, of figures alone. A large letter which I received from him has been sent to Sir Thomas MacLear, and this contains nothing but observations. During the four months I was with him, I noticed him every evening making most careful notes; and a large tin box that he has with him contains numbers of field note-books, the contents of which I dare say will see the light some time. His maps also evince great care and industry. As to the report of his African marriage, it is unnecessary to say more than that it is untrue, and it is utterly beneath a gentleman even to hint at such a thing in connection with the name of Dr. Livingstone.

You may take any point in Dr. Livingstone's character, and analyse it carefully, and I would challenge any man to find a fault in it. He is sensitive, I know; but so is any man of a high mind and generous nature. He is sensitive on the point of being doubted or being criticised. But who are they who doubt him? Easy-chair geographers, of course; not the hard-working travellers who number hundreds on the list of the Royal Geographical Society. I have not found a Richard Burton or a Winwood Reade criticising him. And to have one's maps and observations altered to suit the caprices of irresponsible parties is no pleasant thing to a man who has been so painstaking and industrious. Livingstone may be mistaken in his conclusions on certain points, but the geographer who stays at home cannot correct him unless he has data to go upon received from parties who have explored the same region. No Francis Galton or Dr. Beke, with ever so many opinions, can prove the Lake Tanganika a myth; four travellers have seen and reported upon it. No Francis Galton or Dr. Beke can prove to Colonel Grant that there is no such stream as the Victoria Nile. Yet how much of this river—of this stream—did Colonel Grant see? Not fifty miles. But, because he saw it flow north and north-westerly, he believes, sincerely and honestly, that it is the same river which he observed flowing past Gondokoro. Livingstone also believes that—after following the Chambezi, Luapula, and Lualaba, over seven degrees of latitude, and seeing it still flow northward, and hearing from natives that there is a large lake north of where he halted in his grand march northward, following the current of the mighty Lualaba—that this Lualaba is none other than the Nile. Has he no right, then, to feel vexed that easy-chair geographers draw a great range of mountains, extending over three degrees of latitude, simply to demonstrate by that black, sinister-looking line "that he has been knocking his head against a stone wall?" Livingstone, with all his knowledge of African mysteries, knows not yet how to manufacture a mountain. He is too humble-souled to dare attempt to transform the face of nature after the arbitrary method known to stay-at-home geographers.*

In Livingstone I have seen many amiable traits. His gentleness never forsakes him; his hopefulness never deserts him. No harassing anxieties, distraction of mind, long separation from home and kindred, can make him complain. He thinks "all will come out right at last;" he has such faith in the goodness of Providence. The sport of adverse circumstances, the plaything of the miserable beings sent to him from Zanzibar—he has been baffled and worried, even almost to the grave, yet he will not desert the charge imposed upon him by his friend, Sir Roderick Murchison. To the stern dictates of duty, alone, has he sacrificed his home and ease, the pleasures, refinements, and luxuries of civilized life. His is the Spartan heroism, the inflexibility of the Roman, the enduring resolution of the Anglo-Saxon—never to relinquish his work, though his heart yearns for home; never to surrender his obligations until he can write FINIS to his work.

There is a good-natured *abandon* about Livingstone which was not lost on me. Whenever he began to laugh, there was a contagion about it, that compelled me to imitate him. It was such a laugh as Herr Teufelsdröckh's—a laugh of the whole man from head to heel. If he told a story, he related it in such a way, as to convince one of its truthfulness; his face was so lit up by the sly fun it contained, that I was sure the story was worth relating, and worth listening to.

---

* All the criticisms which I have seen upon Livingstone's discoveries are tainted with too much of the *odium geographicum* to be received with the weight due to the cool and calm declaration of sound and logical opinion of experienced travellers and scientific men.

The wan features which had shocked me at first meeting, the heavy step which told of age and hard travel, the grey beard and bowed shoulders, belied the man. Underneath that well-worn exterior lay an endless fund of high spirits and inexhaustible humor; that rugged frame of his enclosed a young and most exuberant soul. Every day I heard innumerable jokes and pleasant anecdotes; interesting hunting stories, in which his friends Oswell, Webb, Vardon, and Gordon Cumming were almost always the chief actors. I was not sure, at first, but this joviality, humor, and abundant animal spirits were the result of a joyous hysteria; but as I found they continued while I was with him, I am obliged to think them natural.

Another thing which specially attracted my attention was his wonderfully retentive memory. If we remember the many years he has spent in Africa, deprived of books, we may well think it an uncommon memory that can recite whole poems from Byron, Burns, Tennyson, Longfellow, Whittier, and Lowell. The reason of this may be found, perhaps, in the fact, that he has lived all his life almost, we may say, within himself. Zimmerman, a great student of human nature, says on this subject: "The unencumbered mind recalls all that it has read, all that pleased the eye, and delighted the ear; and reflecting on every idea which either observation, or experience, or discourse has produced, gains new information by every reflection. The intellect contemplates all the former scenes of life; views by anticipation those that are yet to come; and blends all ideas of past and future in the actual enjoyment of the present moment." He has lived in a world which revolved inwardly, out of which he seldom awoke except to attend to the immediate practical necessities of himself and people; then relapsed again into the same happy inner world, which he must have peopled with his own friends, relations, acquaintances, familiar readings, ideas, and associations; so that wherever he might be, or by whatsoever he was surrounded, his own world always possessed more attractions to his cultured mind than were yielded by external circumstances.

The study of Dr. Livingstone would not be complete if we did not take the religious side of his character into consideration. His religion is not of the theoretical kind, but it is a constant, earnest, sincere practice. It is neither demonstrative nor loud, but manifests itself in a quiet, practical way, and is always at work. It is not aggressive, which sometimes is troublesome, if not impertinent. In him, religion exhibits its loveliest features; it governs his conduct not only towards his servants, but towards the natives, the bigoted Mohammedans, and all who come in contact with him. Without it, Livingstone, with his ardent temperament, his enthusiasm, his high spirit and courage, must have become uncompanionable, and a hard master. Religion has tamed him, and made him a Christian gentleman; the crude and wilful have been refined and subdued; religion has made him the most companionable of men and indulgent of masters—a man whose society is pleasurable to a degree.

I have often heard our servants discuss our respective merits. "Your master," say my servants to Livingstone's, "is a good man—a very good man; he does not beat you, for he has a kind heart; but ours—oh! he is sharp—hot as fire"—"mkali sana, kana moto." From being hated and thwarted in every possible way by the Arabs and half-castes upon first arrival in Ujiji, he has, through his uniform kindness and mild, pleasant temper, won all hearts. I observed that universal respect was paid to him. Even the Mohammedans never passed his house without calling to pay their compliments, and to say, "The blessing of God rest on you." Each Sunday morning he gathers his little flock around him, and reads prayers and a chapter from the Bible, in a natural, unaffected, and sincere tone; and afterwards delivers a short address in the Kisawahili language, about the subject read to them, which is listened to with evident interest and attention.

There is another point in Livingstone's character about which readers of his books, and students of his travels, would like to know, and that is his ability to withstand the dreadful climate of Central Africa, and the consistent energy with which he follows up his explorations. His consistent energy is native to him and to his race. He is a very fine example of the perseverance, doggedness, and tenacity which characterise the Anglo-Saxon spirit; but his ability to withstand the climate is due not only to the happy constitution with which he was born, but to the strictly temperate life he has ever led. A drunkard and a man of vicious habits could never have withstood the climate of Central Africa.

The second day after my arrival in Ujiji I asked the Doctor if he did not feel a desire, sometimes, to visit his country, and take a little rest after his six years' explorations; and the answer he gave me fully reveals the man. Said he:

"I would like very much to go home and see my children once again, but I cannot bring my heart to abandon the task I have undertaken, when it is so nearly completed. It only requires six or seven months more to trace the true source that I have discovered with Petherick's branch of the White Nile, or with the Albert N'Yanza of Sir Samuel Baker, which is the lake called by the natives 'Chowambe.' Why should I go home before my task is ended, to have to come back again to do what I can very well do now?"

"And why?" I asked, "did you come so far back without finishing the task which you say you have got to do?"

"Simply because I was forced. My men would not budge a step forward. They mutinied, and formed a secret resolution—if I still insisted on going on—to raise a disturbance in the country, and after they had effected it to abandon me; in which case I should have been killed. It was dangerous to go any further. I had explored six hundred miles of the watershed, had traced all the principal streams which discharge their waters into the central line of drainage, but when about starting to explore the last hundred miles the hearts of my people failed them, and they set about frustrating me in every possible way. Now, having returned seven hundred miles to get a new supply of stores, and another escort, I find myself destitute of even the means to live but for a few weeks, and sick in mind and body."

Here I may pause to ask the reader how he would have comported himself in such a crisis, under such an accumulation of difficulties. Many would have been in exceeding hurry to get home to tell the news of the continued explorations and discoveries, and to relieve the anxiety of the sorrowing family and friends awaiting their return. Enough surely had been accomplished towards the solution of the problem that had exercised the minds of his scientific associates of the Royal Geographical Society. This was no negative exploration, it was hard, earnest labor of years, self-abnegation, enduring patience, and exalted fortitude, such as ordinary men fail to exhibit.

Suppose Livingstone, following the custom of other travellers, had hurried to the coast after he had discovered Lake Bangweolo, to tell the news to the geographical world; then had returned to discover Moero, and run away again; then came back once more only to discover Kamolondo, and to race back again. But no; he not only discovers the Chambezi, Lake Bangweolo, Luapula River, Lake Moero, Lualaba River, and Lake Kamolondo, but he still tirelessly urges his steps forward to put the final completion to the grand lacustrine river system. Had he followed the example of ordinary explorers, he would have been running backwards and forwards to tell the news, instead of exploring; and he might have been able to write a volume upon the discovery of each lake, and earn much money thereby. They are no few months' explorations that form the contents of his books. His 'Missionary Travels' embraces a period of sixteen years; his book on the Zambezi, five years; and if the great traveller lives to come home, his third book, the grandest of all, must contain the records of eight or nine years.

It is a principle with Livingstone to do well what he undertakes to do; and in the consciousness that he is doing it, despite the yearning for his home which is sometimes overpowering, he finds, to a certain extent, contentment, if not happiness. And though to men differently constituted a long residence amongst the savages of Africa would be contemplated with horror, yet Livingstone's mind can find pleasure and food for philosophic studies. The wonders of primeval nature, the great forests and sublime mountains, the perennial streams and sources of the great lakes, the marvels of the earth, the splendors of the tropic sky by day and by night—all terrestrial and celestial phenomena are manna to a man of such self-abnegation and devoted philanthropic spirit. He can be charmed with the primitive simplicity of Ethiop's dusky children, with whom he has spent so many years of his life; he has a sturdy faith in their capabilities; sees virtue in them where others see nothing but savagery; and wherever he has gone among them, he has sought to elevate a people that were apparently forgotten of God and Christian man.

One night I took out my note-book, and prepared to take down from his own lips what he had to say about his travels; and unhesitatingly he related his experiences, of which the following is a summary:

Dr. David Livingstone left the island of Zanzibar in March, 1866. On the 7th of the following month he departed from Mikindiny Bay for the interior, with an expedition consisting of twele Sepoys from Bombay, nine men from Johanna, of the Comoro Islands, seven liberated slaves, and two Zambezi men, taking them as an experiment; six camels, three buffaloes, two mules, and three donkeys. He had thus thirty men with him, twelve of whom, viz., the Sepoys, were to act as guards for the expedition. They were mostly armed with the Enfield rifles presented to the Doctor by the Bombay Government. The baggage of the expedition consisted of ten bales of cloth and two bags of beads, which were to serve as the currency by which they would be enabled to purchase the necessaries of life in the countries the Doctor intended to visit. Besides the cumbrous moneys, they carried several boxes of instruments, such as chronometers, air thermometers, sextant, and artificial horizon, boxes containing clothes, medicines, and personal necessaries. The expedition travelled up the left bank of the Rovuma River, a route as full of difficulties as any that could be chosen. For miles Livingstone and his party had to cut their way with their axes through the dense and almost impenetrable jungles which lined the river's banks. The road was a mere footpath, leading in the most erratic fashion into and through the dense vegetation, seeking the easiest outlet from it without any regard to the course it ran. The pagazis were able to proceed easily enough, but the camels, on account of their enormous height, could not advance a step without the axes of the party first clearing the way. These tools of foresters were almost always required; but the advance of the expedition was often retarded by the unwillingness of the Sepoys and Johanna men to work.

Soon after the departure of the expedition from the coast, the murmurings and complaints of these men began, and upon every occasion and at every opportunity they evinced a decided hostility to an advance. In order to prevent the progress of the Doctor, in hopes that it would compel him to return to the coast, these men so cruelly treated the animals that before long there was not one left alive. But as this scheme failed, they set about instigating the natives against the white man, whom they accused most wantonly of strange practices. As this plan was most likely to succeed, and as it was dangerous to have such men with him, the Doctor arrived at the conclusion that it was best to discharge them, and accordingly sent the Sepoys back to the coast; but not without having first furnished them with the means of subsistence on their journey to the coast. These men were such a disreputable set that the natives spoke of them as the Doctor's slaves. One of their worst sins was their custom of giving their guns and ammunition to carry to the first woman or boy they met, whom they impressed for that purpose by such threats or promises as they were totally unable to perform, and unwarranted in making. An hour's marching was sufficient to fatigue them, after which they lay down on the road to bewail their hard fate, and concoct new schemes to frustrate their leader's purposes. Towards night they generally made their appearance at the camping-ground with the looks of half-dead men. Such men naturally made but a poor escort; for, had the party been attacked by a wandering tribe of natives of any strength, the Doctor could have made no defence, and no other alternative would have been left to him but to surrender and be ruined.

The Doctor and his little party arrived on the 18th July, 1866, at a village belonging to a chief of the Wahiyou, situate eight days' march south of the Rovuma, and overlooking the watershed of the Lake Nyassa. The territory lying between the Rovuma River and this Wahiyou chieftain was an uninhabited wilderness, during the transit of which Livingstone and his expedition suffered considerably from hunger and desertion of men.

Early in August, 1866, the Doctor came to the country of Mponda, a chief who dwelt near the Lake Nyassa. On the road thither, two of the liberated slaves deserted him. Here also, Wekotani—not Wakotani—a protégé of the Doctor, insisted upon his discharge, alleging as an excuse—an excuse which the Doctor subsequently found to be untrue—that he had found his brother. He also stated that his family lived on the east side of the Nyassa Lake. He further stated that Mponda's favourite wife was his sister. Perceiving that Wekotani was unwilling to go with him further, the Doctor took him to Mponda, who now saw and heard of him for the first time, and, having furnished the ungrateful boy with enough cloth and beads to keep him until his "big brother" should call for him, left him with the chief, after first assuring himself that he would receive honourable treatment from him. The Doctor also gave Wekotani writing-paper—as he could read and write, being accomplishments acquired at Bombay, where he had been put to school—so that, should he at any time feel disposed, he might write to Mr. Horace Waller or to himself. The Doctor further enjoined him not to join in any of the slave raids usually made by his countrymen, the men of Nyassa, on their neighbours. Upon finding that his application for a discharge was successful, Wekotani endeavoured to induce Chumah, another protégé of the Doctor's, and a companion, or chum, of Wekotani, to leave the Doctor's service and proceed with him, promising, as a bribe, a wife and plenty of pombe from his "big brother." Chumah, upon referring the matter to the Doctor, was advised not to go, as he (the Doctor) strongly suspected that Wekotani wanted only to make him his slave. Chumah wisely withdrew from his tempter. From Mponda's, the Doctor proceeded to the heel of the Nyassa, to the village of a Babisa chief, who required medicine for a skin disease. With his usual kindness, he stayed at this chief's village to treat his malady.

While here, a half-caste Arab arrived from the western shore of the lake, and reported that he had been plundered by a band of Mazitu, at a place which the Doctor and Musa, chief of the Johanna men, were very well aware was at least 150 miles north-north-west of where they were then stopping. Musa, however, for his own reasons—which will appear presently—eagerly listened to the Arab's tale, and gave full credence to it. Having well digested its horrible details, he came to the Doctor to give him the full benefit of what he had heard with such willing ears. The traveller patiently listened to the narrative, which lost nothing of its portentous significance through Musa's relation, and then asked Musa if he believed it. "Yes," answered Musa, readily; "he tell me true, true. I ask him good, and he tell true, true." The Doctor, however, said he did not believe it, for the Mazitu would not have been satisfied with merely plundering a man, they would have murdered him; but suggested, in order to allay the fears of his Moslem subordinate, that they should both proceed to the chief with whom they were staying, who, being a sensible man, would be able to advise them as to the probability or improbability of the tale being correct. Together, they proceeded to the Babisa chief, who, when he had heard the Arab's story, unhesitatingly denounced the Arab as a liar, and his story without the least foundation in fact; giving as a reason that, if the Mazitu had been lately in that vicinity, he should have heard of it soon enough.

But Musa broke out with "No, no, Doctor; no, no, no; I no want to go to Mazitu. I no want Mazitu to kill me. I want see my father, my mother, my child, in Johanna. I want no Mazitu." These are Musa's *ipsissima verba*.

To which the Doctor replied, "I don't want Mazitu to kill me either; but, as you are afraid of them, I promise to go straight west until we get far past the beat of the Mazitu."

Musa was not satisfied, but kept moaning and sorrowing, saying, "If we had two hundred guns with us I would go; but our small party of men will attack by night, and kill all."

The Doctor repeated his promise, "But I will not go near them; I will go west."

As soon as he turned his face westward, Musa and the Johanna men ran away in a body.

The Doctor says, in commenting upon Musa's conduct, that he felt strongly tempted to shoot Musa and another ringleader, but was, nevertheless, glad that he did not soil his hands with their vile blood. A day or two afterwards, another of his men—Simeon Price by name—came to the Doctor with the same tale about the Mazitu, but, compelled by the scant number of his people to repress all such tendencies to desertion and faint-heartedness, the Doctor silenced him at once, and sternly forbade him to utter the name of the Mazitu any more.

Had the natives not assisted him, he must have despaired of ever being able to penetrate the wild and unexplored interior which he was now about to tread. "Fortunately," as the Doctor says with unction, "I was in a country now, after leaving the shores of Nyassa, which the foot of the slave-trader has not trod; it was a new and virgin land, and of course, as I have always found in such cases, the natives were really good and hospitable, and for very small portions of cloth my baggage was conveyed from village to village by them." In many other ways the traveller, in his extremity, was kindly treated by the yet unsophisticated and innocent natives.

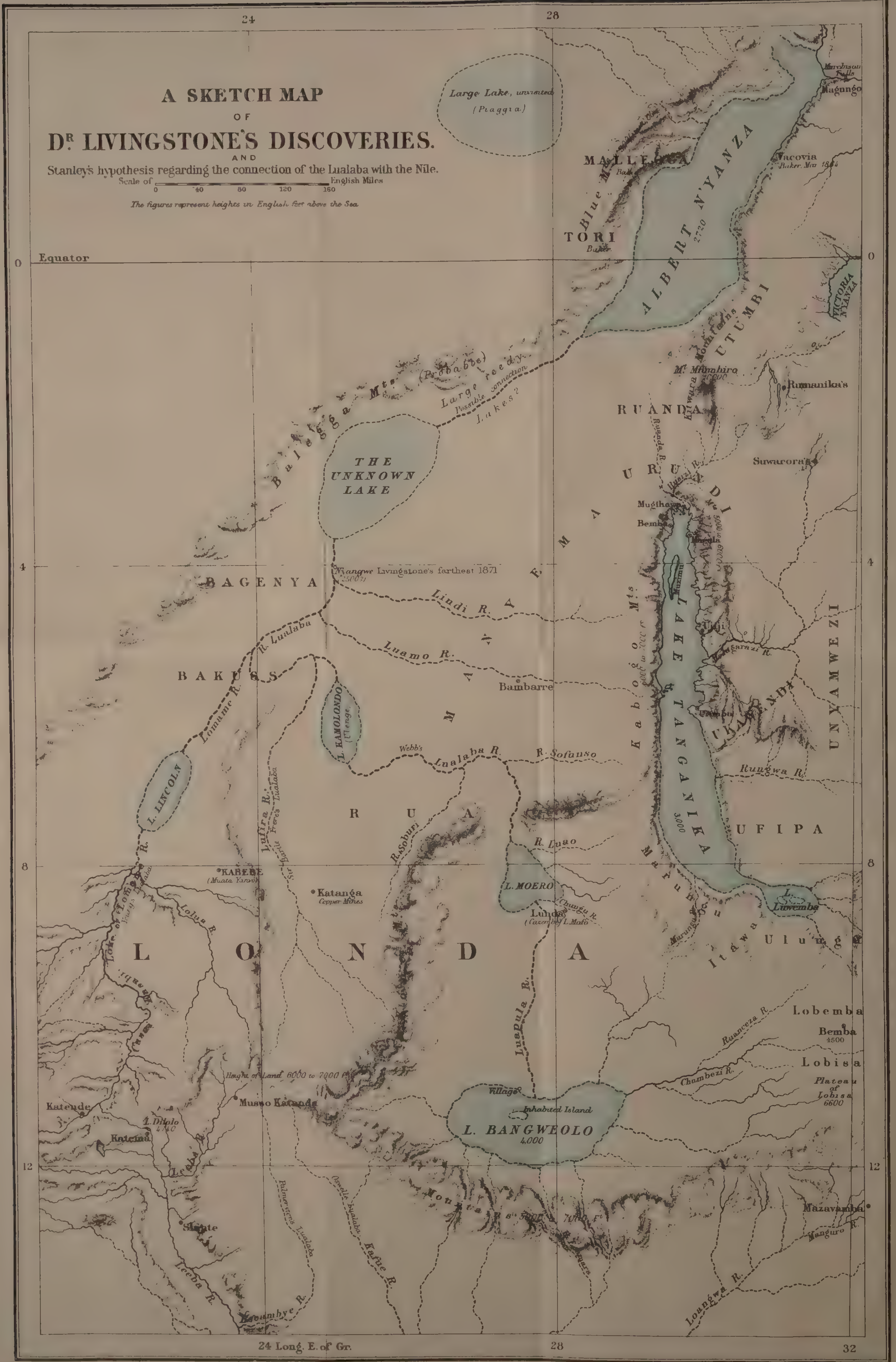
On leaving this hospitable region in the early part of December, 1866, the Doctor entered a country where the Mazitu had exercised their customary marauding propensities. The land was swept clean of provisions and cattle, and the people had emigrated to other countries, beyond the bounds of those ferocious plunderers. Again the expedition was besieged by the pinching hunger they suffered; they had recourse to the wild fruits which some parts of the country furnished. At intervals the condition of the hard-pressed band was made worse by the heartless desertion of some of its members, who more than once departed with the Doctor's personal kit, changes of clothes, linen, &c. With more or less misfortunes constantly dogging his footsteps, he traversed in safety the countries of the Babisa, Bobemba, Barungu, Ba-ulungu, and Lunda.

In the country of Lunda lives the famous Cazembe, who was first made known to Europeans by Dr. Lacerda, the Portuguese traveller. Cazembe is a most intelligent prince; he is a tall, stalwart man, who wears a peculiar kind of dress, made of crimson print, in the form of a prodigious kilt. In this state dress, King Cazembe received Dr. Livingstone, surrounded by his chiefs and body-guards. A chief, who had been deputed by the King and elders to discover all about the white man, then stood up before the assembly, and in a loud voice gave the result of the inquiry he had instituted. He had heard that the white man had come to look for waters, for rivers, and seas; though he could not understand what the white man could want with such things, he had no doubt that the object was good. Then Cazembe asked what the Doctor proposed doing, and where he thought of going. The Doctor replied that he had thought of proceeding south, as he had heard of lakes and rivers being in that direction. Cazembe asked, "What can you want to go there for? The water is close here. There is plenty of large water in this neighbourhood." Before breaking up the assembly, Cazembe gave orders to let the white man go where he would through his country undisturbed and unmolested. He was the first Englishman he had seen, he said, and he liked him.

Shortly after his introduction to the King, the Queen entered the large house, surrounded by a body-guard of Amazons with spears. She was a fine, tall, handsome young woman, and evidently thought she was about to make an impression upon the rustic white man, for she had clothed herself after a most royal fashion, and was armed with a ponderous spear. But her appearance—so different from what the Doctor had imagined—caused him to laugh, which entirely spoiled the effect intended; for the laugh of the Doctor was so contagious, that she herself was the first to imitate it, and the Amazons, courtier-like, followed suit. Much disconcerted by this, the Queen ran back, followed by her obedient damsels—a retreat most undignified and unqueenlike, compared with her majestic advent into the Doctor's presence. But Livingstone will have much to say about his reception at this court, and about this interesting King and Queen; and who can so well relate the scenes he witnessed, and which belong exclusively to him, as he himself?

Soon after his arrival in the country of Lunda, or Londa, and before he had entered the district ruled over by Cazembe, he had crossed a river called the Chambezi, which was quite an important stream. The similarity of the name with that large and noble river south, which will be for ever connected with his name, misled Livingstone at that time, and he, accordingly, did not pay to it the attention it deserved, believing that the Chambezi was but the head-waters of the Zambezi, and consequently had no bearing or connection with the sources of the river of Egypt, of which he was in search. His fault was in relying too implicitly upon the correctness of Portuguese information. This error it cost him many months of tedious labour and travel to rectify.

From the beginning of 1867—the time of his arrival at Cazembe's—till the middle of March, 1869—the time of his arrival at Ujiji—he was mostly engaged in correcting the errors and misrepresentations of the Portuguese travellers. The Portuguese, in speaking of the River Chambezi, invariably spoke of it as "our own Zambezi,"—that is, the Zambezi which flows through the Portuguese possessions of the Mozambique. "In going to Cazembe from Nyassa," said they, "you will cross our own Zambezi." Such positive and reiterated information—given not only orally, but in their books and maps—was, naturally, confusing. When the Doctor perceived that what he saw and what they described were at variance, out of a sincere wish to be correct, and lest he might have been mistaken himself, he started to retravel the ground he had travelled before. Over and over again he traversed the several countries watered by the several rivers of



A SKETCH MAP OF DR. LIVINGSTONE'S DISCOVERIES. AND Stanley's hypothesis regarding the connection of the Lualaba with the Nile.

Scale of English Miles

The figures represent heights in English feet above the Sea

London: Sampson Low, Marston, Low & Searle. New York: Scribner, Armstrong & Co.

the complicated water system, like an uneasy spirit. Over and over again he asked the same questions from the different peoples he met, until he was obliged to desist, lest they might say, "The man is mad; he has got water on the brain!"

But his travels and tedious labours in Lunda and the adjacent countries have established beyond doubt —first, that the Chambezi is a totally distinct river from the Zambezi of the Portuguese; and, secondly, that the Chambezi, starting from about latitude 11° south, is no other than the most southerly feeder of the great Nile; thus giving that famous river a length of over 2,000 miles of direct latitude; making it, second to the Mississippi, the longest river in the world. The real and true name of the Zambezi is Dombazi. When Lacerda and his Portuguese successors, coming to Cazembe, crossed the Chambezi, and heard its name, they very naturally set it down as "our own Zambezi," and, without further inquiry, sketched it as running in that direction.

During his researches in that region, so pregnant in discoveries, Livingstone came to a lake lying north-east of Cazembe, which the natives call Liemba, from the country of that name which bordered it on the east and south. In tracing the lake north, he found it to be none other than the Tanganika, or the south-eastern extremity of it, which looks, on the Doctor's map, very much like an outline of Italy. The latitude of the southern end of this great body of water is about 8° 42′ south, which thus gives it a length, from north to south, of 360 geographical miles. From the southern extremity of the Tanganika he crossed Marungu, and came in sight of Lake Moero. Tracing this lake, which is about sixty miles in length, to its southern head, he found a river, called the Luapula, entering it from that direction. Following the Luapula south, he found it issue from the large lake of Bangweolo, which is nearly as large in superficial area as the Tanganika. In exploring for the waters which discharged themselves into the lake, he found that by far the most important of these feeders was the Chambezi; so that he had thus traced the Chambezi from its source to Lake Bangweolo, and the issue from its northern head, under the name of Luapula, and found it enter Lake Moero. Again he returned to Cazembe's, well satisfied that the river running north through three degrees of latitude could not be the river running south under the name of Zambezi, though there might be a remarkable resemblance in their names.

At Cazembe's he found an old white-bearded half-caste named Mahommed bin Sali, who was kept as a kind of prisoner at large by the King because of certain suspicious circumstances attending his advent and stay in the country. Through Livingstone's influence Mahommed bin Sali obtained his release. On the road to Ujiji he had bitter cause to regret having exerted himself in the half-caste's behalf. He turned out to be a most ungrateful wretch, who poisoned the minds of the Doctor's few followers, and ingratiated himself with them by selling the favours of his concubines to them, by which he reduced them to a kind of bondage under him. The Doctor was deserted by all but two, even faithful Susi and Chumah deserted him for the service of Mahommed bin Sali. But they soon repented, and returned to their allegiance. From the day he had the vile old man in his company manifold and bitter misfortunes followed the Doctor up to his arrival at Ujiji in March, 1869.

From the date of his arrival until the end of June, 1869, he remained at Ujiji, whence he dated those letters which, though the outside world still doubted his being alive, satisfied the minds of the Royal Geographical people, and his intimate friends, that he still existed, and that Musa's tale was the false though ingenious fabrication of a cowardly deserter. It was during this time that the thought occurred to him of sailing around the Lake Tanganika, but the Arabs and natives were so bent upon fleecing him that, had he undertaken it, the remainder of his goods would not have enabled him to explore the central line of drainage, the initial point of which he found far south of Cazembe's, in about latitude 11°, in the river called Chambezi.

In the days when tired Captain Burton was resting in Ujiji, after his march from the coast near Zanzibar, the land to which Livingstone, on his departure from Ujiji, bent his steps was unknown to the Arabs save by vague report. Messrs. Burton and Speke never heard of it, it seems. Speke, who was the geographer of Burton's expedition, heard of a place called Urua, which he placed on his map, according to the general direction indicated by the Arabs; but the most enterprising of the Arabs, in their search after ivory, only touched the frontiers of Rua, as the natives and Livingstone call it; for Rua is an immense country, with a length of six degrees of latitude, and as yet an undefined breadth from east to west.

At the end of June, 1869, Livingstone quitted Ujiji and crossed over to Uguhha, on the western shore, for his last and greatest series of explorations; the result of which was the further discovery of a lake of considerable magnitude connected with Moero by the large river called the Lualaba, and which was a continuation of the chain of lakes he had previously discovered.

From the port of Uguhha he set off, in company with a body of traders, in an almost direct westerly course, for the country of Urua. Fifteen days' march brought them to Bambarre, the first important ivory depot in Manyema, or, as the natives pronounce it, Manyuema. For nearly six months he was detained at Bambarre from ulcers in the feet, which discharged bloody ichor as soon as he set them on the ground. When recovered, he set off in a northerly direction, and after several days came to a broad lacustrine river, called the Lualaba, flowing northward and westward, and in some places southward, in a most confusing way. The river was from one to three miles broad. By exceeding pertinacity he contrived to follow its erratic course, until he saw the Lualaba enter the narrow, long lake of Kamolondo, in about latitude 6° 30′. Retracing this to the south, he came to the point where he had seen the Luapula enter Lake Moero.

One feels quite enthusiastic when listening to Livingstone's description of the beauties of Moero scenery. Pent in on all sides by high mountains, clothed to the edges with the rich vegetation of the tropics, the Moero discharges its superfluous waters through a deep rent in the bosom of the mountains. The impetuous and grand river roars through the chasm with the thunder of a cataract, but soon after leaving its confined and deep bed it expands into the calm and broad Lualaba, stretching over miles of ground. After making great bends west and south-west, and then curving northward, it enters Kamolondo. By the natives it is called the Lualaba, but the Doctor, in order to distinguish it from other rivers of the same name, has given it the name of "Webb's River," after Mr. Webb, the wealthy proprietor of Newstead Abbey, whom the Doctor distinguishes as one of his oldest and most consistent friends. Away to the south-west from Kamolondo is another large lake, which discharges its waters by the important River Loeki, or Lomami, into the great Lualaba. To this lake, known as Chebungo by the natives, Doctor Livingstone has given the name of "Lincoln," to be hereafter distinguished on maps and in books as Lake Lincoln, in memory of Abraham Lincoln, our murdered President. This was done from the vivid impression produced on his mind by hearing a portion of his inauguration speech read from an English pulpit, which related to the causes that induced him to issue his Emancipation Proclamation, by which memorable deed 4,000,000 of slaves were for ever freed. To the memory of the man whose labours on behalf of the negro race deserves the commendation of all good men, Livingstone has contributed a monument more durable than brass or stone.

Entering Webb's River from the south-south-west, a little north of Kamolondo, is a large river called Lufira, but the streams that discharge themselves from the watershed into the Lualaba are so numerous that the Doctor's map would not contain them, so he has left all out except the most important. Continuing his way north, tracing the Lualaba through its manifold and crooked curves as far as latitude 4° south, he came to where he heard of another lake to the north, into which it ran. But here you may come to a dead halt, and read what lies beyond this spot thus . . . . . This was the furthermost point, whence he was compelled to return on the weary road to Ujiji, a distance of 700 miles.

In this brief sketch of Dr. Livingstone's wonderful travels it is to be hoped the most superficial reader, as well as the student of geography, comprehends this grand system of lakes connected together by Webb's River. To assist him, let him glance at the map accompanying this book. He will then have a fair idea of what Dr. Livingstone has been doing during these long years, and what additions he has made to the study of African geography. That this river, distinguished under several titles, flowing from one lake into another in a northerly direction, with all its great crooked bends and sinuosities, is the Nile—the true Nile—the Doctor has not the least doubt. For a long time he entertained great scepticism, because of its deep bends and curves west, and south-west even; but, having traced it from its head waters, the Chambezi, through 7° of latitude—that is, from 11° S. to lat. 4° N. —he has been compelled to come to the conclusion that it can be no other river than the Nile. He had thought it was the Congo; but has discovered the sources of the Congo to be the Kassai and the Kwango, two rivers which rise on the western side of the Nile watershed, in about the latitude of Bangweolo; and he was told of another river, called the Lubilash, which rose from the north, and ran west. But the Lualaba, the Doctor thinks, cannot be the Congo, from its great size and body, and from its steady and continued flow northward through a broad and extensive valley, bounded by enormous mountains westerly and easterly. The altitude of the most northerly point to which the Doctor traced the wonderful river was a little in excess of 2,000 feet; so that, though Baker makes out his lake to be 2,700 feet above the sea, yet the Bahr Ghazal, through which Petherick's branch of the White Nile issues into the Nile, is but 2,000 feet; in which case there is a possibility that the Lualaba may be none other than Petherick's branch.

It is well known that trading stations for ivory have been established for about 500 miles up Petherick's branch. We must remember this fact when told that Gondokoro, in lat. 4° N., is 2,000 feet above the sea, and lat. 4° S., where the halt was made, is only a little over 2,000 feet above the sea. That the two rivers said to be 2,000 feet above the sea, separated from each other by 8° of latitude, are one and the same river, may among some men be regarded as a startling statement. But we must restrain mere expressions of surprise, and take into consideration that this mighty and broad Lualaba is a lacustrine river broader than the Mississippi; that at intervals the body of water forms extensive lakes; then, contracting into a broad river, it again forms a lake, and so on, to lat. 4°; and even beyond this point the Doctor hears of a large lake again north.

We must wait also until the altitudes of the two rivers, the Lualaba, where the Doctor halted, and the southern point on the Bahr Ghazal, where Petherick has been, are known with perfect accuracy.

Now, for the sake of argument, suppose we give this nameless lake a length of 6° of latitude, as it may be the one discovered by Piaggia, the Italian traveller, from which Petherick's branch of the White Nile issues out through reedy marshes, into the Bahr Ghazal, thence into the White Nile, south of Gondokoro. By this method we can suppose the rivers one; for if the lake extends over so many degrees of latitude, the necessity of explaining the differences of altitude that must naturally exist between two points of a river 8° of latitude apart, would be obviated.

Also, Livingstone's instruments for observation and taking altitudes may have been in error; and this is very likely to have been the case, subjected as they have been to rough handling during nearly six years of travel. Despite the apparent difficulty of the altitude, there is another strong reason for believing Webb's River, or the Lualaba, to be the Nile. The watershed of this river, 600 miles of which Livingstone has travelled, is drained from a valley which lies north and south between lofty eastern and western ranges.

This valley, or line of drainage, while it does not receive the Kassai and the Kwango, receives rivers flowing from a great distance west, for instance, the important tributaries Lufira and Lomami, and large rivers from the east, such as the Lindi and Luamo; and, while the most intelligent Portuguese travellers and traders state that the Kassai, the Kwango, and Lubilash, are the head waters of the Congo River, no one has yet started the supposition that the grand river flowing north, and known by the natives as the Lualaba, was the Congo.

This river may be the Congo, or, perhaps, the Niger. If the Lualaba is only 2,000 feet above the sea, and the Albert N'Yanza 2,700 feet, the Lualaba cannot enter that lake. If the Bahr Ghazal does not extend by an arm for eight degrees above Gondokoro, then the Lualaba cannot be the Nile. But it would be premature to dogmatize on the subject. Livingstone will clear up the point himself; and, if he finds it to be the Congo, will be the first to admit his error.

Livingstone admits the Nile sources have not been found, though he has traced the Lualaba through seven degrees of latitude flowing north; and, though he has not a particle of doubt of its being the Nile.

not yet can the Nile question be said to be resolved and ended. For two reasons :

1. He has heard of the existence of four fountains, two of which give birth to a river flowing north, Webb's River, or the Lualaba, and to a river flowing south, which is the Zambezi. He has repeatedly heard of these fountains from the natives. Several times he has been within 100 and 200 miles from them, but something always interposed to prevent his going to see them. According to those who have seen them, they rise on either side of a mound or level, which contains no stones. Some have called it an ant-hill. One of these fountains is said to be so large that a man, standing on one side, cannot be seen from the other. These fountains must be discovered, and their position taken. The Doctor does not suppose them to be south of the feeders of Lake Bangweolo. In his letter to the 'Herald' he says: "These four full-grown gushing fountains, rising so near each other, and giving origin to four large rivers, answer in a certain degree to the description given of the unfathomable fountains of the Nile, by the secretary of Minerva, in the city of Saïs, in Egypt, to the father of all travellers—Herodotus."

For the information of such readers as may not have the original at hand I append the following from Cary's translation of Herodotus :—

> With respect to the sources of the Nile, no man of all the Egyptians, Libyans, or Grecians, with whom I have conversed, ever pretended to know anything, except the registrar of Minerva's treasury at Sais, in Egypt. He, indeed, seemed to be trifling with me when he said he knew perfectly well; yet his account was as follows: "That there are two mountains, rising into a sharp peak, situated between the city of Syene, in Thebais, and Elephantine. The names of these mountains are, the one Crophi, the other Mophi; that the sources of the Nile, which are bottomless, flow from between these mountains;

and that half of the water flows over Egypt and to the north, the other half over Ethiopia and the south. That the fountains of the Nile are bottomless, he said, Psammitichus, King of Egypt, proved by experiment: for, having caused a line to be twisted many thousand fathoms in length, he let it down, but could not find a bottom." Such, then, was the opinion the registrar gave, if, indeed, he spoke the real truth; *proving*, in my opinion, that there are strong whirlpools and an eddy here, so that the water beating against the rocks, a sounding-line, when let down, cannot reach the bottom. I was unable to learn anything more from any one else. But thus much I learnt by carrying my researches as far as possible, having gone and made my own observations as far as Elephantine, and beyond that obtaining information from hearsay. As one ascends the river, above the city of Elephantine, the country is steep; here, therefore, it is necessary to attach a rope on both sides of a boat, as one does with an ox in a plough, and so proceed; but if the rope should happen to break, the boat is carried away by the force of the stream. This kind of country lasts for a four-days' passage, and the Nile here winds as much as the Mæander. There are twelve schœni, which it is necessary to sail through in this manner; and after that you will come to a level plain, where the Nile flows round an island; its name is Tachompso. Ethiopians inhabit the country immediately above Elephantine, and one half of the island; the other half is inhabited by Egyptians. Near to this island lies a vast lake, on the borders of which Ethiopian nomades dwell. After sailing through this lake you will come to the channel of the Nile, which flows into it: then you will have to land and travel forty days by the side of the river, for sharp rocks rise in the Nile, and there are many sunken ones, through which it is not possible to navigate a boat. Having passed this country in the forty days, you must go on board another boat, and sail for twelve days; and then you will arrive at a large city, called Meroe: this city is said to be the capital of all Ethiopia. The inhabitants worship no other gods than Jupiter and Bacchus; but these they honour with great magnificence. They have also an oracle of Jupiter; and they make war whenever that god bids them by an oracular warning, and against whatever country he bids them. Sailing from this city, you will arrive at the country of the Automoli, in a space of time equal to that which you took in coming from Elephantine to the capital of the Ethiopians. These Automoli are called by the name of Asmak, which, in the language of Greece, signifies "those that stand at the left hand of the king." These, to the number of two hundred and forty thousand of the Egyptian war-tribe, revolted to the Ethiopians on the following occasion. In the reign of King Psammitichus garrisons were stationed at Elephantine against the Ethiopians, and another at the Pelusian Daphnæ against the Arabians and Syrians, and another at Marea against Libya; and even in my time garrisons of the Persians are stationed in the same places as they were in the time of Psammitichus, for they maintain guards at Elephantine and Daphnæ. Now, these Egyptians, after they had been on duty three years, were not relieved; therefore, having consulted together and come to an unanimous resolution, they all revolted from Psammitichus, and went to Ethiopia. Psammitichus, hearing of this, pursued them; and when he overtook them he entreated them by many arguments, and adjured them not to forsake the gods of their fathers, and their children and wives. But one of them is reported to have uncovered his private parts, and to have said, "that wheresoever these were, there they should find both children and wives." These men, when they arrived in Ethiopia, offered their services to the king of the Ethiopians, who made them the following recompence. There were certain Ethiopians disaffected towards him; these he bade them expel, and take possession of their land. By the settlement of these men among the Ethiopians, the Ethiopians became more civilized, and learned the manners of the Egyptians.

Now, for a voyage and land journey of four months, the Nile is known, in addition to the part of the stream that is in Egypt; for, upon computation, so many months are known to be spent by a person who travels from Elephantine to the Automoli. This river flows from the west and the setting of the sun; but beyond this no one is able to speak with certainty, for the rest of the country is desert by reason of the excessive heat. But I have heard the following account from certain Cyrenæans, who say that they went to the oracle of Ammon, and had a conversation with Etearchus, King of the Ammonians, and that, among other subjects, they happened to discourse about the Nile—that nobody knew its sources; whereupon Etearchus said that certain Nasamonians once came to him—this nation is Lybian, and inhabits the Syrtis, and the country for no great distance eastward of the Syrtis—and that when these Nasamonians arrived, and were asked if they could give any further information touching the deserts of Libya, they answered, that there were some daring youths amongst them, sons of powerful men; and that they, having reached man's estate, formed many other extravagant plans, and, moreover, chose five of their number by lot to explore the deserts of Libya, to see if they could make any further discovery than those who had penetrated the farthest. (For, as respects the parts of Libya along the Northern Sea, beginning from Egypt to the promontory of Solois, where is the extremity of Libya, Libyans and various nations of Libyans reach all along it, except those parts which are occupied by Grecians and

Phœnicians; but as respects the parts above the sea, and those nations which reach down to the sea, in the upper parts Libya is infested by wild beasts; and all beyond that is sand, dreadfully short of water, and utterly desolate.) *They further related*, "that when the young men deputed by their companions set out, well furnished with water and provisions, they passed first through the inhabited country; and having traversed this, they came to the region infested by wild beasts; and after this they crossed the desert, making their way towards the west; and when they had traversed much sandy ground, during a journey of many days, they at length saw some trees growing in a plain; and that they approached and began to gather the fruit that grew on the trees; and while they were gathering, some diminutive men, less than men of middle stature, came up, and having seized them carried them away; and that the Nasamonians did not at all understand their language, nor those who carried them off the language of the Nasamonians. However, they conducted them through vast morasses, and when they had passed these, they came to a city, in which all the inhabitants were of the same size as their conductors, and black in color: and by the city flowed a great river, running from the west to the east, and that crocodiles were seen in it." Thus far I have set forth the account of Etearchus the Ammonian; to which may be added, as the Cyrenæans assured me, "that he said the Nasamonians all returned safe to their own country, and that the men whom they came to were all necromancers." Etearchus also conjectured that this river, which flows by their city, is the Nile; and reason so evinces: for the Nile flows from Libya, and intersects it in the middle; and (as I conjecture, inferring things unknown from things known) it sets out from a point corresponding with the Ister. For the Ister, beginning from the Celts, and the city of Pyrene, divides Europe in its course; but the Celts are beyond the pillars of Hercules, and border on the territories of the Cynesians, who lie in the extremity of Europe to the westward; and the Ister terminates by flowing through all Europe into the Euxine Sea, where a Milesian colony is settled in Istria. Now the Ister, as it flows through a well-peopled country, is generally known; but no one is able to speak about the sources of the Nile, because Libya, through which it flows, is uninhabited and desolate. Respecting this stream, therefore, as far as I was able to reach by inquiry, I have already spoken. It however discharges itself into Egypt; and Egypt lies, as near as may be, opposite to the mountains of Cilicia; from whence to Sinope, on the Euxine Sea, is a five days' journey in a straight line to an active man; and Sinope is opposite to the Ister, where it discharges itself into the sea. So I think that the Nile, traversing the whole of Libya, may be properly compared with the Ister. Such, then, is the account that I am able to give respecting the Nile.

2. Webb's River must be traced to its connection with some portion of the old Nile.

When these two things have been accomplished, then, and not till then, can the mystery of the Nile be explained. The two countries through which the marvellous lacustrine river, the Lualaba, flows, with its manifold lakes and broad expanse of water, are Rua (the Uruwwa of Speke) and Manyuema. For the first time Europe is made aware that between the Tanganika and the known sources of the Congo there exist teeming millions of the negro race, who never saw, or heard of, the white people who make such a noisy and busy stir outside of Africa. Upon the minds of those who had the good fortune to see the first specimen of these remarkable white races in Dr. Livingstone, he seems to have made a favourable impression, though, through misunderstanding his object, and coupling him with the Arabs, who make horrible work there, his life was sought more than once. These two extensive countries, Rua and Manyuema, are populated by true heathens, governed, not as the sovereignties of Karagwah, Urundi, and Uganda, by despotic kings, but each village by its own sultan or lord. Thirty miles outside of their own immediate settlements, the most intelligent of these small chiefs seem to know nothing. Thirty miles from the Lualaba, there were but few people who had ever heard of the great river. Such ignorance among the natives of their own countries naturally increased the labours of Livingstone. Compared with these, all tribes and nations in Africa with whom Livingstone came in contact may be deemed civilized, yet, in the arts of home manufacture, these wild people of Manyuema were far superior to any he had seen. Where other tribes and nations contented themselves with hides and skins of animals thrown negligently over their shoulders, the people of Manyuema manufactured a cloth from fine grass, which may favourably compare with the finest grass cloth of India. They also know the art of dyeing them in various colours—black, yellow, and purple. The Wangwana, or freed-men of Zanzibar, struck with the beauty of the fabric, eagerly exchange their cotton cloths for fine grass cloth; and on almost every black man from Manyuema I have seen this native cloth converted into elegantly made damirs (Arabic)—short jackets. These countries are also very rich in ivory. The fever for going to Manyuema to exchange tawdry beads for its precious tusks, is of the same kind as that which impelled men to the gulches and placers of California, Colorado, Montana, and Idaho; after nuggets to Australia, and diamonds to Cape Colony. Manyuema is at present the El Dorado of the Arabs and the Wamrima tribes. It is only about four years since that the first Arab returned from Manyuema, with such wealth of ivory, and reports about the fabulous quantities found there, that ever since the old beaten tracks of Karagwah, Uganda, Ufipa, and Marungu, have been comparatively deserted. The people of Manyuema, ignorant of the value of the precious article, reared their huts upon ivory stanchions. Ivory pillars were common sights in Manyuema, and, hearing of these, one can no longer wonder at the ivory palace of Solomon. For generations they have used ivory tusks as door-posts and supports to the eaves, until they had become perfectly rotten and worthless. But the advent of the Arabs soon taught them the value of the article. It has now risen considerably in price, though still fabulously cheap. At Zanzibar, the value of ivory per frasilah of 35 lbs. weight is from $50 to $60, according to its quality. In Unyanyembe it is about $1·10 per pound, but in Manyuema it may be purchased for from half a cent to 1¼ cent's worth of copper per pound of ivory. The Arabs, however, have the knack of spoiling markets by their rapacity and cruelty. With muskets, a small party of Arabs is invincible against such people as those of Manyuema, who, until lately, never heard the sound of a gun. The discharge of a musket inspires mortal terror in them, and it is almost impossible to induce them to face the muzzle of a gun. They believe that the Arabs have stolen the lightning, and that against such people the bow and arrow can have little effect. They are by no means devoid of courage, and they have often declared that, were it not for the guns, not one Arab would leave the country alive; this tends to prove that they would willingly engage in fight with the strangers who have made themselves so detestable, were it not that the startling explosion of gunpowder inspires them with terror.

Into what country soever the Arabs enter, they contrive to render their name and race abominated. But the mainspring of it all is not the Arab's nature, color, or name, but simply the slave-trade. So long as the slave trade is permitted to be kept up at Zanzibar, so long will these otherwise enterprising people, the Arabs, kindle against them the hatred of the natives throughout Africa.

On the main line of travel from Zanzibar into the interior of Africa these acts of cruelty are unknown, for the very good reason that the natives having been armed with guns, and taught how to use those weapons, are by no means loth to do so whenever an opportunity presents itself. When, too late, they have perceived their folly in selling guns to the natives, the Arabs now begin to vow vengeance on the person who will in future sell a gun to a native. But they are all guilty of the same mistake, and it is strange they did not perceive that it was folly when they were doing so. In former days the Arab, when protected by his slave escort, armed with guns, could travel through Useguhha, Urori, Ukonongo, Ufipa, Karagwah, Unyoro, and Uganda, with only a stick in his hand; now, however, it is impossible for him or any one else to do so. Every step he takes. armed or unarmed, is fraught with danger. The Waseguhha, near the coast, detain him, and demand the tribute, or give him the option of war; entering Ugogo, he is subjected every day to the same oppressive demand, or to the fearful alternative. The Wanyamwezi also show their readiness to take the same advantage; the road to Karagwah is besieged with difficulties; the terrible Mirambo stands in the way, defeats their combined forces with ease, and makes raids even to the doors of their houses in Unyanyembe; and should they succeed in passing Mirambo, a chief—Swaruru—stands before them who demands tribute by the bale, and against whom it is useless to contend. These remarks have reference to the slave-trade inaugurated in Manyuema by the Arabs. Harassed on the road between Zanzibar and Unyanyembe by minatory natives, who with bloody hands are ready to avenge the slightest affront, the Arabs have refrained from kidnapping between the Tanganika and the sea; but in Manyuema, where the natives are timid, irresolute, and divided into small weak tribes, they recover their audacity, and exercise their kidnapping propensities unchecked. The accounts which the Doctor brings from that new region are most deplorable. He was an unwilling spectator of a horrible deed—a massacre committed on the inhabitants of a populous district who had assembled in the market-place on the banks of the Lualaba, as they had been accustomed to do for ages. It seems that the Wamanyuema are very fond of marketing, believing it to be the *summum bonum* of human enjoyment. They find endless pleasure in chaffering with might and main for the least mite of their currency—the last bead; and when they gain the point to which their peculiar talents are devoted, they feel intensely happy. The women are excessively fond of this marketing, and, as they are very beautiful, the market-place must possess considerable attractions for the male sex. It was on such a day, amidst such a scene, that Tagamoyo, a half-caste Arab, with his armed slave escort, commenced an indiscriminate massacre by firing volley after volley into the dense mass of human beings. It is supposed that there were about 2,000 present, and at the first sound of the firing these poor people all made a rush for their canoes. In the fearful hurry to avoid being shot, the canoes were paddled away by the first fortunate few who got possession of them; those that were not so fortunate sprang into the deep waters of the Lualaba, and though many of them became an easy prey to the voracious crocodiles which swarmed to the scene, the majority received their deaths from the bullets of the merciless Tagamoyo and his villanous band. The Doctor believes, as do the Arabs themselves, that about 400 people, mostly women and children, lost their lives, while many more were made slaves. This outrage is only one of many such he has unwillingly witnessed, and he is utterly unable to describe the feelings of loathing he feels for the inhuman perpetrators. Slaves from Manyuema command a higher price than those of any other country, because of their fine forms and general docility. The women, the Doctor said repeatedly, are remarkably pretty creatures, and have nothing, except the hair, in common with the negroes of the West Coast. They are of very light color, have fine noses, well-cut and not over-full lips, while the prognathous jaw is uncommon. These women are eagerly sought after as wives by the half-castes of the East Coast, and even the pure Omant Arabs do not disdain to take them in marriage. To the north of Manyuema, Livingstone came to a light-complexioned race, of the color of Portuguese, or our own Louisiana quadroons, who are very fine people, and singularly remarkable for commercial "'cuteness" and sagacity. The women are expert divers for oysters, which are found in great abundance in the Lualaba.

Rua, at a place called Katanga, is rich in copper. The copper-mines of this place have been worked for ages. In the bed of a stream, gold has been found, washed down in pencil-shaped pieces or in particles as large as split peas. Two Arabs have gone thither to prospect for this metal; but, as they are ignorant of the art of gulch-mining, it is scarcely possible that they will succeed. From these highly-important and interesting discoveries, Dr. Livingstone was turned back, when almost on the threshold of success, by the positive refusal of his men to accompany him further. They were afraid to go on unless accompanied by a large force of men; and, as these were not procurable in Manyuema, the Doctor reluctantly turned his face towards Ujiji.

It was a long and weary road back. The journey had now no interest for him. He had travelled the road before when going westward, full of high hopes and aspirations, impatient to reach the goal which promised him rest from his labors—now, returning unsuccessful, baffled, and thwarted, when almost in sight of the end, and having to travel the same path back on foot, with disappointed expectations and defeated hopes preying on his mind, no wonder that the old brave spirit almost succumbed, and the strong constitution almost went to wreck.

Livingstone arrived at Ujiji, October 16th, almost at death's door. On the way he had been trying to cheer himself up, since he had found it impossible to contend against the obstinacy of his men, with, "It won't take long; five or six months more; it matters not since it cannot be helped. I have got my goods in Ujiji, and can hire other people, and make a new start again." These are the words and hopes by which he tried to delude himself into the idea that all would be right yet; but imagine the shock he must have suffered, when he found that the man to whom was entrusted his goods for safe keeping had sold every bale for ivory.

The evening of the day Livingstone had returned to Ujiji, Susi and Chuma, two of his most faithful men, were seen crying bitterly. The Doctor asked of them what ailed them, and was then informed, for the first time, of the evil tidings that awaited him.

Said they, "All our things are sold, sir; Sherif has sold everything for ivory."

Later in the evening, Sherif came to see him, and shamelessly offered his hand, but Livingstone repulsed him, saying he could not shake hands with a thief. As an excuse, Sherif said he had divined on the Korân, and that this had told him the Hakim (Arabic for Doctor) was dead.

Livingstone was now destitute; he had just enough to keep him and his men alive for about a month, when he would be forced to beg from the Arabs.

The Doctor further stated, that when Speke gives the altitude of the Tanganika at only 1,800 feet above the sea, Speke must have fallen into that error by a frequent writing of the Anno Domini, a mere slip of the pen; for the altitude, as he makes it out, is 2,800 feet by boiling point, and a little over 3,000 feet by barometer.

The Doctor's complaints were many because slaves were sent to him, in charge of goods, after he had so often implored the people at Zanzibar to send him freemen. A very little effort on the part of those entrusted with the despatch of supplies to him might have enabled them to procure good and faithful freemen; but if they contented themselves, upon the receipt of a letter from Dr. Livingstone, with sending to Ludha Damji for men, it is no longer a matter of wonder that dishonest and incapable slaves were sent forward. It is no new fact that the Doctor has discovered when he states that a negro freeman is a hundred times more capable and trustworthy than a slave. Centuries ago Eumæus, the herdsman, said to Ulysses:

> Jove fixed it certain, that whatever day
> Makes man a slave, takes half his worth away.

Dr. Livingstone states that he has repeatedly enjoined on Dr. Kirk not to send him slaves. None knew better how trustless they were; and one can conceive—each time he was thwarted and baffled by these incapables—how hopeless his mission would seem to him. It must be for ever a matter of regret to the friends of both gentlemen that Dr. Livingstone's entreaties on this subject were not better understood.

There is one point, also, on which I wish to make some observations, and that is, on the "doctoring" of Livingstone's despatches. If a traveller in Central Africa discovers anything, whether it be a lake, mountain, plain, or river, and arrives at some conclusions respecting his discovery, his reasons, above all others, should have greatest weight. Often the reasons are manifold—too many, at least, to be written in a despatch—and he is compelled, for lack of space, to withhold them, until such time as he can embody them in a book. In such a case, it must be obvious to all, that easy-chair geographers, in the absence of accurate data, cannot improve upon the despatch of the original discoverer and explorer; and no opinions, advanced with the view of disproving the fact, should justify readers in attaching weight or importance to them.

Livingstone has refrained from communicating with the Royal Geographical Society as a body; but he wrote to his friend, Sir Roderick Murchison, and, whatever was contained in the lengthy letters, the President of the Society would be justified in laying them—as he was expected to do—before the august scientific body of which he was chief. But, as Livingstone has related to me, and as he has written to other friends, the reason that he has refrained from giving detailed disclosures is his fear that his despatches may be subjected to captious emendations, to suit pet theories—many of the critics being oblivious of the fact that what he relates he has been permitted to know only after persevering exploration.

It is a lamentable thing, truly, that discoverers may not utter what they know to be indisputable truths, without being supposed to belong to a partisan clique to unsettle the pet theories of geographers at home, or without being accused of "distorting well-known facts." If the "learned Mr. Cooley" has drawn from the hearsay of an Arab the outlines of a large lake which occupies the whole of Central Africa, embracing the several lakes of Nyassa, Tanganika, and the N'Yanza, why should he not admit at once that he is in error, when Livingstone, Burton, Speke, Grant, Wakefield, New, Roscher, Vonderdecken, and Baker, prove that there are several lakes, far and wide apart, bearing different names? There is very little extra labor in sketching six lakes more than there is in the outlining of one large one. And the testimony of such an array of travellers, surely, ought to have greater weight than that of one Arab. Yet Mr. Cooley accuses me of deafness, or misapprehension, when I state that the Lake Tanganika is a separate body of water by itself; and he has been angry with Captain Burton ever since his discovery of that lake. With all his erudition on geographical matters, he yet lacks the moral courage of confessing himself in error. But Mr. Cooley is only a type of a small body of geographers; this Cooleyism —despite large experience, erudition, and high faculties —evidently is contagious; for Mr. F. Galton, with a wonderful suavity of manner, and an elongated smile, called my defence of the explorer "a sensational story;"

while Dr. Beke, with all the persistence of a man with a hobby, emphatically declared that Livingstone had NOT discovered the sources of the Nile. This emphatic declaration of a hastily-formed opinion cannot, surely, be anything but deplorable fatuity on the part of Dr. Beke. Neither of the three gentlemen whose names I have mentioned are entitled to more credence than the great explorer, who has written his notes on this point in lat. S. 4° and long. E. 25° in Central Africa.

Well, Doctor Livingstone, despising this Cooleyism, which means obstinacy, intolerance, and narrow-mindedness, declares he will keep his notes to himself; and indeed, in my humble opinion, he has done very right. The Geographical Society was instituted to disseminate and promote the knowledge of the true geography of all countries. If the Society were leavened with this Cooleyism, and resolutely closed its ears against the revelations of explorers, how could it ever attain the object for which it was constituted and incorporated? Would such conduct be encouraging to explorers? If the members allowed themselves to be swayed by petty jealousies, pet fancies, crude and impossible theories, would men go and expend thousands of dollars to the enlightenment of the world respecting the mysterious interior of Africa?

I have advanced no opinions of my own respecting anything I have not seen, as I am not ambitious of being vilified more than I have been already. I am, unfortunately, under the ban of the displeasure of some geographers, because, unconsciously, I have performed what they desired to have had done by one of their own number.

I believed—and so, indeed, did all the world—that their great Associate was an object of concern to them; —they were anxious to know—so they said—if David Livingstone was alive. This anxiety was shared by Americans; and an American newspaper proprietor suddenly undertook to despatch a man on a mission of search and relief to Central Africa. The man selected happened to be successful, returned back to civilisation, and proclaimed that Livingstone, the great explorer, was alive. Whereupon the news was pooh-poohed! The President of the Royal Geographical Society declared it to be nonsense; the Vice-President declared it to be a sensational story; Cooleyism declared it to be deafness and misapprehension; and a Beke declared that the *theory* of Dr. Livingstone was impossible. Nearly all England, and a great part of America, was plunged into perplexity; but, gradually, proofs were brought forward of the great fact, that Livingstone was not only alive, but that he wrote every letter which purported to have been written by him, without a single phrase, suggestion, or interpolation from any other hand. Then began attacks on the character of the unfortunate newspaper correspondent. One individual called him a "charlatan, and a liar;" another insinuated that he was anything but what he professed to be; while others thought that the much-abused journalist had stolen the despatches from a messenger; and much else of everything that was vile and unjust.

Permit the humble newspaper correspondent to ask all geographers, editors, reviewers, critics, and scandal-mongers: If you had continued your debating, theorising and discussing, wrangling, guessing and speculating —good God! gentlemen, between you all, whither had David Livingstone, the illustrious explorer, gone, if some one had not conveyed to him comfort, health, and aid?

Little did Dr. Livingstone think that his humble friend would be rewarded by attacks such as these, and little thought I that my humble efforts, which had been carried out with singleness of purpose and unconsciousness of the possibility of envy or malice, would have been so received. In my innocence I thought I had only to tell my story honestly and truly, and that it would be at once received by all without cavil and without doubt, and it is not unnatural that I should feel aggrieved at attacks upon my honour and my veracity in quarters where I had least expected it, and where I had most hoped for a different reception.

The Doctor entertained grave doubts as to the propriety of sending any despatches to the Royal Geographical Society, without a guaranty that the information conveyed to it would not be made the subject of pecuniary profit. For the private information of the members he was very willing to relate what he knew; but he was unwilling that his discoveries should be at the beck and call of any member who had a desire to enrich himself at his expense. He also complained that a certain member had unscrupulously made use of a rough sketch-map he had sent to the Society, to illustrate his route; and, on Livingstone's return, when he declared his wish to have a correct map made, according to observations verified and corrected by the Cape of Good Hope Observatory, this member turned round, and informed him how he had been working at that map five or six months, and he could not think of making a new one unless he was paid something like £200 for his trouble. Such facts as these Dr. Livingstone complains of. Of the Royal Geographical Society, as a body, he entertains the highest respect, and thinks with pride of his relations with them. He complains only against the few members whom he supposes to have "doctored" his despatches, dogmatized and theorized against him, and altered his maps, to suit their own idiopathies and Cooleyistic fancies. But though these members are few, they are too influential to be passed by without notice.

We passed several happy days at Ujiji, and it was time we were now preparing for our cruise on the Tanganika. Livingstone was improving every day under the different diet which my cook furnished him. I could give him no such suppers as that which Jupiter and Mercury received at the cottage of Baucis and Philemon. We had no berries of chaste Minerva, pickled cherries, endive, radishes, dried figs, dates, fragrant apples, and grapes; but we had cheese, and butter which I made myself, new-laid eggs, chickens, roast mutton, fish from the lake, rich curds and cream, wine from the Guinea palm, egg-plants, cucumbers, sweet potatoes, pea-nuts, and beans, white honey from Ukaranga, luscious singwe—a plum-like fruit—from the forests of Ujiji, and corn scones and dampers, in place of wheaten bread.

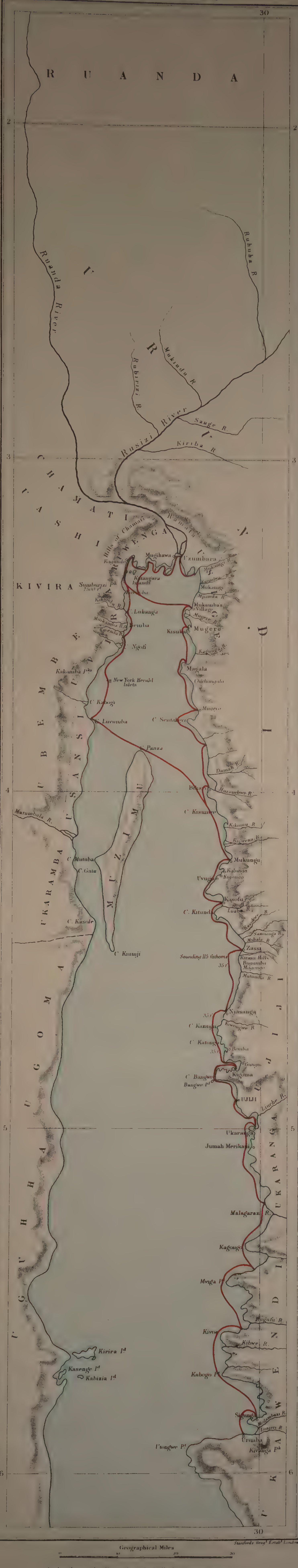
During the noontide heats we sat under our veranda discussing our various projects, and in the early morning and evening we sought the shores of the lake—promenading up and down the beach to breathe the cool breezes which ruffled the surface of the water, and rolled the unquiet surf far up on the smooth and whitened shore.

It was the dry season, and we had most lovely weather; the temperature never was over 80° in the shade.

The market-place overlooking the broad silver water afforded us amusement and instruction. Representatives of most of the tribes dwelling near the lake were daily found there. There were the agricultural and pastoral Wajiji, with their flocks and herds; there were the fishermen from Ukaranga and Kaole, from beyond Bangwe, and even from Urundi, with their whitebait, which they called *dogara*, the silurus, the perch, and other fish; there were the palm-oil merchants, principally from Ujiji and Urundi, with great five-gallon pots full of reddish oil, of the consistency of butter; there were the salt merchants from the salt-plains of Uvinza and Uhha; there were the ivory merchants from Uvira and Usowa; there were the canoe-makers from Ugoma and Urundi; there were the cheap-Jack pedlers from Zanzibar, selling flimsy prints, and brokers exchanging blue mutunda beads for sami-sami, and sungomazzi, and sofi. The sofi beads are like pieces of thick clay-pipe stem about half an inch long, and are in great demand here.

Here were found Waguhha, Wamanyuema, Wagoma, Wavira, Wasige, Warundi, Wajiji, Waha, Wavinza, Wasowa, Wangwana, Wakawendi, Arabs, and Wasawahili, engaged in noisy chaffer and barter. Bareheaded, and almost barebodied, the youths made love to the dark-skinned and woolly-headed Phyllises, who knew not how to blush at the ardent gaze of love, as their white sisters; old matrons gossiped, as the old women do everywhere; the children played, and laughed, and struggled, as children of our own lands; and the old men, leaning on their spears or bows, were just as garrulous in the Place de Ujiji as the aged elders of other climes.

STANLEY'S SURVEY
OF THE NORTHERN HALF OF
LAKE TANGANIKA



London: Sampson Low, Marston, Low & Searle. New York: Scribner, Armstrong & Co.

VIEW ON LAKE TANGANIKA.

CHAPTER XIII.

OUR CRUISE ON THE TANGANIKA.

"I distinctly deny that 'any misleading by my instructions from the Royal Geographical Society as to the position of the White Nile' made me unconscious of the vast importance of ascertaining the direction of the Rusizi River. The fact is, we did our best to reach it, and we failed."—Burton's *Zanzibar*.

"The universal testimony of the natives to the Rusizi River being an influent is the most conclusive argument that it does run out of the lake."—Speke.

"I therefore claim for Lake Tanganika the honour of being the SOUTHERNMOST RESERVOIR OF THE NILE, until some more positive evidence, by actual observation, shall otherwise determine it."—Findlay, R.G.S.

HAD Livingstone and myself, after making up our minds to visit the northern head of the Lake Tanganika, been compelled by the absurd demands or fears of a crew of Wajiji to return to Unyanyembe without having resolved the problem of the Rusizi River, we had surely deserved to be greeted by everybody at home with a universal giggling and cackling. But Capt. Burton's failure to settle it, by engaging Wajiji, and that ridiculous savage chief Kannena, had warned us of the negative assistance we could expect from such people for the solution of a geographical problem. We had enough good sailors with us, who were entirely under our commands. Could we but procure the loan of a canoe, we thought all might be well.

Upon application to Sayd bin Majid, he at once generously permitted us to use his canoe for any service for which we might require it. After engaging two Wajiji guides at two doti each, we prepared to sail from the port of Ujiji, in about a week or so after my entrance into Ujiji.

I have already stated how it was that the Doctor and I undertook the exploration of the northern half of the Tanganika and the River Rusizi, about which so much had been said and written.

Before embarking on this enterprise, Dr. Livingstone had not definitely made up his mind which course he should take, as his position was truly deplorable. His servants consisted of Susi, Chumah, Hamoydah, Gardner, and Halimah, the female cook and wife of Hamoydah; to these was added Kaif-Halek, the man whom I compelled to follow me from Unyanyembe to deliver the Livingstone letters to his master.

Whither could Dr. Livingstone march with these few men, and the few table-cloths and beads that remained to him from the store squandered by the imbecile Sherif? This was a puzzling question. Had Dr. Livingstone been in good health, his usual hardihood and indomitable spirit had answered it in a summary way. He might have borrowed some cloth from Sayd bin Majid at an exorbitant price, sufficient to bring him to Unyanyembe and the sea-coast. But how long would he have been compelled to sit down at Ujiji, waiting and waiting for the goods that were said to be at Unyanyembe, a prey to high expectations, hoping day after day that the war would end—hoping week after week to hear that his goods were coming? Who knows how long his weak health had borne up against the several disappointments to which he would be subjected?

Though it was with all due deference to Dr. Livingstone's vast experience as a traveller, I made bold to suggest the following courses to him, either of which he could adopt:

1st. To go home, and take the rest he so well deserved, and, as he appeared then, to be so much in need of.

2nd. To proceed to Unyanyembe, receive his goods, and enlist pagazis sufficient to enable him to travel anywhere, either to Manyuema or Rua, and settle the Nile problem, which he said he was in a fair way of doing.

3rd. To proceed to Unyanyembe, receive his caravan, enlist men, and try to join Sir Samuel Baker, either by going to Muanza, and sailing through Ukerewe or Victoria N'Yanza in my boats—which I should put up—to Mtesa's palace at Uganda, thus passing by Mirambo and Swaruru of Usui, who would rob him if he took the usual caravan road to Uganda; thence from Mtesa to Kamrasi, King of Unyoro, where he would of course hear of the great white man who was said to be with a large force of men at Gondokoro.

4th. To proceed to Unyanyembe, receive his caravan, enlist men, and return to Ujiji, and back to Manyuema by way of Uguhha.

5th. To proceed by way of the Rusizi through Ruanda, and so on to Itara, Unyoro, and Baker.

For either course, whichever he thought most expedient, I and my men would assist him as escort and carriers, to the best of our ability. If he should elect to go home, I informed him I should be proud to escort him, and consider myself subject to his commands—travelling only when he desired, and camping only when he gave the word.

6th. The last course which I suggested to him, was to permit me to escort him to Unyanyembe, where he could receive his own goods, and where I could deliver up to him a large supply of first-class cloth and beads, guns and ammunition, cooking utensils, clothing, boats, tents, &c., and where he could rest in a comfortable house, while I would hurry down to the coast, organize a new expedition composed of fifty or sixty faithful men, well armed, by whom I could send an additional supply of needful luxuries in the shape of creature comforts.

After long consideration, he resolved to adopt the last course, as it appeared to him to be the most feasible one, and the best, though he did not hesitate to comment upon the unaccountable apathy of his agent at Zanzibar, which had caused him so much trouble and vexation, and weary marching of hundreds of miles.

Our ship—though nothing more than a cranky canoe hollowed out of the noble mvule tree in Ugoma—was an African Argo, bound on a nobler enterprise than its famous Grecian prototype. We were bound upon no mercenary errand, after no Golden Fleece, but perhaps to discover a highway for commerce which should bring the ships of the Nile up to Ujiji, Usowa, and far Marungu. We did not know what we might discover on our voyage to the northern head of the Tanganika; we supposed that we should find the Rusizi to be an effluent of the Tanganika, flowing down to the Albert or the Victoria N'Yanza. We were told by natives and Arabs that the Rusizi ran out of the lake.

Sayd bin Majid had stated that his canoe would carry twenty-five men, and 3,500 lbs. of ivory. Acting upon this information, we embarked twenty-five men, several of whom had stored away bags of salt for the purposes of trade with the natives; but upon pushing off from the shore near Ujiji, we discovered the boat was too heavily laden, and was down to the gunwale. Returning in-shore, we disembarked six men, and unloaded the bags of salt, which left us with sixteen rowers, the Arab boy Selim, Ferajji the cook, and the two Wajiji guides.

Having thus properly trimmed our boat we again pushed off, and steered her head for Bangwe Island, which was distant four or five miles from the Bunder of Ujiji. While passing this island the guides informed us that the Arabs and Wajiji took shelter on it during an incursion of the Watuta—which took place some years ago—when they came and invaded Ujiji, and massacred several of the inhabitants. Those who took refuge on the island were the only persons who escaped the fire and sword with which the Watuta had visited Ujiji.

After passing the island and following the various bends and indentations of the shore, we came in sight of the magnificent bay of Kigoma, which strikes one at once as being an excellent harbor from the variable winds which blow over the Tanganika. About 10 A.M. we drew in towards the village of Kigoma, as the east wind was then rising, and threatened to drive us to sea. With those travelling parties who are not in much hurry Kigoma is always the first port for canoes bound north from Ujiji. The next morning at dawn we struck tent, stowed baggage, cooked, and drank coffee, and set off northward again.

The lake was quite calm; its waters, of a dark-green color, reflected the serene blue sky above. The hippopotami came up to breathe in alarmingly close proximity to our canoe, and then plunged their heads again, as if they were playing hide-and-seek with us. Arriving opposite the high wooded hills of Bemba, and being a mile from shore, we thought it a good opportunity to sound the depth of the water, whose color seemed to indicate great depth. We found thirty-five fathoms at this place.

Our canoeing of this day was made close in-shore, with a range of hills, beautifully wooded and clothed with green grass, sloping abruptly, almost precipitously, into the depths of the fresh-water sea, towering immediately above us, and as we rounded the several capes or points, roused high expectations of some new wonder, or some exquisite picture being revealed as the deep folds disclosed themselves to us. Nor were we disappointed. The wooded hills, with a wealth of boscage of beautiful trees, many of which were in bloom, and crowned with floral glory, exhaling an indescribably sweet fragrance, lifting their heads in varied contour —one pyramidal, another a truncated cone; one table-topped, another ridgy, like the steep roof of a church; one a glorious heave with an even outline, another jagged and savage—interested us considerably; and the pretty pictures, exquisitely pretty, at the head of the several bays, evoked many an exclamation of admiration.

It was the most natural thing in the world that I should feel deepest admiration for these successive pictures of quiet scenic beauty, but the Doctor had quite as much to say about them as I had myself, though, as one might imagine, satiated with pictures of this kind far more beautiful—far more wonderful—he should long ago have expended all his powers of admiring scenes in nature.

From Bagamoyo to Ujiji I had seen nothing to compare to them—none of these fishing settlements under the shade of a grove of palms and plantains, banians and mimosa, with cassava gardens to the right and left of palmy forests, and patches of luxuriant grain looking down upon a quiet bay, whose calm waters at the early morn reflected the beauties of the hills which sheltered them from the rough and boisterous tempests that so often blew without.

The fishermen evidently think themselves comfortably situated. The lake affords them all the fish they require, more than enough to eat, and the industrious a great deal to sell. The steep slopes of the hills, cultivated by the housewives, contribute plenty of grain, such as dourra and Indian corn, besides cassava, ground-nuts or pea-nuts, and sweet potatoes. The palm trees afford oil, and the plantains an abundance of delicious fruit. The ravines and deep gullies supply them with the tall shapely trees from which they cut out their canoes. Nature has supplied them bountifully with all that a man's heart or stomach can desire. It is while looking at what seems both externally and internally complete and perfect happiness that the thought occurs—how must these people sigh, when driven across the dreary wilderness that intervenes between the lake country and the sea-coast, for such homes as these!—those unfortunates who, bought by the Arabs for a couple of doti, are taken away to Zanzibar to pick cloves, or do hamal work!

As we drew near Niasanga, our second camp, the comparison between the noble array of picturesque hills and receding coves, with their pastoral and agricultural scenes, and the shores of old Pontus, was very great. A few minutes before we hauled our canoe ashore, two little incidents occurred. I shot an enormous dog-faced monkey, which measured from nose to end of tail 4 feet 9 inches; the face was 8½ inches long, its body weighed about 100 lbs. It had no mane or tuft at end of tail, but the body was covered with long wiry hair. Numbers of these specimens were seen, as well as of the active cat-headed and long-tailed smaller ones. The other was the sight of a large lizard, about 2 ft. 6 in. long, which waddled into cover before we had well noticed it. The Doctor thought it the *Monitor terrestris*.

We encamped under a banian tree; our surroundings were the now light-grey waters of the Tanganika, an amphitheatral range of hills, and the village of Niasanga, situated at the mouth of the rivulet Niasanga, with its grove of palms, thicket of plantains, and plots of grain and cassava fields. Near our tent were about half-a-dozen canoes, large and small, belonging to the villagers. Our tent door fronted the glorious expanse of fresh water, inviting the breeze, and the views of distant Ugoma and Ukaramba, and the Island of Muzimu, whose ridges appeared of a deep-blue color. At our feet were the clean and well-washed pebbles, borne upward into tiny lines and heaps by the restless surf. A search amongst these would reveal to us the material of the mountain heaps which rose behind and on our right and left; there was schist, conglomerate sandstone, a hard white clay, an ochreish clay containing much iron, polished quartz, &c. Looking out of our tent, we could see a line on each side of us of thick tall reeds, which formed something like a hedge between the beach and the cultivated area around Niasanga. Among birds seen here, the most noted were the merry wagtails, which are regarded as good omens and messengers of peace by the natives, and any harm done unto them is quickly resented, and is fineable. Except to the mischievously inclined, they offer no inducement to commit violence. On landing, they flew to meet us, balancing themselves in the air in front, within easy reach of our hands. The other birds were crows, turtle-doves, fish-hawks, kingfishers, ibis nigra and ibis religiosa, flocks of whydah birds, geese, darters, paddy birds, kites, and eagles.

At this place the Doctor suffered from diarrhœa—it is his only weak point, he says; and, as I afterwards found, it is a frequent complaint with him. Whatever disturbed his mind, or any irregularity in eating, was sure to end in diarrhœa. With me it was quite the reverse; any exposure to malaria, encamping near a fetid swamp, or mind disturbed, was sure to produce excessive costiveness, and perhaps an attack of ague.

The third day of our journey on the Tanganika brought us to Zassi River and village, after a four hours' pull. Along the line of road the mountains rose 2,000 and 2,500 feet above the waters of the lake. I imagined the scenery getting more picturesque and animated at every step, and thought it by far lovelier than anything seen near Lake George or on the Hudson. The cosy nooks at the head of the many small bays constitute most admirable pictures, filled in as they are with the ever-beautiful feathery palms and broad green plantain fronds. These nooks have all been taken possession of by fishermen, and their conically beehive-shaped huts always peep from under the frondage. The shores are thus extremely populous; every terrace, small plateau, and bit of level ground is occupied.

Zassi is easily known by a group of conical hills which rise near by, and are called Kirassa. Opposite to these, at the distance of about a mile from shore, we sounded, and obtained 35 fathoms, as on the previous day. Getting out a mile further, I let go the whole length of my line, 115 fathoms, and obtained no bottom. In drawing it up again the line parted, and I lost the lead, with three-fourths of the line. The Doctor stated, apropos of this, that he had sounded opposite the lofty Kabogo, south of Ujiji, and obtained the great depth of 300 fathoms. He also lost his lead and 100 fathoms of his line, but he had nearly 900 fathoms left, and this was in the canoe. We hoped to use this long sounding line in going across from the eastern to the western shore.

On the fourth day we arrived at Nyabigma, a sandy island in Urundi. We had passed the boundary line between Ujiji and Urundi half-an-hour before arriving at Nyabigma. The Mshala River is considered by both nations to be the proper divisional line; though there are parties of Warundi who have emigrated beyond the frontier into Ujiji; for instance, the Mutware and villagers of populous Kagunga, distant an hour north from Zassi. There are also several small parties of Wajiji, who have taken advantage of the fine lands in the deltas of the Kasokwe, Namusinga, and Luaba Rivers, the two first of which enter the Tanganika in this bay, near the head of which Nyabigma is situated.

From Nyabigma, a pretty good view of the deep curve in the great mountain range which stretches from Cape Kazinga and terminates at Cape Kasofu, may be obtained—a distance of twenty or twenty-five miles. It is a most imposing scene, this great humpy, ridgy, and irregular line of mountains. Deep ravines and chasms afford outlets to the numerous streams and rivers which take their rise in the background; the pale fleecy ether almost always shrouds its summit. From its base extends a broad alluvial plain, rich beyond description, teeming with palms and plantains, and umbrageous trees. Villages are seen in clusters everywhere. Into this alluvial plain run the Luaba, or Ruaba River, on the north side of Cape Kitunda, and the Kasokwe, Namusinga, and Mshala Rivers, on the south side of the cape. All the deltas of rivers emptying into the Tanganika are hedged in on all sides with a thick growth of matete, a gigantic species of grass, and papyrus. In some deltas, as that of Luaba and Kasokwe, morasses have been formed, in which the matete and papyrus jungle is impenetrable. In the depths of them are quiet and deep pools, frequented by various aquatic birds, such as geese, ducks, snipes, widgeons, kingfishers and ibis, cranes and storks, and pelicans. To reach their haunts is, however, a work of great difficulty to the sportsman in quest of game; a work often attended with great danger, from the treacherous nature of these morasses, as well as from the dreadful attacks of fever which, in these regions, invariably follow wet feet and wet clothes.

At Nyabigma we prepared, by distributing ten rounds of ammunition to each of our men, for a tussle with the Warundi of two stages ahead, should they invite it by a too forward exhibition of their prejudice to strangers.

At dawn of the fifth day we quitted the haven of Nyabigma Island, and in less than an hour had arrived off Cape Kitunda. This cape is a low platform of conglomerate sandstone, extending for about eight miles from the base of the great mountain curve which gives birth to the Luaba and its sister streams. Crossing the deep bay, at the head of which is the delta of the Luaba, we came to Cape Kasofu. Villages are numerous in this vicinity. From hence we obtained a view of a series of points or capes, Kigongo, Katunga, and Buguluka, all of which we passed before coming to a halt at the pretty position of Mukungu.

At Mukungu, where we stopped on the fifth day, we were asked for honga, or tribute. The cloth and beads upon which we subsisted during our lake voyage were mine, but the Doctor, being the elder of the two, more experienced, and the "big man" of the party, had the charge of satisfying all such demands. Many and many a time had I gone through the tedious and soul-wearying task of settling the honga, and I was quite curious to see how the great traveller would perform the work.

The Mateko (a man inferior to a Mutware) of Mukungu asked for two and a half doti. This was the extent of the demand, which he made known to us a little after dark. The Doctor asked if nothing had been brought to us. He was answered, "No, it was too late to get anything now; but, if we paid the honga, the Mateko would be ready to give us something when we came back." Livingstone, upon hearing this, smiled, and the Mateko being then and there in front of him, he said to him, "Well, if you can't get us anything now, and intend to give us something when we return, we had better keep the honga until then." The Mateko was rather taken aback at this, and demurred to any such proposition. Seeing that he was dissatisfied, we urged him to bring one sheep—one little sheep—for our stomachs were nearly empty, having been waiting more than half a day for it. The appeal was successful, for the old man hastened, and brought us a lamb and a three-gallon pot of sweet but strong zogga, or palm toddy, and in return the Doctor gave him two and a half doti of cloth. The lamb was killed, and, our digestions being good, its flesh agreed with us; but, alas, for the effects of zogga, or palm toddy! Susi, the invaluable adjunct of Dr. Livingstone, and Bombay, the headman of my caravan, were the two charged with watching the canoe; but, having imbibed too freely of this intoxicating toddy, they slept heavily, and in the morning the Doctor and I had to regret the loss of several valuable and indispensable things; among which may be mentioned the Doctor's 900-fathom sounding-line, 500 rounds of pin, rim, and central-fire cartridges for my arms, and ninety musket bullets, also belonging to me. Besides these, which were indispensable in hostile Warundi, a large bag of flour and the Doctor's entire stock of white sugar were stolen. This was the third time that my reliance in Bombay's trustworthiness resulted in a great loss to me, and for the ninety-ninth time I had to regret bitterly having placed such entire confidence in Speke's and Grant's loud commendation of him. It was only the natural cowardice of ignorant thieves that prevented the savages from taking the boat and its entire contents, together with Bombay and Susi as slaves. I can well imagine the joyful surprise which must have been called forth at the sight and exquisite taste of the Doctor's sugar, and the wonder with which they must have regarded the strange ammunition of the Wasungu. It is to be sincerely hoped they did not hurt themselves with the explosive bullets and rim cartridges through any ignorance of the nature of their deadly contents; in which case the box and its contents would prove a very Pandora's casket.

Much grieved at our loss, we set off on the sixth day at the usual hour on our watery journey. We coasted close to the several low headlands formed by the rivers Kigwena, Kikumu, and Kisunwe; and when any bay promised to be interesting steered the canoe according to its indentations. While travelling on the water—each day brought forth similar scenes—on our right rose the mountains of Urundi, now and then disclosing the ravines through which the several rivers and streams issued into the great lake; at their base were the alluvial plains, where flourished the oil palm and grateful plantain, while scores of villages were grouped under their shade. Now and then we passed long narrow strips of pebbly or sandy beach, whereon markets were improvised for selling fish and the staple products of the respective communities. Then we passed broad swampy morasses, formed by the numerous streams which the mountains discharged, where the matete and papyrus flourished. Now the mountains approached to the water; their sides descending abruptly to the water's edge, then they receded into deep folds, at the base of which was sure to be seen an alluvial plain from one to eight miles broad. Almost constantly we observed canoes being punted vigorously close to the surf, in fearless defiance of a catastrophe, such as a capsize and gobbling-up by voracious crocodiles. Sometimes we sighted a canoe a short distance ahead of us; whereupon our men, with song and chorus, would exert themselves to the utmost to overtake it. Upon observing our efforts, the natives would bend themselves to their tasks, and paddling standing and stark naked, give us ample opportunities for studying at our leisure comparative anatomy. Or we saw a group of fishermen lazily reclining *in puris naturalibus* on the beach, regarding with curious eye the canoes as they passed their neighbourhood; then we passed a flotilla of canoes, their owners sitting quietly in their huts, busily plying the rod and hook, or casting their nets, or a couple of men arranging their long drag nets close in shore for a haul; or children sporting fearlessly in the water, with their mothers looking on approvingly from under the shade of a tree, from which I infer that there are not many crocodiles in the lake, except in the neighbourhood of the large rivers.

After passing the low headland of Kisunwe, formed by the Kisunwe River, we came in view of Murembwe Cape, distant about four or five miles: the intervening ground being low land, a sandy and pebbly beach. Close to the beach are scores of villages, while the crowded shore indicates the populousness of the place beyond. About half way between Cape Kisunwe and Murembwe, is a cluster of villages called Bikari, which has a mutware who is in the habit of taking honga. As we were rendered unable to cope for any length of time with any mischievously inclined community, all villages having a bad reputation with the Wajiji were avoided by us. But even the Wajiji guides were sometimes mistaken, and led us more than once into dangerous places. The guides evidently had no objections to halt at Bikari, as it was the second camp from Mukungu; because with them a halt in the cool shade of plantains was infinitely preferable to sitting like carved pieces of wood in a cranky canoe. But before they stated their objections and preferences, the Bikari people called to us in a loud voice to come ashore, threatening us with the vengeance of the great Wami if we did not halt. As the voices were anything but siren-like, we obstinately refused to accede to the request. Finding threats of no avail, they had recourse to stones, and, accordingly, flung them at us in a most hearty manner. As one came within a foot of my arm, I suggested that a bullet be sent in return in close proximity to their feet; but Livingstone, though he said nothing, yet showed plainly enough that he did not quite approve of this. As these demonstrations of hostility were anything but welcome, and as we saw signs of it almost every time we came opposite to a village, we kept on our way until we came to Murembwe Point, which, being a delta of a river of the same name, was well protected by a breadth of thorny jungle, spiky cane, and a thick growth of reed and papyrus, from which the boldest Mrundi might well shrink, especially if he called to mind that beyond this inhospitable swamp were the guns of the strangers his like had so rudely challenged. We drew our canoe ashore here, and, on a limited area of clean sand, Ferajji, our rough-and-ready cook, lit his fire, and manufactured for us a supply of most delicious Mocha coffee. Despite the dangers which still beset us, we were quite happy, and seasoned our meal with a little moral philosophy, which lifted us unconsciously into infinitely superior beings to the pagans by whom we were surrounded—upon whom we now looked down, under the influence of Mocha coffee and moral philosophy, with calm contempt, not unmixed with a certain amount of compassion. The Doctor related some experiences he had had among people of similar disposition, but did not fail to ascribe them, with the wisdom of a man of ripe experiences, to the unwise conduct of the Arabs and half-castes; in this opinion I unreservedly concur.

From Murembwe Point, having finished our coffee and ended our discourse on ethics, we proceeded on our voyage, steering for Cape Sentakeyi, which, though it was eight or ten miles away, we hoped to make before dark. The Wangwana pulled with right good will, but ten hours went by, and night was drawing near, and we were still far from Sentakeyi. As it was a fine moonlight night, and we were fully alive to the dangerous position in which we might find ourselves, they consented to pull an hour or two more. About 8 P.M., we pulled in shore for a deserted spot—a clean shelf of sand, about thirty feet long by ten deep, from which a clay bank rose about ten or twelve feet above, while on each side there were masses of disintegrated rock. Here we thought, that by preserving some degree of silence, we might escape observation, and consequent annoyance, for a few hours, when, being rested, we might continue our journey. Our kettle was boiling for tea, and the men had built a little fire for themselves, and had filled their black earthen pot with water for porridge, when our look-outs perceived dark forms creeping towards our bivouac. Being hailed, they at once came forward, and saluted us with the native "Wake." Our guides explained that we were Wangwana, and intended to camp until morning, when, if they had anything to sell, we should be glad to trade with them. They said they were rejoiced to hear this, and after they had exchanged a few words more—during which time we observed that they were taking mental notes of the camp—they went away. Upon leaving, they promised to return in the morning with food, and make friends with us. While drinking our tea, the look-outs warned us of the approach of a second party, which went through the same process of saluting and observing as the first had done. These also went away, over-exuberant, as I thought, and were shortly succeeded by a third party, who came and went as the others had. From all this we inferred that the news was spreading rapidly through the villages about, and we had noticed two canoes passing backwards and forwards with rather more haste than we deemed usual or necessary. We had good cause to be suspicious; it is not customary for people (at least, between Ujiji and Zanzibar) to be about visiting and saluting after dark, under any pretence; it is not permitted to persons to prowl about camp after dark without being shot at; and this going backward and forward, this ostentatious exuberance of joy at the arrival of a small party of Wangwana, which in many parts of Urundi would be regarded as a very common event, was altogether very suspicious. While the Doctor and I were arriving at the conclusion that these movements were preliminary to or significant of hostility, a fourth body, very boisterous and loud, came and visited us. Our supper had been by this time despatched, and we thought it high time to act. The fourth party having gone with extravagant manifestations of delight, the men were hurried into the canoe, and, when all were seated, and the look-outs embarked, we quietly pushed off, but not a moment too soon. As the canoe was gliding from the darkened light that surrounded us, I called the Doctor's attention to several dark forms; some of whom were crouching behind the rocks on our right, and others scrambling over them to obtain good or better positions; at the same time people were approaching from the left of our position, in the same suspicious way; and directly a voice hailed us from the top of the clay bank overhanging the sandy shelf where we had lately been resting. "Neatly done," cried the Doctor, as we were shooting through the water, leaving the discomfited would-be robbers behind us. Here, again, my hand was stayed from planting a couple of good shots, as a warning to them in future from molesting strangers, by the mere presence of the Doctor, who, as I thought, if it were actually necessary, would not hesitate to give the word.

After pulling six hours more, during which we had rounded Cape Sentakeyi, we stopped at the small fishing village of Mugeyo, where we were permitted to sleep unmolested. At dawn we continued our journey, and about 8 A.M. arrived at the village of the friendly Mutware of Magala. We had pulled for eighteen hours at a stretch, which, at the rate of two miles and a half per hour, would make forty-five miles. Taking bearings from our camp at Cape Magala, one of the most prominent points in travelling north from Ujiji, we found that the large island of Muzimu, which had been in sight ever since rounding Cape Bangwe, near Ujiji Bunder, bore about south-south-west, and that the western shore had considerably approached to the eastern; the breadth of the lake being at this point about eight or ten miles. We had a good view of the western highlands, which seemed to be of an average height, about 3,000 feet above the lake. Luhanga Peak, rising a little to the north of west from Magala, might be about 500 feet higher; and Sumburizi, a little north of Luhanga, where lived Mruta, Sultan of Uvira, the country opposite to this part of Urundi, about 300 feet higher than the neighboring heights. Northward from Magala Cape the lake streamed away between two chains of mountains; both meeting in a point about thirty miles north of us.

The Warundi of Magala were very civil, and profound starers. They flocked around the tent door, and most pertinaciously gazed on us, as if we were subjects of most intense interest, but liable to sudden and eternal departure. The Mutware came to see us late in the afternoon, dressed with great pomp. He turned out to be a boy whom I had noticed in the crowd of gazers for his good looks and fine teeth, which he showed, being addicted to laughing, continually. There was no mistaking him, though he was now decorated with many ivory ornaments, with necklaces, and with heavy brass bracelets and iron wire anklets. Our admiration of him was reciprocated; and, in return for our two doti of cloth and a fundo of samsam, he gave a fine fat and broad-tailed sheep, and a pot of milk. In our condition both were extremely acceptable.

At Magala we heard of a war raging between Mukamba, for whose country we were bound, and Warumashanya, a Sultan of an adjoining district; and we were advised that, unless we intended to assist one of these chiefs against the other, it would be better for us to return. But, as we had started to solve the problem of the Rusizi River, such considerations had no weight with us.

On the eighth morning from leaving Ujiji we bade farewell to the hospitable people of Magala, and set off for Mukamba's country, which was in view. Soon after passing the boundary between Urundi proper, and what is known as Usige, a storm from the southwest arose; and the fearful yawing of our canoe into the wave trough warned us from proceeding

OUR LEVÉE AT MAGALA, URUNDI.

further; so we turned her head for Kisuka village, about four miles north, where Mugere, in Usige, begins.

At Kisuka a Mgwana living with Mukamba came to see us, and gave us details of the war between Mukamba and Warumashanya, from which it seemed that these two chiefs were continually at loggerheads. It is a tame way of fighting, after all. One chief makes a raid into the other's country, and succeeds in making off with a herd of cattle, killing one or two men who have been surprised. Weeks, or perhaps months elapse before the other retaliates, and effects a capture in a similar way, and then a balance is struck in which neither is the gainer. Seldom do they attack each other with courage and hearty good will, the constitution of the African being decidedly against any such energetic warfare.

This Mgwana, further, upon being questioned, gave us information far more interesting, viz., about the Rusizi. He told us positively, with the air of a man who knew all about it, and as if anybody who doubted him might well be set down as an egregious ass, that the Rusizi River flowed out of the lake, away to Suna's (Mtesa's) country. "Where else could it flow to?" he asked. The Doctor was inclined to believe it, or, perhaps, he was more inclined to let it rest as stated until our own eyes should confirm it. I was more inclined to doubt, as I told the Doctor; first, it was too good to be true; second, the fellow was too enthusiastic upon a subject that could not possibly interest him. His "Barikallahs" and "Inshallahs" were far too fervid; his answers too much in accordance with our wishes. The Doctor laid great stress on the report of a Mgwana he met far south, who stated that the grandfather or father of Rumanika, present King of Karagwah, had thought of excavating the bed of the Kitangule River, in order that his canoes might go to Ujiji to open a trade. From this I imagine, coinciding as it did with his often-expressed and present firm belief that the waters of the Tanganika have an outlet somewhere, the Doctor was partial to the report of the Mgwana; but as we proceed we shall see how all this will end.

On the ninth morning from Ujiji, about two hours after sunrise, we passed the broad delta of the Mugere, a river which gives its name also to the district on the eastern shore ruled over by Mukamba. We had come directly opposite the most southern of its three mouths, when we found quite a difference in the colour of the water. An almost straight line, drawn east and west from the mouth would serve well to mark off the difference that existed between the waters. On the south side was pure water of a light green; on the north side it was muddy, and the current could be distinctly seen flowing north. Soon after passing the first mouth we came to a second, and then a third mouth, each only a few yards broad, but each discharging sufficient water to permit our following the line of the currents several rods north beyond the respective mouths.

Beyond the third mouth of the Mugere a bend disclosed itself, with groups of villages beyond on its bank. These were Mukamba's, and in one of them lived Mukamba, the chief. The natives had yet never seen a white man, and, of course, as soon as we landed we were surrounded by a large concourse, all armed with long spears—the only weapon visible amongst them save a club-stick, and here and there a hatchet.

We were shown into a hut, which the Doctor and I shared between us. What followed on that day I have but a dim recollection, having been struck down by fever—the first since leaving Unyanyembe. I dimly recollect trying to make out what age Mukamba might be, and noting that he was good-looking withal, and kindly-disposed towards us. And during the intervals of agony and unconsciousness, I saw, or fancied I saw, Livingstone's form moving towards me, and felt, or fancied I felt, Livingstone's hand tenderly feeling my hot head and limbs. I had suffered several fevers between Bagamoyo and Unyanyembe, without anything or anybody to relieve me of the tedious racking headache and pain, or to illumine the dark and gloomy prospect which must necessarily surround the bedside of the sick and solitary traveller. But though this fever, having enjoyed immunity from it for three months, was more severe than usual, I did not much regret its occurrence, since I became the recipient of the very tender and fatherly kindness of the good man whose companion I now found myself.

The next morning, having recovered slightly from the fever, when Mukamba came with a present of an ox, a sheep, and a goat, I was able to attend to the answers which he gave to the questions about the Rusizi River and the head of the lake. The ever cheerful and enthusiastic Mgwana was there also, and he was not a whit abashed when, through him, the chief told us that the Rusizi, joined by the Ruanda, or Luanda, at a distance of two days' journey by water, or one day by land from the head of the lake, flowed INTO the lake.

Thus our hopes, excited somewhat by the positive and repeated assurances that the river flowed out away towards Karagwah, collapsed as speedily as they were raised.

We paid Mukamba the honga, consisting of nine doti and nine fundo of samsam, lunghio, muzurio n'zige. The printed handkerchiefs, which I had in abundance at Unyanyembe, would have gone well here. After receiving his present, the chief introduced his son, a tall youth of eighteen or thereabouts, to the Doctor, as a would-be son of the Doctor; but, with a good-natured laugh, the Doctor scouted all such relationship with him, as it was instituted only for the purpose of drawing more cloth out of him. Mukamba took it in good part, and did not insist on getting more.

Our second evening at Mukamba's, Susi, the Doctor's servant, got gloriously drunk, through the chief's liberal and profuse gifts of pombe. Just at dawn next morning I was awakened by hearing several sharp, crack-like sounds. I listened, and I found the noise was in our hut. It was caused by the Doctor, who, towards midnight, had felt some one come and lie down by his side on the same bed, and, thinking that it was me, he had kindly made room, and laid down on the edge of the bed. But in the morning, feeling rather cold, he had been thoroughly awakened, and, on rising on his elbow to see who his bed-fellow was, he discovered, to his great astonishment, that it was no other than his black servant, Susi, who taking possession of his blankets, and folding them about himself most selfishly, was occupying almost the whole bed. The Doctor, with that gentleness characteristic of him, instead of taking a rod, had contented himself with slapping Susi on the back, saying, "Get up; Susi, will you? You are in my bed. How dare you, sir, get drunk in this way, after I have told you so often not to? Get up. You won't? Take that, and that, and that." Still Susi slept and grunted; so the slapping continued, until even Susi's thick hide began to feel it, and he was thoroughly awakened to the sense of his want of devotion and sympathy for his master in the usurping of even his master's bed. Susi looked very much crestfallen after this *exposé* of his infirmity before the "little master," as I was called.

SUSI, THE SERVANT OF LIVINGSTONE.

The next day at dusk—Mukamba having come to bid us good-bye, and requested that as soon as we reached his brother Ruhinga, whose country was at the head of the lake, we would send our canoe back for him, and that in the meanwhile we should leave two of our men with him, with their guns, to help defend him in case Warumashanya should attack him as soon as we were gone—we embarked and pulled across. In nine hours we had arrived at the head of the lake in Mugihewa, the country of Ruhinga, Mukamba's elder brother. In looking back to where we had come from we perceived that we had made a diagonal cut across from south-east to north-west, instead of having made a direct east and west course; or, in other words, from Mugere—which was at least ten miles from the northernmost point of the eastern shore—we had come to Mugihewa, situated at the northernmost point of the western shore. Had we continued along the eastern shore, and so round the northern side of the lake, we should have passed by Mukanigi, the country of Warumashanya, and Usumbura of Simveh, his ally and friend. But by making a diagonal course, as just described, we had arrived at the extreme head of the lake without any difficulty.

The country in which we now found ourselves, Mugihewa, is situated in the delta of the Rusizi River. It is an extremely flat country, the highest part of which is not ten feet above the lake, with numerous depressions in it overgrown with the rankest of matete-grass and the tallest of papyrus, and pond-like hollows, filled with stagnant water, which emit malaria wholesale. Large herds of cattle are reared on it; for where the ground is not covered with marshy plants it produces rich, sweet grass. The sheep and goats, especially the former, are always in good condition; and though they are not to be compared with English or American sheep, they are the finest I have seen in Africa. Numerous villages are seen on this land because the intervening spaces are not occupied with the rank and luxuriant jungle common in other parts of Africa. Were it not for the Euphorbia kolquall of Abyssinia—which some chief has caused to be planted as a defence round the villages—one might see from one end of Mugihewa to the other. The waters along the head of the lake, from the western to the eastern shores, swarm with crocodiles. From the banks, I counted ten heads of crocodiles, and the Rusizi, we were told, was full of them.

Ruhinga, who came to see us soon after we had taken up our quarters in his village, was a most amiable man, who always contrived to see something that excited his risibility; though older by five or six years perhaps—he said he was a hundred years old—than Mukamba, he was not half so dignified, nor regarded with so much admiration by his people as his younger brother. Ruhinga had a better knowledge, however, of the country than Mukamba, and an admirable memory, and was able to impart his knowledge of the country intelligently. After he had done the honours as chief to us—presented us with an ox and a sheep, milk and honey—we were not backward in endeavouring to elicit as much information as possible out of him.

The summary of the information derived from Ruhinga may be stated as follows:

The country bordering the head of the lake from Urundi proper, on the eastern shore, to Uvira on the western, is divided into the following districts: 1st. Mugere, governed by Mukamba, through which issued into the lake the small rivers of Mugere and Mpanda. 2nd. Mukanigi, governed by Warumashanya, which occupied the whole of the north-eastern head of the lake, through which issued into the lake the small rivers of Karindwa and Mugera wa Kanigi. 3rd. On the eastern half of the district, at the head of the lake was, Usumbura, governed by Simveh, ally and friend of Warumashanya, extending to the eastern bank of the Rusizi. 4th. Commencing from the western bank of the Rusizi, to the extreme north-western head of the lake, was Mugihewa—Ruhinga's country. 5th. From Uvira on the west, running north past Mugihewa, and overlapping it on the north side as far as the hills of Chamati, was Ruwenga, also a country governed by Mukamba. Beyond Ruwenga, from the hills of Chamati to the Ruanda River, was the country of Chamati. West of Ruwenga, comprising all the mountains for two days' journey in that direction, was Uashi. These are the smaller subdivisions of what is commonly known as Ruwenga and Usige. Ruwenga comprises the countries of Ruwenga and Mugihewa; Usige, the countries of Usumbura, Mukanigi, and Mugere. But all these countries are only part and parcel of Urundi, which comprises all that country bordering the lake from Mshala River, on the eastern shore, to Uvira, on the western, extending over ten days' journey direct north from the head of the lake, and one month in a north-eastern direction to Murukuko, the capital of Mwezi, Sultan of all Urundi. Direct north of Urundi is Ruanda; also a very large country.

The Rusizi River — according to Ruhinga — rose near a lake called Kivo, which he said is as long as from Mugihawa to Mugere, and as broad as from Mugihawa to Warumashanya's country, or, say eighteen miles in length by about eight in breadth. The lake is surrounded by mountains on the western and northern sides: on the south-western side of one of these mountains issues the Rusizi—at first a small rapid stream; but as it proceeds towards the lake it receives the rivers Kagunissi, Kaburan, Mohira, Nyamagana, Nyakagunda, Ruviro, Rofubu, Kavimvira, Myove, Ruhuha, Mukindu, Sange, Rubirizi, Kiriba, and, lastly, the Ruanda River, which seems to be the largest of them all. Kivo Lake is so called from the country in which it is situated. On one side is Mutumbi (probably the Utumbi of Speke and Baker), on the west is Ruanda; on the east is Urundi. The name of the chief of Kivo is Kwansibura.

After so many minute details about the River Rusizi, it only remained for us to see it. On the second morning of our arrival at Mugihewa we mustered ten strong paddlers, and set out to explore the head of the lake and the mouth of the Rusizi. We found that the northern head of the lake was indented with seven broad bays, each from one and a half to three miles broad; that long broad spits of sand, overgrown with matete, separated each bay from the other. The first, starting from west to east, at the broadest part, to the extreme southern point of Mugihewa, was about three miles broad, and served as a line of demarcation between Mukamba's district of Ruwenga and Mugihewa of Ruhinga; it was also two miles deep. The second bay was a mile from the southern extremity of Mugihewa to Ruhinga's village at the head of the bay, and it was a mile across to another spit of sand which was terminated by a small island. The third bay stretched for nearly a mile to a long spit, at the end ot which was another island, one and a quarter mile in length, and was the western side of the fourth bay, at the head of which was the delta of the Rusizi. This fourth bay, at its base, was about three miles in depth, and penetrated half a mile further inland than any other. Soundings indicated six feet deep, and the same depth was kept to within a few hundred yards of the principal mouth of the Rusizi. The current was very sluggish; not more than a mile an hour. Though we constantly kept our binocular searching for the river, we could not see the main channel until within 200 yards of it, and then only by watching by what outlet the fishing canoes came out. The bay at this point had narrowed from two miles to about 200 yards in breadth. Inviting a canoe to show us the way, a small flotilla of canoes preceded us, from the sheer curiosity of their owners. We followed, and in a few minutes were ascending the stream, which was very rapid, though but about ten yards wide, and very shallow; not more than two feet deep. We ascended about half a mile, the current being very strong, from six to eight miles an hour, and quite far enough to observe the nature of the stream at its embouchure. We could see that it widened and spread out in a myriad of channels, rushing by isolated clumps of sedge and matete grass; and that it had the appearance of a swamp. We had ascended the central, or main channel. The western channel was about eight yards broad. We observed, after we had returned to the bay, that the easternmost channel was about six yards broad, and about ten feet deep, but very sluggish. We had thus examined each of its three mouths, and settled all doubts as to the Rusizi being an effluent or influent. It was not necessary to ascend higher, there being nothing about the river itself to repay exploration of it.

The question, "Was the Rusizi an effluent or an influent?" was answered for ever. There was now no doubt any more on that point. In size it was not to be compared with the Malagarazi River, neither is it, or can it be, navigable for anything but the smallest canoes. The only thing remarkable about it is that it abounds in crocodiles, but not

AT THE MOUTH OF THE RUSIZI.

one hippopotamus was seen; which may be taken as another evidence of its shallowness. The bays to the east of the Rusizi are of the same conformation as those on the west. Carefully judging from the width of the several bays from point to point, and of the several spits which separate them, the breadth of the lake may be said to be about twelve or fourteen miles. Had we contented ourselves with simply looking at the conformation, and the meeting of the eastern and western ranges, we should have said that the lake ended in a point, as Captain Speke has sketched it on his map. But its exploration dissolved that idea. Chamati Hill is the extreme northern termination of the western range, and seems, upon a superficial examination, to abut against the Ramata mountains of the eastern range, which are opposite Chamati; but a valley about a mile in breadth separates the two ranges, and through this valley the Rusizi flows towards the lake. Though Chamati terminates the western range, the eastern range continues for miles beyond, north-westerly. After its issue from this broad gorge, the Rusizi runs seemingly in a broad and mighty stream, through a wide alluvial plain, its own formation, in a hundred channels, until, approaching the lake, it flows into it by three channels only, as above described.

I should not omit to state here, that though the Doctor and I have had to contend against the strong current of the Rusizi River, as it flowed swift and strong INTO the Tanganika, the Doctor still adheres to the conviction that, whatever part the Rusizi plays, there must be an outlet to the Tanganika somewhere, from the fact that all fresh-water lakes have outlets. The Doctor is able to state his opinions and reasons far better than I can for him; and, lest I misconstrue the subject, I shall leave it until he has an opportunity to explain them himself; which his great knowledge of Africa will enable him to do with advantage.

One thing is evident to me, and I believe to the Doctor, that Sir Samuel Baker will have to curtail the Albert N'Yanza by one, if not two degrees of latitude. That well-known traveller has drawn his lake far into the territory of the Warundi, while Ruanda has been placed on the eastern side; whereas a large portion of it, if not all, should be placed north of what he has designated on his map as Usige. The information of such an intelligent man as Ruhinga is not to he despised; for, if Lake Albert came within a hundred miles of the Tanganika, he would surely have heard of its existence, even if he had not seen it himself. Originally he came from Mutumbi, and he has travelled from that country into Mugihewa, the district he now governs. He has seen Mwezi, the great King of Urundi, and describes him as a man about forty years old, and as a very good man.

Our work was now done; there was nothing more to detain us at Mugihewa. Ruhinga had been exceedingly kind, and given us one ox after another to butcher and eat. Mukamba had done the same. Their women had supplied us with an abundance of milk and butter, and we had now bounteous supplies of both.

The Doctor had taken a series of observations for latitude and longitude; and Mugihewa was made out to be in 3° 19′ S. latitude.

On the 7th December, early in the morning, we left Mugihewa, and rowing past the southern extremity of the Katangara Islands, we approached the highlands of Uashi, near the boundary line between Mukamba's country and Uvira. The boundary line is supposed to be a wide ravine, in the depths of which is a grove of tall, beautiful, and straight-stemmed trees, out of which the natives make their canoes.

Passing Kanyamabengu River, which issues into the lake close to the market-ground of Kirabula, the extreme point of Burton and Speke's explorations of the Tanganika, we steered south along the western shore of the lake for half an hour longer to Kavimba, where we halted to cook breakfast.

The village where lived Mruta, the King of Uvira, was in sight of our encampment, and as we observed parties of men ascending and descending the mountains much more often than we thought augured good to ourselves, we determined to continue on our course south. Besides, there was a party of disconsolate-looking Wajiji here, who had been plundered only a few days before our arrival, for attempting, as the Wavira believed, to evade the honga payment. Such facts as these, and our knowledge of the general state of insecurity in the country, resulting from the many wars in which the districts of the Tanganika were engaged, determined us not to halt at Kavimba.

We embarked quickly in our boat before the Wavira had collected themselves, and headed south against a strong gale, which came driving down on us from the south-west. After a hard pull of about two hours in the teeth of the storm, which was rapidly rising, we pointed the head of the boat into a little quiet cove, almost hidden in tall reeds, and disembarked for the night.

Cognizant of the dangers which surrounded us, knowing that savage and implacable man was the worst enemy we had to fear, we employed our utmost energies in the construction of a stout fence of thorn bushes, and then sat down to supper after our work was done, and turned in to sleep; but not before we had posted watchmen to guard our canoe, lest the daring thieves of Uvira might abstract it, in which case we should have been in a pretty plight, and in most unenviable distress.

At daybreak, leaving Kukumba Point after our humble breakfast of coffee, cheese, and dourra cakes was despatched, we steered south once more. Our fires had attracted the notice of the sharp-eyed and suspicious fishermen of Kukumba; but our precautions and the vigilant watch we had set before retiring, had proved an effectual safeguard against the Kivira thieves.

The western shores of the lake as we proceeded were loftier, and more bold than the wooded heights of Urundi and bearded knolls of Ujiji. A back ridge—the vanguard of the mountains which rise beyond—disclosed itself between the serrated tops of the front line of mountains, which rose to a height of from 2,500 to 3,000 feet above the lake. Within the folds of the front line of mountains rise isolated hills of considerable magnitude, precipitous and abrupt, but scenically very picturesque. The greater part of these hills have the rounded and smooth top, or are tabularly summited. The ridge enfolding these hills shoots out, at intervals, promontorial projections of gradual sloping outlines, which on the map I have designated capes, or points. When rounding these points, up went our compasses for the taking of bearings, and observing the directions of all prominent objects of interest. Often these capes are formed by the alluvial plains, through which we may be sure a river will be found flowing. These pretty alluvial plains, enfolded on the south, the west, and the north by a grand mountain arc, present most luxurious and enchanting scenery. The vegetation seems to be of spontaneous growth. Groups of the Elæis guineensis palm embowering some dun-brown village; an array of majestic, superb growth of mvule trees; a broad extent covered with vivid green sorghum stalks; parachute-like tops of mimosa; a line of white sand, on which native canoes are drawn far above the reach of the plangent, uneasy surf; fishermen idly reclining in the shade of a tree;—these are the scenes which reveal themselves to us as we voyage in our canoe on the Tanganika. When wearied with the romance of wild tropic scenes such as these, we have but to lift our eyes to the great mountain tops looming darkly and grandly on our right; to watch the light pencilling of the cirrus, brushing their summits, as it is drifted towards the north by the rising wind: to watch the changing forms which the clouds assume, from the fleecy horizontal bars of the cirrus, to the denser, gloomier cumulus, prognosticator of storm and rain, which soon settles into a portentous group—Alps above Alps, one above another—and we know the storm which was brewing is at hand, and that it is time to seek shelter.

Passing Muikamba, we saw several groves of the tall mvule tree. As far as Bemba the Wabembe occupy the mountain summits, while the Wavira cultivate the alluvial plains along the base and lower slopes of the mountain. At Bemba we halted to take in pieces of pipe-clay, in accordance with the superstition of the Wajiji, who thought us certain of safe passage and good fortune if we complied with the ancient custom.

Passing Ngovi, we came to a deep bend, which curved off to Cape Kabogi at the distance of ten miles.

About two-thirds of the way we arrived at a group of islets, three in number, all very steep and rocky; the largest about 300 feet in length at the base, and about 200 feet in breadth. Here we made preparations to halt for the night. The inhabitants of the island were a gorgeously-feathered old cock, which was kept as a propitiatory offering to the spirit of the island, a sickly, yellow-looking thrush, a hammer-headed stork, and two fish-hawks, who, finding we had taken possession of what had been religiously reserved for them, took flight to the most western island, where from their perches they continued to eye us most solemnly.

As these islands were with difficulty pronounced by us as Kavunvweh, the Doctor, seeing that they were the only objects we were likely to discover, named them the "New York Herald Islets;" and, in confirmation of the new designation given them, shook hands with me upon it. Careful dead-reckoning settled them to be in lat. 3° 41′ S.

The summit of the largest island was well adapted to take bearings, and we improved the opportunity, as most extensive views of the broad and lengthy lake and surrounding lines of imposing mountains were attainable. The Ramata Hills were clearly visible, and bore N.N.E. from it; Katanga Cape, S.E. by S.; Sentakeyi, E.S.E.; Magala, E. by N.; south-western point of Muzimu bore S., northern point of Muzimu island, S.S.E.

At dawn on the 9th December we prepared to resume our voyage. Once or twice in the night we had been visited by fishermen, but our anxious watchfulness prevented any marauding. It seemed to me, however, that the people of the opposite shore, who were our visitors, were eagerly watching an opportunity to pounce upon our canoe, or take us bodily for a prey; and our men were considerably affected by these thoughts, if we may judge from the hearty good-will with which they rowed away from our late encampment.

Arriving at Cape Kabogi, we came to the territory of the Wasansi. We knew we were abreast of a different tribe by the greeting "Moholo," which a group of fishermen gave us; as that of the Wavira was "Wake," like that of Urundi, Usige, and Uhha.

We soon sighted Cape Luvumba—a sloping projection of a mountain ridge which shot far into the lake. As a storm was brewing, we steered for a snug little cove that appeared before a village; and, drawing our canoe from the water, began to set the tent, and make other preparations for passing the night.

As the natives appeared quiet and civil enough, we saw no reason to suspect that they entertained any hostility to Arabs and Wangwana. Accordingly we had our breakfast cooked, and as usual laid down for an afternoon nap. I soon fell asleep, and was dreaming away in my tent, in happy oblivion of the strife and contention that had risen since I had gone to sleep, when I heard a voice hailing me with, "Master, master! get up, quick. Here is a fight going to begin!" I sprang up, and snatching my revolver belt from the gun-stand, walked outside. Surely, there appeared to be considerable animus between the several factions; between a noisy, vindictive-looking set of natives of the one part, and our people of the other part. Seven or eight of our people had taken refuge behind the canoe, and had their loaded guns half pointing at the passionate mob, which was momentarily increasing in numbers, but I could not see the Doctor anywhere.

"Where is the Doctor?" I asked.

"He has gone over that hill, sir, with his compass," said Selim.

"Anybody with him?"

"Susi and Chumah."

"You, Bombay, send two men off to warn the Doctor, and tell him to hurry up here."

But just at this period the Doctor and his two men appeared on the brow of the hill, looking down in a most complacent manner upon the serio-comic scene that the little basin wherein we were encamped prerented. For, indeed, despite the serious aspect of it, there was much that was comical blended with it—in a naked young man who—perfectly drunk, barely able to stand on his feet—was beating the ground with his only loin-cloth, screaming and storming away like a madman; declaring by this, and by that, in his own choice language, that no Mgwana or Arab should halt one moment on the sacred soil of Usansi. His father, the Sultan, was as inebriated as himself, though not quite so violent in his behaviour.

In the meantime the Doctor arrived upon the scene, and Selim had slipped my Winchester rifle, with the magazine full of cartridges, into my hand. The Doctor calmly asked what was the matter, and was answered by the Wajiji guides that the people wished us to leave, as they were on hostile terms with the Arabs, because the eldest son of the Sultan of Muzimu, the large island nearly opposite, had been beaten to death by a Baluch, named Khamis, at Ujiji, because the young fellow had dared look into his harem, and ever since peace had been broken between the Wasansi and Arabs.

After consulting with the guides, the Doctor and I came to the conclusion that it were better that we should endeavour to pacify the Sultan by a present, rather than take offence at a drunken boy's extravagant freak. In his insane fury he had attempted to slash at one of my men with a billhook he carried. This had been taken as a declaration of hostilities, and the soldiers were ready enough to engage in war; but there was no necessity to commence fighting with a drunken mob, who could have been cleared off the ground with our revolvers alone had we desired it.

The Doctor, baring his arm, said to them that he was not a Mgwana, or an Arab, but a white man; that Arabs and Wangwana had no such color as we had. We were white men, different people altogether from those whom they were accustomed to see; that no black men had ever suffered injury from white men. This seemed to produce great effect, for after a little gentle persuasion the drunken youth, and his no less inebriate sire, were induced to sit down to talk quietly. In their conversation with us, they frequently referred to Mombo, the son of Kisesa, Sultan of Muzimu, who was brutally murdered. "Yes, brutally murdered!" they exclaimed several times, in their own tongue; illustrating, by a faithful pantomime, how the unfortunate youth had died.

Livingstone continued talking with them in a mild, paternal way, and their loud protestations against Arab cruelty were about to subside, when the old Sultan suddenly rose up and began to pace about in an excited manner, and in one of his perambulations deliberately slashed his leg with the sharp blade of his spear, and then exclaimed that the Wangwana had wounded him!

At this cry one half of the mob hastily took to flight, but one old woman, who carried a strong staff with a carved lizard's body on its top, commenced to abuse the chief with all the power of her voluble tongue, charging him with a desire to have them all killed, and other women joined in with her in advising him to be quiet, and accept the present we were willing to give.

But it was evident that there was little needed to cause all men present in that little hollow to begin a most sanguinary strife. The gentle, patient bearing of the Doctor had more effect than anything else in making all forbear bloodshed, while there was left the least chance of an amicable settlement, and in the end it prevailed. The Sultan and his son were both sent on their way rejoicing.

While the Doctor conversed with them, and endeavoured to calm their fierce passions, I had the tent struck, and the canoes launched, and the baggage stowed, and when the negotiations had concluded amicably, I begged the Doctor to jump into the boat, as this apparent peace was simply a lull before a storm; besides, said I, there are two or three cowardly creatures in the boat, who, in case of another disturbance, would not scruple to leave both of us here.

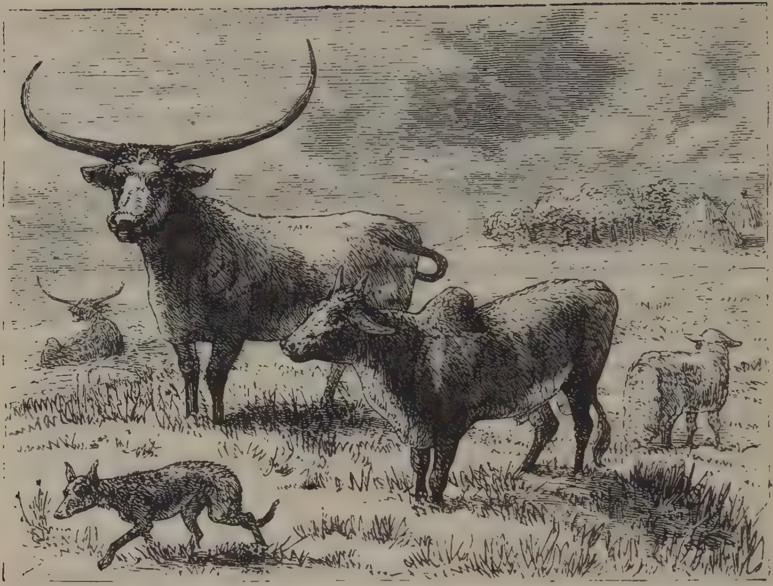
From Cape Luvumba, about 4·30 P.M., we commenced pulling across; at 8 P.M. we were abreast of Cape Panza, the northern extremity of the island of Muzimu; at 6 A.M. we were southward of Bikari, and pulling for Mukungu, in Urundi, at which place we arrived at 10 A.M., having been seventeen hours and a half in crossing the lake, which, computing at two miles an hour, may be said to be thirty-five miles direct breadth, and a little more than forty-three miles from Cape Luvumba.

On the 11th of December, after seven hours' pulling, we arrived at picturesque Zassi again; on the 12th, at the pretty cove of Niasanga; and at 11 A.M. we had rounded past Bangwe, and Ujiji was before us.

We entered the port very quietly, without the usual firing of guns, as we were short of powder and ball. As we landed, our soldiers and the Arab magnates came to the water's edge to greet us.

Mabruki had a rich budget to relate to us, of what had occurred during our absence. This faithful man, left behind in charge of Livingstone's house, had done most excellently. Kalulu had scalded himself, and had a frightful raw sore on his chest in consequence. Mabruki had locked up Marora in chains for wounding one of the asses. Bilali, the stuttering coward, a bully of women, had caused a tumult in the market-place, and had been sharply belaboured with the stick by Mabruki. And, above all most welcome, was a letter I received from the American Consul at Zanzibar, dated June 11th, containing telegrams from Paris as late as April 22nd of the same year! Poor Livingstone exclaimed, "And I have none. What a pleasant thing it is to have a real and good friend!"

Our voyage on the Tanganika had lasted twenty-eight days, during which time we had traversed over 300 miles of water.



UJIJI COW, UNYAMWEZI COW, PARIAH DOG, AND FAT-TAILED SHEEP.

CHAPTER XIV.

GEOGRAPHICAL AND ETHNOGRAPHICAL REMARKS.

(*Second Series.*)

LET us now relate, in a chapter specially devoted to them, what new geographical and ethnographical facts we have discovered since we left Uyanzi, or Magunda Mkali, concerning the countries of Unyamwezi, Ukonongo, Ukawendi, Uvinza, Uhha, Ukaranga, Ujiji, Urundi, Usowa, Ukaramba, Ugoma, Uguhha, Rua, and Manyuema.

The first country for our consideration is U-nyamwezi, which might be pronounced, according to the natives, Oo-nya-mwezi. I beg to differ from all preceding writers as to the exact meaning of the word. Messrs. Krapf and Rebman, to whom the world is indebted for first rousing its curiosity respecting the interior of East Africa, translate the word U-nya-mwezi into "Country of the Moon"—U being always a prefix for "country," nya meaning "of," and mwezi, "moon." The erudite Capt. Burton seems inclined to the same opinion; while Speke unhesitatingly adopts the same interpretation. With all due deference to the more mature knowledge of Africa which these gentlemen possess over me, I would suggest to those interested in the discussion of nice topics, such as these, that a Kisawahili definition has been given to a Kinyamwezi word. In the Kisawahili language, if it were a country of the moon, it would be called Umwezi. Unyamwezi is a Kinyamwezi word, and cannot be interpreted, from the accidental similarity of the last two syllables, with the well-known Kisawahili word mwezi, which means moon. If we take the Kisawahili standard for interpreting the word U-nya-mwezi, we might just as well accept the other meaning of the last two syllables mwezi, which mean thief, as well as moon, in the Kisawahili language.

Capt. Burton says that Mr. Desborough Cooley prefers "lord of the world" for the meaning of the word Unyamwezi, which he spells "Monomoezi." I prefer Mr. Cooley's interpretation to Capt. Burton's, yet I beg to differ with Mr. Cooley also in the precise translation. So far as I could ascertain from the Wanyamwezi, and Arabs learned in the lore of the country, there once lived a king of Ukalaganza—which is the original name of the country, and by which name alone the western tribes know it—whose name was Mwezi, who ruled over all the land from Uyanzi to Uvinza. He was the greatest king then known; none could stand before him in the battle, none ever reigned so wisely as he. But, after this great king's death, his sons fought among themselves for the possession of the supreme power; and in the several wars which followed, in the course of time, the districts which the sons had gained became known only by their distinctive names, as distinguished from the central and greater portion of the country, which still retained its old designation of Ukalaganza. But the people who occupied Ukalaganza, and who recognized the heir appointed by old Mwezi, the king, came to be known by-and-by as children of Mwezi, and the country as Unyamwezi; and the other districts as Konongo, Sagozi, Gunda, Simbiri, &c. To support this theory, based upon the tradition related to me by the old chief of Masangi, which lies on the road to Mfuto, I will state that the name of the present king of Urundi is Mwezi; and it is notorious that the name of almost every village in Africa is simply derived from some ruler, either living or dead. Instances:—The village of Misonghi is known from Kwihara to Bagamoyo as Kadetamare, the name of the chief; Capt. Burton can confirm this fact himself, having placed it on his map as Kadetamare. The district of Nyambwa, in Ugogo, is fast losing its old title, and is more extensively known as Pembera Pereh, which is the name of the decrepit old Sultan of Nyambwa. Mrera, in Ukonongo, is the name of the chief, while the ancient designation of the district was Kasera. "Mbogo," or "Buffalo," has also given his name to a large and populous district in Ukonongo; hen there is Pumburu, the name of a neighbouring chief to Mapunda, of Usowa. Uganda is fast giving way to the famous name of King Mtesa; and, ina few years, a decade perhaps, future travellers will hear from the Arabs of the great country called Unyamtesa, or Umtesa. No; I decidedly object to having Unyamwezi interpreted into the poetic "Land of the Moon," or the ill-meaning "Land of the Thief." Unyamwezi simply means the Land of Mwezi.

Also do I differ most positively with Capt. Burton, if he supposes that "Nimeamaye," the country said to be sixty days from the Atlantic Ocean by the Dutch historian Dapper, can be Unyamwezi. A man travelling on horseback could not accomplish the distance from the Atlantic Ocean to Unyamwezi, even in 1671—two hundred years ago—when the country extended to within ten days of the Tanganika Lake, in sixty days; but a native unencumbered with a load might possibly reach Manyuema in that time; and "Nimeamaye" is probably a corruption, caused by misapprehending the correct sound of Manyuema, or "Manyuemaye."

At the present day Unyamwezi extends from east to west a rectilineal distance of about 145 miles; that is, from the River Ngwhalah, between Mgongo Tembo and Madedita, in E. long. 34°, to Usenye, E. long. 31° 25′, which is considered the western extremity of Ukalaganza, or Unyamwezi; and from north to south, from the southern extremity of the Victoria N'Yanza, in S. lat. 3° 51′, to Gombe River, S. lat. 5° 40′, a distance of 149 geographical miles, comprising a square area of more than 24,500 miles.

This large area is divided into several districts, such as Unyanyembe, Usagari, Ugunda, Ugara, Nguru, Msalala, Usongo, Khokoro, Usimbiri, Nasangaro, Ugoro, &c.; of which Unyanyembe is the most important in Unyamwezi, both from its central position and populousness. The people north of Unyanyembe are known as the Wasukuma, and those to the south as Watakama. The latter term is seldom used in Unyanyembe, though often by the Wasukuma.

Taken altogether, Unyamwezi may be said to be the finest country in the whole of East and Central Africa. It is one grand rolling table-land, with a gentle western trend towards the Tanganika, which drains the greater part of it. If one were to take a bird's-eye view of it he would see forests, a purple-colored carpet of leafage, broken here and there by naked plains and clearings, stretching to all points of the horizon, with now and then dark heaving masses of rocky hill, rising like blunted cones above the gentle undulations, which rise and subside over and beyond the horizon, like the heavy, exhausted waves of an ocean after a storm. Stand upon any coign of vantage you like, on the height of some of those great Titanic boulders of syenite which crop up above the crest of the hills around Mgongo Tembo, or the rocky humps of Ngaraiso, and you will behold a scene the like of which you never saw before. They are no grand mountains, or sublime heights; there is no picturesqueness about it—you would call it prosaic, monotonous, perhaps, for you will have witnessed the same scene a hundred times before you will have arrived in Uyanzi; but in this excessive monotony there is sublimity. The ocean, churned into foam and wild waves, is sublime; the ocean, slumbering under the equatorial sun, reflecting the deep blue of the firmament—extending without a ruffle you know not how far—is sublime; and so is there sublimity in this view of the great, the infinite, apparently endless extent of forests in Unyamwezi. The foliage is of all the colors of the prism; but as the woods roll away into the distance the calm, mysterious haze enwraps them in its soft shroud; paints them first a light blue, then gradually a deeper blue, until, in the distance, there appears but a dim looming; and on gazing at its faded contour we find ourselves falling into a day-dream, as indistinct in its outline as the view which appears on the horizon. I defy any one to gaze on such a scene long without wishing that his life would fade away as serenely as the outlines of the forests in Unyamwezi.

We found a species of pisolitic limestone in the maritime region; schist and syenite in alternate lines in Ugogo; but in Unyamwezi the enormous smooth sheets which have appeared with bare humps in Uyanzi loom up into solid hills—great disintegrated fragments and craggy ridges, softened, of course, by the wealth of vegetation, which hides the rough and uneven lines from human view.

There are only two rivers worthy of the name in Unyamwezi, and those are the Northern and the Southern Gombe. The northern river, under the name of Kwala, sometimes called Wallah, rises south of Rubuga, and after sweeping with a north-westerly curve, enters the Gombe north of Tabora—even here a stream of some magnitude and importance. With good light boats in the latter part of the rainy season, a man might easily—eight miles or so from Tabora—embark his people, and float down happily enough to the Tanganika Lake; provided, of course, that all the tribes were willing. A properly-equipped expedition might work wonders in this way.

The Nghwhalah River—known to rise north of Kusuri, intersecting the Unyanyembe path frequently, as one may see as he proceeds towards Tura—a few miles east of Madedita takes its steady course south-west, and passing through Nguru, comes into view again in Manyara, and is then known as the Southern Gombe, but which has a current only during the very height of the rainy season. From Manyara it runs across Ugala country in a north-by-west direction; and before its junction with the Malagarazi it receives the streams of Mrera and Mtambu, which, after skirting the eastern base of the Rusawa Mountains, glide north-easterly across the park lands of Uvenda to the Gombe.

All other streams, which are few in Unyamwezi, and of no importance, discharge their waters into either the Northern or Southern Gombe. The water is generally supplied by large pools, or in deep, lengthy hollows, which, in India, would be called nullahs, but, with Americans, gullies. Where nullahs and pools fail, pits are dug, by which a pale, milky kind of water is obtained. This color of the water, to a native of Unyamwezi, is considered by him to be a sure sign of its goodness; and he is apt to evince his admiration of its qualities, if he is asked whether the water is good, by the fervent expression, "O miope sana"—"Oh, it is quite white;" by which, of course, you must understand that it is very good, if very white.

The productions of the forests of Unyamwezi, as well as those of Ukonongo and Uvinza, are similar to those of Uyanzi; and, indeed, such as are common to all the tree-clad uplands under or near the equator.

The most gigantic tree found between Uyanzi and the Tanganika is the mtamba—sycamore, which is equal in size to the mighty baobabs of Ugogo. It produces a kind of pleasant fig, which, when ripe, is eaten readily by the natives. But these sycamores are few and far between. Other trees frequent in the forests are known by the Kisawahili terms—mtundu, miombo, mkora, mkurongo, mbembu, mvule, mtogwe, msundurusi, mninga, mbugu, matonga.

The natives have ingeniously found uses for all of them. The imbite forms rafters, as beautiful as cedar, capable of being carved ornamentally. It also forms doors and carved pillars, which range along the veranda. It emits quite an agreeable perfume, and its dark-reddish mahogany-like lines of red and pale yellow are very pretty and rich-looking.

The mkora is a fine large tree, growing into stately proportions in the forests of Ugunda and some parts of Ukonongo, out of which the natives carve most laboriously the kiti, or stool, in such frequent use with the elders and chiefs throughout Africa; as well as their huge mortars, in which the dourra, or sorghum, grain, and Indian corn is pounded into flour.

The mkurongo is the tree out of which the pole which the natives use as a pestle throughout Central Africa for the pounding of the grain is made. It is harder and more durable than hickory, and, when polished, has a whitish glistening appearance.

The mbugu supplies the soft useful bark which is used by the natives to make cloth. The bark, after being well soaked, is pounded, and, after some drying and rubbing, presents the appearance of a thick loose felt. Rope is also sometimes made of it, but more frequently it is employed in the manufacture of kirindos, or round boxes, like primitive band-boxes, which are painted and ornamented with a composition of various clays. These kirindos are sometimes very gigantic, and are used to store grain, supported above the ground, out of the reach of white ants, by a strong structure of logs. The bark of the mbugu forms admirable sheds, and is often used to form a kitanda, or a rude bedstead, by the fathers of families and luxuriously-inclined youths. It is out of the bark of this tree that the Warori dwelling on the Rufiji construct their bark canoes.

The mvule tree is that out of which the lake tribes form their canoes. The largest canoes on the Tanganika are considerably over sixty feet long. The tree attains its greatest size in the ravines of Ugoma, opposite Ujiji, on the western shore. Uvira, Urundi, and Usowa also possess very many fine specimens of it. It is a great work of labor, the cutting down of these trees, and the excavating of the enormous logs into canoes. It requires over three months' labor before the canoe may be said to be ready for launching. During the excavation of the huge log the owner makes a series of fires, out of the chips, along the upper side of it, and his neighbors are called to assist him in the work for a trifle of grain or palm oil. When the canoe is ready for launching, he brews several pots of pombe, and invites all his neighbors to push it into the sea; and, after a spurt, they regale themselves with the native beer frequently, and again set about their work with renewed strength and vociferous shouting. A large canoe may be bought with one hundred and twenty doti of cloth, or, say, a 75-lb. bale; but the Arabs, or the Wajiji, when they proceed to purchase a canoe, generally take with them an assortment of goods, such as a dozen pots of palm oil, a dozen goats, a number of various cloths, several hoes, and a number of bags of salt and grain, by which the purchase is made with profit.

The other trees which the Central African forests produce are the kolquall, or candelabra tree; the msundurusi, or copal-tree, frequent in Ukawendi; the moumbo, or palmyra; the miombo; the beautiful and fragrant mimosa; the mtundu; and on the shores of Lake Tanganika is seen the beautiful Guinea palm tree, called mchikichi, and the plantain tree.

The palm oil is extracted from the fruit of the palm tree, which hangs pendent, somewhat like the date. This is pounded and boiled, and, when allowed to cool, the oil is collected into great earthen pots, which will contain from two to five gallons. Four yards of cloth, or a doti, will purchase one of the largest pots full of palm oil, which in appearance is like soft, yellow, ochre-coloured butter. The Wajiji and others use the oil for cooking frequently.

Out of the same tree, the Guinea palm, is extracted an intoxicating liquor, called tembo, which is a far more agreeable drink than the pombe, or beer.

Plantains are abundant also in all the villages bordering the lake. The toddy called "zogga" is made by pounding the plantains in the huge wooden mortar wherein the various grains are also converted into flour.

The cactaceous and aloetic plants are visible all over the country, but in the arid plains of Ugogo and Southern Uvinza more especially.

The tamarind trees are frequent throughout the forests, but they attain their greatest growth in Usagara, and west of Unyanyembe. Their fruit forms a grateful acidified beverage when steeped in water.

The tamarisks and the several species of acacia deserve notice, if one had only space. The latter grow everywhere, and are a sore trouble to a caravan, on account of their wide-spreading branches. The thorn trees and gums are among the most obnoxious to travellers. The former species bristle with all kinds of hurtful thorns. One of the "wait-a-bit" kind caught Selim, my interpreter, by the neck one day when riding while sick with dysentery, and tore an ugly wound in the neck in alarming proximity to the jugular vein, the mark of which he will carry to his dying day.

Among the fruit-bearing kind of trees are the mbembu, or wood peach; the matonga, or nux vomica; the tamarind; the sing-we, or wood plum; the mtogwe, or wood apple; and in Ukawendi there are numerous varieties of grapes. But there are scores of species, some of which are dangerous, and others innocuous, which are indigenous to the soil, whose names or properties I could not obtain.

Among the fruit-trees planted and carefully nourished by the Arabs of Unyanyembe in their gardens are the papaw, guava, lime, citron, pomegranate, mango, banana, orange.

The principal food of the several tribes dwelling in Unyamwezi and the countries west as far as Lake Tanganika consists of matama (Kisawahili), or dourra (Arabic), or jowar (Hindostanee), the Linnæan title of which is the *Holcus sorghum*; bajri (*Holcus spicatus*); millet (*Panicum italicum*); maweri, or sesame; maize, or Indian corn. The pulse kinds are numerous, but the vetch, the field and large garden beans are most common. Rice is plentiful in Unyanyembe and Ujiji; wheat is grown by the Arabs only.

Sweet potatoes, yams, and manioc are abundant in Unyanyembe and Ujiji, and in some parts of Ukawendi. Sugar-cane flourishes at Ujiji.

There is only one harvest, which takes place in April on the Tanganika, in May in Unyamwezi, and in June in the maritime region.

Cotton, tobacco, and the castor-oil plant are grown everywhere throughout the central regions. Gourds and cucumbers are also numerous and plentiful. Indigo grows wild.

Among the shrubs, plants, and grasses indigenous to Central Africa may be mentioned the wild thyme and sage, the holly and sunflower, bird-pepper, chilies, ginger, turmeric, the oleander, gloriosa superba (near the Tanganika); the poppy-flower (grows wild in the neighborhood of villages in Ukawendi), as also wild mustard and curry. But in the great forests bordering the lake may be seen a hundred varieties of flowering shrubs, exhaling an exquisitely sweet fragrance. Among the grasses are the hawk-weed, ox-eye, the grass known as bhota in India, and whitlow, besides scores of rank species, such as the tiger and spear grass.

The lotus, water, and leafless lilies may be seen in the still Gombe lakes, and in the pools of Ukawendi.

Papyrus and the matete cane margin all the uninhabited spots on the alluvial plains on the shores of the Tanganika. The eschinomenæ, or the pith tree, may be seen at the mouths of all the large rivers issuing into this lake.

As the limits to which I am necessarily restricted in a chapter such as this prevent my entering into a detailed zoological account of the species of animals and birds of Central Africa, my readers will perhaps pardon me if I am brief.

I shall commence with the quadrumanous order, as the most highly organized of the brute species.

The largest of this kind is what is known as the Wanderoo baboon. It is distinguished for its great size and leonine aspect. From a distance it resembles a small lion, and its hoarse hollow roar in the dense forests of Ukawendi serves not a little to heighten the illusion. A long greyish mane surrounds the head and covers the neck. The hair on its back is of a dark grey, mixed with light brown. The tail is long, and ends in a tuft. It dwells in the hollows of large trees and in caves.

This was the kind we saw near the sources of the Rugufu, but on some of the feeders of the same river further west we saw large numbers of this baboon, of a true tawny color.

After this comes the immense dog-faced baboon, a description of which I have given in the preceding chapter. There are other and smaller species found in Ukawendi and Western Ukonongo, with black faces, similar to the tota of Abyssinia. They are exceedingly active, and good climbers. They lead a gregarious life, and feed on wild berries, mbembu, or wood peach, and insects.

The larger feline animals which we saw were the lion and the leopard, in the forests of Ukawendi. The hide of the lion becomes the property of the Sultan. The lion inhabits the dark thick belts of timber which border the streams, and wherever game is found in the park lands this proud beast is also sure to be found.

The cry of the spotted cyn-hyæna was heard almost every night on our journey throughout Africa, especially in Utanda and Ugogo. This animal is as large as a mastiff, with a most powerful head, indicating great strength of jaw. Its color is a dirty tawny mixed with grey, and with black spots that seem faded. Its ears are large and thick, spotted with black. The dental system is similar to that of a dog, but the hyæna has three false molars in the upper row, and four in the lower. Their teeth are armed with formidable cutting points, which enable them to crush the largest bones.

The jackals we met were similar to our prairie coyotes, and their cries had the same sharp yelping tones. They are similar to foxes in their muzzles, and have thick bushy tails. Their color is of a dark grey.

Other animals which we met were elephants, rhinoceroses, the camelopard, or the giraffe, the zebra, the hartebeest, the eland, the buffalo, spring-bok, pallah, or water buck, the sable antelope, the brindled gnu, the reddish and lead-colored hog and wild boar, the hyrax, or coney, the kudu (*Ant. strepsiceros*), the tiny *perpusilla*, or blue-buck, and scores of the reit-bok, or red-buck (*A. Eliotragus*). As I have already described them, it is unnecessary to repeat my observations. I may mention here that I have seen numbers of prairie dogs, or ground squirrels, on the banks of the Rugufu or the Gombe. Of the hippopotami and crocodiles we saw numbers, in the Kingani, the Gombe, and the Malagarazi Rivers, and the Lake Tanganika.

The domesticated animals are such as are common to all countries. The oxen are of two kinds; that which we saw in Ugogo, Unyanyembe, and Uhha, was distinguished by a hump between the shoulders, such as has the American bison. The other kind, which we saw in Ujiji only, was distinguished by long legs, thin body, and enormously long horns.

Sheep are common with all tribes, and are distinguished by broad, fat, heavy tails. Goats are numerous, and of various colors. But the finest goats in Africa are those of Manyuema, which are short-legged and stout-bodied.

The asses, great numbers of which are found in Ubanarama, are strong and large, but vicious and wild.

Dogs are numerous, and are seen in every village. They are of the true pariah breed, and are a cowardly and mangy set.

Tame cats are also frequent in every village, and they must have a fine time of it, as the rats infest every house, hut, and tembe.

The feathered race is very numerous in Central

Africa. The most common of the birds which we saw were fish-eagles, bustards, kites, vultures, white-necked crows, turtledoves, ortolans, saddle-billed storks, on the Gombe, the Mpokwa, and the Rugufu: the ibis nigra, the ibis religiosa, toucans, wild geese (armed with spurs on their wings), wild ducks, black Madagascar ducks, and gulls on the Tanganika: paddy birds, thrushes, hammer-headed storks, pelicans, lead-colored and tuft-headed cranes, divers, kingfishers, and Egyptian geese, eared grebes, terns, guinea-fowl, quail, ptarmigan, and florican. I also saw some ostriches in Ugogo; swans on Lake Ugombo; snipe and wagtails on the Tanganika near the Rusizi River; besides great and little owls, bats, barbets, and the balænceps and sand-pipers. Others which I recognized were hoopoes, parrots, jays, wrens, red-wings, golden fly-catchers, and the little egrets. This as you may see, is far too long a list to enter into any description of the several species.

Among the reptiles we met were a long green snake, the boa, and a little silver-backed snake. Rock lizards were innumerable; tortoise, iguanas, the gymnopus, toads, frogs, and terrapin were also met with.

The insects seen principally were the common house flies, mosquitoes, fleas, lice, tsetse, horse and gadflies, enormous beetles, dragon-flies, tarantulas, garden and house spiders, yellow scorpions, centipedes, myriapedes, caterpillars, pismires, white, red, and black ants.

The fishes of the Tanganika are of great variety.

(1.) The first is the silurus, called by the Wajiji singa, which grows, according to native report, to four, and even six feet in length. The one I sketched was 38½ inches long, and weighed 10¾ lbs. in weight, but was considered to be a small one. It is an extremely fat fish, of a dark-brown color on the back, and light brown, inclined to whiteness, on the belly. This fish is scaleless. It is the same kind which we find in the pools and rivers. It is caught in the Gombe River by hundreds, is cut up and dried, and carried into Unyanyembe for sale to the Arabs, the Mohammedanized negroes, and Wasawahili.

(2.) The next in importance and size is the sangara, scaled, considered good for food. The one which the woodcut represents was 23 inches long, and 15½ inches round the body, and weighed 6½ lbs.

(3.) Next comes the mvuro, a thick, fleshy fish, considered excellent eating. This, also, is scaled. The engraving on page 532 represents one 18 inches long, 15¼ inches round the body, and weighing 5¼ lbs.

(4.) A scaled fish called the "chai," which I sketched, was 9¼ inches long, 4 inches round the body, had a greenish tint on its back, and was light underneath.

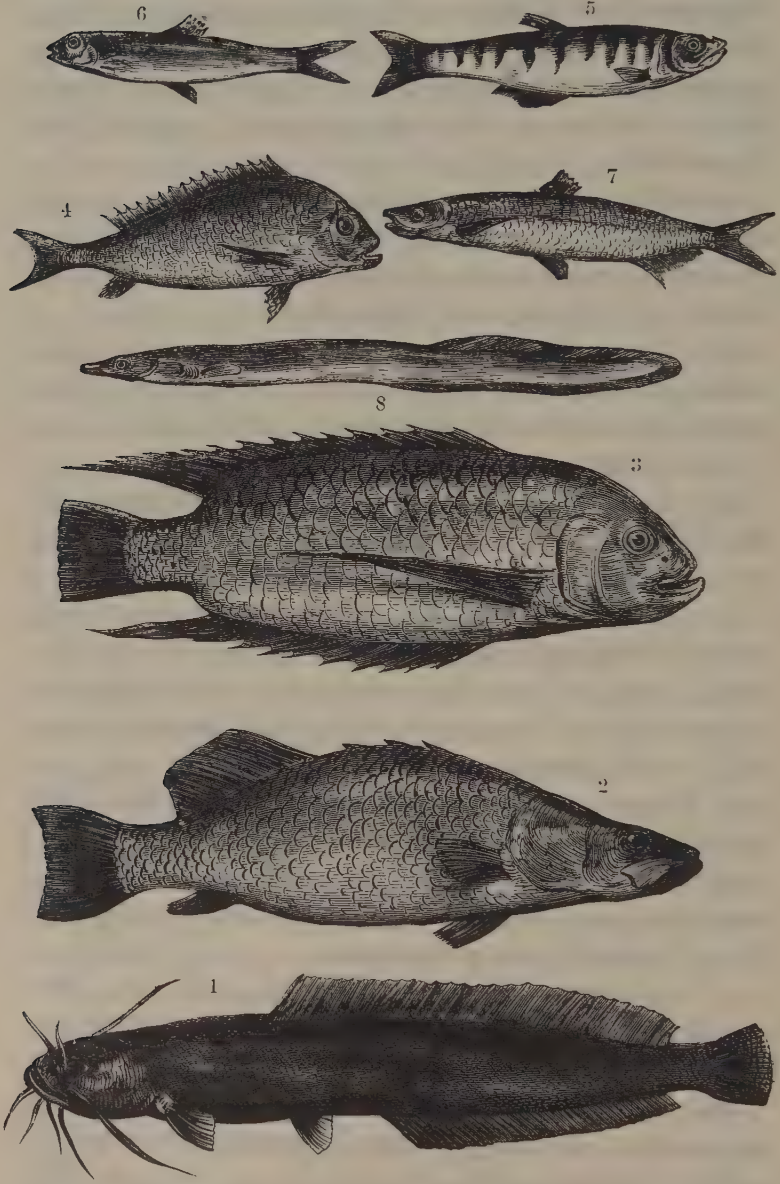
(5.) A scaleless fish, 7 inches long, 4 inches broad, marked with pale inky stripes a quarter of an inch broad, belly white, a handsome fish, is very numerous in the lake, and large captures of this kind are made daily by the fishermen of Ujiji.

(6.) Another scaleless fish, 6 inches long, with silvered belly, had a taste like trout, and is a great favorite.

(7.) A perch, general size 8 inches long, and 6 inches round the body, was a very dry fish, and seldom purchased except by the poor classes.

(8.) A short, thick eel, is a fine-flavored fish. The one sketched was 17 inches long, and 4 inches round the body.

The above-mentioned species are among the most important of the fishes of the Tanganika; but there is another variety, which, though the smallest fish, yet contributes more than any other to the food of the


6
5
7
4
8
3
2
1

people, and that is the minute "dogara," a species of white-bait, which is caught in great nets by the thousand. They are spread out in the sun to dry, or are salted, and are in this manner exported even as far as Unyanyembe. There are also several varieties of fish like the sardines of the French coast, which are caught with rod and line, or hand-nets. The markets of Ujiji also expose shrimps, and a kind of oyster, for sale.

The metals known to the tribes under consideration are copper and iron. The copper is conveyed from the coast and from Rua; the wrought iron from Usukuma or the northern states of Unyamwezi, and from Uvira. All brass ornaments worn in the far interior are manufactured by the natives from the thick brass wire sold by caravans. Though iron ore is abundant—even cropping above the ground in scores of places between Unyamwezi and Ujiji—yet it is seldom worked; though there are instances, in Ukonongo and Uvinza, where the natives smelt the ore, and make their own iron.

The diseases by which the natives are commonly afflicted, west of Unyanyembe, are acute dysentery, chronic dysentery, cholera morbus, remittent fever, intermittent fever, or ague, typhoid fever, low continuous fever, heart disease, rheumatism, paralysis, small-pox, itch, ophthalmia, sore throat, consumption, colic, cutaneous eruptions, ulcers, syphilis, gonorrhœa, convulsions, prolapsus ani, umbilical hernia, and nephritis.

But the great and terrible scourge of East and Central Africa is the small-pox. The bleached skulls of the victims to this fell disease, which lie along every caravan road, indicate but too clearly the havoc it makes annually, not only among the ranks of the several trading expeditions, but also among the villages of the respective tribes. Some caravans are decimated by it, and villages have been more than half-depopulated. Dr. Livingstone has saved many a poor life in Africa by vaccination; and it is affliction at witnessing the ravages daily made amongst the people that has compelled him to make an appeal for some vaccine matter to be sent to him.

The remedies used by the people themselves are simple herbs, or decoctions of herbs, delivered by the "waganga," or medicine-men. The medicinal use of the castor-oil plant is not known; the oil extracted from the seeds is used only to smear their heads and bodies with. Emetics are obtained from the bark of a certain tree, and the Arabs state it to be most powerful. For nephritic diseases the waganga compound a medicine from the root of a plant, and from the leaves of a shrub which grows near Unyamwezi, but whose name they would never tell me, though I endeavoured to purchase it with a cloth. Though I have seen a man use it daily for a month, I never observed it had any effect on him. Among the Arabs the remedy is gum-mastic, boiled in water, and a cupful of the liquid taken every evening before retiring, or a cupful of new milk taken every morning and evening. For rheumatism the remedy is lying down in the sun, or being rubbed briskly. Colic is supposed to be cured by inserting the finger down the throat, and causing vomiting. For dysentery, warm stones are employed over the abdomen, and to the posterior parts. Patients suffering from miasmatic fevers fold themselves in cloths, and lie down in the sun until perspiration ensues; but I have seen this treatment terminate with death among the men of my own Expedition. In cases of small-pox, quarantine is rigorously enforced, no one venturing near the patients except those who have already suffered from it. Members of a caravan attacked by the small-pox are excluded from the society of the healthy, and have special sheds set apart for them outside of the camp. But the succeeding caravans contain several reckless young fellows, who thoughtlessly enter within, and in a few days afterwards begin to feel ill, and to complain of loss of appetite, pains in the back, and low fever; and before long we know they have become victims, and are in their turn ostracised, and if unable to walk are left to die, for no settlement will permit them to approach their gates, and a caravan cannot halt in the wilderness. When thus driven from the face of man as one accursed, he seeks the jungle, with his store of food and water; builds his hut, and there rests until his recovery or death.

Upon leaving the noble park lands and forests of Unyamwezi, we find ourselves in Ukonongo, famous for its wild wood-peach trees, and its fine teak-wood, and its broad sheets of iron-ore, which crop out frequently as we journey toward the south and west. The eastern part of Ukonongo is but a continuation of the park land of Unyamwezi; but as we approach its western frontier, bordering on Ukawendi, enormous lumpy ridges rise prominently into view, which serve as a watershed to the River Mrera, and the numerous oozy, marshy ravines trending towards the Rikwa Plain.

It is very pretty and agreeable, and, stretching a point, we might say picturesque, the first view we get of the blue conical hills, which either rise singly or in triplets above the far-reaching plain which, so I was informed, extends across the Rungwa River to the pastoral lands of the Southern Watuta. Many of the feeders of the Rungwa River take their rise just where Ukonongo and Ukawendi unite. Several rise in the district of Kasera. I have been informed that the Rungwa River is as large as the Malagarazi, and that its principal source is in Central Urori. During the rainy season this river overflows the plain around it, just as the Mukondokwa River inundates the Makata Plain. Hence, Speke, on his map, has a bluish patch, which is supposed to represent the Rikwa Lagoon; but much questioning on this point has failed to elicit any knowledge of it, save that the plain is covered with water during the wet season.

If it be true that the Rungwa River rises in Central Urori, then we must accept the statement that the Rufiji, or the Ruhwha River, has its sources south-west of Ubena, as probable, at a group of mountains which may possibly be the same whence the Chambezi takes its rise.

South of Ukonongo is the territory of the Watuta; south-east are the districts of the Warori; south-west are Ufipa and Karungu; west is Ukawendi; north is Utakama, or the southern provinces of Unyamwezi.

Ukawendi we find to be an almost uninhabited country, with an irregular surface, forested, well drained by myriads of fine streams, a fertile and a favored land with an abounding fauna and flora. The only settlements of any importance are those of Mana Msenge, in the north; those of Ngondo and Tongwe, in the west, on the Tanganika; those of Rusawa, in the centre; Pumburu, in the south, and Utanda, in the south-east.

The more important rivers are the Rugufu, which, rising in the hilly group near Pumburu, flows parallel with the lake through a deep valley north, issuing into the lake south of the Malagarazi. The next is the Loajeri, which, rising between Kagungu and Pumburu ranges, issues into the lake near the chief village of

Urimba. There are scores of such rivers as the Uwelasia, Sigunga, Mviga, and Kivoe.

Ukawendi, ranking third in size among the countries in the central region, stretches from the Malagarazi River, from about S. lat. 5° 10′ to about S. lat. 6° 18′. It is bounded on the north by Southern Uvinza and the Malagarazi River; on the east by Ugara and Ukonongo; on the south by Usowa and Ufipa; and on the west by the Tanganika Lake.

Proceeding north from Ukawendi, we arrive in Southern Uvinza, a country much cut up by deep ravines, of a mountainous and rugged character, intersected in all directions by dun-colored lines of naked ridges. In the alluvial valley of the Malagarazi are numerous salt-pans, out of which the natives extract considerable quantities of salt. There are but few streams flowing through it. Among the special productions are goats and grain.

Crossing the Malagarazi, we come to a lengthy, latitudinal strip of poor country, called Northern Uvinza. The soil is poor, nourishing but a sparse jungle of gums, thorns, tamarind, mimosa, and a few stunted specimens of teak. The salt plains are extensive, and the possession and exclusive right to these are fruitful subjects of contention between the two great chiefs, Lokanda Mira and Nzogera.

The Malagarazi at its head-waters is known as the Northern Gombe. As it flows through extensive salinas, its waters have a slightly saline taste, but not disagreeably so. It falls into the Tanganika, south of Ujiji Bunder. I believe it is navigable by boats all the way from the lake to Wilyankuru. I know it is navigable thus far in the rainy season.

Northern Uvinza is bounded by the pastoral country of Uhha on the north; on the east by Ukalaganza and Usagozi, or Western Unyamwezi; on the south by the Malagarazi; and on the west by Ukaranga.

Its principal settlements are Mpete, Usenye, Yambeho, Siala, Isinga, Nzogera's Island, and Lokanda Mira's district. The chief productions are goats, sheep, grain, and salt.

From Uvinza we proceed to Uhha. This latter is an immense plain country, similar in appearance to our prairies of Nebraska. It is known under the two divisions, Kimenyi and Antari. Uhha, in its most extensive sense, is bounded on the north by Ututa, on the south and east by Uvinza, on the west by Ukaranga and Ujiji.

The range of mountains which are said to form the divisional line between Uhha and Ututa give birth to two streams of note, the Rusugi and Rugufu. Other streams are called Sunuzzi, Kanengi, and Pombwe. Mostly all these streams that run through Uhha are slightly brackish, especially the Pombwe, Kanengi, and the Rusugi.

The denuded plains of Uhha support large herds of hump-backed cattle and broad-tailed sheep. The goats are also very fine. The soil is fertile, and produces fine crops of Holcus sorghum and maize. The climate is good, and the heat is tempered by the breezes of the Tanganika and the winds of Usagara.

The small lakes or large pools of Uhha are a conspicuous feature. They occupy extensive but shallow circular depressions, or basins. Evidences are not wanting to prove that at one time or another much of Uhha was inundated, and that the valley of the Malagarazi River was nothing but a deep arm of the Tanganika. An accomplished geologist would find subjects of surpassing interest in this region.

Proceeding westward, and crossing the small stream Sunuzzi, we arrive in Ukaranga, a country exceedingly diversified in its character. North, as it joins Northern Uhha, it is mountainous; south, it is a lengthy smooth slope, covered with tall teak trees; in the centre it consists of rolling hills, drained by swift, clear streams —a fertile and delightful district. From the east, a number of parallel ridges, all tree-clad, strike out at right angles westward from the main range which separates North-eastern Uhha from Ukaranga, and subside suddenly as they approach the alluvial valley of the Liuche.

The trees of Ukaranga are principally teak, the mbugu, and bamboo. The climate is exceedingly soft and moist. A constant drizzle seems to be pouring over the tops of the Ukaranga ridges, whence arise the numerous streams that discharge themselves into the Liuche.

From the heights of Ukaranga we descend into the Liuche valley, and find ourselves in Ujiji, a district of surpassing beauty and fertility, and come in view of that mighty inland sea whose shores must from henceforth be considered sacred, for "the place that a good man has trod remains hallowed to all time." And, indeed, nature has assisted us in the love which we now feel for the classic lands bordering the Tanganika. No man, however prosaic his nature, can stand on the beach of Ujiji, and look westward across the broad belt of silver waters at sunset, without being affected, in the innermost recesses of his heart, at the display of colors which the sun reveals on the face of the heaven in which he is set. The ethereal colors come and go with the rapidity of magic. They are of gold and azure, pink and silver, purple and saffron; in thin lines and broad bars, cirri and cumuli are transformed into burnished flaming gold; they reflect their refulgence on the gigantic blue-black barrier which bounds the Tanganika westward; they reveal the whole panorama of mountains, spread over them lovely rosy hues, and bathe them in a flood of silver light.

The most remarkable tribe in Central Africa are the Wanyamwezi. A beau-ideal of a Mnyamwezi to me will be a tall long-limbed black man, with a good-natured face, always with a broad smile upon it; displaying in the centre of the upper row of teeth a small hole, which was cut out when he was a boy, to denote his tribe; with hundreds of long wiry ringlets hanging down his neck; almost naked; giving me a full view of a form which would make an excellent model for a black Apollo. I have seen many of this tribe in the garb of the freedmen of Zanzibar, sporting a turban of new American sheeting, or wearing the long dishdasheh (shirt) of the Arab, presenting as fine and intelligent an appearance as any Msawahili from the Zanguebar coast; but I cannot rid myself of my ideal.

A Mnyamwezi is the Yankee of Africa; he is a born trader and traveller. From days immemorial his tribe has monopolized the carrying of goods from one country to another. The Mnyamwezi is the camel, the horse, the mule, and the ass—the beast of burden to which all travellers anxiously look to convey his luggage from the coast to the far African interior. The Arab can go nowhere without his help; the white traveller, bound on an exploring trip, cannot travel without him. He is generally found in great numbers at Bagamoyo, Konduchi, Kaole, Dar Salaam, and Kilwa, waiting to be hired for a long voyage. He is like the sailor, having his habitat in certain sailors' boardinghouses in great seaport towns; and, like the sailor, is a restless rover. The sea-coast to a Mnyamwezi is like New York to an English sailor. At New York the English sailor can re-ship with higher pay, so can the Mnyamwezi re-hire himself on the coast, for a return trip, at a higher rate than from Unyamwezi to the sea. He is in such demand, and during war time so scarce, that his pay is great, ranging from thirty-six yards of cloth to one hundred yards. A hundred of these human *bêtes de somme* will readily cost the traveller 10,000 yards of cloth, even as far as Unyanyembe, a three months' journey. 10,000 yards of cloth at Zanzibar represent $5,000 in gold. But with patience and rigid economy the same number may be procured for $3,000.

The Wanyamwezi, weighted with the bales of Zanzibar, containing cottons and domestics from Massachusetts, calicoes from England, prints from Muscat, cloths from Cutch, beads from Germany, brass wire from Great Britain, may be found on the Lualaba, in the forests of Ukawendi, on the hills of Uganda, the mountains of Karagwah, on the plains of Urori, on the plateau of Ugogo, in the park lands of Ukonongo, in the swamps of Useguhha, the defiles of Usagara, in the wilderness of Ubena, among the pastoral tribes of the Watuta, trudging along the banks of the Rufiji, in slave-trading Kilwa—everywhere throughout Central Africa,

While journeying with caravans, they are docile and tractable; in their villages they are a merry-making set; on trading expeditions of their own they are keen and clever; as Ruga-Ruga they are unscrupulous and bold; in Ukonongo and Ukawendi they are hunters; in Usukuma they are drovers and iron-smelters; in Lunda they are energetic searchers for ivory; on the coast they are a wondering and awe-struck people.

The Wanyamwezi, I fear, are dying out, or they have emigrated to distant parts; but I base my first statement upon the large tracts of their country that are desolated, such as Mgongo Tembo, Rubuga, Kigwa, Utanda, Mfuto, Masange, Wilyankuru. Such uneasy, dissatisfied spirits as Manwa Sera, Niongo, Mirambo, and Oseto tend by the constant strife they are engaged in to materially depopulate Unyamwezi. The hardships of travel on the gristle of the race are not favorable to its multiplication. Eight out of ten of the bleached skulls seen along the paths of commerce in the interior are those of the unfortunate Wanyamwezi who have succumbed to the perils and privations attending the footsteps of every caravan. Slavery, with its abominations, assists in their demoralization and extermination. It is sad to think that such people should perish from the earth, as the warrior race of the Makololo have, even within the memory of man, since Livingstone first sighted Linyanti. What a power in the land might not a philanthropic government make of these people! What a glorious testimony to the charity of civilization might they not become! What docile converts to the Gospel truths, through a practical missionary, would they not make!

Great is the power of "uganga"—medicine—in Unyamwezi. I was reported to be able to make rain, to be able to poison all the wells in the country, to kill all Mirambo's people with a medicinal preparation, until I took the trouble to deny all such power as was attributed to me. At first they would bring their sick to me—the ulcerous, the syphilitic, sufferers from the itch and the small-pox, the consumptive, and those afflicted with dysentery—until they all finally became convinced by my earnestness that I could do nothing for them. One old man, suffering from chronic dysentery, brought me a fine fat sheep and a dish of choroko—vetches—for medicine to cure his disease. I might have taken the sheep, and given him a worthless compound, but I told him at once that I could do nothing for his sickness. I gave him, however, about one hundred grains of Dover's powders, and a couple of doti of good cloth to cover himself and wife with, but refused his sheep, I felt so much for the man's sufferings.

No hunting expedition of Wanyamwezi starts without having consulted the mganga—medicine-man—who, for a consideration, supplies them with charms, potions, herbs, and blessings. A bit of the ear of a zebra, the blood of a lion, the claw of a leopard, the lip of a buffalo, the tail of a giraffe, the eyebrow of a hartebeest, are treasures not to be parted with save for a monetary value. To their necks are suspended a bit of quartz, polished and of a triangular shape, and pieces of carved wood, and an all-powerful talisman in the shape of a plant sewn up jealously in a small leathern purse.

The Wanyamwezi as a race are arrant cowards. Their caravans steal through Ugogo humbly enough, but, when out of that dreaded country, they make a great blustering show amongst other tribes. During war-time in their country their custom is never to engage themselves to caravans. Their chiefs discourage all trading enterprises, and the commands of their elders are laws.

The system of government is an hereditary monarchy in Unyamwezi. The King is called Mtemi. Except in Unyanyembe, Usagozi, and Ugala, no chief in Unyamwezi deserves that title, though it is given by courtesy to the chiefs of districts. The present King of Unyanyembe is Mkasiwa; Pakalambula is King of Ugara; and "Moto," or Fire, of Usagozi.

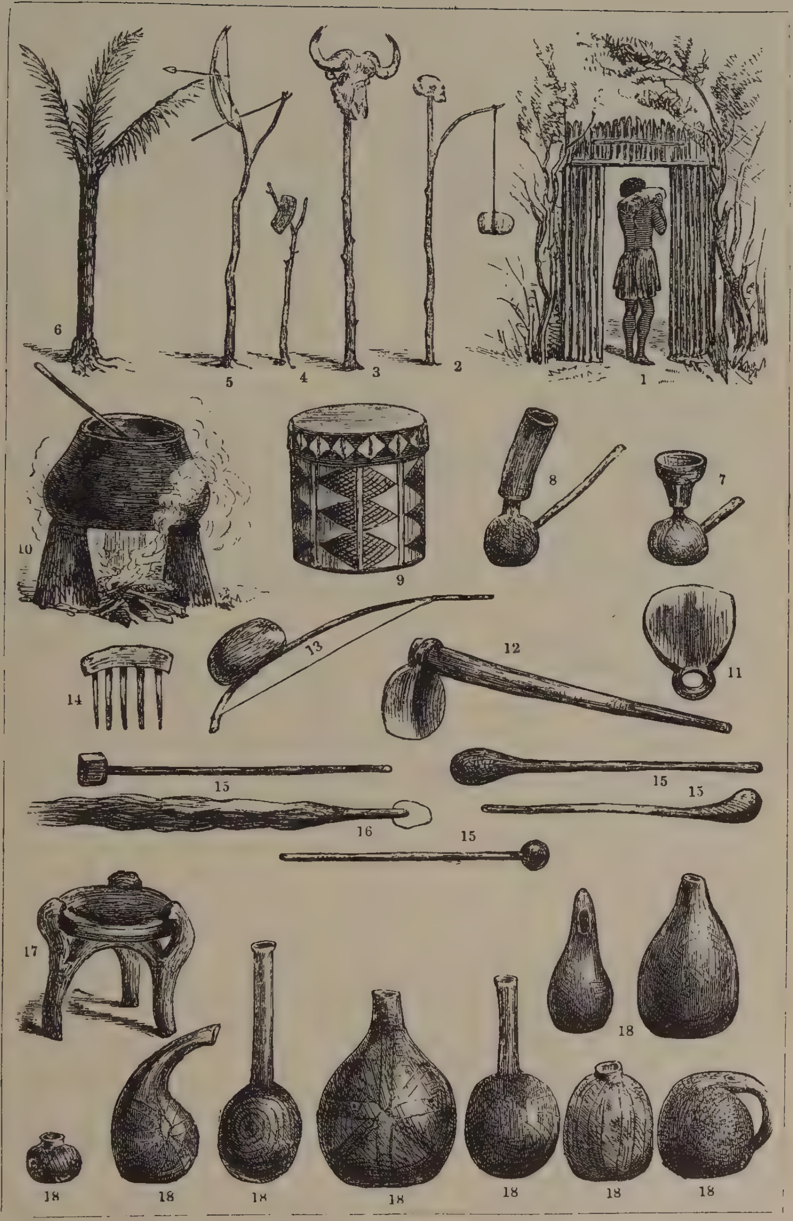
Mkasiwa can raise 3,000 warriors in Unyanyembe out of a population of nearly 20,000 people. The small districts of Tabora and Kwihara could alone supply 1,500 warriors.

There are some curious customs among the Wanyamwezi. When a child is born the father cuts the caul, and travels with it to the frontier of his district, and there deposits it under the ground; if the frontier is a stream, he buries it on the banks; then taking the root of a tree, he conveys it on his return, and buries it at the threshold of his door. He then invites his friends to a feast which he has prepared. He kills an ox, or half a dozen goats, and distributes pombe. If twins are born, they never kill one, but rather think it a greater blessing. The mother, when approaching childbirth, hastens to the woods, and is there attended by a female friend.

The marriage ceremonies are similar to those amongst the Wagogo. The wife is purchased from her father for cows or goats, according to the means of the several parties.

Witchcraft, devoted to evil purposes, is punished with death. The same ceremony in vogue among the Wagogo, concerning the detection and conviction of miscreants, is similar to the custom in Unyamwezi. Crimes against the state and the community are also punished with death. A detected thief, with the evidences of his guilt on him, may be either slaughtered on the spot, or, according to the judgment of the Mtemi, or King, become the slave of the owner of the property he has attempted to defraud.

After death, the Wanyamwezi remove the body either into the jungle, or, if a person of importance,

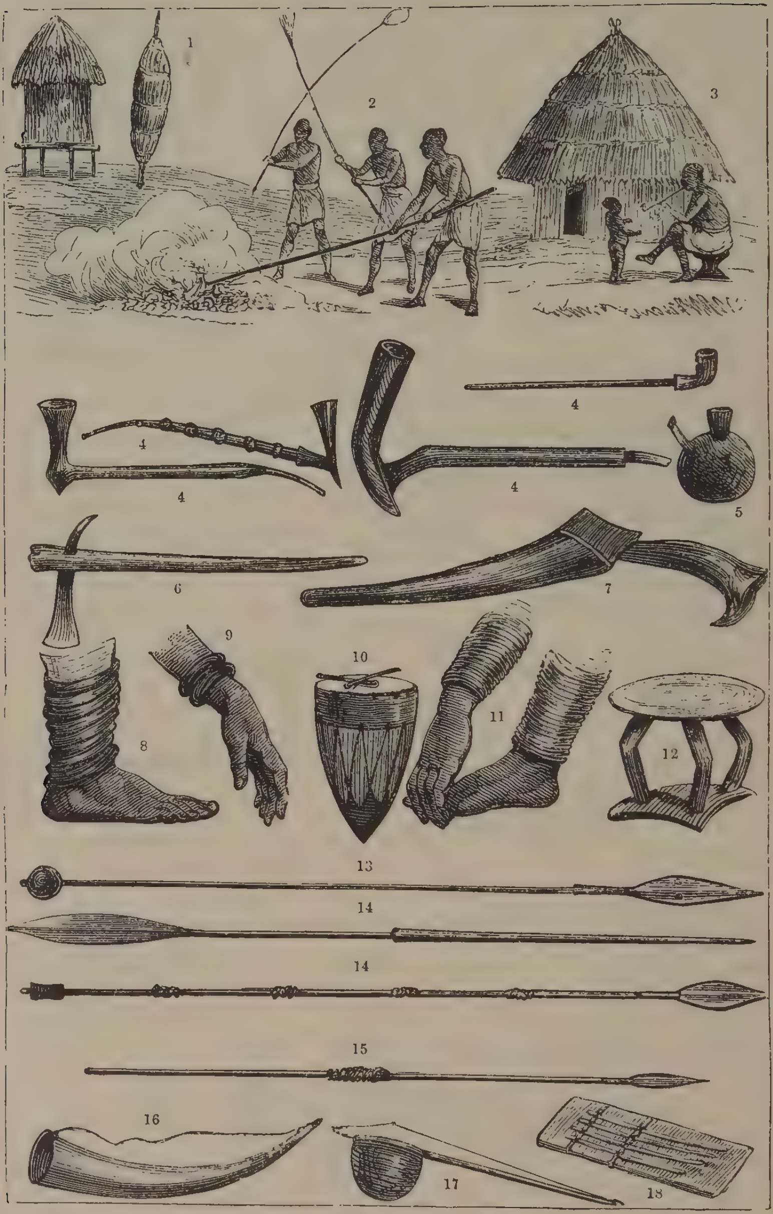


POT POURRI.

1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6. Signs on the road.
7, 8. Hubble-bubbles.
9. Native box made of bark.
10. Native fire-place, and earthen cooking-pot.

11. Hoe.
12. Hoe.
13. Native guitar.
14. Native comb.

15. Knob-sticks.
16. Fly-flapper.
17. Stool.
18. Gourds.



POT POURRI.

1. Storage of grain.
2. Threshing.
3. Small hut.
4. Pipes.
5. Native hubble-bubble.
6. War hatchet.
7. Billhook.
8. Leglets.
9. Wristlets.
10. Drum.
11. Brass-wire ornaments.
12. Stool.
13. Manyuema spear.
14. Ujiji spears.
15. Assegai.
16. Kirangozi's signal horn.
17. Guitar.
18. Musical instrument.

bury it in a sitting posture, or on its side, as the Wagogo. On the march the body is merely thrown aside, and left for a prey to the hyæna, the cleanest scavenger of the forest. The Sultan is buried within the village.

The Northern Wanyamwezi are a very industrious people. Their iron they themselves smelt, and manufacture almost all the hoes from the Tanganika to Usagara. No caravan returns from Unyanyembe without purchasing hoes, with which they pay the return tribute to the Wagogo. The iron ware thus imported serves for a multitude of instruments to the eastern and western tribes; from it they manufacture their spears, arrowheads, billhooks, and war hatchets. In Unyanyembe may be often seen the native artizan peddling his deadly instruments for cloth. Two yards will buy a new spear, or a dozen arrows; four yards of sheeting will purchase a first-class bow, ornamented with brass and copper wire; and two yards will purchase a formidable-looking hatchet. This last weapon, as may be seen from the illustrations in this book, is similar to that used by the Picts in the stone age, and by the Romans and Egyptians in their early historical periods, and is uniform with that used from Bagamoyo to San Salvador—from Nubia to Kaffir-land.

The Deity in Kinyamwezi is called Miringu; in Kigogo he is called Mulungu; in Kisawahili, Mienzi Mungu. The Wanyamwezi regard him as the dispenser of wealth, and the Creator. He is seldom entreated, save for adding to their worldly wealth. When death has taken away a member of the family in Unyamwezi, it is said by the relatives of the deceased that the "Miringu has taken him or her;" or, "he or she is lost." "It is God's work." And the tone of awe with which they speak of it implies also "that it is marvellous in their eyes."

"Can a maid forget her ornaments, or a bride her attire?" It seems not in Unyamwezi. From the hour that she begins to call for "mamma" her ornaments are her constant solicitude. She loves to look at the pretty wristlets of red, yellow, white, and green beads which appear in such contrast against the dark hue of her skin; she loves to twine her fingers through the lengthy necklaces of variegated beads that are suspended from her neck, or to play with the bead belt that encompasses her waist; she even sets them in her hair, and loves to be told that they become her. It is a pleasure with her to possess a spiral wire cincture, even though she possesses no garment to be supported by it. She awaits with impatience the day when she can be married, and have a cloth to fold around her body—until she can have authority to dispose of her fowls for the cheap tinsel vended by Arab merchants.

The ladies' tea-parties in Anglo-Saxon lands seem to have had an early origin. They were in vogue, or at least there were gatherings similar to them, when Egypt stood highest in the list of civilized nations. Who has studied the pictures of ancient Egypt on the walls of recovered Memphis, and has not seen the ladies' social circle? I have seen these symposia in Abyssinia—that land so tenacious of ancient customs. A ladies' party may be seen in Unyamwezi, also; and seldom have I beheld anything so approaching to happiness and perfect contentment as the faces of the old and young women of a Kinyamwezi tembe, as they have gathered together near sunset from the various houses to sit and chat together of the events of the day, on the very trite subjects of interest that a Kinyamwezi social circle can have to converse about. Each female has her short stool and her growing daughter by her side, who, while the mother chats and smokes with her face radiant with contentment, employs her nimble hands in converting her parent's woolly locks into a series of plaits and ringlets. The elder females, squatted in a circle, begin to recite their experiences, chattering away like swallows: one tells how her cow has stopped giving milk; another, how well she has sold her milk to the white man; another, of her experiences in the field while she was hoeing; another, of how her master has not yet returned from the Kinyamwezi capital, whither he had gone with some grain to sell.

While the village matrons indulge in harmless gossip, the patresfamilias may be found in the Young Men's Gossip Institute, or the Exchange, where the prices of things and the politics of the district they live in are discussed, with perhaps as much acumen and sense as other things are in like places in more civilized lands. This public assembly room in a Kinyamwezi village is called in the dialect "Wanza," or "Uwanza," and is generally situated on one side of the square area within the village. During idle times—and it is seldom there are busy times—they smoke, sit on their heels, and have a discussion on perhaps the very same topics we have just heard the matrons talk about: most probably the topic is the white man who has just arrived. We may rest assured that, if it is the white man, it is a most interesting subject; though, however interesting it is, and however great their curiosity to know all about him, they are never so impertinent as to doubt the fact of his being a white man, or to dispute his statements, as certain people calling themselves civilized have been pleased to do.

A man has a spear to sharpen, or a sword to decorate, or an axe helve to make, or a pipe to smoke, or gossip to impart, and he enters the Wanza to do it. If the place is deserted he hurries through his work, and seeks the group under the large tree almost always found in a village, where, under its shade, he can indulge his love for intellectual conversation. What the Agora was to Athens, and the Exchange is to the modern capitals of civilization, the Wanza is to a village in Unyamwezi.

The Wanyamwezi, as may be gathered from the above remarks, are addicted to smoking. By glancing at the illustrations of the various kinds of pipes it will be noticed that they display considerable skill in their manufacture, and it will be observed also that the style of them is very similar to that of the North American Indian pipes. While our Indians employ red steatite for their pipes the Wanyamwezi use black steatite, which is found in Western Usukuma. But as this soft stone is somewhat difficult to obtain they manufacture them out of black mud, mixed with finely-chopped straw. The tobacco of Unyamwezi is not of a superior kind. They manufacture it into the same form as the tobacco loaves of Abyssinia. A doti, or four yards of cloth, will purchase a three-pound loaf; and a pipe made of black steatite, and stem highly ornamented with fine brass or copper wire, may be obtained for the same quantity of cloth.

The natives are also very fond of using bhang with their tobacco. Their narghileh is a very primitive affair, made out of a gourd and a hollow stick. One or two inhalations are sufficient to send any of them into a series of horrible coughs, which seem to rack their frames. They, however, delight in this, for frequently they affect it; but it is impossible to describe the irritability and disgust which their noisy, harsh, grating cough provokes.

The Wanyamwezi of Unyanyembe own several herds of cattle. In whichever country cattle are seen, one may take it for granted that it is seldom invaded. Between the coast and Ujiji, cattle were found only in Usagara, Ugogo, Unyanyembe, and Uhha; all other countries reared only goats, sheep, and chickens. Some of the wealthier Arabs of Unyanyembe possess large herds of cattle, and have as many as forty and fifty milch cows, but there are few Wanyamwezi who possess more than thirty. A milch cow is worth from twenty to thirty doti, or 80 to 120 yards of sheeting; though in Usukuma one may be purchased for from two to four doti. Half a gallon of milk is considered good milking for a cow; but this is not often the case: I should say the average produce was three pints. I was accustomed to have one gallon of milk supplied to me every day for ten days for four yards of cloth, given in the shape of a kitambi, or a colored cloth. With this supply of milk I was accustomed to make my own butter and cheese, and in Unyanyembe they were the greatest luxuries a white man could have.

This tribe are, like all negroes, great lovers of music. It is true that it is barbarous, and becomes monotonous after a while, but the best of their musicians can always make it amusing. Many of them are great improvisers; the latest scandal, or political news or personal gossip, is sure, if it is of sufficient public interest, to find expression in village music. Within a week after the declaration of war by Mirambo, there was not a village throughout Unyamwezi which did not at evening have Mirambo, somehow or another, mentioned in their songs; and as they were all well-known tunes in that part of the country, the name of this now famous king had been interpolated instead of the one previously used. The Musungu, or Muzungu, as it is sometimes pronounced, was also a favorite subject upon first arrival, but this soon lacked novelty.

The food of these natives, as indeed of all throughout Central Africa, consists of flour of matama—the *Holcus sorghum*, or the Arabic dourra, or dura, converted into a kind of thick porridge, which is simply a scalded mess. This is accompanied with leaves of garden plants, such as the bean and the cucumber-plant, which are boiled and mashed up. They seldom eat meat, as it would be too expensive, and there are many animals from which they are averse. They will eat the fœtus and entrails with rare relish, and if they can obtain meat at another's expense they are very apt to gorge themselves. In my caravan, when I succeeded in my hunts, the Wanyamwezi would sit up all night to finish their portion of meat, as if it were a sacred duty with them. The mush of America, made of Indian corn, is well known throughout all Central Africa. When this humble meal is cooked the males of the family assemble around their pot, and scooping out a large handful, dip it into the mess of greens, or ghee, and cram it into their mouths. The females eat separately, it being derogatory to male dignity to be seen eating with female relatives.

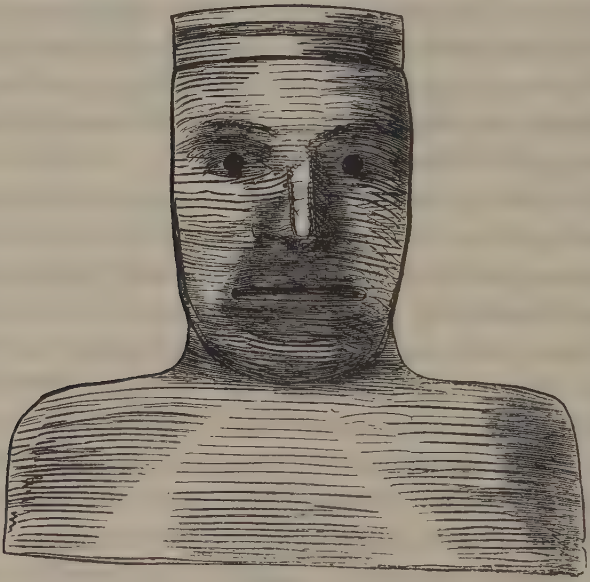
Very old age is unusual in Central Africa. Grey hair and stooping backs are to be seen in almost every village. The oldest people I saw were in Ugogo and Unyanyembe—ancient, secure, and well-established countries. I should estimate the age of Magomba, Sultan of Kanyenyi, at near ninety: in 1858—fourteen years ago—Capt. Burton mentions him as old and decrepit. He lives yet, but is unable to walk far without assistance. His eldest son, Kisewah, must be considerably over sixty, and his youngest son, Mtundu Ngondeh, near fifty. The Sultan of Mizanza, who slew Sny bin Amer, the friend of Burton and Speke, in my opinion cannot be much under eighty; and Pembera Pereh, chief of Nyambwa, must be of the same age.

I regard the Wakonongo and the Wa-kawendi as belonging formerly to the same race as the Wanyamwezi; their languages, manners, and customs are identical. But when we cross the Malagarazi, and enter Uvinza, we find ourselves among different people; and in describing the Wavinza's manners and customs, I include the Wajiji, Wakaranga, Warundi, Wavira, Watuta, and Watusi.

The greeting which we hear upon our arrival in Uvinza tells us of new tribes, and new customs, to which we are about to be introduced. It is a most tedious ceremony, a first introduction between two Wavinza. As they advance they stretch out both hands to one another, uttering the words, "Wake, wake;" then, grasping each other by the elbows, they begin to rub each other's arms, saying rapidly, "Wake, wake, waky, waky,"ending with grunts of "Huh, huh," which imply mutual satisfaction. The women greet the males—even half-grown youths—by bending their backs forward until the tips of their fingers rest on the toes of their feet, or in turning their bodies sideways, clapping their hands, exclaiming, "Wake, wake, waky, waky; Huh, huh;" and the males reply by clapping their hands, and responding with the same words.

The dress of all these people, if they are not rich enough to purchase cloth from travelling caravans, or skilful enough in the manufacture of their own cloths, like the Wajiji and Warundi, consists of a goat-skin, suspended by a knot fastened over the shoulder, and falling over one side of their bodies.

For ornaments they affect the solid brass rings around their ankles or wrists, or the kitindi (brass wire, which is twisted into a spiral coil). The polished tusks of the boar, or a polished piece of thin and curved ivory, are favourite ornaments for the neck throughout the districts of Uvinza, Uhha, Ujiji, and Urundi.



AN IDOL.

The Wajiji are skilful manufacturers of their own cloth, from the cotton which they cultivate, and it is similar in texture to the Mexican Serape. They are a superstitious race, like the Wakaranga. In Niamtaga, near the gate of the village, I saw their tutelar deity, which was the carved head of a man in wood, painted. The face was colored white, with black staring eyes, the figure had square upright shoulders, and a kind of head-dress painted a yellow color. Each man or woman, upon entering at the gate, bowed profoundly to the idol, as Roman Catholics do before the image of the Blessed Virgin.

The Wajiji believe that they have power over the crocodiles; that they are so friendly with those amphibious reptiles that they can compel them to do whatever they wish. There is a report current in Ujiji that there is a crocodile, as learned as the seal of Barnum's Museum in New York, which obeys the commands of his friends implicitly, even to taking a man out of his house into the lake, or to travelling into a crowded market, and detecting a thief out of a large assembly of natives. The caverns of Kabogo, on the western side of the lake, are a horror to the Wajiji, who, whenever they pass that terrible place, think to mollify the angry god of the lake by throwing beads and cloth into the waters. They report that this is necessary, and that the god has a preference for white (Merikani) beads; and the Wangwana of Zanzibar and the Arabs must comply with this traditional custom ere the Wajiji will pull oars across. In passing Bemba, also, every boat must chip a certain portion of the pipe-clay ere it can be assured of a fortunate voyage. That it has been a custom complied with for generations is evident by the enormous excavation they have made in the chalk cliff.

No more varied customs have I observed anywhere in regard to the dressing of the hair than I have seen in Urundi and Ujiji. It is either shaved off entirely, or left in diagonal and horizontal lines; or in combs, ridges, tufts, stripes, little curls on the temple and forehead; or in front bands, and sometimes in narrow wavy or straight lines: from which we may conclude that the friseur's is a high art in savage as in civilized lands. And in the ornamentation of their bodies by tattooing they are superior to other tribes. You will find a tattooed wheel encircling the navel, and around each bosom; on the arms the tattooing marks are in wavy lines, or concentric folds, or in lines running diagonally across the chest to the shoulder; in bracelets around the wrist; then from left shoulder to right hip, from right shoulder to left hip, over the stomach, in a most intricate system of lines wavy and horizontal; and over the abdomen in great blotch pieces, with no design whatever. The operation of tattooing, though, must be a painful one, if one may judge from the immense blisters raised after the punctures.

Nothing limits the vanity of the negro for ornament except poverty. Those able to afford the expense wear as many as thirty and forty necklaces of sami-sami, Merikani, sofi, or pipe-stem beads, kadunduguru, and the pink beads. I refer to the Wajiji and Warundi, more especially the latter. Suspended to their necks are the thin curved pieces of ivory, hippopotamus teeth, and boar tusks; and at the back of the neck heavy pieces of carved ivory. Some wear attached to their necks long narrow miniature bells of native iron, twisted iron wire, and charms, or white polished stones or shells, as amulets. Encircling their wrists are armlets of sami-sami or blue mutunda, which latter is a favourite bead; belts of these beads also surround their waists.

Their clothing consists of a tanned goat, calf, or sheep skin, dyed with the reddish porous clay swept down the ravines by the rivulets. These hide-garments are further ornamented with black lines, spots, and circles, after the manner in vogue amongst our American Indians.

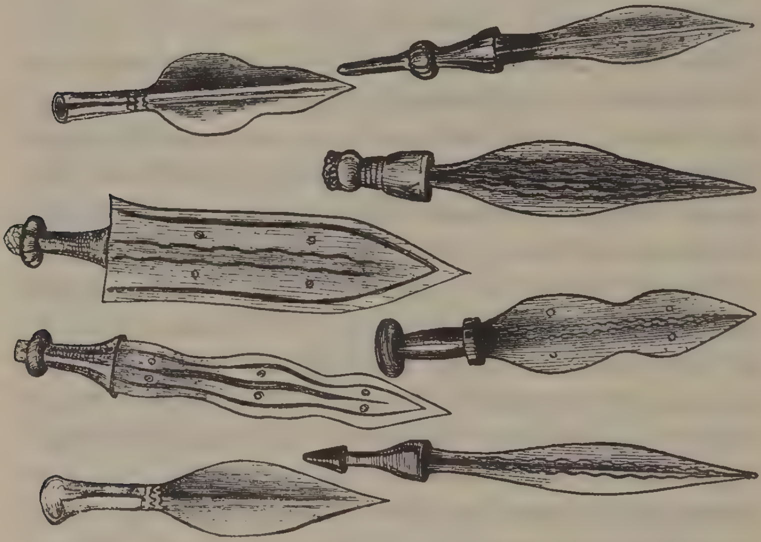
Like the Wagogo, and perhaps to a greater extent, the Warundi are fond of ochre on their bodies. Besides rubbing their bodies with this clay, which considerably lightens the color, they daub their faces, heads, eyelids, and eyebrows a deep red with it.

Their women are in the habit of tying down their long purse-like breasts upon their chests with a cord twined round their bodies. They carry for defence, or from habit, long sticks, which are sometimes decorated with a small figure of a lizard, or a crocodile, on the head.

The tribes bordering the lake carry heavy spears for close action, or for quartering a man, and light assegai, which they are able to throw most accurately fifty and seventy yards. The bows are shorter than those used by the Wanyamwezi and Wakonongo, but the arrows are the same, though more skilfully and tastefully made.

The Wabembe, or the Wavembe—the cannibals who inhabit the rugged range of mountains west of the Tanganika, and opposite North-eastern Urundi—are a people seldom seen by travellers on the lake. They seem to infer, from their own practices, that other people eat their kind, and when boats with Arabs and Wangwana appear in their vicinity they keep close to their own mountain villages. It is said, though I do not vouch for the truth of the report, that when they have known an Arab merchant to have a sickly or a moribund slave, they have offered to purchase him for grain and vegetables; that when they have seen an unusually fat freedman of Zanzibar, they have put their hands to their mouths, and exclaimed, with astonishment, "*Chukula, ngema sana, hapa! Chumvi mengi!*"—Food, good, indeed, here! Salt plenty!

The Wasansi—or Basansi, as Dr. Livingstone thinks they should be called—are neighbors of the Wabembe, and I fear they must be classed with the man-eaters of Ubembe. The Wasansi were those who at Cape Luvumba made such a disturbance with the Doctor and myself because of the murder of the son of Sultan Kisesa by Khamis, the Baluch, and who declared to us they never wished to behold another "Murungwana"—Zanzibar freeman. Positively, I never beheld such excitement in my life as these people exhibited when they saw one of my soldiers cutting up a goat for distribution. They seemed to be attacked with a kind of frenzy at the sight of the meat, such as one might expect from any hungry carnivorous animal. They implored with wild eyes for the smallest portion; they fought among themselves when one of my men threw a piece into a crowd; they eagerly gathered the clotted



DAGGERS AND SPEAR-HEADS.

blood of the goat from the ground, and gazed with an esurient avidity at every mouthful of meat a man ate. Whatever may be true respecting the man-eating propensities of the Wabembe, I feel assured that the Wasansi are cannibals.

The Manyuema are the cleverest manufacturers of weapons, as may be seen by the foregoing sketch of daggers and spear-heads.

VIEW OF OUR CAMP AT URIMBA.

CHAPTER XV.

OUR JOURNEY FROM UJIJI TO UNYANYEMBE.

We felt quite at home when we sat down on our black bear-skin, gay Persian carpet and clean new mats, to rest with our backs to the wall, sipping our tea with the air of comfortable men, and chat over the incidents of the "picnic," as Livingstone persisted in calling our journey to the Rusizi. It seemed as if old times, which we loved to recall, had come back again, though our house was humble enough in its aspect, and our servants were only naked barbarians; but it was near this house that I had met him—Livingstone—after that eventful march from Unyanyembe; it was on this same veranda that I listened to that wonderful story of his about those far, enchanting regions west of the Lake Tanganika; it was in this same spot that I first became acquainted with him; and ever since my admiration has been growing for him, and I feel elated when he informs me that he must go to Unyanyembe under my escort, and at my expense. The old mud walls and the bare rafters, and the ancient thatched roof, and this queer-looking old veranda, will have an historical interest for me while I live, and so, while I can, I have taken pains and immortalized the humble old building by a sketch.

I have just said that my admiration for Livingstone has been growing. This is true. The man that I was about to interview so calmly and complacently, as I would interview any prominent man with the view of specially delineating his nature, or detailing his opinions, has conquered me. Shall I tell you what I intended to do? It is true as the gospel. I intended to interview him, report in detail what he said, picture his life and his figure, then bow him my "*au revoir*," and march back. That he was specially disagreeable and brusque in his manner, which would make me quarrel with him immediately, was firmly fixed in my mind. Besides, he was an Englishman—perhaps a man who used an eye-glass, through which he would glare at me ferociously or icily—both amounting to the same thing—and like the young cornet of the Scinde Horse in Abyssinia, ask me deliberately, after retreating from me several paces, "Whom have I the honor to address?"

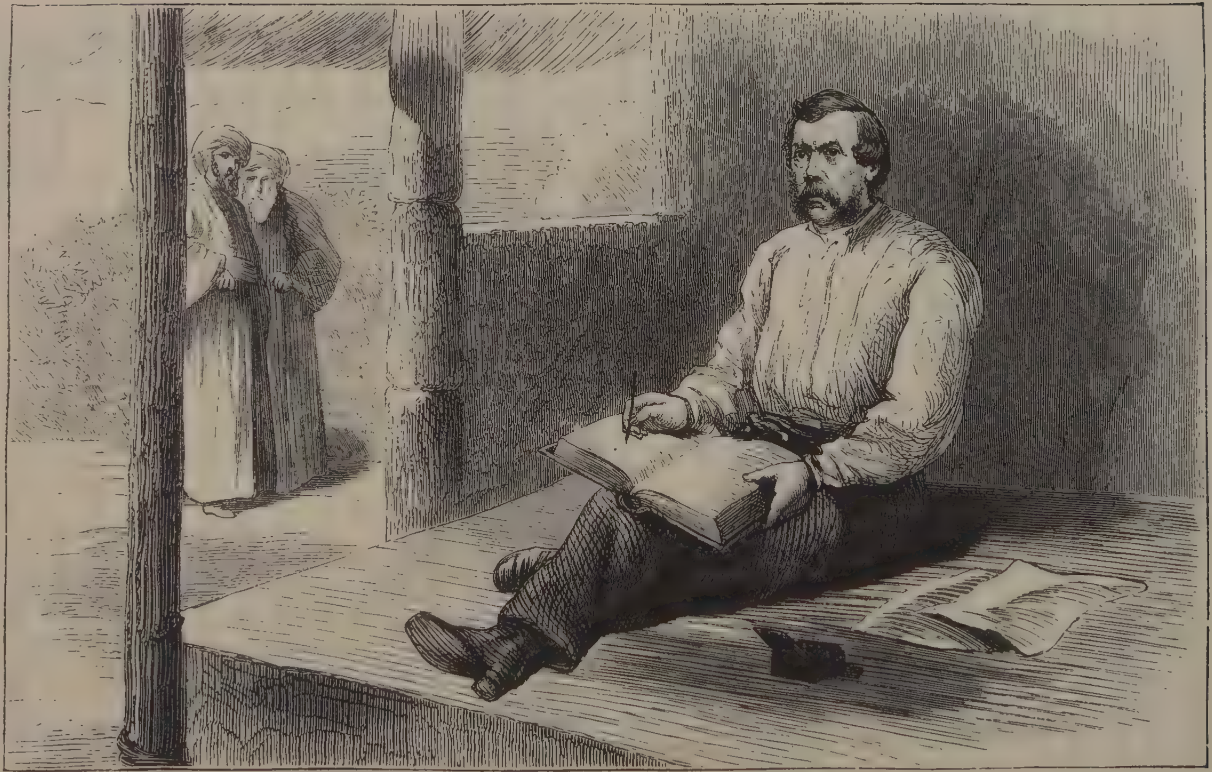
or like that ancient general at Senafe, Sir —— ——, who snorted out, "Well, sir, who are you? What do you want here?" Indeed, the results of my acquaintance with English gentlemen were such, that I should not have been surprised if he had said, "Might I ask you, sir, if you have a letter of introduction for me?" But what a question this had been on the shores of Lake Tanganika! I would have just ordered a retreat to the hill above Ujiji; there rested for two days, and then returned, to tell the world how I had been snubbed. But Livingstone—true, noble Christian, generous-hearted, frank man—acted like a hero, invited me to his house, said he was glad to see me, and got well on purpose to prove the truth of his statement, "You have brought new life unto me;" and when I fell sick with the remittent fever, hovering between life and death, he attended me like a father, and we have now been together for more than a month. Can you wonder that I like this man, whose face is the reflex of his nature, whose heart is essentially all goodness, whose aims are so high, that I break out impetuously sometimes: "But your family, Doctor, they would like to see you, oh! so much. Let me tempt you to come home with me. I promise to carry you every foot of the way to the coast. You shall have the finest donkey to ride that is in Unyanyembe. Your wants—you have but to hint them, and they shall be satisfied. Let the sources of the Nile go—do you come home and rest; then, after a year's rest, and restored health, you can return and finish what you have to do."

But ever the answer was, "No, I should like to see my family very much indeed. My children's letters affect me intensely; but I must not go home; I must finish my task. It is only the want of supplies that has detained me. I should have finished the discovery of the Nile by this, by tracing it to its connection with either Baker's Lake, or Petherick's branch of the Nile. If I had only gone one month further, I could have said, 'the work is done.' But Dr. Kirk has kept on sending me slaves over and over again; and he ought to know, too, what slaves are. Why he should have gone to Banyans for men I can't make out."

Some of these men who had turned the Doctor back from his interesting discoveries were yet in Ujiji, and had the Government Enfield rifles in their hands, which they intended to retain until their wages had been paid to them; but as they had received $60 advance each at Zanzibar from the English Consul, with the understanding entered into by contract that they should follow their master wherever he required them to go; and as they had not only not gone where they were required to proceed with him, but had baffled and thwarted him, it was preposterous that a few men should triumph over the Doctor, by keeping the arms given to him by the Bombay Government. I had listened to the Arab sheikhs, friends of the Doctor, advising them in mild tones to give them up; I had witnessed the mutineers' stubbornness; and it was then, on the burzani of Sayd bin Majid's house, that I took advantage to open my mind on the subject, not only for the benefit of the stubborn slaves, but also for the benefit of the Arabs; and to tell them that it was well that I had found Livingstone alive, for if they had but injured a hair of his head, I should have gone back to the coast, to return with a party which would enable me to avenge him. I had been waiting to see Livingstone's guns returned to him every day, hoping that I should not have to use force; but when a month or more had elapsed, and still the arms had not been returned, I applied for permission to take them, which was granted. Susi, the gallant servant of Dr. Livingstone—who would have been worth his weight in silver if he were not an incorrigible thief—was immediately despatched with about a dozen armed men to recover them, and in a few minutes we had possession of them, without further trouble.

The Doctor had resolved to accompany me to Unyanyembe, in order to meet his stores, which had been forwarded from Zanzibar, November 1st, 1870; by the British Consul. As I had charge of the escort, it was my duty to study well the several routes to Unyanyembe from Ujiji. I was sufficiently aware of the difficulties and the responsibilities attached to me while escorting such a man. Besides, my own personal feelings were involved in the case. If Livingstone came to any harm through any indiscretion of mine while he was with me, it would immediately be said, "Ah! had he not accompanied Stanley, he would have been alive now."

I took out my chart—the one I had made myself—in which I had perfect faith, and I sketched out a route which would enable us to reach Unyanyembe without paying a single cloth as tribute, and without encountering any worse thing than a jungle, by which we could avoid all the Wavinza and the plundering Wahha. And this peaceable, secure route led by water, south, along the coast of Ukaranga and Ukawendi, to Cape Tongwe. Arriving at Cape Tongwe, I should be opposite the village of Itaga, Sultan Imrera,



DR. LIVINGSTONE AT WORK ON HIS JOURNAL.

in the district of Rusawa of Ukawendi; after which we should strike my old road, which I had traversed from Unyanyembe, when bound for Ujiji. I explained it to the Doctor, and he instantly recognised its feasibility and security; and if I struck Imrera, as I proposed to do, it would demonstrate whether my chart was correct or not.

We arrived at Ujiji from our tour of discovery, north of the Tanganika, December 13th; and from this date the Doctor commenced writing his letters to his numerous friends, and to copy into his mammoth Letts's Diary, from his field books, the valuable information he had acquired during his years of travel south and west of the Tanganika. I sketched him while sitting in his shirt-sleeves in the veranda, with his Letts's Diary on his knee; and the likeness on the other page is an admirable portrait of him, because the artist who has assisted me has, with an intuitive eye, seen the defects in my own sketch; and by this I am enabled to restore him to the reader's view exactly as I saw him—as he pondered on what he had witnessed during his long marches.

Soon after my arrival at Ujiji, he had rushed to his paper, and indited that letter to James Gordon Bennett, Esq., wherein he has recorded his thanks; and after he had finished it, I asked him to add the word "Junior" to it, as it was young Mr. Bennett to whom he was indebted. I thought the letter admirable, and requested the Doctor not to add another word to it. The feelings of his heart had found expression in the grateful words he had written; and if I judged Mr. Bennett rightly, I knew he would be satisfied with it. For it was not the news he cared so much about, as the grand fact of Livingstone's being alive or dead.

In this latter part of December he was writing letters to his children, to Sir Roderick Murchison, and to Lord Granville. He had intended to have written to the Earl of Clarendon, but it was my sad task to inform him of the death of that distinguished nobleman.

In the meantime I was preparing the Expedition for its return march to Unyanyembe, apportioning the bales and luggage, the Doctor's large tin boxes, and my own, among my own men; for I had resolved upon permitting the Doctor's men to march as passengers, because they had so nobly performed their duty to their master.

Sayd bin Majid had left, December 12, for Mirambo's country, to give the black Bonaparte battle for the murder of his son Soud in the forests of Wilyankuru; and he had taken with him 300 stout fellows, armed with guns, from Ujiji. The stout-hearted old chief was burning with rage and resentment, and a fine warlike figure he made with his 7-foot gun. Before we had departed for the Rusizi, I had wished him *bon voyage*, and expressed a hope that he would rid the Central African world of the tyrant Mirambo.

On the 20th of December the rainy season was ushered in with heavy rain, thunder, lightning, and hail; the thermometer falling to 66° Fahrenheit. The evening of this day I was attacked with urticaria, or "nettle rash," for the third time since arriving in Africa, and I suffered a woeful sickness; it was the forerunner of an attack of remittent fever, which lasted four days. This is the malignant type, which has proved fatal to so many African travellers on the Zambezi, the White Nile, the Congo, and the Niger. The head throbs, the pulses bound, the heart struggles painfully, while the sufferer's thoughts are in a strange world, such only as a sick man's fancy can create. This was the fourth attack of fever since the day I met Livingstone. The excitement of the march, and the high hope which my mind constantly nourished, had kept my body almost invincible against an attack of fever while advancing towards Ujiji; but two weeks after the great event had transpired my energies were relaxed, my mind was perfectly tranquil, and I became a victim. However, as I had never been prone to intemperance, or to the indulgence of other vicious habits which destroy so many fine constitutions, my frame, happily, did not succumb to the repeated attacks of the insidious disease.

Christmas came, and the Doctor and I had resolved upon the blessed and time-honored day being kept as we keep it in Anglo-Saxon lands, with a feast such as Ujiji could furnish us. The fever had quite gone from me the night before, and on Christmas morning, though exceedingly weak, I was up and dressed, and lecturing Ferajji, the cook, upon the importance of this day to white men, and endeavoring to instil into the mind of the sleek and pampered animal some cunning secrets of the culinary art. Fat broad-tailed sheep, goats, zogga and pombe, eggs, fresh milk, plantains, singwe, fine corn-flour, fish, onions, sweet potatoes, &c., &c., were procured in the Ujiji market, and from good old Moeni Kheri. But, alas! for my weakness. Ferajji spoiled the roast, and our custard was burned—the dinner was a failure. That the fat-brained rascal escaped a thrashing was due only to my inability to lift my hands for punishment; but my looks were dreadful and alarming, and capable of annihilating any one except Ferajji. The stupid, hard-headed cook only chuckled, and I believe he had the subsequent gratification of eating the pies, custards, and roast that his carelessness had spoiled for European palates.

Sayd bin Majid, previous to his departure, had left orders that we should be permitted to use his canoe for our homeward trip, and Moeni Kheri kindly lent his huge vessel for the same purpose. The Expedition, now augmented by the Doctor and his five servants, and their luggage, necessitated the employment of another canoe. We had our flocks of milch-goats and provision of fat sheep for the jungle of Ukawendi, the transit of which I was about to attempt. Good Halimah, Livingstone's cook, had made ready a sackful of fine flour, such as she only could prepare in her fond devotion for her master. Hamoydah, her husband, also had freely given his assistance and attention to this important article of food. I purchased a donkey for the Doctor, the only one available in Ujiji, lest the Doctor might happen to suffer on the long march from his ancient enemy. In short, we were luxuriously furnished with food, sheep, goats, cheese, cloth, donkeys, and canoes, sufficient to convey us a long distance; we needed nothing more.

The 27th of December has arrived; it is the day of our departure from Ujiji. I was probably about to give an eternal farewell to the port, whose name will for ever be consecrate in my memory. The canoes—great lumbering hollow trees—are laden with good things; the rowers are in their places; the flag of England is hoisted at the stern of the Doctor's canoe; the flag of America waves and rustles joyously above mine; and I cannot look at them without feeling a certain pride that the two Anglo-Saxon nations are represented this day on this great inland sea, in the face of wild nature and barbarism.

ON LAKE TANGANIKA; HOMEWARD BOUND.

We are escorted to our boats by the great Arab merchants, by the admiring children of Unyamwezi, by the freemen of Zanzibar, by wondering Waguhha and Wajiji, by fierce Warundi, who are on this day quiet, even sorrowful, that the white men are going—"Whither?" they all ask.

At 8 A.M. we start, freely distributing our farewells as the Arabs and quidnuncs wave their hands. On the part of one or two of them there was an attempt to say something sentimental and affecting, especially by the convicted sinner Mohammed bin Sali; but though outwardly I manifested no disapprobation of his words, or of the emphatic way in which he shook my hand, I was not sorry to see the last of him, after his treachery to Livingstone in 1869. I was earnestly requested to convey to Unyanyembe "Mengi salaams" to everybody, but had I done so, as he evidently desired me to do, I would not have been surprised at being regarded by all as hopelessly imbecile.

We shoved off from the clayey bank at the foot of the market-place, while the land party, unencumbered with luggage, under the leadership of gigantic Asmani and Bombay, commenced their journey southward along the shores of the lake. We had arranged to meet them at the mouth of every river to transport them across from bank to bank.

The Doctor being in Sayd bin Majid's boat, which was a third or so shorter than the one under my command, took the lead, with the British flag, held aloft by a bamboo, streaming behind like a crimson meteor. My boat—manned by Wajiji sailors, whom we had engaged to take the canoes back from Tongwe Cape to Ujiji Bunder—came astern, and had a much taller flagstaff, on which was hoisted the ever-beautiful Stars and

Stripes. Its extreme height drew from the Doctor—whose patriotism and loyalty had been excited—the remark that he would cut down the tallest palmyra for his flagstaff, as it was not fitting that the British flag should be so much lower than that of the United States.

Our soldiers were not a whit behind us in light-heartedness at the thought of going to Unyanyembe. They struck up the exhilarating song of the Zanzibar boatmen, with the ecstatic chorus—

Kinan de re re Kitunga,

rowing away like madmen, until they were compelled to rest from sheer exhaustion, while the perspiration exuded from the pores of their bodies in streams. When refreshed, they bent back to their oars, raising the song of the Mrima—

O mama, re de mi Ky,

which soon impelled them to an extravagant effort again. It was by this series of ferocious spurts, racing, shouting, singing, perspiring, laughing, groaning, and puffing that our people vented their joyous feelings, as the thought filled their minds that we were homeward bound, and that by the route I had adopted between us and Unyanyembe there was not the least danger.

We have given the Waha, the slip! ha, ha!
The Wavinza will trouble us no more! oh, oh!
Mionvu can get no more cloth from us! hy, hy!
And Kiala will see us no more—never more! he, he!

they shouted with wild bursts of laughter, seconded by tremendous and rapid strokes with their oars, which caused the stiff old canoes to quiver from stem to stern.

Our party ashore seemed to partake of our excitement, and joined in the wild refrain of the mad African song. We watched them urging their steps forward to keep pace with us, as we rounded the capes and points, and rowed across the bays whose margins were sedge, and rush, and reed. The tiny and agile Kalulu, little Bilali, and Majwara were seen racing the herds of goats, sheep, and donkeys which belonged to the caravan, and the animals even seemed to share the general joy.

Nature, also—proud, wild nature—with the lofty azure dome upheaved into infinity—with her breadth and depth of vivid greenness and enormous vastness on our left—with her immense sheet of bright, glancing water—with her awful and intense serenity—she partook of and added to our joy.

About 10 A.M. we arrived at Kirindo's, an old chief, noted for his singular kindness to Dr. Livingstone, while he bore animosity to the Arabs. To the Arabs this was unaccountable—to the Doctor it was plain: he had but spoken kind and sincere words, while all the Arabs spoke to him as if he were not even a man, least of all a chief.

Kirindo's place is at the mouth of the Liuche, which is very wide; the river oozes out through a forest of eschinomenæ (pith tree). This was a rendezvous agreed upon between shore and lake parties, that the canoes might all cross to the other side, distant a mile and a half. The mouth of the Liuche forms the Bay of Ukaranga, so named because on the other side, whither we were about to cross our party, was situated the village of Ukaranga, a few hundred yards from the lake. All the baggage was taken out of the largest canoe, and stowed snugly in the smaller one, and a few select oarsmen having taken seats, pushed off with the Doctor on board, who was to superintend pitching the encampment at Ukaranga; while I remained behind to bind the fractious and ill-natured donkeys, and stow them away in the bottom of the large canoe, that no danger of upsetting might be incurred, and a consequent gobbling-up by hungry crocodiles, which were all about us waiting their opportunity. The flock of goats were then embarked, and as many of our people as could be got in. About thirty still remained behind with myself, for whom my canoe was to return.

We all arrived safe at Ukaranga, though we got dangerously near a herd of hippopotami. The crossing of the wide mouth (the Liuche being then in flood) was effected in about four hours.

The next day, in the same order as on our departure from Ujiji, we pursued our way south, the lake party keeping as closely as possible to the shore, yet, when feasible, wind and weather permitting, struck off boldly across the numerous small bays which indent the shores of the Tanganika. The shores were beautifully green, the effect of the late rains; the waters of the lake were a faithful reflex of the blue firmament above. The hippopotami were plenty. Those noticed on this day were colored with reddish rings round the base of their ears and on the neck. One monster, coming up rather late, was surprised by the canoe making full for him, and in great fright took a tremendous dive which showed the whole length of his body. Half way between the mouth of the Malagarazi and that of the Liuche we saw a camp on shore—that of Mohammed bin Gharib, a Msawahili, who figured often in Livingstone's verbal narrative to me of his adventures and travels as one of the kindest and best of the Moslems in Central Africa. He appeared to me a kindly disposed man, with a face seldom seen, having the stamp of an unusual characteristic on it—that of sincerity.

The vegetation of the shores as we proceeded was truly tropical, each curve revealed new beauties. With the soft chalky stone, of which most of the cliffs and bluffs are made, seen as we neared the mouth of the Malagarazi, the surf has played strange freaks.

We arrived at the mouth of the Malagarazi about 2 P.M., having rowed eighteen miles from Ukaranga. The shore party arrived, very much fatigued, about 5 P.M.

The next day was employed in crossing the caravan across the broad mouth of the Malagarazi to our camp, a couple of miles north of the river. This is a river which a civilised community would find of immense advantage for shortening the distance between the Tanganika and the coast. Nearly one hundred miles might be performed by this river, which is deep enough at all seasons to allow navigation as far as Kiala, in Uvinza, whence a straight road might be easily made to Unyanyembe. Missionaries also might reap the same benefit from it for conversion-tours to Uvinza, Uhha, and Ugala. Pursuing our way on the 30th, and rounding the picturesque capes of Kagongo, Mviga and Kivoe, we came, after about three hours' rowing, in sight of villages at the mouth of the swift and turbid Rugufu. Here we had again to transport the caravan over the crocodile-infested mouth of the river.

On the morning of the 31st we sent a canoe with men to search for food in the two or three villages that were visible on the other side. Four doti purchased just sufficient for four days for our caravan of forty-eight persons. We then got under weigh, having informed the kirangozi that Urimba was our destination, and bidding him keep as closely as possible to the lake shore, where it was practicable, but if not, to make the best he could of it. From the débouchement of the Rugufu, the head-waters of which we had crossed on our random route to Ujiji, to Urimba, a distance of six days by water, there are no villages, and consequently no food. The shore party, however, before leaving Ujiji, had eight days' rations, and on this morning four days', distributed to each person, and therefore was in no danger of starvation should the mountain headlands, now unfolding, abrupt and steep, one after another, prevent them from communicating with us. It must be understood that such a journey as this had never been attempted before by any Arab or Msawahili, and every step taken was in sheer ignorance of where the road would lead the men ashore. Rounding Kivoe's steep promontory, whose bearded ridge and rugged slope, wooded down to the water's edge, whose exquisite coves and quiet recesses, might well have evoked a poetical effusion to one so inclined, we dared the chopping waves of Kivoe's bay, and stood direct for the next cape, Mizohazy, behind which, owing to wind and wave, we were compelled to halt for the night.

After Mizohazy is the bold cape of Kabogo—not the terrible Kabogo around whose name mystery has been woven by the superstitious natives—not the Kabogo whose sullen thunder and awful roar were heard when crossing the Rugufu on our flight from the Wahha—but a point in Ukaranga on whose hard and uninviting rocks many a canoe has been wrecked. We passed close to its forbidding walls, thankful for the calm of the Tanganika. Near Kabogo are some very fine mvule trees, well adapted for canoe building, and there are no loud-mouthed natives about to haggle for the privilege of cutting them.

Along the water's edge, and about three feet above it, was observed very clearly on the smooth face of the rocky slopes of Kabogo the high-water mark of the lake. This went to show that the Tanganika, during the rainy season, rises about three feet above its dry season level, and that, during the latter season, evaporation reduces it to its normal level. The number of rivers which we passed on this journey enabled me to observe whether, as I was told, there was any current setting north. It was apparent to me that, while the south-west, south, or south-east winds blew, the brown flood of the rivers swept north; but it happened that, while passing, once or twice, the mouths of rivers, after a puff from the north-west and north, that the muddied waters were seen southward of the mouths, from which I conclude that there is no current in the Tanganika except such as is caused by the fickle wind.

Finding a snug nook of a bay at a place called Sigunga, we put in for lunch. An island at the mouth of the bay suggested to our minds that this was a beautiful spot for a mission station; the grandly sloping hills in the background, with an undulating shelf of land well-wooded between them and the bay, added to the attractions of such a spot. The island, capable of containing quite a large village, and perfectly defensible, might, for prudence' sake, contain the mission and its congregation; the land-locked bay would protect their fishery and trade vessels: the fertile ground between the hills and the bay would more than sustain a hundred times the number of the population of the island. Wood for building their canoes and houses is close at hand; the neighboring country would afford game in abundance; and the docile and civil people of Ukaranga but waited religious shepherds.

From beautiful Sigunga, after a brief halt, we set off, and, after three hours, arrived at the mouth of the River Uwelasia. Hippopotami and crocodiles being numerous, we amused ourselves by shooting at them, having also a hope of attracting the attention of our shore party, the sound of whose guns we had not heard since leaving the Rugufu.

On the 3rd of January we left Uwelasia, and, passing by Cape Herembe, were in the Bay of Tongwe. This bay is about twenty-five miles broad, and stretches from Cape Herembe to Cape Tongwe. Finding themselves so near their destination, Urimba being but six miles from Herembe Point, the men of both boats bent themselves to their oars, and, with shouts, songs, and laughter, encouraged each other to do their utmost. The flags of the two great Anglo-Saxon nations rippled and played in the soft breeze, sometimes drawing near caressingly together, again bending away, like two lovers coy to unite. The tight little boat of the Doctor would keep ahead, and the crimson and crossed flag of England would wave before me, and it seemed to say to the beautiful laggard astern, "Come on, come on; England leads the way." But was it not England's place to be in the front here? She won the right to it by discovering the Tanganika; America came but second.

Urimba, though a large district of Kawendi, has a village of the same name peopled by refugees from Yombeh, who found the delta of the Loajeri, though the unhealthiest of spots—equal to that of the Rusizi—far preferable to the neighbourhood of Sultan Pumburu, of Southern Kawendi. A good chase by the victors seems to have given a shock to their systems, for they are very timid and distrustful of strangers, and would by no means permit us to enter their village, of which, to say the truth, I was very glad, after a glance at the reeking corruption on which they were encamped. In the immediate neighbourhood—nay, for a couple of miles on either side—I should suppose that to a white man it were death to sleep a single night. Leading the way south of the village, I found a fit camping-place at the extreme south-east corner of Tongwe Bay, about a mile and a half due west of the lofty peak of Kivanga, or Kakungu. By an observation taken by the Doctor, we found ourselves to be in latitude 5° 54′ south.

None of the natives had heard of our shore party, and, as the delta of the Loajeri and Mogambazi extended for about fifteen miles, and withal was the most impassable of places, being perfectly flat, overgrown with the tallest of matete, eschinomenæ, and thorny bush, and flooded with water, it was useless to fatigue our men searching for the shore party in such an inhospitable country. No provisions were procurable, for the villages were in a state of semi-starvation, the inhabitants living from hand to mouth on what reluctant Fortune threw into their nets.

The second day of our arrival at Urimba I struck off into the interior with my gun-bearer, Kalulu, carrying the Doctor's splendid double-barreled rifle (a Reilly, No. 12), on the search for venison. After walking about a mile I came to a herd of zebras. By creeping on all-fours I managed to come within one hundred yards of them; but I was in a bad spot—low prickly shrubs; and tsetse flies alighting on the rifle-sight, biting my nose, dashing into my eyes, completely disconcerted me; and, to add to my discontent, my efforts to disengage myself from the thorns alarmed the zebras, which all stood facing the suspicious object in the bush. I fired at the breast of one, but, as might be expected, missed. The zebras galloped away to about three hundred yards off, and I dashed into the open, and, hastily cocking the left-hand trigger, aimed at a proud fellow trotting royally before his fellows, and by good chance sent a bullet through his heart. A fortunate shot also brought down a huge goose, which had a sharp horny spur on the fore part of each wing. This supply of meat materially contributed towards the provisioning of the party for the transit of the unknown land that lay between us and Mrera, in Rusawa, Kawendi.

It was not until the third day of our arrival at our camp at Urimba that our shore party arrived. They had perceived our immense flag hoisted on a twenty-feet long bamboo above the tallest tree near our camp as they surmounted the sharp lofty ridge behind Nerembe, fifteen miles off, and had at first taken it for a huge bird; but there were sharp eyes in the crowd, and, guided by it, they came to camp, greeted as only lost and found men are greeted.

I suffered from another attack of fever at this camp, brought on by the neighborhood of the vile delta, the look of which sickened the very heart in me.

On the 7th January we struck camp, and turned our faces eastward, and for me, home! Yet regretfully! There had been enough happiness and pleasure, and pleasantest of social companionship found on the shores of the lake for me. I had seen enough lovely scenes which, siren-like, invited one to quiet rest; gentle scenes, where there was neither jar nor tumult, neither strife nor defeat, neither hope nor disappointment, but rest—a drowsy, indolent, yet pleasant rest. And only a

"HE IS SHOT! HE IS SHOT!"—SHOOTING A BUFFALO.

few drawbacks to these. There was fever; there were no books, no newspapers, no wife of my own race and blood, no theatres, no hotels, no restaurants, no East River oysters, no mince-pies, neither buckwheat cakes, nor anything much that was good for a cultivated palate to love. So, in turning to say farewell to the then placid lake and the great blue mountains, that grew bluer as they receded on either hand, I had the courage to utter that awful word tearlessly, and without one sigh.

Our road led up through the valley of the Loajeri, after leaving its delta, a valley growing ever narrower, until it narrowed into a ravine choked by the now roaring, bellowing river, whose resistless rush seemed to affect the very air we breathed. It was getting oppressive, this narrowing ravine, and opportunely the road breasted a knoll, then a terrace, then a hill, and lastly a mountain, where we halted to encamp. As we prepared to select a camping place, the Doctor silently pointed forward, and suddenly a dead silence reigned everywhere. The quinine which I had taken in the morning seemed to affect me in every crevice of my brain; but a bitter evil remained, and, though I trembled under the heavy weight of the Reilly rifle, I crept forward to where the Doctor was pointing. I found myself looking down a steep ravine, on the other bank of which a fine buffalo cow was scrambling upward. She had just reached the summit, and was turning round to survey her enemy, when I succeeded in planting a shot just behind the shoulder-blade, and close to the spine, evoking from her a deep bellow of pain. "She is shot! she is shot!" exclaimed the Doctor; "that is a sure sign you have hit her." And the men even raised a shout at the prospect of meat.

A second, planted in her spine, brought her to her knees, and a third ended her. We thus had another supply of provisions, which, cut up and dried over a fire, as the Wangwana are accustomed to do, would carry them far over the unpeopled wilderness before us. For the Doctor and myself, we had the tongue, the hump, and a few choice pieces salted down, and in a few days had prime corned beef. It is not inapt to state that the rifle had more commendations bestowed on it than the hunter by the Wangwana.

The next day we continued the march eastward, under the guidance of our kirangozi; but it was evident, by the road he led us, that he knew nothing of the country, though, through his volubility, he had led us to believe that he knew all about Ngondo, Yombeh, and Pumburu's districts. When recalled from the head of the caravan, we were about to descend into the rapid Loajeri, and beyond it were three ranges of impassable mountains, which we were to cross in a north-north-easterly direction, quite out of our road. After consulting with the Doctor, I put myself at the head of the caravan, and following the spine of the ridge, struck off due east, regardless of how the road ran. At intervals a travelled road crossed our path, and, after following it a while, we came to the ford of the Loajeri. The Loajeri rises south and south-east of Kakungu Peak. We made the best we could of the road after crossing the river, until we reached the main path that runs from Karah to Ngondo and Pumburu, in Southern Kawendi.

On the 9th, soon after leaving camp, we left the travelled path, and made for a gap in the arc of hills before us, as Pumburu was at war with the people of Manya Msenge, a district of Northern Kawendi. The country teemed with game—the buffaloes and zebras were plentiful. Among the conspicuous trees were the hyphene and borassus palm trees, and a tree bearing a fruit about the size of a 600-pounder cannon-ball, called by some natives "mabyah,"* according to the Doctor, the seeds of which are roasted and eaten. They are not to be recommended as food to Europeans.

On the 10th, putting myself at the head of my men, with my compass in hand, I led the way east for three hours. A beautiful park land was revealed to us; but the grass was very tall, and the rainy season, which had commenced in earnest, made my work excessively disagreeable. Through this tall grass, which was as high as my throat, I had to force my way, compass in hand, to lead the Expedition, as there was not the least sign of a road, and we were now in an untravelled country. We made our camp on a beautiful little stream flowing north; one of the feeders of the Rugufu River.

The 11th still saw me plunging through the grass, which showered drops of rain on me every time I made a step forward. In two hours we crossed a small stream, with slippery syenitic rocks in its bed, showing the action of furious torrents. Mushrooms were in abundance, and very large. In crossing, an old pagazi of Unyamwezi, weather-beaten, uttered, in a deplorable tone, "My kibuyu is dead;" by which he meant that he had slipped, and in falling had broken his gourd, which in Kisawahili is "kibuyu."

On the eastern bank we halted for lunch, and, after an hour and a half's march, arrived at another stream, which I took to be the Mtambu, at first, from the similarity of the land, though my map informed me that it was impossible. The scenery around was very similar, and to the north we had sighted a similar tabular hill to the "Magdala" Mount I had discovered north of Imrera, while going to the Malagarazi. Though we had only travelled three and a half hours the Doctor was very tired, as the country was exceedingly rough.

---

* In the Kisawahili tongue, "mabyah," "mbyah," "byah," mean bad, unpleasant.

The next day, crossing several ranges, with glorious scenes of surpassing beauty everywhere around us, we came in view of a mighty and swift torrent, whose bed was sunk deep between enormous lofty walls of sandstone rock, where it roared and brawled with the noise of a little Niagara.

Having seen our camp prepared on a picturesque knoll, I, thought I would endeavor to procure some meat, which this interesting region seemed to promise. I sallied out with my little Winchester along the banks of the river eastward. I travelled for an hour or two, the prospect getting more picturesque and lovely, and then went up a ravine which looked very promising. Unsuccessful, I strode up the bank, and my astonishment may be conceived when I found myself directly in front of an elephant, who had his large broad ears held out like studding sails—the colossal monster, the incarnation of might of the African world. Methought when I saw his trunk stretched forward, like a warning finger, that I heard a voice say, "*Siste*, Venator!" But whether it did not proceed from my imagination or—No; I believe it proceeded from Kalulu, who must have shouted, "Tembo, tembo! bana yango!" "Lo! an elephant! an elephant, my master!" For the young rascal had fled as soon as he had witnessed the awful colossus in such close vicinage. Recovering from my astonishment, I thought it prudent to retire also—

A SURPRISE!

especially with a pea-shooter loaded with treacherous sawdust cartridges in my hand. As I looked behind, I saw him waving his trunk, which I understood to mean, "Good-bye, young fellow, it is lucky for you you went in time, for I was going to pound you to a jelly."

As I was congratulating myself, a wasp darted fiercely at me and planted its sting in my neck, and for that afternoon my anticipated pleasures were dispelled. Arriving at camp I found the men grumbling; their provisions were ended, and there was no prospect for three days, at least, of procuring any. With the improvidence usual with the gluttons, they had eaten their rations of grain, all their store of zebra and dried buffalo meat, and were now crying out that they were famished.

The tracks of animals were numerous, but it being the rainy season the game was scattered everywhere; whereas, had we travelled during the dry season through these forests our larders might have been supplied fresh each day.

Some time about 6 P.M., as the Doctor and I were taking our tea outside the tent, a herd of elephants, twelve in number, passed about 800 yards off. Our fundi, Asmani and Mabruki Kisesa, were immediately despatched in pursuit. I would have gone myself with the heavy Reilly rifle, only I was too much fatigued. We soon heard their guns firing, and hoped they were successful, as a plentiful supply of meat might then have been procured, while we ourselves would have secured one of the elephant's feet for a nice delicate roast; but within an hour they returned unsuccessful, having only drawn blood, some of which they exhibited to us on a leaf.

It requires a very good rifle to kill an African elephant. A No. 8 bore with a Fraser's shell, planted in the temple, I believe, would drop an elephant each shot. Faulkner makes some extraordinary statements, about walking up in front of an elephant and planting a bullet in his forehead, killing him instantly. The tale, however, is so incredible that I would prefer not to believe it; especially when he states that the imprint of the muzzle of his rifle was on the elephant's trunk. African travellers—especially those with a taste for the chase—are too fond of relating that which borders on the incredible for ordinary men to believe them. Such stories must be taken with a large grain of salt, for the sake of the amusement they afford to readers at home. In future, whenever I hear a man state how he broke the back of an antelope at 600 yards, I shall incline to believe a cipher had been added by a slip of the pen, or attribute it to a typographical error, for this is almost an impossible feat in an African forest. It may be done once, but it could never be done twice running. An antelope makes a very small target at 600 yards distance; but, then, all these stories belong by right divine to the chasseur who travels to Africa for the sake only of sport. I have heard young officers on the Zanzibar coast, who were but just past their teens, relating with an astonishing glibness and volubility the tremendous adventures they had had with elephants, leopards, lions, and what not. If they shot at a hippopotamus in the river, they had killed him; if they had met an antelope near the coast, it was almost sure to be a lion, and they had bowled him over; if they had seen an elephant in a zoological garden, it was sure to be told that he had been met in Africa, and "bagged, sir, without any trouble; and I have the tusks at home now, which I can show, if you like, some day." It is a disease, a mania with some people, that they never can relate the positive, literal, exact truth. Travelling in Africa is adventurous enough as it is, without any fiction. Mostly all men who were with the Abyssinian Expedition will recollect that wonderful "Major" who was accustomed to unfold the dire, the terrible, and the extraordinary, in stories by the bushel. I gave that gentleman one day a buffalo skin which I had received from Satanta, chief of the Kiowas, near Medicine Lodge, Kansas; yet the next day I heard it given out that he had shot the buffalo on an American prairie with a pistol bullet. This is only an illustration of the imaginary which many travellers love to relate; it is a tendency with some men to exaggerate. South and North African hunters are famous for their variety of hunting anecdotes, which I consider to have been simply flourishes of the pen.

On the 13th we continued our march across several ridges; and the series of ascents and descents revealed to us valleys and mountains never before explored; streams rushing northward, swollen by the rains, and grand primeval forests, in whose twilight shade no white man ever walked before.

On the 14th the same scenes were witnessed—an unbroken series of longitudinal ridges, parallel one with another and with Lake Tanganika. Eastward the faces of these ridges present abrupt scarps and terraces, rising from deep valleys, while the western declivities have gradual slopes. These are the peculiar features of Ukawendi, the eastern watershed of the Tanganika.

In one of these valleys on this day we came across a colony of reddish-bearded monkeys, whose howls, or bellowing, rang amongst the cliffs as they discovered the caravan. I was not able to approach them, for they scrambled up trees and barked their defiance at me, then bounded to the ground as I still persisted in advancing; and they would have soon drawn me in pursuit if I had not suddenly remembered that my absence was halting the Expedition.

About noon we sighted our Magdala—the grand towering mount whose upright frowning mass had attracted our eyes, as it lifted itself from above the plain in all its grandeur, when we were hurrying along the great ridge of Rusawa towards the "Crocodile" River. We recognized the old, mystic beauty of the tree-clad plain around it. Then it was bleached, and a filmy haze covered it lovingly; now it was vivid greenness. Every vegetable, plant, herb, and tree, had sprung into quick life—the effect of the rains. Rivers that ran not in those hot summer days now fumed and rushed impetuously between thick belts of mighty timber, brawling hoarsely in the glades. We crossed many of these streams, all of which are feeders of the Rugufu.

Beautiful, bewitching Ukawendi! By what shall I gauge the loveliness of the wild, free, luxuriant, spontaneous nature within its boundaries? By anything in Europe? No. By anything in Asia? Where? India, perhaps. Yes; or say Mingrelia and Imeritia. For there we have foaming rivers; we have picturesque hillocks; we have bold hills, ambitious mountains, and broad forests, with lofty solemn rows of trees, with clean straight stems, through which you can see far, lengthy vistas, as you see here. Only in Ukawendi you can almost behold the growth of vegetation; the earth is so generous, nature so kind and loving, that without entertaining any aspiration for a residence, or a wish to breathe the baleful atmosphere longer than is absolutely necessary, one feels insensibly drawn towards it, as the thought creeps into his mind, that though all is foul beneath the captivating, glamorous beauty of the land, the foulness might be removed by civilized people, and the whole region made as healthy as it is productive. Even while staggering under the pressure of the awful sickness, with mind getting more and more embittered, brain sometimes reeling with the shock of the constantly recurring fevers—though I knew how the malaria, rising out of that very fairness, was slowly undermining my constitution, and insidiously sapping the powers of mind and body—I regarded the alluring face of the land with a fatuous love, and felt a certain sadness steal over me as each day I was withdrawing myself from it, and felt disposed to quarrel with the fate that seemed to eject me out of Ukawendi.

On the ninth day of our march from the shores of the Tanganika we again perceived our "Magdala Mount," rising like a dark cloud to the north-east, by which I knew that we were approaching Imrera, and that our Icarian attempt to cross the uninhabited jungle of Ukawendi would soon be crowned with success. Against the collective counsel of the guides, and hypothetical suggestions of the tired and hungry souls of our Expedition, I persisted in being guided only by the compass and my chart. The guides strenuously strove to induce me to alter my course and strike in a south-west direction, which, had I listened to them, would have undoubtedly taken me to South-western Ukonongo, or North-eastern Ufipa. The veteran and experienced soldiers asked mournfully if I were determined to kill them with famine, as the road I should have taken was north-east; but I preferred putting my trust in the compass. No sun shone upon us as we threaded our way through the primeval forest, by clumps of jungle, across streams, up steep ridges, and down into deep valleys. A thick haze covered the forests; rain often pelted us; the firmament was an unfathomable depth of grey vapor. The Doctor had perfect confidence in me, and I held on my way.

As soon as we arrived at our camp the men scattered themselves through the forest to search for food. A grove of singwe trees was found close by. Mushrooms grew in abundance, and these sufficed to appease the gnawing hunger from which the people suffered. Had it not been such rainy weather I should have been enabled to procure game for the camp; but the fatigue which I suffered, and the fever which enervated me, utterly prevented me from moving out of the camp after we once came to a halt. The fear of lions, which were numerous in our vicinity, whose terrible roaring was heard by day and by night, daunted the hunters so much, that though I offered five doti of cloth for every animal brought to camp, none dared penetrate the gloomy glades, or awesome belts of timber, outside the friendly defence of the camp.

The morning of the tenth day I assured the people that we were close to food; cheered the most amiable of them with promise of abundant provender, and hushed the most truculent knaves with a warning not to tempt my patience too much, lest we came to angry blows; and then struck away east by north through the forest, with the almost exhausted Expedition dragging itself weakly and painfully behind me. It was a most desperate position certainly, and I pitied the poor people far more than they pitied themselves; and though I fumed and stormed in their presence when they were disposed to lie down and give up, never was a man further from doing them injury. I was too proud of them; but under the circumstances it was dangerous—nay, suicidal—to appear doubtful or dubious of the road. The mere fact that I still held on my way according to the Doctor's little pearly monitor (the compass) had a grand moral effect on them, and though they demurred in plaintive terms and with pinched faces, they followed my footsteps with a trustfulness which quite affected me.

For long miles we trudged over smooth sloping sward, with a vision of forest and park-land beauty on our right and left, and in front of us, such as is rarely seen. At a pace that soon left the main body of the Expedition far behind, I strode on with a few gallant fellows, who, despite their heavy loads, kept pace with me. After a couple of hours we were ascending the easy slope of a ridge, which promised to decide in a few minutes the truth or the inaccuracy of my chart. Presently we arrived at the eastern edge of the ridge, and about five miles away, and 1,000 feet below the high plateau on which we stood, we distinguished the valley of Imrera!

By noon we were in our old camp. The natives gathered round, bringing supplies of food, and to congratulate us upon having gone to Ujiji and returned. But it was long before the last member of the Expedition arrived. The Doctor's feet were very sore, and bleeding from the weary march. His shoes were in a very worn-out state, and he had so cut and slashed them with a knife to ease his blistered feet, that any man of our force would have refused them as a gift, no matter how ambitious he might be to encase his feet *à la Wasungu.*

Asmani, the guide, was very much taken aback when he discovered that the tiny compass knew the way better than he did, and he declared it as his solemn opinion that it could not lie. He suffered much in reputation from having contested the palm with the "little thing," and ever afterwards his boasted knowledge of the country was considerably doubted.

After halting a day to recruit ourselves, we continued our journey on the 18th January, 1872, towards Unyanyembe. A few miles beyond Imrera, Asmani lost the road again, and I was obliged to show it to him, by which I gained additional honor and credit as a leader and guide. My shoes were very bad, and it was difficult to decide whose were the worst in condition, the Doctor's or mine. A great change had come upon the face of the land since I had passed northward *en route* to Ujiji. The wild grapes now hung in clusters along the road; the corn ears were advanced enough to pluck and roast for food; the various plants shed their flowers; and the deep woods and grasses of the country were greener than ever.

On the 19th we arrived at Mpokwa's deserted village. The Doctor's feet were very much chafed and sore by the marching. He had walked on foot all the way from Urimba, though he owned a donkey; while I, considerably to my shame be it said, had ridden occasionally to husband my strength, that I might be enabled to hunt after arrival at camp.

Two huts were cleared for our use, but, just as we had made ourselves comfortable, our sharp-eyed fellows had discovered several herds of game in the plain west of Mpokwa. Hastily devouring a morsel of corn-bread with coffee, I hastened away, with Bilali for a gun-bearer, taking with me the famous Reilly rifle of the

Doctor and a supply of Fraser's shells. After plunging through a deep stream, and getting wet again, and pushing my way through a dense brake, I arrived at a thin belt of forest, through which I was obliged to crawl, and, in half an hour, I had arrived within one hundred and forty yards of a group of zebras, which were playfully biting each other under the shade of a large tree. Suddenly rising up, I attracted their attention; but the true old rifle was at my shoulder, and "crack—crack" went both barrels, and two fine zebras, a male and female, fell dead under the tree where they had stood. In a few seconds their throats were cut, and, after giving the signal of my success, I was soon surrounded by a dozen of my men, who gave utterance to their delight by fulsome compliments to the merits of the rifle, though very few to me. When I returned to camp with the meat I received the congratulations of the Doctor, which I valued far higher, as he knew from long experience what shooting was.

When the eatable portions of the two zebras were hung to the scale, we found, according to the Doctor's own figures, that we had 719 lbs. of good meat, which, divided among forty-four men, gave a little over 16 lbs. to each person. Bombay, especially, was very happy, as he had dreamed a dream wherein I figured prominently as shooting animals down right and left; and, when he had seen me depart with that wonderful Reilly rifle, he had not entertained a doubt of my success, and, accordingly, had commanded the men to be ready to go after me, as soon as they should hear the reports of the gun.

The following is quoted from my diary:

January 20*th*, 1872.—To-day was a halt. On going out for a hunt I saw a herd of eleven giraffes. After crossing Mpokwa stream I succeeded in getting within one hundred and fifty yards of one of them, and fired at it; but, though it was wounded, I did not succeed in dropping it, though I desired the skin of one of them very much.

In the afternoon I went out to the east of the village, and came to a herd of six giraffes. I wounded one of them, but it got off, despite my efforts.

What remarkable creatures they are! How beautiful their large limpid eyes! I could have declared on oath that both shots had been a success, but they sheered off with the stately movements of a clipper about to tack. When they ran they had an ungainly, dislocated motion, somewhat like the contortions of an Indian nautch or a Theban *danseuse*—a dreamy, undulating movement, which even the tail, with its long fringe of black hair, seemed to partake of.

The Doctor, who knew how to console an ardent but disappointed young hunter, attributed my non-success to shooting with leaden balls, which were too soft to penetrate the thick hide of the giraffes, and advised me to melt my zinc canteens with which to harden the lead. It was not the first time that I had cause to think the Doctor an admirable travelling companion; none knew so well how to console one for bad luck—none knew so well how to elevate one in his own mind. If I killed a zebra, did not his friend Oswell—the South African hunter—and himself long ago come to the conclusion that zebra meat was the finest in Africa? If I shot a buffalo cow, she was sure to be the best of her kind, and her horns were worth while carrying home as specimens; and was she not fat? If I returned without anything, the game was very wild, or the people had made a noise, and the game had been frightened; and who could stalk animals already alarmed? Indeed, he was a most considerate companion, and, knowing him to be literally truthful, I was proud of his praise when successful, and when I failed I was easily consoled.

Ibrahim, the old pagazi whose feelings had been so lacerated in Ukawendi, when his ancient kibuyu broke, before leaving Ujiji invested his cloth in a slave from Manyuema, who bore the name of "Ulimengo," which signifies the "World." As we approached Mpokwa, Ulimengo absconded with all his masters' property, consisting of a few cloths and a bag of salt, which he had thought of taking to Unyanyembe for trade. Ibrahim was inconsolable, and he kept lamenting his loss daily in such lugubrious tones that the people, instead of sympathizing, laughed at him. I asked him why he purchased such a slave, and, while he was with him, why he did not feed him? Replied he, tartly, "Was he not my slave? Was not the cloth with which I bought him mine? If the cloth was my own, could I not purchase what I liked? Why do you talk so?"

Ibrahim's heart was made glad this evening by the return of Ulimengo with the salt and the cloth, and the one-eyed old man danced with his great joy, and came in all haste to impart to me the glad news. "Lo, the World' has come back. Sure. My salt and my cloth are with him also. Sure." To which I replied, that he had better feed him in future, as slaves required food as well as their masters.

From 10 P.M. to midnight the Doctor was employed in taking observations from the star Canopus, the result of which was that he ascertained Mpokwa, district of Utanda, Ukonongo, to be in S. latitude 6° 18′ 40″. On comparing it with its position as laid down in my map by dead reckoning, I found we differed by three miles; I having laid it down at 6° 15′ south latitude.

The day following was a halt. The Doctor's feet were so inflamed and sore that he could not bear his shoes on. My heels were also raw, and I viciously cut large circles out of my shoes to enable me to move about.

Having converted my zinc canteens into bullets, and provided myself with a butcher and gun-bearer, I set out for the lovely park land and plain west of Mpokwa stream, with the laudable resolution to obtain something; and seeing nothing in the plain, I crossed over a ridge, and came to a broad basin covered with tall grass, with clumps here and there of hyphene palm, with a stray mimosa or so scattered about. Nibbling off the branches of the latter, I saw a group of giraffes, and then began stalking them through the grass, taking advantage of the tall grass-grown ant-hills that I might approach the wary beasts before their great eyes could discover me. I contrived to come within 175 yards, by means of one of these curious hummocks; but beyond it no man could crawl without being observed—the grass was so thin and short. I took a long breath, wiped my perspiring brow, and sat down for a while; my black assistants also, like myself, were almost breathless with the exertion, and the high expectations roused by the near presence of the royal beasts. I toyed lovingly with the heavy Reilly, saw to my cartridges, and then stood up and turned, with my rifle ready; took one good, long, steady aim; then lowered it again to arrange the sights, lifted it up once more—dropped it. A giraffe half turned his body; for the last time I lifted it, took one quick sight at the region of the heart, and fired. He staggered, reeled, then made a short gallop; but the blood was spouting from the wound in a thick stream, and before he had gone 200 yards he came to a dead halt, with his ears drawn back, and allowed me to come within twenty yards of him, when, receiving a zinc bullet through the head, he fell dead.

"*Allah ho, akhbar!*" cried Khamisi, my butcher, fervently. "This is meat, master!'

I was rather saddened than otherwise at seeing the noble animal stretched before me. If I could have given him his life back I think I should have done so. I thought it a great pity that such splendid animals, so well adapted for the service of man in Africa, could not be converted to some other use than that of food. Horses, mules, and donkeys died in these sickly regions; but what a blessing for Africa would it be if we could tame the giraffes and zebras for the uses of explorers and traders! Mounted on a zebra, a man would be enabled to reach Ujiji in one month from Bagamoyo; whereas it took me over seven months to travel that distance!

The dead giraffe measured 16 feet 9 inches from his right fore-hoof to the top of his head, and was one of the largest size, though some have been found to measure over 17 feet. He was spotted all over with large black, nearly round, patches.

I left Khamisi in charge of the dead beast, while I returned to camp to send off men to cut it up, and convey the meat to our village. But Khamisi climbed a tree for fear of the lions, and the vultures settled on it, so that when the men arrived on the spot, the eyes, the tongue, and a great part of the posteriors were eaten up. What remained weighed as follows, when brought in and hung to the scales :—

1 hind leg	134 lbs.
1 "	136 "
1 fore leg	160 "
1 "	160 "
Ribs	158 "
Neck	74 "
Rump	87 "
Breast	46 "
Liver	20 "
Lungs	12 "
Heart	6 "
Total weight of eatable portions	993 lbs.

Skin and head, 181 lbs.

The three days following I suffered from a severe attack of fever, and was unable to stir from bed. I applied my usual remedies for it, which consisted of colocynth and quinine; but experience has shown me that an excessive use of the same cathartic weakens its effect, and that it would be well for travellers to take with them different medicines for clearing the bowels, and to cause proper action in the liver, such as colocynth, calomel, resin of jalap, Epsom salts; and that no quinine should be taken until such medicines shall have prepared the system for its reception.

The Doctor's prescription for fever consists of 3 grains of resin of jalap, and 2 grains of calomel, with tincture of cardamoms put in just enough to prevent irritation of the stomach—made into the form of a pill—which is to be taken as soon as one begins to feel the excessive languor and weariness which is the sure forerunner of the African type of fever. An hour or two later a cup of coffee, unsugared, and without milk, ought to be taken, to cause a quicker action. The Doctor also thinks that quinine should be taken with the pill; but my experience—though it weighs nothing against what he has endured—has proved to me that quinine is useless until after the medicine has taken effect. My stomach could never bear quinine unless subsequent to the cathartic. A well-known missionary at Constantinople recommends travellers to take 3 grains of tartar-emetic for the ejection of the bilious matter in the stomach; but the reverend doctor possibly forgets that much more of the system is disorganized than the stomach; and though in one or two cases of a slight attack, this remedy may have proved successful, it is altogether too violent for an enfeebled man in Africa. I have treated myself faithfully after this method three or four times; but I could not conscientiously recommend it. For cases of urticaria, I could recommend taking 3 grains of tartar-emetic; but then a stomach-pump would answer the purpose as well.

On the 27th we set out for Misonghi. About half-way I saw the head of the Expedition on the run, and the motive seemed to be communicated quickly, man after man, to those behind, until my donkey commenced to kick, and lash behind with his heels. In a second, I was made aware of the cause of this excitement, by a cloud of wild bees buzzing about my head, three or four of which settled on my face, and stung me frightfully. We raced madly for about half a mile, behaving in as wild a manner as the poor bestung animals.

As this was an unusually long march, I doubted if the Doctor could march it, because his feet were so sore, so I determined to send four men back with the kitanda; but the stout old hero refused to be carried, and walked all the way to camp after a march of eighteen miles. He had been stung dreadfully in the head and in the face; the bees had settled in handfuls in his hair; but, after partaking of a cup of warm tea and some food, he was as cheerful as if he had never travelled a mile.

At Mrera, Central Ukonongo, we halted a day to grind grain, and to prepare the provision we should need during the transit of the wilderness between Mrera and Manyara.

On the 31st of January, at Mwaru, Sultan Ka-mirambo, we met a caravan under the leadership of a slave of Sayd bin Habib, who came to visit us in our camp, which was hidden in a thick clump of jungle. After he was seated, and had taken his coffee, I asked,

"What is thy news, my friend, that thou hast brought from Unyanyembe?"

"My news is good, master."

"How goes the war?"

"Ah, Mirambo is where? He eats the hides even. He is famished. Sayd bin Habib, my master, hath possession of Kirira. The Arabs are thundering at the gates of Wilyankuru. Sayd bin Majid, who came from Ujiji to Usagozi in twenty days, hath taken and slain 'Moto' (Fire), the King. Simba of Kasera hath taken up arms for the defence of his father, Mkasiwa of Unyanyembe. The chief of Ugunda hath sent five hundred men to the field. Ough—Mirambo is where? In a month he will be dead of hunger."

"Great and good news truly, my friend."

"Yes—in the name of God."

"And whither art thou bound with thy caravan?"

"Sayd, the son of Majid, who came from Ujiji, hath told us of the road that the white man took, that he had arrived at Ujiji safely, and that he was on his way back to Unyanyembe. So we have thought that if the white man could go there, we could also. Lo, the Arabs come by the hundred by the white man's road, to get the ivory from Ujiji."

"I am that white man."

"You?"

"Yes."

"Why, it was reported that you were dead—that you fought with the Wazavira."

"Ah, my friend, these are the words of Njara, the son of Khamis. See" (pointing to Livingstone), "this is the white man, my father,* whom I saw at Ujiji. He is going with me to Unyanyembe to get his cloth, after which he will return to the great waters."

"Wonderful!—thou sayest truly."

"What hast thou to tell me of the white man at Unyanyembe?"

"Which white man?"

"The white man I left in the house of Sayd, the son of Salim—my house—at Kwihara."

"He is dead."

"Dead!"

"True."

"You do not mean to say the white man is dead?"

"True—he is dead."

"How long ago?"

"Many months now."

"What did he die of?"

"Homa (fever)."

"Any more of my people dead?"

"I know not."

"Enough." I looked sympathetically at the Doctor, and he replied,

"I told you so. When you described him to me as a drunken man, I knew he could not live. Men who have been habitual drunkards cannot live in this country, any more than men who have become slaves to other vices. I attribute the death that occurred in my expedition on the Zambezi to much the same cause."

---

* It is a courteous custom in Africa to address elderly people as "Baba" (Father).

"Ah, Doctor, there are two of us gone. I shall be the third, if this fever lasts much longer."

"Oh no, not at all. If you would have died from fever, you would have died at Ujiji when you had that severe attack of remittent. Don't think of it. Your fever now is only the result of exposure to wet. I never travel during the wet season. This time I have travelled because I was anxious, and I did not wish to detain you at Ujiji."

"Well, there is nothing like a good friend at one's back in this country to encourage him, and keep his spirits up. Poor Shaw! He was a bad man; but I am sorry—very sorry for him. How many times have I not endeavoured to cheer him up! But there was no life in him. And among the last words I said to him, before parting, were, 'Remember, if you return to Unyanyembe, you DIE!'"

We also obtained news from the chief of Sayd bin Habib's caravan that several packets of letters and newspapers, and boxes, had arrived for me from Zanzibar by my messengers and Arabs; that Selim, the son of Sheikh Hashid of Zanzibar, was amongst the latest arrivals in Unyanyembe. The Doctor also reminded me with the utmost good-nature that, according to his accounts, he had a stock of jellies and crackers, soups, fish, and potted ham, besides cheese, awaiting him in Unyanyembe, and that he would be delighted to share his good things; whereupon I was greatly cheered, and, during the repeated attacks of fever I suffered about this time, my imagination loved to dwell upon the luxuries at Unyanyembe. I pictured myself devouring the hams and crackers and jellies like a madman. I lived on my raving fancies. My poor vexed brain rioted on such homely things as wheaten bread and butter, hams, bacon, caviare, and I would have thought no price too high to pay for them. Though so far away and out of the pale of Europe and America, it was a pleasure to me, during the terrible state of *athumia* or despondency into which I was plunged by ever-recurring fevers, to dwell upon them. I wondered that people who had access to such luxuries should ever get sick, and become tired of life. I thought that if a wheaten loaf with a nice pat of fresh butter were presented to me, I would be able, though dying, to spring up and dance a wild fandango.

Though we lacked the good things of this life above named, we possessed salted giraffe and pickled zebra tongues; we had ugali made by Halimah herself; we had sweet potatoes, tea, coffee, dampers, or slap-jacks; but I was tired of them. My enfeebled stomach, harrowed and irritated with medicinal compounds, with ipecac, colocynth, tartar-emetic, quinine, and such things, protested against the coarse food. "Oh, for a wheaten loaf!" my soul cried in agony. "Five hundred dollars for one loaf of bread!"

The Doctor, somehow or another, despite the incessant rain, the dew, fog, and drizzle, the marching, and sore feet, ate like a hero, and I manfully, sternly, resolved to imitate the persevering attention he paid to the welfare of his gastric powers; but I miserably failed.

Dr. Livingstone possesses all the attainments of a traveller. His knowledge is great about everything concerning Africa—the rocks, the trees, the fruits, and their virtues, are known to him. He is also full of philosophic reflections upon ethnological matters. With camp-craft, with its cunning devices, he is *au fait*. His bed is luxurious as a spring-mattress. Each night he has it made under his own supervision. First, he has two straight poles cut, three or four inches in diameter; which are laid parallel one with another, at the distance of two feet; across these poles are laid short sticks, saplings, three feet long, and over them is laid a thick pile of grass; then comes a piece of waterproof canvas and blankets—and thus a bed has been improvised fit for a king.

It was at Livingstone's instigation I purchased milch goats, by which, since leaving Ujiji, we have had a supply of fresh milk for our tea and coffee three times a day. Apropos of this, we are great drinkers of these welcome stimulants; we seldom halt drinking until we have each had six or seven cups. We have also been able to provide ourselves with music, which, though harsh, is better than none. I mean the musical screech of parrots from Manyuema.

Half-way between Mwaru—Kamirambo's village—and the deserted Tongoni of Ukamba, I carved the Doctor's initials and my own on a large tree, with the date February 2nd. I have been twice guilty of this in Africa: once when we were famishing in Southern Uvinza I inscribed the date, my initials, and the word "Starving!" in large letters on the trunk of a sycamore.

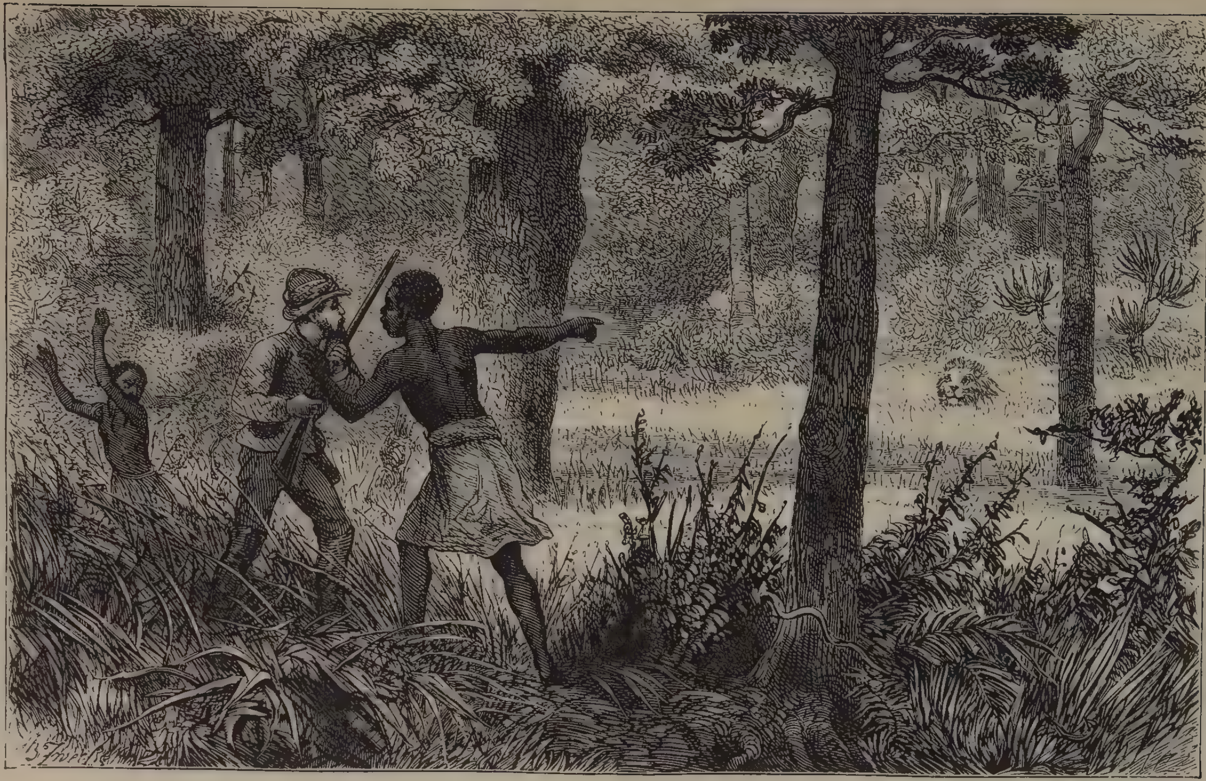
In passing through the forest of Ukamba, we saw the bleached skull of an unfortunate victim to the privations of travel. Referring to it, the Doctor remarked that he could never pass through an African forest, with its solemn stillness and serenity, without wishing to be buried quietly under the dead leaves, where he would be sure to rest undisturbed. In England there was no elbow-room, the graves were often desecrated; and ever since he had buried his wife in the woods of Shupanga he had sighed for just such a spot, where his weary bones would receive the eternal rest they coveted.

The same evening, when the tent door was down, and the interior was made cheerful by the light of a paraffin candle, the Doctor related to me some incidents respecting the career and the death of his eldest son, Robert. Readers of Livingstone's first book, 'South Africa,' without which no boy should be, will probably recollect the dying Sebituane's regard for the little boy "Robert." Mrs. Livingstone and family were taken to the Cape of Good Hope, and thence sent to England, where Robert was put in the charge of a tutor; but wearied of inactivity, when he was about eighteen, he left Scotland and came to Natal, whence he endeavored to reach his father. Unsuccessful in his attempt, he took ship and sailed for New York, and enlisted in the Northern Army, in a New Hampshire regiment of Volunteers, discarding his own name of Robert Moffatt Livingstone, and taking that of Rupert Vincent, that his tutor, who seems to have been ignorant of his duties to the youth, might not find him. In one of the battles before Richmond, he was conveyed to a North Carolina hospital, where he died from his wounds.

On the 7th of February we arrived at the Gombe, and camped near one of its largest lakes. This lake is probably several miles in length, and swarms with hippopotami and crocodiles.

From this camp I despatched Ferajji, the cook and

Chowpereh to Unyanyembe, to bring the letters and medicines that were sent to me from Zanzibar, and meet us at Ugunda, while the next day we moved to our old quarters on the Gombe, where we were first introduced to the real hunter's paradise in Central Africa. The rain had scattered the greater number of the herds, but there was plenty of game in the vicinity. Soon after breakfast I took Khamisi and Kalulu with me for a hunt. After a long walk we arrived near a thin jungle, where I discovered the tracks of several animals—boar, antelope, elephant, rhinoceros, hippopotamus, and an unusual number of imprints of the lion's paw. Suddenly I heard Khamisi say, "Master, master! here is a 'simba!' (lion);" and he came up to me trembling with excitement and fear—for the young fellow was an arrant coward—to point out the head of a beast, which could be seen just above the tall grass, looking steadily towards us. It immediately afterwards bounded from side to side, but the grass was so high that it was impossible to tell exactly what it was. Taking advantage of a tree in my front, I crept quietly onwards, intending to rest the heavy rifle against it, as I was so weak from the effects of several fevers that I felt myself utterly incapable of supporting my rifle for a steady aim. But my surprise was great when I cautiously laid it against the tree, and then directed its muzzle to the spot where I had seen him stand. Looking further away—to where the grass was thin and scant—I saw the animal bound along at a great rate, and that it was a lion: the noble monarch of the forest was in full flight! From that moment I ceased to regard him as the "mightiest among the brutes;" or his roar as anything more fearful in broad daylight than a sucking dove's.



A LION IN THE GRASS.

The next day was also a halt, and unable to contain my longing for the chase, where there used to be such a concourse of game of all kinds, soon after morning coffee, and after despatching a couple of men with presents to my friend Ma-manyara, of ammonia-bottle memory, I sauntered out once more for the park. Not five hundred yards from the camp, myself and men were suddenly halted by hearing in our immediate vicinity, probably within fifty yards or so, a chorus of roars, issuing from a triplet of lions. Instinctively my fingers raised the two hammers, as I expected a general onset on me; for though one lion might fly, it was hardly credible that three should. While looking keenly about I detected, within easy rifle-shot, a fine hartebeest, trembling and cowering behind a tree, as if it expected the fangs of the lions in its neck. Though it had its back turned to me, I thought a bullet might plough its way to a vital part, and without a moment's hesitation I aimed and fired. The animal gave a tremendous jump, as if it intended to take a flying leap through the tree; but recovering itself it dashed through the underbrush in a different direction from that in which I supposed the lions to be, and I never saw it again, though I knew I had struck it from the bloody trail it left; neither did I see or hear anything more of the lions. I searched far and wide over the park land for prey of some kind, but was compelled to return unsuccessful to camp.

Disgusted with my failure, we started a little after noon for Manyara, at which place we were hospitably greeted by my friend, who had sent men to tell me that his white brother must not halt in the woods, but must come to his village. We received a present of honey and food from the chief, which was most welcome to us in our condition. Here was an instance of that friendly disposition among Central African chiefs when they have not been spoiled by the Arabs, which Dr. Livingstone found among the Babisa and Ba-ulungu, and in Manyuema. I received the same friendly recognition from all the chiefs, from Imrera, in Ukawendi, to Unyanyembe, as I did from Ma-manyara.

On the 14th we arrived at Ugunda, and soon after we had established ourselves comfortably in a hut which the chief lent us for our use, in came Ferajji and Chowpereh, bringing with them Sarmian and Uledi Manwa Sera, who, it will be recollected, were the two soldiers sent to Zanzibar with letters and for medicines for Shaw's disease; and who should Sarmean have in charge but the deserter Hamdallah, who decamped at Manyara, as we were going to Ujiji. This fellow, it seems, had halted at Kigandu, and had informed the chief and the doctor of the village that he had been sent by the white man to take back the cloth left there for the cure of Mabruk Saleem; and the simple chief had commanded it to be given up to him upon his mere word, in consequence of which the sick man had died, as well as another that I had left in Unyanyembe.

Upon Sarmean's arrival in Unyanyembe from Zanzibar, about fifty days after the Expedition had departed for Ujiji, the news he received was that the white man (Shaw) was dead; and that a man called Hamdallah, who had engaged himself as one of my guides, but who had shortly after returned, was at Unyanyembe. He had left him unmolested until the appearance of Ferajji and his companion, when they at once, in a body, made a descent on his hut and secured him. With the zeal which always distinguished him in my service, Sarmean had procured a forked pole, between the prongs of which the neck of the absconder was placed; and a cross stick, firmly lashed, effectually prevented him from relieving himself of the incumbrance attached to him so deftly.

There were no less than seven packets of letters and newspapers from Zanzibar, which had been collecting during my absence from Unyanyembe. These had been entrusted at various times to the chiefs of caravans, who had faithfully delivered them at my tembe, according to their promise to the Consul. There was a packet for me from Dr. Kirk, which contained two or three letters for Dr. Livingstone, to whom, of course, they were at once transferred, with my congratulations that he was not quite forgotten by his friend. In the same packet there was also a letter to me from Dr. Kirk, requesting me to take charge of Livingstone's goods and do the best I could to forward them on to him, dated 25th September, 1871, five days after I left Unyanyembe on my apparently hopeless task. It also contained some wild advice about taking an impossible route by way of the Ukerewe Lake, but the tone of the letter was good-natured and hearty.

"Well, Doctor," said I to Livingstone, "the English Consul requests me to do all I can to push forward your goods to you. I am sorry that I did not get the authority sooner, for I should have attempted it; but in the absence of these instructions I have done the best I could by pushing you towards the goods. The mountain has not been able to advance towards Mohammed, but Mohammed has been compelled to advance towards the mountain."

But Dr. Livingstone was too deeply engrossed in his own letters from home, which were just a year old.

I received good and bad news from New York, but the good news was subsequent, and wiped out all feelings that might have been evoked had I received the bad only. But the newspapers, nearly a hundred of them, New York, Boston, and London journals, were full of most wonderful news. The Paris Commune was in arms against the National Assembly; the Tuileries, the Louvre, and the ancient city Lutetia Parisiorum had been set in flames by the blackguards of Saint-Antoine! French troops massacring and murdering men, women, and children; rampant diabolism, and incarnate revenge were at work in the most beautiful city in the world! Fair women converted into demons, and dragged by ruffianly soldiery through the streets to universal execration and pitiless death; children of tender age pinned to the earth and bayoneted; men, innocent or not, shot, cut, stabbed, slashed, destroyed—a whole city given up to the *summa injuria* of an infuriate, reckless, and brutal army! Oh, France! Oh, Frenchmen! Such things are unknown even in the heart of barbarous Central Africa. We spurned the newspapers with our feet; and for relief to sickened hearts gazed on the comic side of our world, as illustrated in the innocent pages of 'Punch.' Poor 'Punch!' good-hearted, kindly-natured 'Punch!' a traveller's benison on thee! Thy jokes were as physic; thy innocent satire was provocative of hysteric mirth.

Our doors were crowded with curious natives, who looked with indescribable wonder at the enormous sheets. I heard them repeat the words, "Khabari Kisungu"—white man's news—often, and heard them discussing the nature of such a quantity of news, and expressing their belief that the ' Wasungu" were "mbyah sana," and very "mkali;" by which they meant to say that the white men were very wicked, and very smart and clever; though the term wicked is often employed to express high admiration.

On the fourth day from Ugunda, or the 18th of February, and the fifty-third day from Ujiji, we made our appearance with flags flying and guns firing in the valley of Kwihara, and when the Doctor and myself passed through the portals of my old quarters I formally welcomed him to Unyanyembe and to my house. Since the day I had left the Arabs, sick and weary almost with my life, but, nevertheless, imbued with the high hope that my mission would succeed, one hundred and thirty-one days had elapsed—with what vicissitudes of fortune the reader well knows—during which time I had journeyed over twelve hundred miles. The myth after which I travelled through the wilderness proved to be a fact; and never was the fact more apparent than when the Living Man walked with me arm in arm to my old room, and I said to him, "Doctor, we are at last at Home!"

MAKING THE MOST OF A HALT.

CHAPTER XVI.

HOMEWARD BOUND.

UNYANYEMBE was now to me a terrestrial Paradise. Livingstone was no less happy; he was in comfortable quarters, which were a palace to his hut in Ujiji. Our store-rooms were full of the good things of this life, besides cloth, beads, wire, and the thousand and one impedimenta and paraphernalia of travel with which I had loaded over one hundred and fifty men at Bagamoyo. I had seventy-four loads of miscellaneous things, the most valuable of which were now to be turned over to Livingstone, for his march back to the sources of the Nile.

It was a great day with us when, with hammer and chisel, I broke open the Doctor's boxes, that we might feast our famished stomachs on the luxuries which were to redeem us from the effect of the cacotrophic dourra and maize food we had been subjected to in the wilderness. I conscientiously believed that a diet on potted ham, crackers, and jellies would make me as invincible as Talus, and that I only required a stout flail to be able to drive the mighty Wagogo into the regions of annihilation, should they dare even to wink in a manner that I disapproved.

The first box opened contained three tins of biscuits, six tins of potted hams—tiny things, not much larger than thimbles, which, when opened, proved to be nothing more than a table-spoonful of minced meat plentifully seasoned with pepper: the Doctor's stores fell five hundred degrees below zero in my estimation. Next were brought out five pots of jam, one of which was opened—this was also a delusion. The stone jars weighed a pound, and in each was found a little over a tea-spoonful of jam. Verily, we began to think our hopes and expectations had been raised to too high a pitch. Three bottles of curry were next produced—but who cares for curry? Another box was opened, and out tumbled a fat dumpy Dutch cheese, hard as a brick, but sound and good; though it is bad for the liver in Unyamwezi. Then another cheese was seen, but this was all eaten up—it was hollow, and a fraud. The third box contained nothing but two sugar-loaves; the fourth, candles; the fifth, bottles of salt, Harvey, Worcester, and Reading sauces, essence of anchovies, pepper, and mustard. Bless me! what food were these for the revivifying of a moribund such as I was! The sixth box contained four shirts, two pairs of stout shoes, some stockings and shoe-strings; which delighted the Doctor so much when he tried them on that he exclaimed, "Richard is himself again!" "That man," said I, "whoever he is, is a friend, indeed." "Yes, that is my friend Waller."

The five other boxes contained potted meat and soups; but the twelfth, containing one dozen bottles of medicinal brandy, was gone; and a strict cross-examination of Asmani, the head man of Livingstone's caravan, elicited the fact, that not only was one case of brandy missing, but also two bales of cloth and four bags of the most valuable beads in Africa—sami-sami—which are as gold with the natives.

I was grievously disappointed after the stores had been examined; everything proved to be deceptions in my jaundiced eyes. Out of the tins of biscuits, when opened, there was only one sound box; the whole of which would not make one full meal. The soups—who cared for meat soups in Africa? Are there no bullocks, and sheep, and goats in the land, from which far better soup can be made than any that was ever potted? Peas, or any other kind of vegetable soup, would have been a luxury; but chicken and game soups!—what nonsense!

I then overhauled my own stores. I found some fine old brandy and one bottle of champagne still left; though it was evident, in looking at the cloth bales, that dishonesty had been at work; and some person happened to suggest Asmani—the head man sent by Dr. Kirk in charge of Livingstone's goods—as the guilty party. Upon his treasures being examined, I found eight or ten colored cloths, with the mark of my own agent at Zanzibar on them. As he was unable to give a clear account of how they came in his box, they were at once confiscated, and distributed among the most deserving of the Doctor's people. Some of the watchmen also accused him of having entered into my store-room, and of having abstracted two or three gorah of domestics from my bales, and of having, some days afterwards, snatched the keys from the hands of one of my men, and broken them, lest other people might enter, and find evidences of his guilt. As Asmani was proved to be another of the "moral idiots," Livingstone discharged him on the spot. Had we not have arrived so soon at Unyanyembe, it is probable that the entire stock sent from Zanzibar had in time disappeared.

Unyanyembe being rich in fruits, grain, and cattle, we determined to have our Christmas dinner over again in style, and, being fortunately in pretty good health, I was enabled to superintend its preparation. Never was such prodigality seen in a tembe of Unyamwezi as was seen in ours, nor were ever such delicacies provided.

There were few Arabs in Unyanyembe when we arrived, as they were investing the stronghold of Mirambo. About a week after our return, "the little mannikin," Sheikh Sayd bin Salim—El Wali—who was the commander-in-chief of their forces, came to Kwihara from the front. But the little Sheikh was in no great hurry to greet the man he had wronged so much. As soon as we heard of his arrival we took the opportunity to send men immediately after the goods which were forwarded to the Wali's care soon after Livingstone's departure for Mikindany Bay. The first time we sent men for them the governor declared himself too sick to attend to such matters, but the second day they were surrendered, with a request that the Doctor would not be very angry at their condition, as the white ants had destroyed everything.

The stores this man had detained at Unyanyembe were in a most sorry state. The expenses were prepaid for their carriage to Ujiji, but the goods had been purposely detained at this place by Sayd bin Salim since 1867 that he might satisfy his appetite for liquor, and probably fall heir to two valuable guns that were known to be with them. The white ants had not only eaten up bodily the box in which the guns were packed, but they had also eaten the gunstocks. The barrels were corroded, and the locks were quite destroyed. The brandy bottles, most singular to relate, had also fallen a prey to the voracious and irresistible destroyers —the white ants—and, by some unaccountable means, they had imbibed the potent Hennessy, and replaced the corks with corn-cobs. The medicines had also vanished, and the zinc pots in which they had been snugly packed up were destroyed by corrosion. Two bottles of brandy and one small zinc case of medicines only were saved out of the otherwise utter wreck.

I also begged the Doctor to send to Sheikh Sayd, and ask him if he had received the two letters despatched by him upon his first arrival at Ujiji for Dr. Kirk and Lord Clarendon; and if he had forwarded them to the coast, as he was desired to do. The reply to the messengers was in the affirmative; and, subsequently, I obtained the same answer in the presence of the Doctor.

On the 22nd of February, the pouring rain, which had dogged us the entire distance from Ujiji, ceased, and we had now beautiful weather; and while I prepared for the homeward march, the Doctor was busy writing his letters, and entering his notes into his journal, which I was to take to his family. When not thus employed, we paid visits to the Arabs at Tabora, by whom we were both received with that bounteous hospitality for which they are celebrated.

MY HOUSE IN KWIHARA, UNYANYEMBE.—VISIT OF ARABS TO LIVINGSTONE AND MYSELF AT KWIHARA.

Among the goods turned over by me to Dr. Livingstone, while assorting such cloths as I wished to retain for my homeward trip, were—

	Doti.		Yards.
First-class American sheeting	285	=	1140
„ Kaniki (blue stuff)	16	=	64
Medium „ (blue stuff)	60	=	240
„ Dabwani cloth	41	=	164
Barsati cloths	28	=	112
Printed handkerchiefs	70	=	280
Medium Rehani cloth	127	=	508
„ Ismahili „	20	=	80
„ Sohari „	20	=	80
4 pieces fine Kunguru (red check)	22	=	88
4 gorah Rehani	8	=	32
Total number of cloths	697	=	2788 yds.

Besides:—

Cloth, 2788 yards.
Assorted beads, 16 sacks, weight = 992 lbs.
Brass wire, Nos. 5 and 6, 10 fraslilah = 350 lbs.
1 canvas tent, waterproof.
1 air-bed.
1 boat (canvas).
1 bag of tools, carpenter's.
1 rip saw.
2 barrels of tar.
12 sheets of ship's copper = 60 lbs.
Clothes.
1 Jocelyn breech-loader (metallic cartridge).
1 Starr's „ „ „
1 Henry (16-shooter) „ „
1 revolver.
200 rounds revolver ammunition.
2000 „ Jocelyn and Starr's ammunition.
1500 „ Henry rifle ammunition.
Cooking utensils, medicine chest, books, sextant, canvas bags, &c., &c., &c.

The above made a total of about forty loads. Many things in the list would have brought fancy prices in

Unyanyembe, especially the carbines and ammunition, the saw, carpenter's tools, the beads, and wire. Out of the thirty-three loads which were stored for him in my tembe—the stock sent to Livingstone, Nov. 1, 1870—but few of them would be available for his return trip to Rua and Manyuema. The 696 doti of cloth which were left to him formed the only marketable articles of value he possessed; and in Manyuema, where the natives manufactured their own cloth, such an article would be considered a drug; while my beads and wire, with economy, would suffice to keep him and his men over two years in those regions. His own cloth, and what I gave him, made in the aggregate 1,393 doti, which, at 2 doti per day for food, were sufficient to keep him and sixty men 696 days. He had thus four years' supplies. The only articles he lacked to make a new and completely fitted-up expedition were the following, a list of which he and I drew up:—

A few tins of American wheat-flour.
" " soda crackers.
" " preserved fruits
" " sardines.
" " salmon.
10 lbs. Hyson tea.
Some sewing thread and needles.
1 dozen official envelopes.
Nautical Almanac for 1872 and 1873.
1 blank journal.
1 chronometer, stopped.
1 chain for refractory people.

With the articles just named he would have a total of seventy loads, but without carriers they were an incumbrance to him; for, with only the nine men which he now had, he could go nowhere with such a splendid assortment of goods. I was therefore commissioned to enlist, — as soon as I reached Zanzibar,— fifty freemen, arm them with a gun and hatchet each man, besides accoutrements, and to purchase two thousand bullets, one thousand flints, and ten kegs of gunpowder. The men were to act as carriers, to follow wherever Livingstone might desire to go. For, without men, he was simply tantalized with the aspirations roused in him by the knowledge that he had abundance of means, which were totally irrealizable without carriers. All the wealth of London and New York piled before him were totally unavailable to him without the means of locomotion. No Mnyamwezi engages himself as carrier during war-time. You who have read the diary of my 'Life in Unyanyembe' know what stubborn Conservatives the Wanyamwezi are. A duty lay yet before me which I owed to my illustrious companion, and that was to hurry to the coast as if on a matter of life and death—act for him in the matter of enlisting men as if he were there himself—to work for him with the same zeal as I would for myself—not to halt or rest until his desires should be gratified. And this I vowed to do; but it was a death-blow to my project of going down the Nile, and getting news of Sir S. Baker.

The Doctor's task of writing his letters was ended. He delivered into my hand twenty letters for Great Britain, six for Bombay, two for New York, and one for Zanzibar. The two letters for New York were for James Gordon Bennett, Junior, as he alone, not his father, was responsible for the Expedition sent under my command. I beg the reader's pardon for republishing one of these letters here, as its spirit and style indicate the man, the mere knowledge of whose life or death was worth a costly Expedition :—

UJIJI, ON TANGANIKA, EAST AFRICA,
November, 1871.

JAMES GORDON BENNETT, Jr., Esq.

MY DEAR SIR—It is in general somewhat difficult to write to one we have never seen—it feels so much like addressing an abstract idea —but the presence of your representative, Mr. H. M. Stanley, in this distant region takes away the strangeness I should otherwise have felt, and in writing to thank you for the extreme kindness that prompted you to send him, I feel quite at home.

If I explain the forlorn condition in which he found me you will easily perceive that I have good reason to use very strong expressions of gratitude. I came to Ujiji off a tramp of between four hundred and five hundred miles, beneath a blazing vertical sun, having been baffled, worried, defeated and forced to return, when almost in sight of the end of the geographical part of my mission, by a number of half-caste Moslem slaves sent to me from Zanzibar, instead of men. The sore heart made still sorer by the woeful sights I had seen of man's inhumanity to man racked and told on the bodily frame, and depressed it beyond measure. I thought that I was dying on my feet. It is not too much to say that almost every step of the weary sultry way was in pain, and I reached Ujiji a mere ruckle of bones.

There I found that some five hundred pounds' sterling worth of goods which I had ordered from Zanzibar had unaccountably been entrusted to a drunken half-caste Moslem tailor, who, after squandering them for sixteen months on the way to Ujiji, finished up by selling off all that remained for slaves and ivory for himself. He had "divined" on the Koran and found that I was dead. He had also written to the Governor of Unyanyembe that he had sent slaves after me to Manyuema, who returned and reported my decease, and begged permission to sell off the few goods that his drunken appetite had spared.

He, however, knew perfectly well, from men who had seen me, that I was alive, and waiting for the goods and men; but as for morality, he is evidently an idiot, and there being no law here except that of the dagger or musket, I had to sit down in great weakness, destitute of everything save a few barter cloths and beads, which I had taken the precaution to leave here in case of extreme need.

The near prospect of beggary among Ujijians made me miserable.

I could not despair, because I laughed so much at a friend who, on reaching the mouth of the Zambezi, said that he was tempted to despair on breaking the photograph of his wife. We could have no success after that. Afterward the idea of despair had to me such a strong smack of the ludicrous that it was out of the question.

Well, when I had got to about the lowest verge, vague rumors of an English visitor reached me. I thought of myself as the man who went down from Jerusalem to Jericho; but neither priest, Levite nor Samaritan could possibly pass my way. Yet the good Samaritan was close at hand, and one of my people rushed up at the top of his speed, and, in great excitement, gasped out, "An Englishman coming! I see him!" and off he darted to meet him.

An American flag, the first ever seen in these parts, at the head of a caravan, told me the nationality of the stranger.

I am as cold and non-demonstrative as we islanders are usually reputed to be; but your kindness made my frame thrill. It was, indeed, overwhelming, and I said in my soul, "Let the richest blessings descend from the Highest on you and yours!"

The news Mr. Stanley had to tell was thrilling. The mighty political changes on the Continent; the success of the Atlantic cables; the election of General Grant, and many other topics riveted my attention for days together, and had an immediate and beneficial effect on my health. I had been without news from home for years save what I could glean from a few 'Saturday Reviews' and 'Punch' of 1868. The appetite revived, and in a week I began to feel strong again.

Mr. Stanley brought a most kind and encouraging despatch from Lord Clarendon (whose loss I sincerely deplore), the first I have received from the Foreign Office since 1866, and information that the British Government had kindly sent a thousand pounds sterling to my aid. Up to his arrival I was not aware of any pecuniary aid. I came unsalaried, but this want is now happily repaired, and I am anxious that you and all my friends should know that, though uncheered by letter, I have stuck to the task which my friend Sir Roderick Murchison set me with "John Bullish" tenacity, believing that all would come right at last.

The watershed of South Central Africa is over seven hundred miles in length. The fountains thereon are almost innumerable—that is, it would take a man's lifetime to count them. From the watershed they converge into four large rivers, and these again into two mighty streams in the great Nile valley, which begins in ten degrees to twelve degrees south latitude. It was long ere light dawned on the ancient problem and gave me a clear idea of the drainage. I had to feel my way, and every step of the way, and was, generally, groping in the dark—for who cared where the rivers ran? "We drank our fill and let the rest run by."

The Portuguese who visited Cazembe asked for slaves and ivory, and heard of nothing else. I asked about the waters, questioned and cross-questioned, until I was almost afraid of being set down as afflicted with hydrocephalus.

My last work, in which I have been greatly hindered from want of suitable attendants, was following the central line of drainage down through the country of the cannibals, called Manyuema, or, shortly, Manyema. This line of drainage has four large lakes in it. The fourth I was near when obliged to turn. It is from one to three miles broad, and never can be reached at any point, or at any time of the year. Two western drains, the Lufira, or Bartle Frere's River, flow into it at Lake Kamolondo. Then the great River Lomame flows through Lake Lincoln into it too, and seems to form the western arm of the Nile, on which Petherick traded.

Now, I knew about six hundred miles of the watershed, and unfortunately the seventh hundred is the most interesting of the whole; for in it, if I am not mistaken, four fountains arise from an earthen mound, and the last of the four becomes, at no great distance off, a large river.

Two of these run north to Egypt, Lufira and Lomame, and two run south into inner Ethiopia, as the Leambaye, or Upper Zambezi, and the Kaful.

Are not these the sources of the Nile mentioned by the Secretary of Minerva, in the city of Sais, to Herodotus?

I have heard of them so often, and at great distances off, that I cannot doubt their existence, and in spite of the sore longing for home that seizes me every time I think of my family, I wish to finish up by their rediscovery.

Five hundred pounds sterling worth of goods have again unaccountably been entrusted to slaves, and have been over a year on the way, instead of four months. I must go where they lie at your expense, ere I can put the natural completion to my work.

And if my disclosures regarding the terrible Ujijian slavery should lead to the suppression of the East Coast slave trade, I shall regard that as a greater matter by far than the discovery of all the Nile sources together. Now that you have done with domestic slavery for ever, lend us your powerful aid toward this great object. This fine country is blighted, as with a curse from above, in order that the slavery privileges of the petty Sultan of Zanzibar may not be infringed, and the rights of the Crown of Portugal, which are mythical, should be kept in abeyance till some future time when Africa will become another India to Portuguese slave-traders.

I conclude by again thanking you most cordially for your great generosity, and am,

Gratefully yours,

DAVID LIVINGSTONE.

To the above letter I have nothing to add—it speaks for itself; but I then thought it was the best evidence of my success. For my own part, I cared not one jot or tittle about his discoveries, except so far as it concerned the newspaper which commissioned me for the "search." It is true I felt curious as to the result of his travels; but, since he confessed that he had not completed what he had begun, I felt considerable delicacy to ask for more than he could afford to give. His discoveries were the fruits of his own labors—to him they belonged—by their publication he hoped to obtain his reward, which he desired to settle on his children. Yet Livingstone had a higher and nobler ambition than the mere pecuniary sum he would receive: he followed the dictates of duty. Never was such a willing slave to that abstract virtue. His inclinations impelled him home, the fascinations of which it required the sternest resolves to resist. With every foot of new ground he travelled over he forged a chain of sympathy which should hereafter bind the Christian nations in bonds of love and charity to the Heathen of the African tropics. If he were able to complete this chain of love—by actual discovery and description of them to embody such peoples and nations as still live in darkness, so as to attract the good and charitable of his own land to bestir themselves for their redemption and salvation—this, Livingstone would consider an ample reward. "A delirious and fatuous enterprise, a Quixotic scheme!" some will say. Not it, my friends; for as sure as the sun shines on both Christian and Infidel, Civilized and Pagan, the day of enlightenment will come; and, though the Apostle of Africa may not behold it himself, nor we younger men, nor yet our children, the Hereafter will see it, and posterity will recognise the daring pioneer of its civilization.

The following items are extracted in their entirety from my Diary:

March 12*th*.—The Arabs have sent me as many as forty-five letters to carry to the coast. I am turned courier in my latter days; but the reason is that no regularly organized caravans are permitted to leave Unyanyembe now, because of the war with Mirambo. What if I had stayed all this time at Unyanyembe waiting for the war to end! It is my opinion that the Arabs will not be able to conquer Mirambo under nine months yet.

To-night the natives have gathered themselves together to give me a farewell dance in front of my house. I find them to be the pagazis of Singiri, chief of Mtesa's caravan. My men joined in, and, captivated by the music despite myself, I also struck in, and performed the "light fantastic," to the intense admiration of my braves, who were delighted to see their master unbend a little from his usual stiffness.

It is a wild dance altogether. The music is lively, and evoked from the sonorous sound of four drums, which are arranged before the bodies of four men, who stand in the centre of the weird circle. Bombay, as ever comical, never so much at home as when in the dance of the Mrima, has my water-bucket on his head; Chowpereh—the sturdy, the nimble, sure-footed Chowpereh—has an axe in his hand, and wears a goatskin on his head; Baraka has my bearskin, and handles a spear; Mabruki, the "Bull-headed," has entered into the spirit of the thing, and steps up and down like a solemn elephant; Ulimengo has a gun, and is a fierce Drawcansir, and you would imagine he was about to do battle to a hundred thousand, so ferocious is he in appearance; Khamisi and Kamna are before the drummers, back to back, kicking up ambitiously at the stars; Asmani,—the embodiment of giant strength,—a towering Titan,—has also a gun, with which he is dealing blows in the air, as if he were Thor, slaying myriads with his hammer. The scruples and passions of us all are in abeyance; we are contending demons under the heavenly light of the stars, enacting only the part of a weird drama, quickened into action and movement by the appalling energy and thunder of the drums.

The warlike music is ended, and another is started. The choragus has fallen on his knees, and dips his head two or three times in an excavation in the ground, and a choir, also on their knees, repeat in dolorous tones the last words of a slow and solemn refrain. The words are literally translated:—

Choragus. Oh-oh-oh! the white man is going home!

Choir. Oh-oh-oh! going home!
Going home, oh-oh-oh!

Choragus. To the happy island on the sea,
Where the beads are plenty, oh-oh-oh!

Choir. Oh-oh-oh! where the beads are plenty,
Oh-oh-oh!

Choragus. While Singiri has kept us, oh, very long
From our homes very long, oh-oh-oh!

Choir. From our homes, oh-oh-oh!
Oh-oh-oh!

Choragus. And we have had no food for very long—
We are half-starved, oh, for so long!
Bana Singiri!

Choir. For so very long, oh-oh-oh!
Bana Singiri-Singiri!
Singiri! oh, Singiri!

Choragus. Mirambo has gone to war
To fight against the Arabs;
The Arabs and Wangwana
Have gone to fight Mirambo!

Choir. Oh-oh-oh! to fight Mirambo!
Oh, Mirambo! Mirambo!
Oh, to fight Mirambo!

Choragus. But the white man will make us glad,
He is going home! For he is going home,
And he will make us glad! Sh-sh-sh!

Choir. The white man will make us glad! Sh-sh-sh!
Sh——sh-h-h——sh-h-h-h-h-h!
Um-m—mu—um-m-m—sh!

This is the singular farewell which I received from the Wanyamwezi of Singiri, and for its remarkable epic beauty, rhythmic excellence, and impassioned force, I have immortalized it in the pages of my book, as one of the most wonderful productions of the chorus-loving children of Unyamwezi.

March 13th.—The last day of my stay with Livingstone has come and gone, and the last night we shall be together is present, and I cannot evade the morrow! I feel as though I would rebel against the fate which drives me away from him. The minutes beat fast, and grow into hours. Our door is closed, and we are both of us busy with our own thoughts. What his thoughts are I know not. Mine are sad. My days seem to have been spent in an Elysian field; otherwise, why should I so keenly regret the near approach of the parting hour? Have I not been battered by successive fevers, prostrate with agony day after day lately? Have I not raved and stormed in madness? Have I not clenched my fists in fury, and fought with the wild strength of despair when in delirium? Yet, I regret to surrender the pleasure I have felt in this man's society, though so dearly purchased. And I cannot resist the sure advance of time, which flies this night as if it mocked me, and gloated on the misery it created! Be it so! How many times have I not suffered the pang of parting with friends! I wished to linger longer, but the inevitable would come—Fate sundered us. This is the same regretful feeling, only it is more poignant, and the farewell may be for ever! For ever? And "for ever," echo the reverberations of a woful whisper.

I have noted down all he has said to-night; but the reader shall not share it with me. It is mine!

I am jealous as he is himself of his Journal; and I have written in German text, and in round hand, on either side of it, on the waterproof canvas cover, "Positively not to be opened;" to which he has affixed his signature. I have stenographed every word he has said to me respecting the equable distribution of certain curiosities among his friends and children, and his last wish about "his dear old friend, Sir Roderick Murchison," because he has been getting anxious about him ever since we received the newspapers at Ugunda, when we read that the old man was suffering from a paralytic stroke. I must be sure to send him the news, as soon as I get to Aden; and I have promised that he will receive the message from me quicker than anything was ever received in Central Africa.

"To-morrow night, Doctor, you will be alone!"

"Yes; the house will look as though a death had taken place. You had better stop until the rains, which are now near, are over."

"I would to God I could, my dear Doctor; but every day I stop here, now that there is no necessity for me to stay longer, keeps you from your work and home."

"I know; but consider your health—you are not fit to travel. What is it? Only a few weeks longer. You will travel to the coast just as quickly when the rains are over as you will by going now. The plains will be inundated between here and the coast."

"You think so; but I will reach the coast in forty days; if not in forty, I will in fifty—certain. The thought that I am doing you an important service will spur me on."

March 14th.—At dawn we were up, the bales and baggage were taken outside of the building, and the men prepared themselves for the first march towards home.

We had a sad breakfast together. I could not eat, my heart was too full; neither did my companion seem to have an appetite. We found something to do which kept us longer together. At 8 o'clock I was not gone, and I had thought to have been off at 5 A.M.

"Doctor," said I, "I will leave two men with you, who will stop to-day and to-morrow with you, for it may be that you have forgotten something in the hurry of my departure. I will halt a day at Tura, on the frontier of Unyamwezi, for your last word, and your last wish; and now we must part—there is no help for it. Good-bye."

"Oh, I am coming with you a little way. I must see you off on the road."

"Thank you. Now, my men, Home! Kirangozi, lift the flag, and MARCH!"

The house looked desolate—it faded from our view. Old times, and the memories of my aspirations and kindling hopes, came strong on me. The old hills round about, that I once thought tame and uninteresting, had become invested with histories and reminiscences for me. On that burzani I have sat hour after hour, dreaming, and hoping, and sighing. On that col I stood, watching the battle and the destruction of Tabora. Under that roof I have sickened and been delirious, and cried out like a child at the fate that threatened my mission. Under that banian tree lay my dead comrade—poor Shaw! I would have given a fortune to have had him by my side at this time. From that house I started on my journey to Ujiji; to it I returned as to a friend, with a newer and dearer companion; and now I leave all. Already it all appears like a strange dream.

We walked side by side; the men lifted their voices in a song. I took long looks at Livingstone, to impress his features thoroughly on my memory.

"The thing is, Doctor, so far as I can understand it, you do not intend to return home until you have satisfied yourself about the 'Sources of the Nile.'

When you have satisfied yourself, you will come home and satisfy others. Is it not so?"

"That is it, exactly. When your men come back, I shall immediately start for Ufipa; then, crossing the Rungwa River, I shall strike south, and round the extremity of the Tanganika. Then, a south-east course will take me to Chicumbi's, on the Luapula. On crossing the Luapula, I shall go direct west to the copper-mines of Katanga. Eight days south of Katanga, the natives declare the fountains to be. When I have found them, I shall return by Katanga to the underground houses of Rua. From the caverns, ten days north-east will take me to Lake Kamolondo. I shall be able to travel from the lake, in your boat, up the River Lufira, to Lake Lincoln. Then, coming down again, I can proceed north, by the Lualaba, to the fourth lake—which, I think, will explain the whole problem; and I will probably find that it is either Chowambe (Baker's lake), or Piaggia's lake."

"And how long do you think this little journey will take you?"

"A year and a half, at the furthest, from the day I leave Unyanyembe."

"Suppose you say two years; contingencies might arise, you know. It will be well for me to hire these new men for two years; the day of their engagement to begin from their arrival at Unyanyembe."

"Yes, that will do excellently well."

"Now, my dear Doctor, the best friends must part. You have come far enough; let me beg of you to turn back."

"Well, I will say this to you: you have done what few men could do—far better than some great travellers

I know. And I am grateful to you for what you have done for me. God guide you safe home, and bless you, my friend."

"And may God bring you safe back to us all, my dear friend. Farewell!"

"Farewell!"

We wrung each other's hands, and I had to tear myself away before I unmanned myself; but Susi, and Chumah, and Hamoydah—the Doctor's faithful fellows—they must all shake and kiss my hands before I could quite turn away. I betrayed myself!

"Good-bye, Doctor—dear friend!"

"Good-bye!"

"March! Why do you stop? Go on! Are you not going home?" And my people were driven before me. No more weakness. I shall show them such marching as will make them remember me. In forty days I shall do what took me three months to perform before.

My friendly reader, I wrote the above extracts in my Diary on the evening of each day. I look at them now after six months have passed away; yet I am not ashamed of them; my eyes feel somewhat dimmed at the recollection of the parting. I dared not erase, nor modify what I had penned, while my feelings were strong. God grant that if ever you take to travelling in Africa you will get as noble and true a man for your companion as David Livingstone! For four months and four days I lived with him in the same house, or in the same boat, or in the same tent, and I never found a fault in him. I am a man of a quick temper, and often without sufficient cause, I dare say, have broken ties of friendship; but with Livingstone I never had cause for resentment, but each day's life with him added to my admiration for him.

I am not going to inflict on the reader a repetition of our march back, except to record certain incidents which occurred to us as we journeyed to the coast.

March, 17*th*.—We came to the Kwalah River, which a native of Rubuga called Nyahuba, and another Unyahuha. The first rain of the Masika season fell on this day; I shall be mildewed before I reach the coast. Last year's Masika began at Bagamoyo, March 23rd, and ended 30th April.

The next day I halted the expedition at Western Tura, on the Unyamwezi frontier, and on the 20th arrived at Eastern Tura; when, soon after, we heard a loud report of a gun, and Susi and Hamoydah, the Doctor's servants, with Uredi, and another of my men, appeared with a letter for "Sir Thomas MacLear, Observatory, Cape of Good Hope," and one for myself, which read as follows:—

"KWIHARA, March 15, 1872.

"DEAR STANLEY,

"If you can telegraph, on your arrival in London, be particular, please, to say how Sir Roderick is. You put the matter exactly yesterday, when you said that I was 'not yet satisfied about the Sources; but as soon as I shall be satisfied, I shall return and give satisfactory reasons fit for other people.' This is just as it stands.

"I wish I could give you a better word than the Scotch one to 'put a stout heart to a stey brae'—(a steep ascent)—for you will do that; and I am thankful that, before going away, the fever had changed into the intermittent, or safe form. I would not have let you go, but with great concern, had you still been troubled with the continued type. I feel comfortable in commending you to the guardianship of the good Lord and Father of all.

"I am gratefully yours,
"David Livingstone.

"I have worked as hard as I could copying observations made in one line of march from Kabuire, back again to Cazembe, and on to Lake Bangweolo, and am quite tired out. My large figures fill six sheets of foolscap, and many a day will elapse ere I take to copying again. I did my duty when ill at Ujiji in 1869, and am not to blame, though they grope a little in the dark at home. Some Arab letters have come, and I forward them to you. "D. L.

"March 16, 1872.

"P.S.—I have written a note this morning to Mr. Murray, 50, Albemarle Street, the publisher, to help you, if necessary, in sending the Journal by book post, or otherwise, to Agnes. If you call on him you will find him a frank gentleman. A pleasant journey to you.

"David Livingstone.

"To Henry M. Stanley, Esq.,
Wherever he may be found."

Several Wangwana arrived at Tura to join our returning Expedition, as they were afraid to pass through Ugogo by themselves; others were reported coming; but as all were sufficiently warned at Unyanyembe that the caravan would take place positively on the 14th, I was not disposed to wait longer.

As we were leaving Tura, on the 21st, Susi and Hamoydah were sent back to the Doctor, while we continued our march to Nghwhalah River.

Two days afterwards we arrived before the village of Ngaraiso, into which the head of the caravan attempted to enter, but the angry Wakimbu forcibly ejected them.

On the 24th, we encamped in the jungle, in what is called the "tongoni," or clearing. It was a most romantic place, as may be gathered from the sketch on page 608.

This region was at one period in a most flourishing state; the soil is exceedingly fertile; the timber is large, and would be valuable near the coast; and, what is highly appreciated in Africa, there is an abundance of water. We camped near a smooth, broad hump of syenite, at one end of which rose, upright and grand, a massive square rock, which towered above several small trees in the vicinity; at the other end stood up another singular rock, which was loosened at the base.

The members of the Expedition made use of the great sheet of rock to grind their grain; a common proceeding in these lands where villages are not near, or when the people are hostile.

On the 27th of March we entered Kiwyeh. At dawn, when leaving Mdaburu River, the solemn warning had been given that we were about entering Ugogo; and as we left Kaniyaga village, with trumpet-like blasts of the guide's horn, we filed into the depths of an expanse of rustling Indian corn. The ears were ripe enough for parching and roasting, and thus was one anxiety dispelled by its appearance; for generally, in early March, caravans suffer from famine, which overtakes both natives and strangers.

We soon entered the gum-tree districts, and we knew we were in Ugogo. The forests of this country are chiefly composed of the gum and thorn species—mimosa and tamarisk, with often a variety of wild fruit trees. The grapes were plentiful, though they were not quite ripe; and there was also a round, reddish fruit with the sweetness of the Sultana grape, with leaves like a gooseberry-bush. There was another about the size of an apricot, which was excessively bitter.

Emerging from the entangled thorn jungle, the extensive settlements of Kiwyeh came into view; and to the east of the chief's village we found a camping place under the shade of a group of colossal baobab.

The population of Kiwyeh is composed of Wakimbu and Wagogo, in about equal proportions. Old Kiwyeh, who lived in the days of Speke and Grant, is dead, and his young son reigns over the district. Though the young man's dominion is fair to the eye, and his loyal subjects number their cattle by hundreds, yet his position is a precarious one, for his extreme youth offers great temptations to the Wagogo chiefs about him.

We had barely encamped when we heard the booming, bellowing war horns sounding everywhere, and we espied messengers darting swiftly in every direction giving the alarm of war. When first informed that the horns were calling the people to arm themselves, and prepare for war, I half suspected that an attack was about to be made on the Expedition; but the words "Urugu, warugu"—(thief! thieves!)—bandied about, declared the cause. Mukondoku, the chief of the populous district two days to the north-east, where we experienced some excitement when westward-bound, was marching to attack the young Mtemi, Kiwyeh, and Kiwyeh's soldiers were called to the fight. The men rushed to their villages, and in a short time we saw them arrayed in full fighting costume. Feathers of the ostrich and the eagle waved over their fronts, or the mane of the zebra surrounded their heads; their knees and ankles were hung with little bells; joho robes floated behind, from their necks; spears, assegais, knob-sticks, and bows were flourished over their heads, or held in their right hands, as if ready for hurling. On each flank of a large body which issued from the principal village, and which came at a uniform swinging double-quick, the ankle and knee bells all chiming in admirable unison, were a cloud of skirmishers, consisting of the most enthusiastic, who exercised themselves in mimic war as they sped along. Column after column, companies, and groups from every village hurried on past our camp until, probably, there were nearly a thousand soldiers gone to the war. This scene gave me a better idea than anything else of the weakness of even the largest caravans which travelled between Zanzibar and Unyanyembe.

At night the warriors returned from the forest; the alarm proved to be without foundation. At first it was generally reported that the invaders were Wahehe, or the Wadirigo, as that tribe are scornfully called from their thieving propensities. The Wahehe frequently make a foray upon the fat cattle of Ugogo. They travel from their own country in the south-east, and advance through the jungle, and, when about to approach the herds, stoop down, covering their bodies with their shields of bull-hide. Having arrived between

THE WAGOGO ON THE WAR PATH.

the cattle and the herdsmen, they suddenly rise up and begin to switch the cattle heartily, and, having started them off into the jungle in the care of men already detailed for the work, they turn about, and plant their shields before them, to fight the aroused shepherds.

On the 30th we arrived at Khonze, which is remarkable for the mighty globes of foliage which the giant sycamores and baobabs put forth above the plain. The chief of Khonze boasts of four tembes, out of which he could muster in the aggregate fifty armed men; yet this fellow, instigated by the Wanyamwezi residents, prepared to resist our advance, because I only sent him three doti—twelve yards of cloth—as honga.

We were halted, waiting the return of a few friendly Wagogo travellers who had joined us, and who were asked to assist Bombay in the negotiation of the tribute, when the Wagogo returned to us at breathless speed, and shouted out to me, "Why do you halt here? Do you wish to die? These pagans will not take the tribute, but they boast that they will eat up all your cloth."

The renegade Wanyamwezi who had married into Wagogo families were always our bane in this country. As the chief of Khonze came up I ordered the men to load their guns, and I loaded my own ostentatiously in his presence, and then strode up to him, and asked if he had come to take the cloth by force, or if he were going to accept quietly what I would give him. As the Mnyamwezi who caused this show of hostilities was beginning to speak, I caught him by the throat, and threatened to make his nose flatter if he attempted to speak again in my presence, and to shoot him first, if we should be forced to fight. The rascal was then pushed away into the rear. The chief, who was highly amused with this proceeding, laughed loudly at the discomfiture of the parasite, and in a short time he and I had settled the tribute to our mutual satisfaction, and we parted great friends. The Expedition arrived at Sanza that night.

On the 31st we came to Kamyenyi, to the great Mtemi—Magomba's—whose son and heir is Mtundu M'gondeh. As we passed by the tembe of the great Sultan, the msagira, or chief counsellor, a pleasant grey-haired man, was at work making a thorn fence around a patch of young corn. He greeted the caravan with a sonorous "Yambo," and, putting himself at its head, he led the way to our camp. When introduced to me he was very cordial in his manner. He was offered a kiti—stool—and began to talk very affably. He remembered my predecessors, Burton, Speke, and Grant, very well; declared me to be much younger than any of them; and, recollecting that one of the white men used to drink asses' milk (Burton?), offered to procure me some. The way I drank it seemed to give him very great satisfaction.

His son, Unamapokera, was a tall man of thirty or thereabouts, and he conceived a great friendship for me, and promised that the tribute should be very light, and that he would send a man to show me the way to Myumi, which was a village on the frontier of Kanyenyi, by which I would be enabled to avoid the rapacious Kisewah, who was in the habit of enforcing large tribute from caravans.

With the aid of Unamapokera and his father, we contrived to be mulcted very lightly, for we only paid

SYMPTOMS OF A FIGHT.

ten doti, while Burton was compelled to pay sixty doti or two hundred and forty yards of cloth.

On the 1st of April, rising early, we reached Myumi, after a four hours' march; then plunged into the jungle, and, about 2 P.M., arrived at a large ziwa, or pond, situate in the middle of the jungle; and on the next day, at 10 A.M., reached the fields of Mapanga. We were passing the village of Mapanga to a resting-place beyond the village, where we might breakfast and settle the honga, when a lad rushed forward to meet us, and asked us where we were going. Having received a reply that we were going to a camping-place, he hastened on ahead, and presently we heard him talking to some men in a field on our right.

UNAMAPOKERA.

In the meantime, we had found a comfortable shady place, and had come to a halt; the men were reclining on the ground, or standing up near their respective loads; Bombay was about opening a bale, when we heard a great rush of men, and loud shouts, and, immediately after, out rushed from the jungle near by a body of forty or fifty armed men, who held their spears above their heads, or were about to draw their bows, with a chief at their head, all uttering such howls of rage as only savages can, which sounded like a long-drawn "Hhaat-uh—Hhaat—uhh-uhh," which meant, unmistakably, "You will, will you? No, you will not!"—at once determined, defiant, and menacing.

I had suspected that the voices I heard boded no good to us, and I had accordingly prepared my weapons and cartridges. Verily, what a fine chance for adventure this was! One spear flung at us, or one shot fired into this minatory mob of savages, and the opposing bands had been plunged into a fatal conflict! There would have been no order of battle, no pomp of war, but a murderous strife, a quick firing of breech-loaders, and volleys from flint-lock muskets, mixed with the flying of spears and twanging of bows, the cowardly running away at once, pursued by yelping savages; and who knows how it all would have terminated? Forty spears against forty guns—but how many guns would not have decamped? Perhaps all, and I should have been left with my boy gun-bearers to have my jugular deliberately severed, or to be decapitated, leaving my head to adorn a tall pole in the centre of a Kigogo village, like poor Monsieur Maizan's at Dege la Mhora, in Uzaramo. Happy end of an Expedition! And the Doctor's Journal lost for ever—the fruits of six years' labor!

But in this land it will not do to fight unless driven to the very last extremity. No belligerent Mungo Park can be successful in Ugogo unless he has a sufficient force of men with him. With five hundred Europeans I could traverse Africa from north to south, by tact, and the moral effect that such a force would inspire. Very little fighting would be required.

Without rising from the bale on which I was seated, I requested the kirangozi to demand an explanation of their furious hubbub and threatening aspect;—if they were come to rob us.

"No," said the chief; "we do not want to stop the road, or to rob you; but we want the tribute."

"But don't you see us halted, and the bale opened to send it to you? We have come so far from your village that after the tribute is settled we can proceed on our way, as the day is yet young."

The chief burst into a loud laugh, and was joined by ourselves. He evidently felt ashamed of his conduct; for he voluntarily offered the explanation, that as he and his men were cutting wood to make a new fence for his village, a lad came up to him, and said that a caravan of Wangwana were about passing through the country without stopping to explain who they were. We were soon very good friends. He begged of me to make rain for him, as his crops were suffering, and no rain had fallen for months. I told him that though white people were very great and clever people, much superior to the Arabs, yet we could not make rain. Though very much disappointed, he did not doubt my statement, and after receiving his honga, which was very light, he permitted us to go on our way, and even accompanied us some distance to show us the road.

At 3 P.M. we entered a thorny jungle; and by 5 P.M. we had arrived at Muhalata, a district lorded over by the chief Nyamzaga. A Mgogo, of whom I made a friend, proved very stanch. He belonged to Mulowa, a country to the S.S.E., and south of Kulabi; and was active in promoting my interests by settling the tribute, with the assistance of Bombay, for me. When, on the next day, we passed through Kulabi on our way to Mvumi, and the Wagogo were about to stop us for the honga, he took upon himself the task of relieving us from further toll, by stating we were from Ugogo or Kanyenyi. The chief simply nodded his head, and we passed on. It seems that the Wagogo do not exact blackmail of those caravans who intend only to trade in their own country, or have no intention of passing beyond their own frontier.

Leaving Kulabi, we traversed a naked, red, loamy plain, over which the wind from the heights of Usagara, now rising a bluish-black jumble of mountains in our front, howled most fearfully. With clear, keen, incisive force, the terrible blasts seemed to penetrate through and through our bodies, as though we were but filmy gauze. Manfully battling against this mighty "peppo"—storm—we passed through Mukamwa's, and crossing a broad sandy bed of a stream we entered the territory of Mvumi, the last tribute-levying chief of Ugogo.

The 4th of April, after sending Bombay and my friendly Mgogo with eight doti, or thirty-two yards of cloth, as a farewell tribute to the Sultan, we struck off through the jungle, and in five hours we were on the borders of the wilderness of "Marenga Mkali"—the "hard," bitter or brackish, water.

From our camp I despatched three men to Zanzibar with letters to the American Consul, and telegraphic despatches for the 'Herald,' with a request to the Consul that he would send the men back with a small case or two containing such luxuries as hungry, worn-out, and mildewed men would appreciate. The three messengers were charged not to halt for anything—rain or no rain, river or inundation—as if they did not hurry up we should catch them before they reached the coast. With a fervent "Inshallah, bana," they departed.

On the 5th, with a loud, vigorous, cheery "Hurrah!" we plunged into the depths of the wilderness, which, with its eternal silence and solitude, was far preferable to the jarring, inharmonious discord of the villages of the Wagogo. For nine hours we held on our way, starting with noisy shouts the fierce rhinoceros, the timid quagga, and the herds of antelopes which crowd the jungles of this broad salina. On the 7th, amid a pelting rain, we entered Mpwapwa, where my Scotch assistant, Farquhar, died.

We had performed the extraordinary march of 338 English statute miles from the 14th of March to the 7th of April, or within twenty-four days, inclusive of halts, which was a little over fourteen miles a day.

Leukole, the chief of Mpwapwa, with whom I left Farquhar, gave the following account of the death of the latter:—

"The white man seemed to be improving after you left him, until the fifth day, when, while attempting to rise and walk out of his tent, he fell back; from that minute he got worse and worse, and in the afternoon he died, like one going to sleep. His legs and abdomen had swollen considerably, and something, I think, broke within him when he fell, for he cried out like a man who was very much hurt, and his servant said, 'The master says he is dying.'

"We had him carried out under a large tree, and after covering him with leaves there left him. His servant took possession of his things, his rifle, clothes, and blanket, and moved off to the tembe of a Mnyamwezi, near Kisokweh, where he lived for three months, when he also died. Before he died he sold his master's rifle to an Arab going to Unyanyembe for ten doti (forty yards of cloth). That is all I know about it."

He subsequently showed me the hollow into which the dead body of Farquhar was thrown, but I could not find a vestige of his bones, though we looked sharply about that we might make a decent grave for them. Before we left Unyanyembe fifty men were employed two days carrying rocks, with which I built up a solid enduring pile around Shaw's grave, eight feet long and five feet broad, which Dr. Livingstone said would last hundreds of years, as the grave of the first white man who died in Unyamwezi. But though we could not discover any remains of the unfortunate Farquhar, we collected a large quantity of stones, and managed to raise a mound near the banks of the stream to commemorate the spot where his body was laid.

It was not until we had entered the valley of the Mukondokwa River that we experienced anything like privation or hardship from the Masika. Here the torrents thundered and roared; the river was a mighty brown flood, sweeping downward with an almost resistless flow. The banks were brimful, and broad nullahs were full of water, and the fields were inundated, and still the rain came surging down in a shower that warned us of what we might expect during our transit of the sea-coast region. Still we urged our steps onward like men to whom every moment was precious—as if a deluge was overtaking us. Three times we crossed this awful flood at the fords by means of ropes tied to trees from bank to bank, and arrived at Kadetamare on the 11th, a most miserable, most woe-begone set of human beings; and camped on a hill opposite Mount Kibwe, which rose on the right of the river—one of the tallest peaks of the range.

On the 12th of April, after six hours of the weariest march I had ever undergone, we arrived at the mouth of the Mukondokwa Pass, out of which the river debouches into the Plain of Makata. We knew that it was an unusual season, for the condition of the country, though bad enough the year before, was as nothing compared to this year. Close to the edge of the foaming, angry flood lay our route, dipping down frequently into deep ditches, wherein we found ourselves sometimes up to the waist in water, and sometimes up to the throat. Urgent necessity impelled us onward, lest we might have to camp at one of these villages until the end of the monsoon rains; so we kept on, over marshy bottoms, up to the knees in mire, under jungly tunnels dripping with wet, then into sloughs arm-pit deep. Every channel seemed filled to overflowing, yet down the rain poured, beating the surface of the river into yellowish foam, pelting us until we were almost breathless. Half a day's battling against such difficulties brought us, after crossing the river, once again to the dismal village of Mvumi.

We passed the night fighting swarms of black and voracious mosquitoes, and in heroic endeavors to win repose in sleep, in which we were partly successful, owing to the utter weariness of our bodies.

On the 13th we struck out of the village of Mvumi. It had rained the whole night, and the morning brought no cessation. Mile after mile we traversed, over fields covered by the inundation, until we came to a branch river-side once again, where the river was narrow, and too deep to ford in the middle. We proceeded to cut a tree down, and so contrived that it should fall right across the stream. Over this fallen tree the men, bestriding it, cautiously moved before them their bales and boxes; but one young fellow, Rojab—through over-zeal, or in sheer madness—took up the Doctor's box which contained his letters and Journal of his discoveries on his head, and started into the river. I had been the first to arrive on the opposite bank, in order to superintend the crossing, when I caught sight of this man walking in the river with the most precious box of all on his head. Suddenly he fell into a deep hole, and the man and box went almost out of sight, while I was in an agony at the fate which threatened the despatches. Fortunately, he recovered himself and stood up, while I shouted to him, with a loaded revolver pointed at his head, "Look out! Drop that box, and I'll shoot you."

All the men halted in their work while they gazed at their comrade who was thus imperilled by bullet and flood. The man himself seemed to regard the pistol with the greatest awe, and after a few desperate efforts succeeded in getting the box safely ashore. As the articles within were not damaged, Rojab escaped punishment, with a caution not to touch the box again

"LOOK OUT, YOU DROP THAT BOX—I'LL SHOOT YOU."

on any account, and it was transferred to the keeping of the sure-footed and perfect pagazi, Maganga.

From this stream, in about an hour, we came to the main river, but one look at its wild waters was enough. We worked hard to construct a raft, but after cutting down four trees and lashing the green logs together, and pushing them into the whirling current, we saw them sink like lead. We then tied together all the strong rope in our possession, and made a line 180 feet long, with one end of which tied round his body, Chowpereh was sent across to lash it to a tree. He was carried far down the stream, but being an excellent swimmer he succeeded in his attempt. The bales were lashed around the middle, and, heaved into the stream, were dragged through the river to the opposite bank, as well as the tent, and such things as could not be injured much by the water. Several of the men, as well as myself, were also dragged through the water; each of the boys being attended by the best swimmers; but when we came to the letter-boxes and valuables, we could suggest no means to take them over. Two camps were accordingly made, one on each side of the stream; the one on the bank which I had just left occupying an ant-hill of considerable height; while my party had to content itself with a flat, miry marsh. An embankment of soil, nearly a foot high, was thrown up in a circle thirty feet in diameter, in the centre of which my tent was pitched, and around it booths were erected.

It was an extraordinary and novel position that we found ourselves in. Within twenty feet of our camp was a rising river, with flat, low banks; above us was a gloomy, weeping sky; surrounding us on three sides was an immense forest, on whose branches we heard the constant, pattering rain; beneath our feet was a great depth of mud, black and loathsome; add to these the thought that the river might overflow, and sweep us to utter destruction.

In the morning the river was still rising, and an inevitable doom seemed to hang over us. There was yet time to act—to bring over the people, with the most valuable effects of the Expedition—as I considered Dr. Livingstone's Journal and letters, and my own papers, of far greater value than anything else. While looking at the awful river an idea struck me that I might possibly carry the boxes across, one at a time, by cutting two slender poles, and tying cross sticks to them, making a kind of hand-barrow, on which a box might rest when lashed to it. Two men swimming across, at the same time holding on to the rope, with the ends of the poles resting on the men's shoulders, I thought, would be enabled to convey over a 70 lb. box with ease. In a short time one of these was made, and six couples of the strongest swimmers were prepared, and stimulated with a rousing glass of stiff grog each man, with a promise of cloth to each also if they succeeded in getting everything ashore undamaged by the water. When I saw with what ease they dragged themselves across, the barrow on their shoulders, I wondered that I had not thought of the plan before. Within an hour after the first couple had gone over, the entire Expedition was safe on the eastern bank; and at once breaking camp, we marched north through the swampy forest, which in some places was covered with four feet of water. Seven hours' constant splashing brought us to Rehenneko, after experiencing several queer accidents. We were now on the verge only of the inundated plain of the Makata, which, even with the last year's rain, was too horrible to think of undertaking again in cold blood.

We were encamped ten days on a hill near Rehenneko, or until the 25th, when, the rain having entirely ceased, we resolved to attempt the crossing of the Makata. The bales of cloth had all been distributed as presents to the men for their work, except a small quantity which I retained for the food of my own mess.

But we should have waited a month longer, for the inundation had not abated four inches. However, after we once struggled up to our necks in water, it was useless to turn back. For two marches of eight hours each we plunged through slush, mire, deep sloughs, water up to our necks, and muddy cataclysms, swam across nullahs, waded across gullies, and near sunset of the second day arrived on the banks of the Makata River. My people are not likely to forget that night; not one of them was able to sleep until it was long past midnight, because of the clouds of mosquitoes, which threatened to eat us all up; and when the horn sounded for the march of another day there was not one dissentient amongst them.

It was 5 A.M. when we began the crossing of the Makata River, but beyond it for six miles stretched one long lake, the waters of which flowed gently towards the Wami. This was the confluence of the streams: four rivers were here gathered into one. The natives of Kigongo warned us not to attempt it, as the water was over our heads; but I had only to give a hint to the men, and we set on our way. Even the water—we were getting quite amphibious—was better than the horrible filth and piles of decaying vegetation which were swept against the boma of the village.

We were soon up to our armpits, then the water shallowed to the knee, then we stepped up to the neck, and waded on tiptoe, supporting the children above the water; and the same experiences occurred as those which we suffered the day before, until we were halted on the edge of the Little Makata, which raced along at the rate of eight knots an hour; but it was only fifty yards wide, and beyond it rose a high bank, and dry park lands which extended as far as Simbo. We had no other option than to swim it; but it was a slow operation, the current was so swift and strong. Activity and zeal, high rewards, presents of money, backed by the lively feeling that we were nearing home, worked wonders, and in a couple of hours we were beyond the Makata.

Cheery and hopeful, we sped along the dry, smooth path that now lay before us, with the ardor and vivacity of heroes, and the ease and power of veterans. We rolled three ordinary marches into one that day, and long before night arrived at Simbo.

On the 29th we crossed the Ungerengeri, and as we came to Simbamwenni—the "Lion City" of Useguhha—lo! what a change! The flooded river had swept the entire front wall of the strongly-walled city away, and about fifty houses had been destroyed by the torrent. Villages of Waruguru, on the slopes of the Uruguru Mountains—Mkambaku range—had also suffered disastrously. If one-fourth of the reports we heard were true, at least a hundred people must have perished.

The Sultana had fled, and the stronghold of Kisabengo was no more! A deep canal that he had caused to be excavated when alive, to bring a branch of the

Ungerengeri near his city—which was his glory and boast—proved the ruin of Simbamwenni. After the destruction of the place the river had formed a new bed, about 300 yards from the city. But what astonished us most were the masses of débris which seemed to be piled everywhere, and the great numbers of trees that were prostrate; and they all seemed to lie in the same direction, as if a strong wind had come from the south-west. The aspect of the Ungerengeri valley was completely changed—from a Paradise it was converted into a howling waste.

We continued our march until we reached Ulagalla, and it was evident, as we advanced, that an unusual storm had passed over the land, for the trees in some places seemed to lie in swathes.

A most fatiguing and long march brought us to Mussoudi, on the eastern bank of the Ungerengeri; but long before we reached it we realized that a terrific destruction of human life and property had occurred. The extent and nature of the calamity may be imagined, when I state that nearly ONE HUNDRED VILLAGES, according to Mussoudi's report, were swept away.

Mussoudi, the Diwan, says that the inhabitants had gone to rest as usual—as they had done ever since he had settled in the valley, twenty-five years ago—when, in the middle of the night, they heard a roar like many thunders, which woke them up to the fact that death was at work in the shape of an enormous volume of water, that, like a wall, came down, tearing the tallest trees with it, carrying away scores of villages at one fell, sure swoop into utter destruction. The scene six days after the event—when the river has subsided into its normal breadth and depth during the monsoons—is simply awful. Wherever we look, we find something very suggestive of the devastation that has visited the country; fields of corn are covered with many feet of sand and débris; the sandy bed the river has deserted is about a mile wide; and there are but three villages standing of all that I noticed when *en route* to Unyanyembe. When I asked Mussoudi where the people had gone to, he replied, "God has taken most of them, but some have gone to Udoe." The surest blow ever struck at the tribe of the Wakami was indeed given by the hand of God; and, to use the words of the Diwan, "God's power is wonderful, and who can resist him!"

I again resort to my Diary, and extract the following:

April 30th.—Passing Msuwa, we travelled hurriedly through the jungle which saw such hard work with us when going to Unyanyembe. What dreadful odors and indescribable loathing this jungle produces! It is so dense that a tiger could not crawl through it; it is so impenetrable that an elephant could not force his way! Were a bottleful of concentrated miasma, such as we inhale herein, collected, what a deadly poison, instantaneous in its action, undiscoverable in its properties, would it be! I think it would act quicker than chloroform, be as fatal as prussic acid.

Horrors upon horrors are in it. Boas above our heads, snakes and scorpions under our feet. Land-crabs, terrapins, and iguanas move about in our vicinity. Malaria is in the air we breathe; the road is infested with "hot-water" ants, which bite our legs until we dance and squirm about like madmen. Yet, somehow, we are fortunate enough to escape annihilation, and many another traveller might also. Yet here, in verity, are the ten plagues of Egypt, through which a traveller in these regions must run the gauntlet:

1. Plague of boas.
2. Red ants, or "hot-water."
3. Scorpions.
4. Thorns and spear cacti.
5. Numerous impediments.
6. Black mud knee-deep.
7. Suffocation from the density of the jungle.
8. Stench.
9. Thorns in the road.
10. Miasma.

May 1st. Kingaru Hera.—We heard news of a great storm having raged at Zanzibar, which has destroyed every house and every ship,—so the story runs;—and the same destruction has visited Bagamoyo and Whinde, they say. But I am by this time pretty well acquainted with the exaggerative tendency of the African. It is possible that serious loss has been sustained, from the evidences of the effects of the storm in the interior. I hear, also, that there are white men at Bagamoyo, who are about starting into the country to look after me (?). Who would look after me, I cannot imagine. I think they must have some confused idea of my Expedition; though, how they came to know that I was looking for any man I cannot conceive, because I never told a soul until I reached Unyanyembe.

May 2nd. Rosako.—I had barely arrived at the village before the three men I despatched from Mvumi, Ugogo, entered, bringing with them from the generous American Consul a few bottles of champagne, a few pots of jam, and two boxes of Boston crackers. These were most welcome after my terrible experiences in the Makata Valley. Inside one of these boxes, carefully put up by the Consul, were four numbers of the 'Herald;' one of which contained my correspondence from Unyanyembe, wherein were some curious typographical errors, especially in figures and African names. I suppose my writing was wretched, owing to my weakness. In another are several extracts from various newspapers, in which I learn that many editors regard the Expedition into Africa as a myth. Alas! it has been a terrible, earnest fact with me; nothing but hard, conscientious work, privation, sickness, and almost death. Eighteen men have paid the forfeit of their lives in the undertaking. It certainly is not a myth—the death of my two white assistants; they, poor fellows, found their fate in the inhospitable regions of the interior.

One of these critical articles, which emanated from the pen of a Tennessee editor, after humorous banter of the Expedition, ends as follows:

> "The fate of that Expedition is fixed, and unless Livingstone makes his reappearance in civilized society we need never expect to hear from that 'Herald' commissioner again. He'll get into some other big Makata swamp, and go the way of his hapless dog 'Omar.' *Sic semper.*"

So, while I was travelling in Africa, upon an errand that I supposed, in my innocence, would have commended itself to most Christians, there were people praying for my failure. It is wonderful what little difference exists between civilization and barbarism—what a thin line divides some white men from negro savages. The latter I have found kind and agreeable people when well treated—the sentiment embodied in the above extract proves to me what I may expect when I reach home. At all events, I have the laugh on my side now. If I only live to reach home I may have occasion to laugh more.

One of my letters received from Zanzibar by my messengers states that there is an expedition at Bagamoyo called the "Livingstone Search and Relief Expedition." What will the leaders of it do now? Livingstone is found and relieved already. Livingstone says he requires nothing more. It is a misfortune that they did not start earlier; then they might, with propriety, proceed, and be welcomed.

May 4th.—Arrived at Kingwere's Ferry, but we were unable to attract the attention of the canoe paddler. Between our camp and Bagamoyo we have an inundated plain that is at least four miles broad. The ferrying of our Expedition across this broad watery waste will occupy considerable time.

May 5th.—Kingwere, the canoe proprietor, came about 11 A.M. from his village at Gongoni, beyond the watery plain. By his movements I am fain to believe him to be a descendant of some dusky King Log, for I have never seen in all this land the attributes and peculiarities of that royal personage so faithfully illustrated as in Kingwere. He brought two canoes with him, short, cranky things, in which only twelve of us could embark at a time. It was 3 o'clock in the afternoon before we arrived at Gongoni village.

May 6th.—After impressing Kingwere with the urgent necessity of quick action on his part, with a promise of an extra five-dollar gold piece, I had the satisfaction to behold the last man reach my camp at 3.30 P.M.

An hour later, and we are *en route*, at a pace that I never saw equalled at any time by my caravan. Every man's feelings are intensified, for there is an animated, nay, headlong, impetuosity about their movements that indicates but too well what is going on in their minds. Surely, my own are a faithful index to their feelings; and I do not feel a whit too proud to acknowledge the great joy that possesses me. I feel proud to think that I have been successful; but, honestly, I do not feel so elated at that as at the hope that to-morrow I shall sit before a table bounteous with the good things of this life. How I will glory in the hams, and potatoes, and good bread! What a deplorable state of mind, is it not? Ah, my friend, wait till you are reduced to a skeleton by gaunt famine and coarse, loathsome food—until you have waded a Makata swamp, and marched 525 miles in thirty-five days through such weather as we have had—then you will think such pabula, food fit for gods!

Happy are we that,—after completing our mission, after the hurry and worry of the march, after the anxiety and vexation suffered from fractious tribes, after tramping for the last fifteen days through mire and Stygian marsh,—we near Beulah's peace and rest! Can we do otherwise than express our happiness by firing away gunpowder until our horns are emptied—then shout our "hurrahs" until we are hoarse—then, with hearty, soul-inspiring "Yambos," greet every mother's son fresh from the sea? Not so, think the Wangwana soldiers; and I so sympathize with them that I permit them to act their maddest without censure.

At sunset we enter the town of Bagamoyo. "More pilgrims come to town," were the words heard in Beulah. "The white man has come to town," were the words we heard in Bagamoyo. And we shall cross the water to-morrow to Zanzibar, and shall enter the golden gate; we shall see nothing, smell nothing, taste nothing that is offensive to the stomach any more!

The kirangozi blows his horn, and gives forth blasts potential as Astolpho's, as the natives and Arabs throng around us. And that bright flag, whose stars have waved over the waters of the great lake in Central Africa, which promised relief to the harassed Livingstone when in distress at Ujiji, returns to the sea once again—torn, it is true, but not dishonoured—tattered, but not disgraced.

As we reached the middle of the town, I saw on the steps of a large white house a white man, in flannels and helmet similar to that I wore; he was young and reddish-whiskered; he had a bright, lively, humorous face, while his head was slightly inclined on one side, which gave him somewhat of a pensive appearance. I thought myself rather akin to white men in general, and I walked up to him. He advanced towards me, and we shook hands—did everything but embrace.

"Won't you walk in?" said he.

"Thanks."

"What will you have to drink—beer, stout, brandy? Eh, by George! I congratulate you on your splendid success," said he, impetuously.

I knew him immediately. He was an Englishman. It is their habit to do things after that fashion; but it was different in Central Africa. (Splendid success! Is that the view they take of it? It is better still. But how does he know anything about it? Oh, I forgot. My messengers have been talking, I see.)

"Thanks. I will take anything you like to give me."

"Let's have some beer, boy, quick, or I will knock seven d——s out of you," said he, in a lively tone.

It would be useless to relate every detail of the conversation that took place between us. He soon informed me, in that light, vivacious way peculiarly his own, who he was, what he came for, what were his hopes, his ideas, and his feelings upon almost every subject. He was Lieut. William Henn, R.N., chief of the Livingstone Search and Relief Expedition, about to be despatched by the Royal Geographical Society to find and relieve Livingstone. The former chief, as the expedition was at first organized, was Lieut. Llewellyn S. Dawson, who, as soon as he heard from my men that I had found Livingstone, had crossed over to Zanzibar, and, after consultation with Dr. John Kirk, had resigned. He had now nothing further to do with it, the command having formally devolved on Lieut. Henn. A Mr. Charles New, also, missionary from Mombasah, had joined the expedition, but he had resigned too. So now there were left but Lieut. Henn and Mr. Oswald Livingstone, second son of the Doctor.

"Is Mr. Oswald Livingstone here?" I asked, with considerable surprise.

"Yes; he will be here directly."

"What are you going to do now?" I asked.

"I don't think it worth my while to go now. You have taken the wind out of our sails completely. If you have relieved him, I don't see the use of my going. Do you?"

"Well; it depends. You know your own orders best. If you have come only to find and relieve him, I can tell you truly he is found and relieved, and that he wants nothing more than a few canned meats, and some other little things which I dare say you have not got. I have his list in his own handwriting with me. But his son must go anyhow, and I can get men easily enough for him."

"Well, if he is relieved, it is of no use my going.

* * * * * *

I thought I should have some good sport. I am very fond of shooting. I should like to shoot an African elephant."

"Oh, Livingstone doesn't want you. He says he has plenty of stores—enough to enable him to finish up comfortably; and I am sure he ought to know best. If he lacked anything, he would have mentioned it in the list. Any more than he has got would be an incumbrance—he could not get the men to carry them. What have you got here?"

"Oh," said he, with a light laugh, "we have the store-room full of cloth and beads. We have over one hundred and ninety loads of stores."

"One hundred and ninety loads!"

"Yes."

"Why, where could you go with all these loads? There are not enough men on the whole coast to carry such a quantity. One hundred and ninety loads! Why, you would require two hundred and fifty men to carry them, because you would be obliged to take at least fifty supernumeraries!"

At this time in walked a tall, slight, young, gentlemanly man, with light complexion, light hair, dark, lustrous eyes, who was introduced to me as Mr. Oswald Livingstone. The introduction was hardly necessary, for in his features there was much of what were the specialities of his father. There was an air of quiet resolution about him, and in the greeting which he gave me he exhibited rather a reticent character; but I attributed that to a receptive nature, which augured well for the future. A greater contrast than these two young men could hardly have been presented. One was volatile, redundant, inconsistent, effervescent, boiling over with his uncontrollable vitality, irrepressibly mercurial, hilarious, and jovial; the other was composed, even to a little sternness, unruffled in his demeanor, demurely staid, with a tranquil, resolute, and fixed face, but with flashing eyes, that vivified an otherwise immobile expression. Of the two, I should have said the latter would have been the fittest leader of an Expedition; but Henn, if he possessed enduring qualities—not such as belong to the physical constitution, but the moral courage to bear with fortitude, and persevere under constantly recurring calamities, fevers, privations, and difficulties—was an eligible companion, with his *élan*, high spirits, and bubbling hilarity. Livingstone seemed to be able by nature to support the burden of responsibility; while Henn, from his natural vivacity and impulsive disposition, seemed yet too young for such a charge, though he had acquired the quality of manhood.

"I was telling Lieut. Henn that, whether he goes or not, you must go to your father, Mr. Livingstone."

"Oh, I mean to go."

"Yes, that's right. I will furnish you with men and what stores your father needs. My men will take you to Unyanyembe without any difficulty. They know the road well, and that is a great advantage. They know how to deal with the negro chiefs, and you will have no need to trouble your head about them, but march. The great thing that is required is speed. Your father will be waiting for the things."

"I will march them fast enough, if that is all."

"Oh, they will be going up light, and they can easily make long marches."

It was settled, then. Henn made up his mind that, as the Doctor had been relieved, he was not wanted; but, before formally resigning, he intended to consult with Dr. Kirk, and for that purpose he would cross over to Zanzibar the next day with the 'Herald' Expedition.

At 2 a.m. I retired to sleep on a comfortable bed. There was a great smell of newness about certain articles in the bedroom, such as havresacks, knapsacks, portmanteaus, leather gun-cases, &c. Evidently the new Expedition had some crudities about it; but a journey into the interior would soon have lessened the stock of superfluities, which all new men at first load themselves with.

Ah! what a sigh of relief was that I gave, as I threw myself on my bed, at the thought that, "Thank God! my marching was ended."

CHAPTER XVII.

VALEDICTORY.

At 5 P.M., on the 7th of May, 1872, the dhow which conveyed my Expedition back to Zanzibar arrived in the harbor, and the men, delighted to find themselves once more so near their homes, fired volley after volley, the American flag was hoisted up, and we soon saw the house-roofs and wharves lined with spectators, many of whom were Europeans, with glasses levelled at us.

We drew ashore slowly; but a boat putting off to take us to land, we stepped into it, and I was soon in presence of my friend the Consul, who heartily welcomed me back to Zanzibar; and soon after was introduced to the Rev. Charles New, who was but a day or two previous to my arrival an important member of the English Search Expedition—a small, slight man in appearance, who, though he looked weakly, had a fund of energy or nervousness in him which was almost too great for such a body. He also heartily congratulated me.

After a bounteous dinner, to which I did justice in a manner that astonished my new friends, Lieut. Dawson called to see me—a stalwart young man, splendid figure, handsome appearance, with quick and intelligent features, and said:

"Mr. Stanley, let me congratulate you, sir."

Lieut. Dawson then went on to state how he envied me my success; how I had "taken the wind out of his sails" (a nautical phrase similar to that used by Lieut. Henn); how, when he heard from my men that Dr. Livingstone had been found, he at once crossed over from Bagamoyo to Zanzibar, and, after a short talk with Dr. Kirk, at once resigned.

"But do you not think, Mr. Dawson, you have been rather too hasty in tendering your resignation, from the mere verbal report of my men?"

"Perhaps," said he; "but I heard that Mr. Webb had received a letter from you, and that you and Livingstone had discovered that the Rusizi ran into the lake—that you had the Doctor's letters and despatches with you."

"Yes; but you acquired all this information from my men; you have seen nothing yourself. You have therefore resigned before you had personal evidence of the fact."

"Well, Dr. Livingstone is relieved and found, as Mr. Henn tells me, is he not?"

"Yes, that is true enough. He is well supplied; he only requires a few little luxuries, which I am going to send him by an expedition of fifty freemen. Dr. Livingstone is found and relieved, most certainly; and I have all the letters and despatches which he could possibly send to his friends."

"But don't you think I did perfectly right?"

"Hardly—though, perhaps, it would come to the same thing in the end. Any more cloth and beads than he has already would be an incumbrance. Still, you have your orders from the Royal Geographical Society. I have not seen those yet, and I am not prepared to judge what your best course would have been. But I think you did wrong in resigning before you saw me; for then you would have had, probably, a legitimate excuse for resigning. I should have held on to the expedition until I had consulted with those who sent me; though, in such an event as this, the order would be, perhaps, to 'Come home.'"

"As it has turned out, though, don't you think I did right?"

"Most certainly it would be useless for you to go to search for and relieve Livingstone now, because he has already been sought, found, and relieved; but perhaps you had other orders."

"Only, if I went into the country, I was then to direct my attention to exploration; but, the primary object having been forestalled by you, I am compelled to return home. The Admiralty granted me leave of absence only for the search, and never said anything about exploration."

"In your orders, which you say you have, is there nothing said as to what you were to do in the event of your meeting me?"

"Not a word, though they knew it well; for one of the members of the Royal Geographical Society suggested to me privately that I might possibly be able to relieve you. I knew nothing about your expedition except from your letter to the 'Herald;' but we had been informed that you were sick from fever, and probably dead. When I arrived here I heard much about you, and we heard a report that you had found Livingstone the very day we came here; but we did not pay much attention to it. It was not until I talked with your own men that I came to the conclusion that I was not wanted, and therefore resigned."

"Why did they not mention my name in the instructions? They knew, according to what you say, that I was in the country; and, no matter how poor a traveller I may have been, it was a contingency that might arise."

"The truth is, they didn't want you to find him. You cannot imagine how jealous they are at home about this Expedition of yours."

"Not find Livingstone! What does it matter to them who finds and helps him, so long as he is found and relieved?"

This was the first shock I received, and from this moment I regarded myself as a doomed man with the English people. That anyone should have been so inhuman as to desire my failure, because it was an American Expedition, was the remotest idea that I could have entertained. Until this moment I had never given a thought as to how people would regard my success or failure. I had been too busily employed in my work even to think of such wild and improbable things, as that any people would rather hope that Dr. Livingstone would be irrecoverably lost than that an American journalist should find him.

But I was not long at Zanzibar before I was thoroughly aware of the animus that prevailed in England I was shown clippings from newspapers, wherein several members of the Royal Geographical Society had ridiculed the American Expedition; and one member had even gone so far as to say that it required the "steel head of an Englishman" to penetrate Africa. Dr. Kirk had written in a kindly spirit, and had stated that his "sole reliance was in me;" for which I felt grateful, and regretted that I was the bearer of a formal letter to him from Dr. Livingstone.

That evening I despatched a boy over to the English Consulate with letters from the great traveller for Dr. Kirk and Mr. Oswald Livingstone.

I was greeted warmly by the American and German residents, who could not have shown warmer feeling than if Dr. Livingstone had been a near and dear relation of their own. Capt. H. A. Fraser and Dr. James Christie were also loud in their praises. It seems that both of these gentlemen had attempted to despatch a private expedition to the relief of their countryman, but through some means it had failed. They had contributed the sum of $500 to effect this laudable object; but the man to whom they had entrusted its command had been engaged by another for a different purpose, at a higher sum. But, instead of feeling annoyed that I had performed what they had intended to do, they were among my most enthusiastic admirers.

The next day I received a call from Dr. Kirk, who warmly congratulated me upon my success. He never alluded in any way to the contents of the letter received from Dr. Livingstone. Bishop Tozer also came, and thanked me for the service I had rendered to Dr. Livingstone.

On this day I also discharged my men, and re-engaged twenty of them to return to the "Great Master." Bombay, though in the interior he had scorned the idea of money rewards, and though he had systematically, in my greatest need, endeavoured to baffle me in every way, received, besides his pay, a present of $50, and each man, according to his merits, from $20 to $50. For this was a day to bury all animosities, and condone all offences. They, poor people, had only acted according to their nature, and I remembered that from Ujiji to the coast they had all behaved admirably.

I saw I was terribly emaciated and changed when I presented myself before a full-length mirror. All confirmed my opinion that I was much older in my appearance, and that my hair had become grey. Capt. Fraser had said, when I hailed him, "You have the advantage of me, sir!" and until I mentioned my name he did not know me. Even then he jocosely remarked that he believed that it was another Tichborne affair. I was so different that identity was almost lost, even during the short period of thirteen months; that is, from March 23rd, 1871, to May 7th, 1872.

Lieut. Henn came to me also on the morning after my arrival, and requested permission to see the order which I received from Dr. Livingstone, which was granted. I append a copy of the order:

"UNYANYEMBE, 14th March, 1872.

"I have been subjected to so much loss by the employment of slaves in caravans sent to me by H.M. Consul, that, if Mr. Stanley meets another party of the sort, I beg of him to turn them back, but use his discretion in the whole matter.

"DAVID LIVINGSTONE."

"This does not refer to our expedition at all," said Lieut. Henn.

"Of course not," I replied; "it refers to slave caravans. With your expedition I have nothing whatever to do; you are perfectly free to go, so far as I am concerned. But, if you recollect, you asked me last night if Dr. Livingstone was relieved. I answer you again that he was, and here are the things" (showing him the Doctor's list) "that he says he wants. If you think that you ought to go to him, I would advise you to go. Anyhow, I should advise you not to sell the goods, which I hear you intend doing, until you hear from the Royal Geographical Society. They may have other views for you, since you have gone to such a vast expense in preparing the expedition."

"Oh, I shall resign, and turn the whole thing over to young Livingstone."

"You please yourself. You know your own business best."

"I know what I will do. I shall go with Capt. Fraser to Kilima-Njaro, and have some good shooting there. New tells me that there's lots of game in that country."

Lieut. Henn went direct from the American Consulate and formally resigned, and the expedition was from this time in the hands of Mr. Oswald Livingstone, who made up his mind to sell the stores, retaining such as would be useful to his father. But, before he sold them, I advised Dr. Kirk that it would be best to store them, because the Royal Geographical Society might wish something to be done in the way of exploration.

"No," said Dr. Kirk, "these goods belong to Dr. Livingstone, and, as he does not need them, they can be converted into money for him without much loss."

From the Rev. Charles New, a resident missionary on the East Coast of Africa, a few miles west of Mombasah, I obtained a great many particulars respecting the collapse of the English expedition. Though he verbally communicated his remarks, he subsequently embodied them in the shape of a letter to me. I extract such paragraphs as bear on the matter:

After a long residence in East Africa I was returning to England, when, at Zanzibar, I met with the English expedition party. Quite unexpectedly, and at the instance of the Council of the Royal Geographical Society, I was asked to join the expedition. After a great deal of consideration, and some hesitation, I did so, accepting the position of interpreter and third in command. My agreement, drawn up by Lieut. Dawson, ran as follows:—

"I agree to give my gratuitous services in, and to join, the Livingstone Search and Relief Expedition, as originally organized in England by the Royal Geographical Society, on the following understanding—

"1st. Should accident incapacitate Lieut. Dawson from continuing the command, I agree to consider Lieut. William Henn the commander of the expedition, and to act under him as such.

"2nd. Should Lieut. William Henn be also incapacitated, I agree to take command, and use my best endeavours to carry out the objects of the expedition as laid down in the instructions of the Royal Geographical Society."

That was the agreement I signed. Having joined the expedition, I did my utmost to push forward its preparations till all was ready and we were to start. Lieut. Dawson, Lieut. Henn, and myself crossed the Channel to Bagamoyo, with the goods and guard, with the view of engaging wa-pagazi forthwith, and starting without delay. On our arrival at Bagamoyo we met three men who had arrived two or three days before us, and who were said to have come down from the interior from you. We examined them, learning from them that you had met Dr. Livingstone at Ujiji; that you and the Doctor had gone together to the north end of the lake; had seen the river Rusizi running into the lake; that you had then returned to Ujiji, and had thence pushed your way eastward as far as Unyanyembe; that there Dr. Livingstone remained with the view of prosecuting further researches, but that you were returning with all speed to the coast; that you had already reached Ugogo, and might be expected in Bagamoyo in two or three days' time.

Dawson and Henn then expressed their intention of throwing up the expedition, and of returning to England, on the ground that you had done the work they had come to Africa to do. But that evening Lieut. Dawson asked me, if, provided it were deemed necessary to send on relief to Dr. Livingstone, I should be willing to take it on. I expressed my readiness to consider such a proposal. Next day Lieut. Dawson returned to Zanzibar to consult with Dr. Kirk. Two days after I received a letter each from Dr. Kirk and Lieut. Dawson. Both offered to place the Relief Expedition in my hands; Mr. Oswald Livingstone consenting to act under my own guidance, he being anxious still to go on to his father. I wrote to Dr. Kirk, expressing my readiness to take charge of the Relief Expedition. But, in the meantime, Lieut. Henn had changed his mind, and he now insisted upon assuming the command. I was obliged to retire in his favour. It was hoped, however, that I would act under Lieut. Henn as second in command; and, had it been needful, or even possible, I would have done so.

But the expedition was no longer what it had been as originally organized in England; it was become a comparatively insignificant trip to Unyanyembe, which any two men, with an ordinary amount of real interest in it, and a fair share of pluck and perseverance, might have accomplished. That is most certainly the view I took of the matter. I therefore retired, on the ground that my services were no longer necessary, and that my presence would only complicate a very easy task. It is generally thought that I had signed an agreement to act under Lieut. Henn under any circumstances. This is not the case. My agreement was with the expedition *as originally organized in England*, and to serve under Lieut. Henn, provided Lieut. Dawson were *incapacitated through accident.* But Lieut. Dawson was not incapacitated *through accident.* He resigned; and his resignation, as originally organized, upset, as Dr. Kirk said in his letter to me, all previous arrangements, and upon this ground the expedition was offered to me. After Lieut. Dawson's withdrawal new arrangements had to be made, and each individual was at liberty to go on or retire as he pleased.

But I had other reasons for not accepting a second place in such an expedition, under Lieut. Henn. In my opinion he was unfit, and incapable of conducting such an expedition. At starting he had declared that his (main object) was for sport—to try his hand at shooting buffaloes and elephants. Now such a man, in my opinion, was not the man to send to the relief of Dr. Livingstone, and I do not think I ought to have been asked to act second to him; though, had the original expedition stood, I would have gone forward at all risks.

Another point: Lieut. Henn had threatened to retire from the expedition before we heard anything of your return; thus exhibiting an instability which augured the worst things in regard to his success as commander. Learning that Lieut. Henn had threatened to retire, I called upon Dr. Kirk expressly to talk with that gentleman about the matter. I pointed out to Dr. Kirk that this state of things seriously involved the success of the expedition, and suggested that the party be called together, in order to bring about a better understanding between Lieut. Dawson and Lieut. Henn. Dr. Kirk said, "No; do nothing of the kind. Henn will go with you two or three days into the country, and then quietly retire."

We will stop here. I have done a friendly part by Mr. New, as I have a high idea of his capabilities for his high and noble vocation; and I am sure he will pardon me if I point out, in a friendly, critical way, his own little faults. The reader may gather from the above letter that affairs stood on no amiable footing between Messrs. Dawson, Henn, and New. Indeed, from what was current at Zanzibar, a stranger would have imagined that the three gentlemen were at daggers drawn towards one another; but this was only apparent and superficial—there was no deep hostility. It was rather early in the day for a real quarrel to have taken place. While they were all united under one absolute and firm leader, trivial antipathies slumbered and were passive; but, as soon as the leader—Lieut. Dawson—retired, a little jealousy appeared, which was provoked into activity by the question which Dawson asked New, "Whether, in the event of relief being necessary, he would be willing to take command?" Mr. New wished to deliberate upon it; but we must also remember that Mr. Henn desired to do the same thing, as it was but a verbal and thoughtless expression he used when he said he would "throw up" the expedition: he had not arrived at any final conclusion. After two days' deliberation, Mr. New declared his "readiness to accept the command;" but, just at this juncture, Mr. Henn expressed his determination to proceed with the relief party; and, as he was second in command, he had the option to dispose of that right as he pleased, and the several parties conceded it to him, as they were bound by contract to do so. Mr. New, however—according to his own statement—resigned, and pleaded as an excuse that the "expedition was no longer what it had been;" but Mr. New is inclined to be inconsistent when he states its constitution was altered. It is true that the former chief had retired; but, according to his own version, he had pledged himself to obey Lieut. Henn—if Lieut. Dawson was incapacitated by accident. The "accident"—nothing less than my appearance—did occur, and Lieut. Dawson incapacitated himself by a voluntary resignation, by voluntarily depriving himself of the power to command; therefore, Lieut. Henn had the right to command, and Mr. Charles New was bound to obey him. "Should accident incapacitate Lieut. Dawson from continuing the command, I agree to consider Lieut. William Henn the commander of the expedition, and to act under him as such." In this agreement there is no mention of original organization.

Mr. New further adds, that it had become a "comparatively insignificant trip to Unyanyembe, which any two men, with an ordinary amount of real interest in it, and a fair share of pluck and perseverance, might have accomplished." I agree with him there; and not only two, but one could have gone; and accomplished the designs of the expedition far better than two quarrelsome men. About its comparative insignificance I differ with him. I should say it was far more difficult for an inexperienced party to take a caravan to

Unyanyembe, than for an experienced party to lead one from Unyanyembe beyond. By the time the party arrived at Unyanyembe, it would have been educated in the school of experience, and the after journey would be as nothing compared to the first essay in a new field. At least, I found it so. I had more trouble in going to Unyanyembe with my caravans than I had in all the other journeys together. The experience I had acquired in marching the first half enabled me to accomplish the other journeys with ease and rapidity. If the experience of Mr. Charles New, as an African traveller, was worth anything, or was even going to be of value to a raw party, it was from the coast to Unyanyembe, and not from Unyanyembe beyond.

After reaching Unyanyembe, I should say that Lieut. Henn and Mr. Livingstone would have been perfectly competent to take the caravan anywhere, without Mr. New; the lessons they had acquired on the march would have enabled them to utterly ignore him. No; I should say if Mr. New, "after a little hesitation," agreed to join the party when a man like Dawson had charge of it, in order to give it the benefit of his experience, and if, after Dawson retired, he considered Henn incapable, in the opinion of all right-minded men he was more than ever bound to sustain both Henn and Livingstone with his experience, until he had taught them how to travel without him; then Mr. New might have retired, had he wished it, with grace and credit to himself.

Though Henn's main object might be to shoot buffalo and elephant, it does not absolve Mr. New from his duty of accompanying, advising, and encouraging him in his loyalty—when all sport failed—to the real and principal object of the expedition, to which they had one and all pledged their support. Lieut. Henn might have been of an unstable and mercurial disposition by nature; but he proved himself to be more consistent—even though his object were sport—in proceeding for the second time to Bagamoyo, than Mr. New, who, when he returned from Bagamoyo, never returned to his duty, but resigned his position, then proffered his aid, and again withdrew it; and all because he was offered the command when Henn had not quite decided to go, and because, when he did decide to go, the command was given to him as a right to which he was fairly entitled, and not to the Rev. Charles New.

It was Mr. New's duty to have gone on under Henn, as he had pledged himself to do; then, if Henn should have verified the prediction of Dr. Kirk, he could have stepped with honor and credit to himself into the command which he seems, by his own account, to have so much coveted.

Though Mr. New does not appear in an enviable light in this act of the little comedy of "How not to do it," in the first act he shines as something heroic, and I feel myself admiring him intensely, as a true, earnest, and brave-hearted man. After a nine years' residence in Africa, he meets, on the eve of departure for England, whither he proposes to go for the invigoration of his enfeebled frame, with a request to accompany the English Search Expedition as interpreter; and after a little hesitation only, he gives his utmost aid, and pledges himself to do the best in his power for the furtherance of the charitable mission on which the little knot of Englishmen are bound. Until he hears from my men that Livingstone is found and relieved, he devotes himself to his task with all the energy of his nature; sails from Zanzibar to Mombasah, and presently returns with twenty soldiers, as guard for the expedition; and through his loyalty and devotion to his work wins all hearts. Mr. New has left a very good impression in Zanzibar among the European residents, and their unanimous belief is that, if I had not come so soon to the coast, he would have carried the large and costly expedition through in fine order. I have no hesitation in saying that he was perfectly qualified for his work, from his energetic nature and long experience.

But the great fault of the organization was the attempt to assimilate so many uncongenial characters into one harmonious unity. Not one member had the least affinity of character with the other. One was ambitious, positive, hasty, and inclined to be aggressive; another was mercurial, impulsive, inconsistent by nature; another was nervous, energetic, religious, and too candid; the other was reticent, earnest, and determined. New and Livingstone would have succeeded admirably. Dawson, by himself, would have been better than with anybody else. Henn, charged with the sole command, would have honorably performed his duty, for pluck and honor were the two principal ingredients of his character. As a body, uniform and harmonious, the elements of cohesion were wanting in three of them; while one would have joined neither party, but remained a neutral witness to factions. Had they gone the party must have quarrelled; and it would have been a worse disgrace than not going at all. It was therefore fortunate for the credit of Englishmen that my arrival saved their expedition from collapsing and being wrecked in the interior.

Few opportunities present themselves at Zanzibar for departure from the island. H.M.S. 'Magpie' had departed the very next morning after my arrival for a cruise, and we found afterwards that she had spoken the 'Wolverine' at sea, as was her intention, and had transmitted letters and despatches by that war-vessel to Seychelles and England. If it be true, as reported to me, that an English man-of-war would not have stayed an hour, even, for Dr. Livingstone, I have no right to feel aggrieved that she did not wait for me to send even a small despatch by her about Livingstone, but at the same time I thought it strange, if a captain of a man-of-war could steam his vessel to Bagamoyo for a hunting party, that another captain could not stay even a few minutes, to take a letter announcing the safety of Livingstone.

I was told on the authority of an English clergyman that even if Dr. Livingstone himself had appeared at Zanzibar, a British cruiser could not be detained an hour beyond time to convey him away; but I can hardly suppose that the necessary discipline of a British man-of-war would not, in such an exceptional case, have been relaxed.

After disbanding my Expedition I set about preparing another, according to Dr. Livingstone's request. What the English expedition lacked I purchased out of the money advanced by Mr. Oswald Livingstone. The guns, fifty in number, were also furnished out of the stores of the English expedition by him; and so were the ammunition, the honga cloth, for the tribute to the Wagogo, and the cloth for provisioning the force. Mr. Livingstone worked hard in the interests of his father and assisted me to the utmost of his ability. He delivered over to me, to be packed up, 'Nautical Almanacs' for 1872, 1873, 1874; also a chronometer, which was in the charge of Dr. Kirk, and which formerly belonged to Dr. Livingstone. All these things, besides a journal, envelopes, note-books, writing-paper, medicines, canned fruits and fish, a little wine, some tea, cutlery and table ware, newspapers, and private letters and despatches, were packed up in air-tight boxes of tin, as well as 100 lbs. of fine American flour, and some boxes of soda biscuits.

Until the 19th of May it was understood that Mr. Oswald Livingstone would take charge of the caravan to his father; but about this date he changed his mind, and surprised me with a note stating he had decided not to go to Unyanyembe, for reasons he thought just and sufficient. I ventured to suggest that it was his duty to go, since he had come so far as Zanzibar; but it was evident he acted as he thought best; and, taking into consideration the fact that Dr. Kirk advised him not to injure his health, and waste his studies, when there was no absolute necessity of his personal superintendence of the caravan, I think he acted quite right in resigning. Dr. Kirk was his father's friend, his father's former companion on the Zambezi; and as young Mr. Livingstone had abundant faith and confidence in his judgment, more than he had in his own, it was but natural that he should adopt the advice of his father's friend.

Under these circumstances, my duty was to follow out the instructions of Dr. Livingstone, in procuring a good and efficient leader—an Arab—for leading the expedition to Unyanyembe; and with this view I wrote a letter to Dr. Kirk, requesting his influence with the Sultan. The reply I received from Dr. Kirk reads thus:

"British Agency, Zanzibar, 20th May, 1872.

"My dear Sir,

"Dr. Livingstone's own letter to Seyd Burghash has been long ago transmitted and explained to him, but I then mentioned that you no longer thought of troubling him for the responsible head man described. Under the altered circumstances, Mr. W. O. Livingstone having abandoned the idea of following his father, I shall be only too glad to aid you with the Sultan, and shall, if you desire, at once send, and tell him to pick out the proper man, whom you will, of course, review, and reject or approve, as you think best.

"Very truly yours,
(Signed) "John Kirk."

The application of Dr. Kirk to the Sultan for a man was unsuccessful, so he subsequently informed me; and, upon receiving this information, I set about looking for a leader in another direction, and in a few hours succeeded in obtaining one highly recommended from Sheikh Hashid, whom I engaged at an advance of $100. The young Arab, though not remarkably bright, seemed honest and able, but I left his further employment after reaching Unyanyembe to Dr. Livingstone, who would be able to decide then whether he was quite trustworthy.

On the 25th, Lieut. Dawson, after engaging passage in the American barque, 'Mary A. Way,' Capt. Russell, for New York, sailed on that day. I supplied him with a letter of introduction to a friend of mine in New York. We parted on terms of the utmost amity and goodwill, as I regarded him as a most chivalrous gentleman.

On the morning of the 26th, Dr. Kirk called at the

American Consulate to visit his friend, Mr. Webb, and while in the house I took the opportunity of saying to him, "Doctor, I fear I will not be able to despatch the expedition to Dr. Livingstone so early as I hoped. If the steamer which Mr. Henn, Mr. Livingstone, and myself have chartered is obliged to sail before I can embark the expedition, I shall have to ask you to take charge of it."

To which Dr. Kirk replied, "If you do, I shall have to decline it. I am not going to expose myself to needless insult again.* I am not going to do anything more for Dr. Livingstone in a private capacity. Officially I will, as I would for any other British subject."

"Needless insult, did you say, Dr. Kirk?" I asked.

"Yes."

"May I ask what it consists of?"

"He blames me for the failure of the caravans to reach him, and charges me with having employed slaves. If the men did not reach him, how can I help it?"

"Pardon me, Dr. Kirk, but if you were in Dr. Livingstone's place, you would have done so yourself. Your best friend would have been suspected of coldness—to say nothing else—had you been told, time after time, by leaders of caravans, that they had been commanded by the Consul to bring you back, and on no account to go with you anywhere."

"But he could see by the contracts that they had been engaged to follow him wherever he chose. If he prefers to believe negroes, and half-castes, and doubt my word and official communications, he is a fool; that is all I have got to say."

---

* Readers interested in this subject may be curious to know what this insult was. It refers to Dr. Livingstone's letter to Dr. Kirk dated Ujiji, Oct. 30, 1871.—See Appendix.

"My dear sir, how can Dr. Livingstone help doubting the contract? Do not all the men swear to him that you have commanded them to bring him back? All his entreaties are of no avail, and the whole ends by them forcing him back from his discoveries. What was he to do, but believe that there was something inexplicable in it? All through the interior he has heard the same tale over and over again, that you have sent a letter to him, ordering him to come back."

"I cannot help it. I have written him a letter just as good as he sent me."

"Well," said I, "it won't do for me to leave the caravan in Zanzibar. I must send it off myself, then."

The next day I collected the men together, and as it was dangerous to allow them to wander about the city, I locked them up in a courtyard, and fed them there, until every soul, fifty-seven in number, answered to their names.

In the meantime, through the American Consul's assistance, I obtained the services of Johari, the chief dragoman of the American Consulate, who was charged with the conduct of the party across the inundated plain of the Kingani, and who was enjoined on no account to return until the expedition had started on its march from the western bank of the Kingani River. Mr. Oswald Livingstone generously paid him a douceur for the promise of doing his work thoroughly.

A dhow having been brought to anchor before the American Consulate, I then addressed my old companions, saying, "You are now about to return to Unyanyembe, to the 'Great Master.' You know him; you know he is a good man, and has a kind heart. He is different from me; he will not beat you, as I have done. But you know I have rewarded you all—how I have made you all rich in cloth and money. You know how, when you behaved yourselves well, I was your friend. I gave you plenty to eat and plenty to wear. When you were sick I looked after you. If I was so good to you, the Great Master will be much more so. He has a pleasant voice, and speaks kind. When did you ever see him lift his hand against an offender? When you were wicked, he did not speak to you in anger—he spoke to you in tones of sorrow. Now, will you promise me that you will follow him—do what he tells you, obey him in all things, and not desert him?"

"We will, we will, my master!" they all cried, fervently.

"Then there is one thing more. I want to shake hands with you all before you go—and we part for ever;" and they all rushed up at once, and a vigorous shake was interchanged with each man.

"Now, let every man take up his load!"

In a short time I marched them out into the street, and to the beach; saw them all on board, and the canvas hoisted, and the dhow speeding westward on her way to Bagamoyo.

I felt strange and lonely, somehow. My dark friends, who had travelled over so many hundreds of miles, and shared so many dangers with me, were gone, and I—was left behind. How many of their friendly faces shall I see again?

On the 29th, the steamer 'Africa,' belonging to the German Consulate, chartered by Messrs. Henn, Livingstone, New, Morgan, and myself, departed from Zanzibar for Seychelles, with the good wishes of almost all the European residents on the island.

On our voyage eastward, we sighted the 'Mary A. Way,' in which poor Dawson had taken passage. It was a matter of wonder to us that Dawson should have sailed for England by such a roundabout way. But after arriving in England, I saw a letter sent by him to the Secretary of the Royal Geographical Society, wherein he says:—

"I should have proceeded by the same route; but, though I do not grudge Mr. Stanley his well-earned success, it would be distasteful to me, if not to both of us, to travel in company; and opportunities are but few from Zanzibar to Europe."

I cannot imagine the spirit in which this letter is dictated. It differs very much from the frank, generous nature I took him to have. I can understand, however, that it would be distasteful to him to sail with me, if any one were guilty of ungenerous and invidious comparisons; but why it should be distasteful to me, I cannot conceive.

We arrived at Seychelles on the 9th of June, about twelve hours after the French mail had departed for Aden. As there is only monthly communication between Mahé (Seychelles) and Aden, we were compelled to remain on the island of Mahé one month. Messrs. Livingstone, New, Morgan, and myself, hired a nice little wooden house, which we called the "Livingstone Cottage," while Mr. Henn resorted to an hotel.

My life in Mahé is among the most agreeable things connected with my return from Africa. I found my companions estimable gentlemen, and true Christians. Mr. Livingstone exhibited many amiable traits of character, and proved himself to be a studious, thoughtful, earnest man. When at last the French steamer came from Mauritius, there was not one of our party who did not regret leaving the beautiful island, and the hospitable British officers who were stationed there. The Civil Commissioner, Mr. Hales Franklyn, and Dr. Brooks, did their utmost to welcome the wanderer, and I take this opportunity to acknowledge the many civilities I personally received from them.

At Aden, the passengers from the south were transferred on board the French mail steamer, the 'Mei-kong,' *en route* from China to Marseilles. At the latter port I was received with open arms by Dr. Hosmer and the representative of the 'Daily Telegraph;' and was then told how men regarded the results of the Expedition; but it was not until I arrived in England that I realized it.

Mr. Bennett, who originated and sustained the enterprise, now crowned it by one of the most generous acts that could be conceived. I had promised Dr. Livingstone, that twenty-four hours after I saw his letters published in the London journals, I would post his letters to his family and friends in England. In order to permit me to keep my plighted word, his agent telegraphed the two letters I received from him, by cable, at an expense of nearly £2,000.

* * * * *

A few more words, and I shall conclude, my dear reader. It were, perhaps, more dignified in me if I halted here, and wrote FINIS to this record of Travels, Adventures, and Discoveries; but there are some things which I cannot pass by in silence, and amongst them is, the treatment I have received in England.

The English Press seemed to have been laboring, before I arrived in England, under a tissue of errors.

Hardly an African word was correct—dates were all wrong—facts were distorted in the most incomprehensible manner; and these seemed to give rise to doubts and suspicions. Except a letter from Unyanyembe, despatches on my return to Zanzibar, and my letters at Marseilles, I repudiate all else. What I have written only will I father. What is published in the 'New York Herald,' as my letters and despatches, I assert to be correct—except where typographical errors have crept in, which were natural, owing to the strangeness of the names, and, perhaps, to my own handwriting; which, when a man is suffering from fever, is not likely to be very perspicuous or neat.

But it is an astounding fact, that English editors felt jealous that it had been left to an American correspondent to discover Dr. Livingstone. Almost all the English journals expressed their views upon this point in unmistakable terms, though the principal and most respectable did not hesitate at the same time to give me a large meed of praise—I refer to the 'Times,' the 'Daily Telegraph,' the 'Daily News,' and 'Morning Post.'

Gentlemen editors, though I thank you for your compliments to a journalist, yet young, and in no way distinguished, in his own humble opinion, I must say, frankly, you have no right to feel jealous of me, or of any one else. I am only a Special Correspondent, at the beck and call of the journal which I have the honor to serve. I was bound by my engagements with it to proceed to any quarter of the globe whenever the order came. I sought not the distinction of searching after Livingstone. When I received the call I was compelled to obey, or to resign. I preferred to obey rather than to resign. If you have read this book, you will know what became of the mission with which I was entrusted; how it began, and how it ended.

Neither have you a right, gentlemen, to feel jealous of the gentleman who employed me. Africa was as much open to you as it was to him. Americans felt as great an interest in Dr. Livingstone as Englishmen did. As many Americans had read his books as Englishmen had done. Prompted by the desire to satisfy the craving which Americans felt in regard to the safety of Dr. Livingstone, he conceived the idea of despatching a "Special" into Central Africa to search for him. He had abundant means, and had the will. If one Special had refused the errand, another had accepted it; there were enough of them at his command. Had each of the permanent employés on his journal refused the task, a volunteer from the intelligent masses had easily been found, and the results, through God's good pleasure, would have been the same as they are now—probably better. Had any of you thought of accomplishing the task, and willed that it should be accomplished, a thousand Englishmen had volunteered for it at once, and the same results would have been obtained—perhaps better. You have all distinguished yourselves. The 'Times,' in the Crimea, in the Indian Mutiny, and in politics; its title is well known in every part of the globe. The 'Daily Telegraph' has distinguished itself also in a hundred instances, and so has the 'Daily News.' If the 'New York Herald' desired to carry the enterprise of the Press into the heart of Africa, into the domain of fable and mystery, who will gainsay it? If it can afford the cost, why should other journals murmur? It is simply a question of money, which is the sinew of all enterprises. With a sufficient supply of it all Africa can be explored easily. Not only explored, but conquered and civilized. Not only civilized, but intersected by railroads from one end to the other, through and through. Why, then, be jealous? The whole world is as open to you as to the 'New York Herald.'

Where is the greatness of the deed? The traveller whom I sought was not lost. He was alive. Had he been dead, and his papers scattered among the tribes, and I had recovered every scrap of paper and every item of his discoveries, as well as his bones, and delivered them to whom they were of value—that had been great. What I had the good fortune to accomplish was not so great as it was meritorious. I found him ailing, and destitute; by my mere presence I cheered him—with my goods I relieved him.

Is the fact that I cheered and relieved him a source of annoyance to you? Ah, gentlemen, would you not have rendered to him this needful service in like manner? If you witnessed a child fall into the gutter, would you not stretch forth a hand to lift him up? If you witnessed honest penury, would you not give the wherewithal to relieve it? If you were in presence of weakness, would you not assist it with a portion of your strength? If you saw suffering, would you not endeavor to alleviate it?

Well, then, how did you reward me for doing what you would have done yourselves in a like case? Some of you first doubted the truth of my narrative; then suspected that the letters I produced as coming from him were forgeries; then accused me of sensationalism; then quibbled at the facts I published, and snarled at me as if I had committed a crime. With a simple tale—unvarnished, plain, clear, literal truth—you could find fault! What weakness! What puerility!

But, believe me or not, Editors and Critics, what is related in this book has transpired even so, to the best of my knowledge and belief.

But what have you to say for yourselves, gentlemen geographers? Think you to slay me with your unbelief, as you slew James Bruce, René Caillie, or Paul du Chaillu? Think you to wound me with your unkindness, as you wounded the illustrious Burton and the gallant Petherick? You caused the world to believe that you were anxious about your great Associate. You wished men to believe, during the silence that covered him, that you craved to know what had become of him. Without aid or counsel from you, the mission to find him was begun, carried through, and ended, and you were told, "Livingstone is found, and relieved: your great Associate is alive, and is about to prosecute his discoveries with greater vigor than ever." What was your reply? "There is one point on which a little *éclaircissement* is desirable, because a belief seems to prevail that Mr. Stanley has discovered and relieved Doctor Livingstone; whereas, without any disparagement to Mr. Stanley's energy, activity, and loyalty, if there has been any discovery, and relief, it is Dr. Livingstone who has discovered and relieved Mr. Stanley. Dr. Livingstone, indeed, was in clover, while Mr. Stanley was nearly destitute. It is only proper that the relative position of the parties should be correctly stated. We trust that the expedition sent out by the Society will relieve both Dr. Livingstone and Mr. Stanley, and enable them to continue the researches upon which they are engaged."

Gentlemen, may I ask, why, if you believed Dr. Livingstone "was in clover," you sent out an expedition to relieve him?

What did you do when I arrived in England, after you had had the letters from your Associate a week in your hands? Let friendly 'Punch' reply: "The President of the Royal Geographical Society, who discovered that Livingstone discovered Stanley, and not Stanley Livingstone, has at last discovered that Stanley is in England. This is not a bad discovery. It seems, however, to have been accomplished only after a severe effort. Mr. Stanley hears, on the 6th August, after having been in England for a week, that the Geographical Society has discovered him." Let the 'Daily Telegraph' speak: "A serious and honest *amende* is due to Mr. Stanley from the representatives of the Royal Geographical Society, for the sake of which he (Mr. Stanley) has saved the life of the great traveller, and safely brought us all these precious documents (letters)." I received a cold letter of thanks —a week after I arrived in England.

How else did you manifest your feelings after you heard the good news that your friend was alive? Your Vice-President, instructed by your Council, invited me to attend a session of the Geographical Section of the British Association. I complied with the request. But, after I read my paper, and defended Livingstone from rather severe criticisms, your Vice-President rose, and, in a sweet, smooth, bland voice, said, "We don't want sensational stories, we want facts."

What was the sensational story I uttered? Subsequent to the reading of my paper on 'Discoveries at the Northern Head of Lake Tanganika,' Mr. C. R. Markham read a paper written by Colonel Grant (the companion of Speke), which was to the effect that Livingstone had conceived a most extravagant idea when he believed that he had found the Sources of the Nile in 11° S.; that since he (Grant) had not discovered traces of gorillas, or cannibals, or of natives eating pigs, he could not but think that Livingstone had got much further west than he supposed. Soon after, Dr. Charles Beke rose to give his opinions upon the subject, viz., Livingstone's discoveries. Beke was certain Livingstone had not discovered the Sources of the Nile. The most important objection to this theory of the Lualaba being the Nile arose from Dr. Schweinfurth's explorations. This eminent botanist had discovered the Uielle, a large river flowing from east to west, in lat. 3° 45′, and it appeared that that river rose in the Blue Mountains, to the west of Albert N'Yanza, and completely cut off the basin of the Nile. Sir Henry Rawlinson, after a complimentary reference to myself, said that he had strong misgivings as to whether Livingstone was upon the Nile basin, and that he believed the Lualaba terminated in some grand central lake, the discovery of which he sincerely hoped would crown Livingstone's labors.

Now let us analyse the motives which underlie these adverse opinions; we shall then know what value to place on them. Colonel Grant was the companion of Speke in his famous march to Gondokoro from Zanzibar, and he believes implicitly that Speke discovered the Nile source in the river issuing from the Victoria N'Yanza, and running north-west to a lake, a corner of which Sir Samuel Baker subsequently discovered. As a friend of Speke's, and as his companion during the expedition, the gallant gentleman dislikes to hear any other person claiming to have discovered another Nile source. It is a piece of chivalrous friendship on his part, I will admit; but what does Colonel Grant know personally about Speke's source of the Nile? Let Speke himself testify: "I arranged that Grant should go to Kamrasi's direct, with the property, cattle, and women, taking my letters and a map for immediate despatch to Petherick, at Gani, whilst I should go up the river to its source or exit from the lake, and come down again, navigating as far back as practicable."

This is evidence to prove that, personally, Grant never saw the river issuing out of the Victoria N'Yanza. With the utmost good faith and blissful innocence he struck off overland about sixty miles to Kamrasi's, whither he went like an ordinary messenger to convey Speke's despatches, and while he is gone Speke discovers the "Ripon Falls," and then marches after Grant to Unyoro. The defence of Speke is chivalry *par excellence*; but it is not geography. Never was such a costly expedition so barren of results as this of Speke and Grant. From merely having seen a southern and a northern point of some lake, Speke has sketched a large body of water covering an area of over 40,000 square miles.

Because Grant saw neither gorillas, nor cannibals, nor people eating pigs, he fancies that Livingstone has been much further west than he thought he was. This is absurd. I myself saw the cannibals of Ubembe and Usansi, and heard of the cannibals of Manyuema from all the Arabs at Ujiji. Baker heard of cannibals two hundred miles west of Gondokoro. Burton and Speke saw the cannibals of Ubembe. But Livingstone was 4° of longitude further west than the western shore of the Tanganika. What becomes now of Grant's objections? As for tribes "eating pigs," almost every tribe throughout Africa eats the flesh of wild boar. I have never heard of tribes keeping tame pigs; but Livingstone has seen them, and there is every good reason to believe that the Manyuema are a superior tribe to any we meet east, near the equator.

Sir Henry Rawlinson, the President of the Royal Geographical Society, is an ardent supporter of the theory that all fresh-water lakes must have an outlet; yet, at the same time, he thinks the great River Lualaba terminates in a marsh, or a fresh-water lake, which has no outlet. Is not Sir Henry thus a little inconsistent? If all fresh-water lakes must naturally have an effluence, why should the "great inland lake," which is supposed to receive the Lualaba, have no effluence?

Yet, for the defence of Livingstone after this style, Mr. F. Galton, the President of the Geographical Section of the British Association, with remarkable suavity, charged me with being a sensationalist.

Why? Livingstone started to discover the Ngami, held on his way dauntlessly, and his efforts were crowned with its discovery. Francis Galton undertook to discover the Lake Ngami. How he succeeded, let his companion, Andersson, relate (Andersson's 'Lake Ngami,' page 238): "I must confess that on first perusing my friend's (Galton's) narrative, I was somewhat startled on coming upon his pleasant assertion that he did not much care about reaching the Lake Ngami. It is true that, when landing at Walfisch Bay, we had but little hope of arriving there; but at least for my own part, I had always conceived the great goal of our journey to be precisely the Ngami." Again, see page 251: "Galton appeared delighted with the prospect of soon returning to civilized life. Though he had proved himself to be capable of enduring hardships and fatigue as well as any of us, it was evident that he had had enough of it." Page 240: "Our failure (Galton and Andersson's) in not reaching the Lake Ngami deeply mortified me." Page 252: "Not long subsequently to his return, the Royal Geographical Society, I was happy to learn, bestowed on him their gold medal, as a reward for his services in the cause of science."

I cannot close this book without saying one word for the young gentlemen connected with the English "Livingstone Search and Relief Expedition." I must confess my utter inability to perceive what just grounds the Council of the Royal Geographical Society have to condemn them for returning. The money which supplied their outfit and stores was subscribed by the British public only for the relief of Dr. David Livingstone, at a time when they were informed that my Expedition had failed; the advertisement which the Council put in the public journals was with the view of obtaining volunteer commanders to take the relief up to Dr. Livingstone. Messrs. Dawson, Henn, and Livingstone were those who were charged with that duty. At a meeting of the Society, Lieut. Dawson publicly announced that, since the eyes of the British public were on him, the knowledge of that fact was all the more a stimulus to him to endeavor to clear up the mystery attending Livingstone's fate, or to find out his whereabouts. These young gentlemen departed from England for Zanzibar with the view of executing faithfully the instructions for the search and relief of Dr. Livingstone. When the commander arrived at Bagamoyo, the initial point on his line of route, he heard that Dr. Livingstone was found and relieved, and he hastened back to Zanzibar to consult with the British Consul, as he was commanded to do; who advised him that, under the circumstances, it was useless for him to continue the mission: he heard also through the same medium, corroborated by a certain postscript in a certain Blue Book, that Dr. Livingstone was inimical to the geographers at home. Whereupon the commander (Lieut. Dawson) resigned, because he had been led to believe that his presence would be distasteful to Dr. Livingstone. Lieut. Henn next undertook to guide the relief party; but just as he arrived at the initial point, I appeared upon the field in person, and informed him, in reply to questions as to whether Dr. Livingstone was in need of supplies, that the traveller had all the supplies he required, except a few luxuries, and fifty good freemen, according to a list which I produced for his examination. He also returned to Zanzibar, consulted with his friend Dr. Kirk, and resigned the command to Mr. Oswald Livingstone. Lastly, this gentleman, who is a son of the traveller, undertook to lead a relief party to his father. But this young gentleman was beginning to suffer from a severe malady, which in the opinion of his father's friend Dr. Kirk would totally incapacitate him from undertaking such a journey. He therefore, though with great reluctance, formally resigned.

In a spirit of candor and fair play, let us see who is responsible for the withdrawal and return of the English search party. In my humble opinion, it is not Lieut. Dawson, nor any of his companions. They were told to go and relieve Livingstone, but to consult with Dr. Kirk. If Dr. Kirk advised the party not to go on, because he thought Dr. Livingstone would dislike their presence, the young gentlemen, in my opinion, did perfectly right in returning; because he, as chosen umpire of their fortunes, had a right to advise them to return, if, in his opinion, the fact of their presence in Unyanyembe would be objectionable to Dr. Livingstone. But I disagree with Dr. Kirk, if he opines that it would be objectionable. I know Dr. Livingstone would have welcomed them if the young men came to do him a service, and that, so far as he was concerned, they might pick up the "threads of his work." I agree with him, though, that their presence was unnecessary, their relief not required. I differ also with Dr. Kirk, that Dr. Livingstone has had a quarrel with the Royal Geographical Society, or is inimical to its members in any way. During the four months I lived with him, I never heard him utter a word against the Royal Geographical Society. Almost all his personal friends are members of this same Society.

But the real and prime cause of the collapse of the expedition was the omission on the part of the Council to instruct the commander, Lieut. Dawson, what to do, in the event of meeting with me with Dr. Livingstone's despatches and letters, and receiving the assurance that he was well and amply supplied with stores. Had they officially admitted that it was possible the American Expedition had already succeeded on its errand of mercy and charity, and had prepared the young men for this contingency, the Council had now no need to charge Lieut. Dawson or his companions with disloyalty or impotence, nor Lieut. Dawson and his gallant companions to feel regret that they voluntarily offered their fortunes and their lives in the service of the Society. Since the Council omitted this most important article of instructions, the members of the Council themselves, and they alone, are responsible for the collapse of the English Search and Relief Expedition.

And now, my dear reader, I must close. I have bidden a farewell to the Wagogo, with their wild effrontery; to Mionvu, chief of tribute-takers and blackmailers; to the noisy clatter of the Wavinza; to the inhospitable Warundi; to the Arab slave-traders and half-castes; to all fevers, remittent and intermittent; to Makata swamps and crocodiles; to brackish waters and howling plains; to my own dusky friends and faithful followers; to the Hero-traveller and Christian gentleman, LIVINGSTONE; and to you, Critics, and all friends and enemies—one and all—I bid you farewell!

POSTSCRIPT.

I WISH to say that in the course of this book I have written some rough things respecting certain geographers and others. If, in so doing, I have touched the feelings of any individual, I regret it. My apology is, that what I have written is the outcome of my feelings at the time I was writing; I am a traveller and a journalist, more accustomed to rapid writing than to polished diction, but I have preferred to let these thoughts and impressions stand as they are, and for what they are worth, rather than have them edited into a style which might have been infinitely better in a literary point of view, but which would not have been mine.

At the very last moment, and when these sheets had nearly all been printed off, I was not less gratified than I confess I was surprised to receive an invitation to dine with the members of the Royal Geographical Society. Somehow, ever since, and indeed almost before, my landing in England, the impression had become fixed in my mind that the humble service which I have been providentially permitted to render to geographical science in finding out and in rescuing the great Explorer, and in bringing to England the results of his many years of toil, was a performance not welcome to the Royal Geographical Society. That impression may have given a tone of bitterness to some of the remarks in my book; with all candour, I am now willing to admit, that that impression was unfounded. Great bodies move slowly: I was impatient; and, doubtless, I was wrong in my hopes and anticipations that the story I had to tell would be received at once without hesitation and without doubt or cavil. I had thought that for the sake of my story I should have been received at once by the Royal Geographical Society, but I had not weighed the difficulties which necessarily surround the movements of so august and scientific a body. The mills of the gods are said to grind slowly but surely; in like manner the Royal Geographical Society discovered slowly but surely that I was not a *charlatan*, and that I had done what I *said* I had done, and then they extended to me the right hand of fellowship with a warmth and generosity which I shall never forget. I beg now to assure the members of the Royal Geographical Society that their recognition of my poor services is not the less welcome to me because it comes somewhat late. Especially do I thank Sir Henry Rawlinson, not only for the kind and generous words he spoke of myself, but also for the noble and handsome manner in which he withdrew a remark he once hastily made before he knew me, and when he was unaware of certain facts which have since come to light. I will only add that next to the honor which Her Majesty the Queen of England has done me I shall ever treasure the medal of the Royal Geographical Society.

APPENDIX.

The following interesting abstracts, taken from the Royal Geographical Society's Proceedings, are published with the permission of Mr. Bates, Permanent Secretary, R.G.S.:

The PRESIDENT read to the meeting the following official letter, which he had received from Lord Clarendon, Secretary of State for Foreign Affairs, in reply to his petition urging upon the Government to grant aid to Dr. Livingstone. He was sure they would all unite with him in returning the grateful thanks of the Society to Lord Clarendon and her Majesty's Government for the communication.

"Foreign Office, May 19, 1870.

"SIR,—I have lost no time in submitting to my colleagues your observations upon the position in which Dr. Livingstone is placed in consequence of his want of money, and her Majesty's Government have not failed to consider all you have urged in favour of a further grant to the distinguished traveller, viz., that he has struggled without aid or communication with England for the last three years; that, by the last accounts, he had reached a point from which he can neither advance nor retreat without supplies; and that the money granted to him at his departure being exhausted, further funds are earnestly required to provide a fresh equipment and the means of conveying it into the interior.

"I have now great pleasure in informing you that her Majesty's Government are prepared to authorise a grant of £1000 on account of Dr. Livingstone's expedition, in the earnest hope that the sum may be the means of promoting his return in safety to this country.

"I am, Sir, your obedient humble servant,
"CLARENDON.

"Sir R. I. MURCHISON, Bart."

On the 23rd of May, 1870, Sir R. Murchison speaks as follows of his friend Dr. Livingstone:

Throughout the past year we have been kept in a state of anxious suspense respecting the position of our great traveller Livingstone, and I grieve to close this address without being able to offer some encouraging sentences on the prospect of speedily welcoming him home. At the same time, there is no cause for despondency as to his life and safety. We know that he has been for some time at Ujiji on the Lake Tanganyika, whence he wrote home on the 30th of May last, though unable to make any movement for want of carriers and supplies. These were, indeed, forwarded to him by Dr. Kirk from Zanzibar, when, alas! an outbreak of cholera stopped and paralysed the relieving party. Recent intelligence, however, has reached the Foreign Office to the effect that the pestilence had subsided to so great an extent that we may presume the communication between the coast and Ujiji has before now been re-opened.

The work which still lies before Livingstone has been often adverted to, and it is hoped that he will live to advance to the north end of the Tanganyika, and there ascertain if its waters flow into the Albert Nyanza of Baker. If the junction should be proved we may indulge the thought that, informed as Livingstone must now be of the actual carrying out of the great project of Sir Samuel Baker, he may endeavour to meet his great contemporary. The progress of the great Egyptian expedition of Baker having been delayed in its outset, we know that it only left Khartoum to ascend the White Nile in February. After reaching Gondokoro, as was expected to be the case, in the first days of March, some time must necessarily elapse in establishing a factory above the upper rapids and beyond the tributary Asua, where the steam vessels are to be put together before they are launched on the Nile water, on which they are to pass to the great lake Albert Nyanza. As soon, however, as a steamer is on that lake we may be assured that Baker, with his well-known energy and promptitude, will lose not a moment in the endeavour to reach its southern end, in the expectation of there giving hand and help to Livingstone. Let us therefore cherish this cheering hope, which would indeed be the most happy consummation our hearts can desire.

The British public will be much better informed than they have been on this subject when they examine a recent small work by Mr. Keith Johnston, jun. In this pamphlet the author has given a succinct history of all the explorations in South Africa, and has also put together from the best authorities (Petermann and others) a map which shows clearly to what extent the rivers which flow from the southern highlands, on the south and S.S.W. of Lake Tanganyika, are for the most part independent of that lake, and may prove to be tributaries of the Congo. On the other hand, the streams which enter the Lake Tanganyika through the Lake Liemba of Livingstone, are probably the ultimate sources of the Nile itself, while the Kasai and other streams which feed the lakes Bangweolo and Moero may be found to issue in the Congo.

If this last hypothesis should prove to be true, the waters which Livingstone has been the first to explore will be found to be the sources both of the Nile and the Congo. As respects the Nile, however, my sagacious friend must feel that until he proves that some of these waters of the Tanganyika flow into the Albert Nyanza, the problem in regard to the Nile remains unsolved.

In the meantime the Nile hypothesis of Mr. Findlay and others (that the Lake Tanganyika will be found to unite with the Albert Nyanza) is, according to the now estimated relative altitudes of these southern waters, the most probable. God grant that the illustrious Livingstone may demonstrate this to be the case, and that we shall soon see him at home as the discoverer of the ultimate sources of both the Nile and the Congo.

On this important and exciting subject it is gratifying to state that our medallist, Dr. Petermann, has laid down, on a general map of South Africa in the last number of his 'Mittheilungen,' that which he terms a chronological sketch of all Livingstone's wonderful and arduous travels from 1841 to 1869. In respect to the tributaries of the Congo, the map of Petermann differs hypothetically from that of Mr. Keith Johnston, jun., inasmuch as he indicates that the waters of the Bangweolo, Moero, and Ulenge lakes probably point to north and by east; and if this should prove to be the case they also will fall into the great Albert Nyanza of Baker.

In concluding the consideration of this absorbing topic, I rejoice to be enabled to state, that in consequence of my representing to Lord Clarendon the isolated position of Livingstone at Ujiji, where he was without carriers or supplies, whilst he was, comparatively, near his ultimatum, the north end of the Lake Tanganyika, her Majesty's Government have kindly afforded the means whereby the great traveller may be effectively relieved before he returns to his admiring country.

In the address of the President of the Royal Geographical Society, it is stated that great credit is to be assigned to Dr. Beke, Mr. Arrowsmith, and Mr. Findlay, for their support on theoretical grounds of the great southerly extent of the Nile basin, should the great modern problem of the southern watershed of the Nile be solved.

Credit for theory! Then, now that Sir R. Murchison, the consistent friend of Dr. Livingstone, is dead, and Dr. Beke has retracted his support of the above theory, what credit shall be assigned to Dr. Beke by Sir H. Rawlinson for the theoretical support this gentleman gives to the same watershed being, not that of the Nile, but the Congo's?

At the 14th Meeting of the Royal Geographical Society, held 13th of June, 1870, it will be observed that the President of the Royal Geographical Society states that no expedition for the search of Livingstone had ever been intended. My orders were given me to go after Livingstone in October, 1869. The Royal Geographical Society then should not charge me with doing that which they intended to do, and should not feel anger at my having found him, since I clashed not with their duties.

The PRESIDENT, before proceeding to the consideration of the papers that were to be read, explained to the meeting the nature of the succour that had, to the great credit of the Earl of Clarendon and her Majesty's Government, been sent to Dr. Livingstone. There had been much misapprehension on the matter, judging from the numerous applications he had received from active young men anxious to go in search of Dr. Livingstone, it being supposed that there was an expedition about to start for that purpose from this country. *No such expedition had, however, been intended.* Dr. Livingstone had been more than three years and a half in the heart of Africa without a single European attendant. He (the President) was not sure that the sight of an unacclimatised young gentleman sent out from England would not produce a very bad effect upon the Doctor, because, in addition to his other labours, he would have to take care of the new arrival. He had therefore to announce that the £1000 which the Government had given will be sent by Mr. Churchill, the Consul of Zanzibar, who happens, accidentally, to be in this country, and who is going out immediately. He will instruct Dr. Kirk to fit out a similar expedition to that which started last year, but which was impeded by an attack of cholera. The epidemic has greatly subsided, and the only difficulty now is to get to Ujiji, where Dr. Livingstone was when last heard of, unable to move forwards or backwards for want of carriers and supplies. It will take two months or more for these supplies to reach Ujiji from Zanzibar, therefore all anxiety must be put aside for months to come. In about seven or eight months good news might be expected, and soon after that he (the President) hoped we might see our friend again in his native country.

Letter from Mr. Churchill, *Consul at Zanzibar, concerning* Dr. Livingstone.

"Zanzibar, November 18, 1870.

"My Lord,—After a vast amount of delay, that will appear unnecessary to those who are not acquainted with the country, I have succeeded in sending off to Dr. Livingstone a reinforcement of seven men, who have engaged to place themselves at the disposal of the Doctor, as porters, boatmen, &c., and a quantity of beads, clothes, and provisions for his use. He will receive, by the same opportunity, the letters and papers confided to me by Lord Clarendon and the Geographical Society, together with some wearing apparel sent by the Doctor's relatives. I am in hopes that these will reach Ujiji in the month of February, but nothing certain can be said about it. In a future despatch I will send an account of the expenditure attending this expedition. News was received about a month ago of the arrival at Unyanyembe, in June last, of men and supplies sent up in October 1869 by Dr. Kirk; seven of the men had died of cholera, and the remainder, having consumed the provisions forwarded for them, had, with the advice of the Governor of Unyanyembe, drawn upon the supplies of which they were the bearers for their subsistence. This, at first sight, appears preposterous; but on consideration it may be explained by the fact that, without supplies from some source or other, the progress of the caravan would have been stopped, and, in the absence of an authority to that effect from the Sultan, the Governor of Unyanyembe refused to grant the necessary subsistence-money.

"The latest accounts from the interior state that Dr. Livingstone, after visiting a place called Manime (Manyuema), had returned to Ujiji."

The Chairman, in continuation, said the letter from Dr. Kirk, mentioned in Sir Roderick Murchison's letter to the *Times*, was three weeks later in date than that of Mr. Churchill, and as he (Dr. Kirk) did not state that Dr. Livingstone had really arrived at Ujiji, although deriving his information from the same source as Mr. Churchill, it would be seen that the latter had announced the event, as it were, by anticipation. Dr. Kirk merely said that a letter written in Arabic had been received from the Chief of Unyanyembe, dated July, 1870, and stating that Livingstone was expected to arrive in Ujiji at the same time as the men and stores which were then on their way to the same place. It also stated that the traveller had been to a distant country called Manime. To understand the importance of this communication it was necessary to refer to the last letter written home by Dr. Livingstone himself. It was one addressed to Dr. Kirk from Ujiji, and dated the 30th of May, 1869. In it Livingstone said, "As to the work to be done by me, it is only to connect the sources which I have discovered, from 500 to 700 miles south of Speke and Baker's, with their Nile. The volume of water which flows north from lat. 12° S. is so large, I suspect that I have been working at the sources of the Congo as well as those of the Nile. I have to go down the eastern line of drainage to Baker's turning-point. Tanganyika, Nyige Chowambe (Baker's ?) are one water, and the head of it is 300 miles south of this. The outflow of this, whether to Congo or Nile, I have to ascertain. The people west of this, called Manyema, are cannibals, if Arabs speak truly. I may have to go there first, and down Tanganyika, if I come out uneaten, and find my new squad from Zanzibar."

The following is an important letter from Dr. Kirk, written a day or so after his return from a hunting excursion he made to Kikoka, the first camp beyond the Kingani:

"Zanzibar, 18th February, 1871.

"My Lord,—I have the honour to report that, information having reached me, through a native, that the men sent off by Mr. Churchill with stores for Dr. Livingstone, as reported in his despatch of the 18th of November, 1870, were still at Bagamoyo, a coast town on the opposite main-land, and had not taken any steps to procure porters and proceed on their journey, I determined, if possible, to go myself and see them off. Captain Tucker, commanding H.M.S. *Columbine*, on my request, kindly offered to place his ship at my disposal for this purpose.

"On reaching Bagamoyo I found that the men referred to were still living in the village, while Arab caravans set out on the same journey. It is true that porters this year are difficult to obtain, few of the people of Unyamwezi having come down in consequence of deaths last year from cholera among their friends.

"However, by using my influence with the Arabs I succeeded at once in sending off all but four loads, and followed inland one day's journey myself. The remaining four loads I arranged on my return were to be taken as far as Unyanyembe by an Arab caravan, and thence sent to Ujiji by Said bin Salim, the governor.

"Once fairly off on the road, there is little to induce these people to delay; whereas at Bagamoyo, living in good huts among their own people, and thinking that there, unknown, they might enjoy themselves and earn monthly pay, had I not gone in person they might have loitered yet several months.

"While passing along the trade route on the short excursion I made from Bagamoyo we met several caravans on their way from Unyamwezi, Urori, &c.; and by questioning the natives as well as the leaders, found that no news had been received lately at Unyanyembe from Ujiji, and nothing known of Dr. Livingstone. All were aware that he had gone on a journey from which he had not yet returned up to the latest dates.

"The country I passed through after crossing the River Kingani was like a beautiful park and woodland, full of all sorts of big game, including the giraffe, eland, zebra, harte-beeste, wild-beeste, &c., some of which I shot not more than twelve miles from the coast town of Bagamoyo. The Kingani River was full of hippopotami, and on its banks wild buffaloes were found.

"Unfortunately, wherever the giraffe exists in numbers this rich and comparatively healthy region is infested by the tsetse fly, so dangerous to cattle and horses.

"On my return to Bagamoyo I devoted a day to the study of the French mission establishment and their management of freed slaves. On this I shall do myself the honour to submit a separate report to your Lordship.

"Since my visit four years ago I found the town of Bagamoyo to have trebled its extent. Native huts were fast being replaced by stone buildings, and here, as elsewhere on the coast, the trade is rapidly passing into the hands of the Kutchees.

"John Kirk."

"DR. KIRK AND DR. LIVINGSTONE.

"*To the Editor of* 'The Daily Telegraph.'

"68, Portsdown Road Maida Vale, July 25th, 1872.

"Sir,—I have read with great interest your correspondent's account of the interview he had yesterday at Marseilles with Mr. Stanley, the discoverer of Dr. Livingstone, and I feel called upon to stand by my friend Dr. Kirk. Let me begin by saying that if there has been any neglect at Zanzibar in communicating with Dr. Livingstone, I, as the political agent and Her Majesty's consul there during the last five years, must share with Dr. Kirk the blame, as within that lapse of time I am responsible for what apathy may have been displayed while I was at my post—viz., upwards of two years.

"During my first stay at Zanzibar (from June, 1867, to April, 1869), it will be remembered that Dr. Livingstone was supposed to have been killed; so that very few, if any, letters were sent to Zanzibar for him. I can vouch for the fact that no letters passed through my hands during the whole of that time.

"In compliance with Dr. Livingstone's request, I sent to Ujiji, towards the middle of the year 1868, a certain quantity of supplies and medicines, but I am not aware that any private letters were sent, except those that Dr. Kirk and I wrote to him, for the reason that is mentioned above. On a previous occasion Dr. Seward had sent up, *viâ* Kilwa, quinine and stores, which were to await the Doctor's arrival at Ujiji. In both these expeditions Dr. Kirk's valuable assistance was readily obtained, and I must here bear testimony to the great interest that Dr. Kirk always took in anything connected with his friend Dr. Livingstone. On no occasion did I ever perceive the slightest indication of jealousy on the part of Dr. Kirk.

"After my departure from Zanzibar in April, 1869, Dr. Kirk organised a further expedition, consisting of fourteen men and a large caravan of supplies, to meet the great traveller at Ujiji. Cholera intervened and delayed this expedition, and out of the fourteen men only seven reached Unyanyembe. There the remaining party appear to have helped themselves out of the supplies; but for this Dr. Kirk surely cannot be blamed; and, after all it was better that they should have done this than have declared themselves unable to proceed on their journey for want of means of subsistence.

"On my return to Zanzibar in August, 1870, furnished as I was with ample means by Her Majesty's Government, I prepared a third expedition, and chose seven men who knew the country in the neighbourhood of Ujiji to replace those who were reported to have died; with instructions to proceed to Ujiji, and there to await Dr. Livingstone's arrival; but the road was unsafe, and no caravan would venture up country for a considerable time after the expedition was organised, so that it was detained at Bagamoyo until after my departure on sick leave in the following December. This is the caravan mentioned by Mr. Stanley as having left Bagamoyo two days before Dr. Kirk's visit to the coast in the *Columbine*. With it went the letters and parcels that I had taken out to Zanzibar for Dr. Livingstone. Kirk is said to have made shooting the primary object of his visit to Bagamoyo, and to have neglected the caravan altogether; but Mr. Stanley's own statement shows that the caravan had already started when Kirk reached that spot; and surely a village of 500 inhabitants is not so large that he could not learn in ten minutes how matters stood. If, therefore, he went out on a shooting excursion with the officers of the *Columbine*, he did so knowing that the object of his going to Bagamoyo was accomplished. Mr. Stanley's statement would indeed show that the simple rumour of Dr. Kirk's approaching arrival had had the good effect of putting the caravan in motion.

"To those who are unacquainted with Zanzibar, the statement that eleven packages of letters from home, sent to Mr. Stanley in the course of nine months, had reached Ujiji, while in three years Dr. Livingstone had not been able to receive a single letter, would certainly appear strange; but let me explain that in every likelihood those eleven packages, together with the telegram, were received at Zanzibar by the same mail, and that they were sent up to Ujiji by the same messenger. One caravan may pass through the country where another may fail to reach its destination; and the very fight that occurred at Unyanyembe, in which Mr. Stanley was involved, may have cleared the way for future caravans. But I have only to mention Mr. Stanley's own adventures to show the difficulties that sometimes attend caravans on their way to Ujiji; and if Dr. Livingstone, on the other hand, did not get any letters, it is because, as I have shown, no letters were written to him, his friends believing him to be dead.

"I hope Mr. Stanley has given Dr. Kirk the opportunity of justifying himself; but, however this may be, I have felt it my duty to come forward and make known to the public, through your columns, the sympathy and friendly feeling that Dr. Kirk has always entertained for his old friend and fellow-traveller, Dr. Livingstone.

"I am, Sir,
"Your obedient humble servant,
"HY. A. CHURCHILL."

Here is a letter which will make Dr. Livingstone smile as it makes me. It is from the "moral idiot" Sherif, the half-caste tailor, who divined on the Koran that Dr. Livingstone was dead, and upon this divination sold the Doctor's goods for ivory:

(Communicated by the Foreign Office through Lord ENFIELD.)

"Zanzibar, March 10, 1871.

"MY LORD,—I have the honour to forward, in translation, copies of letters just received from Ujiji, from which it will be seen that up to five months ago Dr. Livingstone was at a place named Manakoso, and only awaiting the men and supplies sent off by me last year, and that they have now reached him, or at least been forwarded from Ujiji to the place where he is.

"It being now time to close letters for transmission by the present occasion, I shall not be able to make inquiry among the Arabs acquainted with these parts as to the position of the places named, but which I suppose are on the western side of the lake.

"JOHN KIRK."

(Translation.)

"*To* Consul KIRK *from* Sherif BASHEIKH BIN AHMED.

"I have to inform you that on the 15th of Shaban (10th November) a messenger came from the people of Menama with letters from the Arabs who are there, and one from the Doctor, and these letters were dated the 20th Rejib (15th October).

"In answer to my inquiries they told me that the Doctor was well, although he had been suffering, and that he is for the present at the town of Manakoso with Mohamed bin Gharib, waiting for the caravans, being helpless, without means and with few followers—only eight men—so that he cannot move elsewhere or come down.

"We have sent off twelve of our men with American cloth, kaniki, beads, sugar, coffee, salt, two pair of shoes, shot, powder, and soap, and a small bottle of medicine (quinine).

"All that he was in need of we have sent to him, and I remain at Ujiji awaiting his orders.

"Dated 20th Shaban, 1287 (15th November, 1870).

"True translation. JOHN KIRK."

The following was read:

Sir RODERICK MURCHISON communicated that he had received a letter from Dr. Kirk, dated 30th April, 1871, in which he stated that although no one at Zanzibar had been to Manemeh (the place where Dr. Livingstone was last heard of), he had ascertained that it was about a month's journey, say 200 or 300 miles, west of Tanganyika, and is a thriving ivory mart.

Dr. Kirk is of opinion that Livingstone had been led thither to examine a western lake he had heard of, and into which the waters from Cazembe flowed, and to ascertain whether they go to the west and the Congo or to the north and Nile basin. He further hopes that if Livingstone should have settled the outflow of the Tanganyika he will be satisfied, and leave all the rest of the work to future travellers, seeing that he has been out upwards of five years and must sorely want rest.

It is satisfactory to know that abundant supplies are waiting for the Doctor at Ujiji on his return.

Dr. Kirk adds, that as the rains will soon be over he can send any letters or parcels to Ujiji in about a month, that is, about the 1st of June.

The PRESIDENT said he found some difficulty in believing that there was an interval of nearly 300 miles between Manakoso and Lake Tanganyika. The letter received from Livingstone by the Arabs in charge of his stores at Ujiji was only twenty-five days in transit. Now the average rate of travelling in those countries was only ten miles a day; so that, judging from the time occupied by the transit of the letters, there could only be an interval of 250 miles between Ujiji and Manakoso, including the passage of the lake. It was, moreover, satisfactory to find that Livingstone was not stationed in an unknown cannibal territory, as had been supposed, but in a thriving ivory mart, between which and the sea-coast there was a constant trade communication."

June 26th, 1871.—Sir Henry Rawlinson in his Presidential Address under this date, said, among other things relating to geographical matters:

With regard also to our other great African explorer, Dr. Livingstone, we are still kept in a state of the most painful suspense. We learn by the last reports from Dr. Kirk at Zanzibar, dated in the middle of August, that the Arab merchants with whom Dr. Livingstone had travelled from the south up to Manyemeh, had passed on from that place to Ujiji, and early in the month of June were daily expected at Unyanyembe. From Livingstone himself, however, no direct intelligence had recently reached Zanzibar, and it was only by inference that Dr. Kirk supposed him to be still at Manyemeh. The second batch of supplies intended for him had in the mean time passed on through Unyanyembe, *en route* to Ujiji, and Dr. Kirk was anxiously awaiting news of the arrival of the American traveller, Mr. Stanley, at that place. This gentleman, who is said to be of the true exploring type, left Bagamoyo on the coast for Ujiji in February last, and intended to communicate with Livingstone before proceeding further into the interior, so that we must receive before long, from this, if not from any other quarter, some definite intelligence of our great traveller's present condition and his plans for the future. Those who know Mr. Stanley personally are much impressed with his determined character and his aptitude for African travel. His expedition is well equipped, and he enjoys the great advantage of having secured the services of 'Bombay,' the well-known factotum of Speke and Grant. He is entirely dependent, I may add, on his own resources, and is actuated apparently by a mere love of adventure and discovery; and I need hardly say that if he succeeds in restoring Livingstone to us, or in assisting him to solve the great problem of the upper drainage into the Nile and Congo, he will be welcomed by this Society as heartily and as warmly as if he were an English explorer acting under our own immediate auspices.

It will be seen from the above that Sir Henry Rawlinson was inclined to be complimentary when speaking of me at that date.

The next letters received about Dr. Livingstone and myself are dated 25th and 22nd of September, 1871, and are as follows:

"Zanzibar, September 25, 1871.

"Dear Sir Roderick,—You will see, by the account sent to the Foreign Office, that difficulties have sprung up in Unyamwezi and cut off Ujiji from the coast; and as it happens no Ujiji news has been received for some time back, we may be a long time in getting any certainty of Dr. Livingstone's movements.

"All I can say is, that I lack reports from that place: neither he nor his Arab friend Mohamed bin Gharib had arrived; but there was a story, which I think worthless, to the effect that they were both to go round the south end by way of Wemba.

"I can yet get no correct account of Manyema: every one knows it, but I find no one who has been there. I have seen people who have crossed the Tanganyika from Ujiji, and seen the Manyema caravans setting out, but it seems to be rather a new and special line of trade.

"I am glad that the Governor of Unyanyembe is to be removed: he is the one on whom the war there is laid, and if he had been killed we should all have been better satisfied.

"Mr. Stanley was at Unyanyembe and in the fight, but the Arabs abandoned him; four of his men were killed, but he escaped. His prospect of getting on is at present small, but I really cannot say where he desires to go to; he never disclosed his plans here. I sent up letters for Dr. Livingstone under his care, and put also the things (of the second lot—the first has reached Ujiji,) for Livingstone into his hands.

"I fancy he will make a point of meeting Livingstone first; but whether, having seen what is best to do, he will push on or come back, I cannot say. He was ill of fever when he wrote, but has got tolerably well.

"The men who came down return to-morrow, and ought to be there in twenty-five days, for the road is fine, and grass and food plenty.

"Believe me, dear Sir Roderick, yours most sincerely,

"JOHN KIRK."

◆

"Zanzibar, September 22, 1871.

"MY LORD,—Letters just received by special messengers, who left Unyanyembe about a month ago, inform us of a sad disaster that has befallen the Arab settlement there, and that will in all likelihood stop the road to Ujiji and Karague for some time to come.

"All accounts agree as to the main facts; but naturally the letters written by Mr. Stanley, an American gentleman, who was on the spot, are the most circumstantial and reliable. I am indebted to Mr. Webb, the American Consul here, for some details related in those letters, which will, no doubt, be published in full elsewhere. Briefly the position is this: the Arab colony of the interior, whose centre is Unyanyembe, has for some time been led by a set of avaricious, unprincipled men, whose acts of extortion, both on natives and the poorer Arabs, have for some time back been complained of to Seyd Burghash, who is impotent to interfere at such a distance so long as things go well for the Arabs. A chief, whose village was one day's journey distance on the main road to Ujiji and Karague, fell under the displeasure of the Unyanyembe settlers, and his place was attacked in due course by a force of about 1500 muskets. Seeing that he could not hold the blockaded village, he retired with his followers, and formed an ambush for the return of the attacking party, when laden with ivory and other booty. The result was disastrous to the Arabs, and a great many were killed, including ten or twenty of the leaders, men of good family here. The Arab retreat soon became a rout, and much property was lost. Fortunately Mr. Stanley, who was weak and ill from fever, managed to return to Unyanyembe, but he was abandoned by the Arabs, whose conduct he speaks of as cowardly in the extreme.

"Such is the constant state of things in Central Africa. The road to Ujiji will now be shut for a time, and when we may again hear of Dr. Livingstone is most uncertain. One of the men who came down now says that there was a rumour that Mahomed bin Gharib and the white man (Dr. Livingstone) would come back from Manyema by way of Marungu and Wemba. The report is worth nothing, I consider, but I may as well mention it.

"The last lot of things sent by Mr. Churchill had reached Unyanyembe, as I have before reported; but I now learn that the headman, in whose charge they were, died the day after setting out for Ujiji, and the goods were brought back to Unyanyembe. I have little faith now in the sheikh Saeed bin Salim, and shall write to Mr. Stanley, who will probably not have been able as yet to quit the place, and authorize him to make such arrangements as he can to get the goods forwarded, or if not, to act for me to the best of his judgment in protecting them from plunder; but in such a state of things as this it will be most fortunate if they have escaped, and ever reach their destination.

"The messengers will start on their return in a day or two, and should be able to accomplish the journey easily in seventy or seventy-five days, for the way so far is open and food plenty.

"To the Arab ivory trade the present position of affairs is most serious; they have now settled far up in the country, and collected about them thousands of slaves drawn from the country itself; these they cannot do without, and yet cannot trust; they are all armed, and may turn against their masters.

"The chief with whom they are at war is well provided with arms, and a caravan of his is now on the way up with several hundred kegs of powder. To stop these people on the way, the Wasagara have been told already to attack and plunder them; but this too may be but the beginning of similar attacks on Arab caravans; for the wild tribes, when once plunder has been encouraged, will care little whom they attack.

"I have, &c.,
"JOHN KIRK,
"Acting Political Agent and Consul for Zanzibar.
"Earl GRANVILLE."

Captain R. F. BURTON said this was not the first time that disturbances had broken out between the Arab trading communities and the natives of Unyanyembe and Unyamwezi. The present state of things might continue for two or three years; but if Livingstone wished to avoid passing through that district there would be no difficulty in his returning by the south of Lake Tanganyika. At the same time, a white man like Livingstone, fearless, and speaking the native languages, would be able safely to pass through places in which no black man dare venture. He had not the slightest fear with regard to Livingstone. He was convinced that the moment anything happened to him the news would rapidly spread to the coast, and the Society would hear of it almost as if it came by telegraph.

November 27th.—Sir HENRY RAWLINSON announced that he had a communication to make to the meeting on another subject in which the Geographical Society took an equally warm interest—namely, Dr. Livingstone. At the last meeting he had occasion to read certain letters which had been addressed by Dr. Kirk to our late revered President and to the Government of Bombay, in which he described the accidental outbreak of troubles in Africa which had cut off the communication between the sea-coast and Lake Tanganyika. The despatch on the same subject addressed by Dr. Kirk to the Foreign Office had since then been received, and proved to be a duplicate of that before read, addressed to the Government of Bombay. He wished now to announce the measures which the Council had that day proposed to undertake in consequence of the receipt of these letters. It appeared to the Council and himself, now, that the hope which we had of communicating with Dr. Livingstone through Mr. Stanley, the American traveller, must for the present be abandoned; and it had become consequently their duty to cast about for some other means of reaching him. Their intention now was to address the Foreign Office, with a view of arranging, either directly from the Foreign Office or through co-operation between the Foreign Office and our Society, some means of communicating with the interior district where Livingstone was supposed to be. One plan proposed was to send native messengers, offering a reward of one hundred guineas to whichever would bring back a letter in Dr. Livingstone's handwriting to the sea-coast;

another, recommended by one of our African travellers, was to organise a direct expedition headed by some experienced and well-qualified European. Which of those two arrangements might be most advisable to pursue would depend upon the result of their communication with the Foreign Office; but the Society might rest assured that the Council would leave no means untried of ascertaining whether Dr. Livingstone was detained at Manyema, where he has been so long reported to be staying, in company with the Arab trader Mohamed bin Gharib.

Mr. Hormuzd Rassam, on being asked for his opinion, said his experience in Abyssinia taught him that the best way to get information from individuals at a distance was by sending native messengers. On three different occasions he adopted this plan of communicating with the Magdala captives from Massowah. He employed three different messengers—one Christian, another a Mohammedan, and a third a native of Western Abyssinia. He sent them by different routes, and was perfectly convinced that they were ignorant of each other's movements. One of them, it was true, concocted a letter and brought it back; but the other two returned within ten days of the promised time with authentic intelligence. Several Arabs at Muscat, who had travelled as far as Lake Tanganyika, had assured him that there was no difficulty in going up and down with beads and other articles for barter.

General Rigby felt convinced that the plan recommended by Mr. Rassam would entirely fail. In Abyssinia single travellers might go from one distant part of the country to another, but on the east coast of Africa they could not. All travellers must there be accompanied by caravans with a body of armed men. The only caravans that performed the journey to the lakes were those of traders, to whom the time occupied was of no moment, and if the Society depended on any single native going in with a caravan and having to wait until he could return with another, they might probably have to wait five years or more. He was convinced the only means of communicating with Livingstone and of rescuing him would be by sending an enterprising English traveller from Zanzibar with a small armed party, well provided with supplies.

Mr. Rassam wished to add that he had communicated by means of messengers with chiefs in the distant Galla country, to reach whom a journey of thirty or forty days was required. He thought there might be no harm in trying both plans.

The President said the Council had decided first to try the plan of offering a reward to native messengers, and if that failed they might then undertake the more serious affair of sending an expedition.

The following correspondence relating to supplies forwarded to Dr. Livingstone has been issued from the Foreign Office:

"Dr. Livingstone *to* Dr. Kirk.

"Ujiji, October 30, 1871.

"Sir,—I wrote on the 25th and 28th two very hurried letters, one for you and the other for Lord Clarendon, which were forwarded to Unyanyembe. I had just reached this place, thoroughly jaded in body and mind, and found that your agent, Shereef Basha, had sold off all the goods you sent for slaves and ivory for himself. He had divined on the Koran and found that I was dead. He also wrote to the Governor of Unyanyembe that he had sent slaves to Manyema, who returned and reported my decease, and he wished the permission of the Governor to sell the goods. He, however, knew from men who came from me in Manyema that I was near Ujiji, at Bambarre, and waiting for him and supplies; but when my friends here protested against the sale of my goods, he invariably answered, 'You know nothing about the matter; I alone know that the Consul ordered me to remain one month at Ujiji, and then sell off and return.' When I came, he said Ludha had so ordered him. From the Banian slaves you sent I learn that Ludha went to Ali bin Salim bin Rashid, a person notoriously dishonest, and he recommended Shereef Basha as leader of the caravan. No sooner did he obtain command than he went to Muhamad Nassur, who furnished twenty full boxes of soap and eight cases of brandy, to be retailed in the course of the journey inland. At Bagamoyo Shereef got a quantity of opium and gunpowder from two Banians there, whose names are unknown to me. In their house Shereef broke the soap boxes and stored the contents in my bales; the brandy cases were kept entire, and pagazi employed to carry them and the opium and gunpowder, and paid out of my bales. The Banians and Shereef had interposed their own trade speculation between two Government officers, and thenceforward all the expenses of the journey were defrayed out of my supplies, and Shereef was able to send back to his accomplices five frasilahs of ivory from Unyanyembe, value some £60; the pagazi again paid by me. He was in no hurry to aid me, but spent fourteen months in traversing a distance that could easily have been accomplished in three. If we deduct two months' detention by sickness, we have still twelve months, of which nine were devoted to the private interests of the Banians and Shereef. He ran riot with my goods, buying the best provisions and drink the country afforded; lived in my tent till it was so rotten and full of holes I never could use it once; remained two months at three several places retailing brandy, opium, gunpowder, and soap, and, these being finished, on reaching Ujiji he would go no further. Here it is commonly reported he lay drunk for a month at a time, the dura, pombe, and palm-toddy all bought with my fine samsam beads. He issued twenty-four yards of calico per month for himself, eight yards ditto for each of his two slaves, eight yards ditto for his woman, and eight yards ditto to Awathe, the other headman; and when he sent seven of the Banian slaves employed by Ludha to me at Bambarre he would not allow me more than two frasilahs of the very coarsest beads, evidently exchanged for my fine samsams, a few pieces of calico, and, in great mercy, half of the coffee and sugar. The slaves came without loads. Shereef finished up, as above stated, by selling off all except the other half of the coffee and sugar and one bundle of unsaleable beads, and four pieces of calico. He went off from this, but hearing of disturbances at Unyanyembe, deposited his ivory in a village near to this, and coming back took the four pieces of calico, and I received, of all the fine calico and beads you sent, not a single yard or string of beads. Awathe, the other headman employed, was a spectator of all the plunder by Shereef, from the coast upwards, and never opened his mouth in remonstrance or in sending back a report to his employer. He carefully concealed an infirmity from you which prevented him from performing a single duty for me. He had his shepa long before he was engaged, and he stated to me that the large fleshy growth came up at once on reaching Ujiji. It is not hydrocele but sarcocele, and his own statement proved that the pain he feigned had entirely ceased when a friend of mine, Dugumbe, offered to convey him by short easy stages to me. He refused, from believing that the Banians have so much power over us that he will be paid in full for all the time he has been devouring my goods, though quite unable to do any duty. Dugumbe also offered to convey a packet of letters that was delivered to Shereef here as my agent, but when he told him that he was about to start it was not forthcoming. It was probably destroyed to prevent my seeing the list of goods you sent by one Hassani to Unyanyembe. With due deference to your judgment, I claim all the expenses incurred, as set down against me in Ludha's books, from the Banians, who by fraud converted a caravan to help me into a gratification of their own greed. Muhamad Nassur can reveal the names of the other Banian accomplices of Shereef who connived in supplanting help for me into a trade speculation; they ought to pay the slaves sent by Ludha, and let them, the Banians, recover from Shereef. I report this case to her Majesty's Government as well as to you, and believe that your hands will thereby be strengthened to see that justice is done to me and that due punishment be inflicted on the Banians, on Shereef, and Awathe, and on the Banian slaves who baffled and thwarted me instead of fulfilling the engagement entered into in your presence. In intrusting the matter of supplies and men for me to the Banian Ludha, you seem to have been unaware that our Government forbids its servants to employ slaves. The commissioner and consul at Loanda, on the West Coast, sent all the way to St. Helena for rather stupid servants, so as not to incur the displeasure of the Foreign Office by using very clever Portuguese slaves within call. In the very trying circumstances you mention, during the visitation of cholera, and in the absence of the instructions I had enclosed to employ free men and not slaves, as also in the non-appearance of the checks for money enclosed in the lost packet, the call on Ludha was, perhaps, the easiest course, and I trust that you will not consider me ungrateful if I point out that it involved a great mistake. Ludha is polite enough, but the slave trade, and, indeed, most other trades, is carried on chiefly by the money of Banians—British subjects, who receive most of the profits, and adroitly let the odium of slaving fall on the Arabs. They hate us English, and rejoice more over our failures than successes. Ludha sent his own and other Banian slaves, at $60 a year, while the usual pay of free men at Zanzibar is from $25 to $30 a year. He will charge enormous interest on the money advanced—it is reported of 20 or 25 per cent.; and even supposing Shereef's statement that Ludha told him not to go beyond Ujiji, but after one month sell off all and return, to be quite untrue, it is passing strange that every one of the Banian slaves employed stoutly asserted that they were not to follow, but to force me back. I had no hold on people who knew that they would not be allowed to keep their wages. It is also very remarkable that the objects of your caravan should be so completely frustrated by Banians conniving with Shereef almost within the shadow of the Consulate, and neither dragoman nor other paid officials under your orders give any information. The characters of Ali bin Salem bin Raschid and of his chum Shereef could scarcely have been hid from them. Why employ them without characters?

"Yours very truly,

"DAVID LIVINGSTONE."

"P.S.—November 16, 1871.—I regret the necessity of bringing the foregoing very unpleasant subject before you, but I have just received information and letters that make the matter doubly serious. Mr. Churchill informed me, by a letter of September, 1870, that her Majesty's Government had most kindly sent 1000*l.* for supplies to be forwarded to me; some difficulties had occurred to prevent 500*l.* worth from starting, but in the beginning of November all were removed. But you had recourse to slaves again, and one of these slaves now informs me that they remained at Bagamoyo four months, or till the end of February, 1871. No one looked near them during that time, but a rumour reached them that the Consul was coming, and off they started two days before your arrival, not on their business, but on some private trip of your own. These slaves came to Unyanyembe in May last, and there they say that the war broke out in July, and gave them a good excuse to be there still. A whole year has thus been spent in feasting slaves on 500*l.* sent by Government to me. Like the man who was tempted to despair when he broke the photograph of his wife, I feel inclined to relinquish the hope of ever getting help from Zanzibar to finish the little work I have still to do. I want men, not slaves, and free men are abundant in Zanzibar; but if the matter is committed to Ludha, instead of an energetic Arab, with some little superintendence by your dragoman or others, I may wait twenty years, and your slaves feast and fail."

* * *

"Dr. Livingstone *to* Dr. Kirk.

"Unyanyembe, February 20, 1872.

"My dear Kirk,—As I am sending by Mr. Stanley for fifty freemen from Zanzibar to enable me to finish up my work, I beg you to favour me with your influence with the Sultan, that he may give me an able headman to lead them quickly here, and continue with me till I have finished what I have still to do—a man of good character, willing to work for me, and on no account to attempt to inflict (*sic*) any private speculation on my expedition. It is necessary to be explicit on this point; but if he proves himself a good energetic headman, when we come into the country where ivory is abundant I shall try to make it worth his while to have come by means of my own goods. If he has gone with a caravan previously, he will know what duties he owes to the chief of it. We shall see, on his arrival here, by the manner in which he has obeyed Mr. Stanley's instructions as to the donkeys and men, whether he is qualified to accompany me further. His duty, as you very properly told others, is to do what he is ordered, and see that those under him do the same, without reference to the customs or practices of any other caravan. I wish you to hand over to Mr. Henry M. Stanley the sum of £500 out of the money placed in your hands for my use by her Majesty's Government, to be laid out by him, and you will receive his receipt as a sufficient acknowledgment from me. He knows the kind of men and necessaries I need, and I am sure your consular influence will be used to help him to get all I require, and a speedy departure of the party inland. If you received two letters written hastily on the 28th of October, 1871, as soon as I reached Ujiji, one for you and the other for Lord Clarendon, you may have been led to employ Banian or other slaves again instead of free men. Do not hesitate; please at once to discharge them, no matter what expense may have been incurred. I have given Mr. Stanley a draft on Bombay in case of your having spent all the money (1000*l.*) sent by Government. No slaves must be sent, for all those already employed came full of the idea that they were not to follow but force me back, and they positively swore (falsely, of course,) that you, the consul, had so instructed them. I enclose a receipt for a pocket chronometer from the captain of any man-of-war who may be able and willing to lend me one without interfering with the navigation of his own ship; and before leaving this and pecuniary matters, I would just add that haste is of vital importance, and if any other way of getting money quickly suggests itself, either from Mr. Young or from my bankers, Coutts & Co., please adopt it, and I hereby engage to refund the whole by cheque as soon as Mr. Stanley's men reach Unyanyembe. By some newspapers sent by Mr. Webb to Mr. Stanley, I see that you are under the impression that goods and packets committed by you to Banians may reach Ujiji in about a month after delivery. The box packed by you was about four years in the way; goods, and I suppose letters, were sent by one Hassain, and totally disappeared. Letters sent by Shereef were fourteen months on the way to Ujiji; one packet of them was destroyed. All the goods were sold off for slaves and ivory. But you were misled to cause Earl Granville to say in the House of Lords that all my wants had been supplied. I need not enlarge further than give a bird's-eye view of your last supplies through Ludha and slaves. The letters were fourteen months in the way to Ujiji, and came only through Mr. Stanley accidentally seeing and seizing them for me. The slaves you sent would not accompany him to Ujiji. Why should they all have been taught not to follow me? They told me that they lay four months at Bagamoyo. Three bags of beads and one bale of cloth disappeared there; then the two headmen ran riot on the goods here. One died of smallpox, and Athman, the survivor, broke the bolt and keys of Mr. Stanley's store in open day, and stole his goods. Dismissed.

"I am, &c.,
"DAVID LIVINGSTONE,
"Her Majesty's Consul, Inner Africa."

Dr. KIRK *to* Earl GRANVILLE.

"Zanzibar, May 9, 1872.

"I HAVE the honour to report that yesterday Mr. Stanley, whose approach I had already announced, entered Zanzibar and placed in my hands letters from Dr. Livingstone, of which I herewith furnish copies. Dr. Livingstone having studiously refrained from affording the smallest hint either of his past labours during the three years he has been silent, or regarding the new explorations he is about to embark on and for which he orders, through Mr. Stanley, a grant of fifty armed men, and authorizes an expenditure of 500*l*., I must allow Mr. Stanley, who has been intrusted with the secret, to disclose it in the way that best suits the interests of his employer. To Mr. Stanley has been confided the whole of Dr. Livingstone's diary and notes, with special instructions to allow nothing to transpire here as to his route or plans; and letters formerly written, in which some information was given, have been suppressed or lost. The balance of the Government grant of 1000*l*., placed by your Lordship in Mr. Churchill's hands, having been transferred at your directions to the Livingstone Search and Relief Expedition, is already at the disposal of Mr. W. O. Livingstone, who now represents that expedition, the senior members having judiciously retired on its being known that Dr. Livingstone was safe and within easy access at Unyanyembe, and in possession of ample stores for the years that he still purposes remaining in the country. Mr. Stanley has shown me the list of things now ordered through him, almost all of which are already in the outfit of the expedition and in the hands of Mr. W. O. Livingstone. The expensive cotton goods and beads already packed for the journey will therefore, in all probability, be sold, as we know they are no longer needed by Dr. Livingstone. In the hands of the expedition there are also fifty rifled carbines, that will render unnecessary any fresh outlay on this head in arming the fifty men to be selected by Mr. Stanley; in fact, slave-chains ordered by Dr. Livingstone to be provided for the guard, to be used in case of their refusing work, as did those whom he before had, are about the only things not already purchased, but the conduct of the whole matter as it affects the expedition is now in the hands of Dr. Livingstone's own son, and the selection of men is jealously placed in Mr. Stanley's hands. The party, at Dr. Livingstone's express request, will start off at once in light marching order. The bulky correspondence I enclose shows clearly that the agent, Shereef Basha, intrusted to convey stores to Ujiji, did so in the most dilatory and dishonest manner; but it seems that the trading speculations on the first part of the way were chiefly carried on with goods borrowed on the coast, which he mixed with Government stores in order to escape the cost of transit. He arrived at Ujiji, however, with an ample store of Government goods, which, if honestly given up, would have long sufficed for all Dr. Livingstone's wants. At Ujiji, thinking that Dr. Livingstone would not return from Manyema, he made away with the most valuable, sending only a very little to the Doctor.

"The second supply forwarded, being a duplicate of the first order, has reached Unyanyembe. This party was first organised and sent off by Mr. Churchill, but the men skulked on the coast until after Mr. Churchill's departure from Zanzibar. Having reason to suspect that this was the case, I first sent a consular servant and followed myself; most of the party had started off precipitately on hearing of my approach, but there remained several loads which I had personally to expedite from Bagamoyo. It is however these goods that are now in Dr. Livingstone's hands, and it was regarding them, on learning war had broken out, that I requested Mr. Stanley, who was at Unyanyembe, to act for me in forwarding them to Dr. Livingstone. At that time it was not known here that Mr. Stanley had gone in search of Dr. Livingstone, for this he had carefully concealed at starting; but finding a white man on the spot I requested him to do what he could to push on stores intended for a fellow-traveller. Much of Dr. Livingstone's correspondence with this office relates to formal charges of slave-holding against several of the most important members of the British Indian community. I can vouch for it that each man fully understood every word written in the contract; and further, that these men, said to be slaves of Banians, declared themselves freed men. That these men have turned out badly there can be no doubt; but Mr. Stanley tells me that he has been compelled, with his own escort under his eye, to march them in slave-chains to prevent similar disasters, and Dr. Livingstone, in a paper in his own handwriting, orders chains for such a use for the men who now go up to join him. With the old affair of the Johanna men and Dr. Livingstone's pecuniary claim against them, I shall await your Lordship's orders; but as Johanna is not within my jurisdiction I enclose the paper relating thereto in original. I refrain from making any observations on the very uncourteous tone of these official letters, or the ungenerous personal insinuations affecting myself and Mr. Churchill's conduct, but I shall be ready, when required, to answer any point on which your Lordship may call for an explanation. I am wholly at a loss to explain why Dr. Livingstone, accredited as her Majesty's consul, should not at once have taken the strongest measures to put an end to murder, slave-stealing, and robbery, all of which, he says, were openly carried on by Nassick boys—British *protégés*—who, if not now part of his escort, were at least introduced into the country by him, and at the time, in the same camp. If he, on the spot, armed with the consular authority, after seeing what he describes, finds himself powerless to interfere, how can he expect justice to overtake the accused from this distance, in a region not in any way within the power of the Zanzibar Sultan?"

◆

(Extract.)

"Dr. KIRK *to* Earl GRANVILLE. (Received July 22.)

"Zanzibar, May 18, 1872.

"I have the honour to report that, on receipt of certain intelligence that Dr. Livingstone was at Unyanyembe, distant only thirty days' journey from the coast, in good health, and in possession of ample supplies, but without any intention of leaving Africa for the present, Lieutenant Dawson, leader of the 'Search and Relief Expedition,' determined that his services as a hydrographer and skilled surveyor were not required. Dr. Livingstone's son still insisting on proceeding to join his father and follow him, and Lieutenant Henn, under this circumstance, thinking it hardly well to allow him to proceed alone, took command on Lieutenant Dawson retiring. Mr. New, missionary, who had joined the expedition here as interpreter, offered also to go, and the new party were ready for a start when Mr. New resigned, on the ground that, after better reflection, he could not accept a second position. His services were at once dispensed with and his resignation accepted. Lieutenant Henn, Mr. W. O. Livingstone, and the native guard next proceeded to the African mainland, where the goods had already been collected under Lieutenant Dawson. The party was ready to start, and perhaps no expedition ever set out under better auspices or better fitted out, when Mr. Stanley, the American newspaper correspondent, who a year ago had gone off, reached Bagamoyo. Mr. Stanley lost no time in assuring Lieutenant Henn that he had written orders from Dr. Livingstone to turn any expedition he might meet coming up country to him, and informed Lieutenant Henn that he and his party would be far from welcome, and their presence only an incumbrance, as he (Mr. Stanley) held the Doctor's own orders for a gang of men and the special supplies he still required. On returning to Zanzibar, where it was obvious from the tenour of Dr. Livingstone's official correspondence that he would not welcome the arrival of any assistance unless through Mr. Stanley, his confidential agent, Lieutenant Henn, necessarily retired, but Mr. W. O. Livingstone still persisting in his purpose to reach his father at all hazards in company with Mr. Stanley's men, the expedition stores were transferred to his care. Mr. Stanley lost no time in applying for the £500 that Dr. Livingstone had, in a letter I have already sent in copy, ordered me to deliver over. I informed him that I then held no such funds, all having been some time before made over by your Lordship's orders to the Search Expedition, and that the whole responsibility of the same rested with Mr. W. O. Livingstone. Mr. Stanley thereupon destroyed a check of Dr. Livingstone for the sum of £500, drawn on Bombay. Mr. W. O. Livingstone, since perusing his father's letters, refused to accompany Mr. Stanley's party or go to his father. He has given Mr. Stanley all he needed in stores and money, and the American party left yesterday for the coast. I shall here add, as otherwise my conduct may be misrepresented, that Mr. Stanley, in order to evade blame if his men did not reach Unyanyembe in time, applied to me to see them started off after his departure from Zanzibar. This was positively and at once declined, and I informed him that I could not, after what Dr. Livingstone had done and said, act in any but an official capacity. Mr. W. O. Livingstone has sold off here the surplus stores of the expedition and will render his accounts to the Royal Geographical Society."

From the above we see that Dr. Livingstone writes a formal complaint to Dr. Kirk, and, of course, is obliged to address his friend by the formal term of "Sir." He then goes on to relate the results of the several caravans sent to him from Zanzibar, and in a postscript confesses that he regrets the necessity of writing upon an unpleasant subject.

In the letters of Dr. Kirk, which evidently show that he resents the complaint, we find him retaliating with the following charges against Dr. Livingstone and myself:

1st. Dr. Livingstone has "studiously" refrained from affording the smallest hint either of his past labours during the three years he has been silent, or regarding his new explorations.

2nd. Mr. Stanley has special instructions to allow nothing to transpire here as to his (future) route or plans.

3rd. Letters formerly written in which some information was given have been suppressed or lost.

4th. Mr. Stanley has been compelled to march his men in slave-chains to prevent similar disasters from those which Dr. Livingstone has suffered.

5th. Dr. Livingstone, in a paper in his own handwriting, orders chains for such a use (to prevent disasters) for the men who now go up to join him.

6th. The tone of the official letters of Dr. Livingstone are uncourteous, and the personal insinuations affecting myself and Mr. Churchill's conduct are ungenerous.

7th. I wonder that Dr. Livingstone, armed with the consular authority, finds himself powerless to interfere to put an end to murder, slave-stealing, and robbery, openly carried on by Nassick boys—British *protégés.*

8th. Mr. Stanley lost no time in assuring Lieutenant Henn that he had written orders from Dr. Livingstone to turn any expedition he might meet coming up country to him.

9th. It is obvious, from the tenor of Dr. Livingstone's official correspondence, that he would not welcome the arrival of any assistance unless through Mr. Stanley, his confidential agent.

10th. Mr. W. O. Livingstone, since perusing his father's letters, refused to accompany Mr. Stanley's party or to go to his father.

Since Dr. Livingstone is absent, and as I can answer the above charges as well as if he were in England himself, and as I am involved in some of the statements and charges made, it is my duty to explain them as correctly as possible. My replies will be made in the same order as the statements are made.

1st. Dr. Livingstone has NOT studiously refrained from affording clues to his future plans or his past labours. Time and time again he wrote letters—copies of which I have seen in his diary—detailing his discoveries.

2nd. Mr. Stanley never received special instructions to allow nothing to transpire as to Dr. Livingstone's future route or plans, either from Dr. Livingstone or Mr. Bennett, a proof of which is that, when the correspondent of the *Daily Telegraph* came to me at Marseilles for information, I freely gave it to him.

3rd. Letters with information from Dr. Livingstone to Dr. Kirk and Lord Clarendon, written soon after his arrival in Ujiji, were sent by couriers to Unyanyembe and received by Sayd bin Salim. They were subsequently "suppressed or lost" between Sayd bin Salim at Unyanyembe and the British Consulate at Zanzibar while I was travelling with Dr. Livingstone from Ujiji to Unyanyembe.

4th. I was only compelled to march the few refractory and deserters in chains—men who constantly endangered my Expedition by leaving the property on the road, or by mutiny.

5th. Dr. Livingtone, according to my suggestions, promised to try the moral effect of a chain on the refractory and deserters, as I had done. Some means of punishment are as necessary in Central Africa for the incorrigible as prisons in civilised lands.

6th. The tone of the letters of Dr. Livingstone are not uncourteous. Discourtesy was never intended; they are mere formal complaints.

7th. Dr. Livingstone, armed even with despotic and royal authority, unless he had means to enforce it, would be as powerless as with only consular authority. He could not punish the British *protégés* with capital punishment or imprisonment in the wilds of Central Africa were he armed with the authority of all the civilised nations, unless he had means to enforce that sublime authority. He could only dismiss the miscreants.

8th. I advise readers to read the chapter entitled "Valedictory."

9th. It is not obvious, from the tenor of Dr. Livingtone's official letters to Dr. Kirk, that he would not welcome any assistance unless through Mr. Stanley. Dr. Livingstone was not aware that the British public was organising assistance for him. In the absence of this knowledge he requested me to do the best I could for him; but the men and stores such as he said he required were sent to him from Zanzibar *wholly* from English support.

10th. Mr. W. O. Livingstone, since perusing his father's letters, did not "refuse to accompany Mr. Stanley's party or to go to his father.'' Mr. Livingstone merely withdrew according to the friendly and medical advice given to him by Dr. Kirk, that in the then poor state of his health, it would have been extremely unwise, if not dangerous, for him to attempt reaching Unyanyembe during the worst monsoon that ever visited East Africa.

I conclude with the hope that when Dr. Livingstone returns, the feeling which Dr. Kirk seems to entertain for him now will be replaced by one more courteous and forbearing, which will tend to re-establish the friendly intimacy that formerly characterised the intercourse between these two old friends when they travelled and lived together in the regions of the Zambezi and Nyassa Lake. On Dr. Livingstone's side I think I may promise a cheery and hearty response to this sentiment. As for myself, nothing would delight me more than to see a general shake-hands all round. Dr. Livingstone is well aware of the sentiments I entertain for him, and Dr. Kirk may rest assured that I have a sincere admiration for himself.

The following is the very latest intelligence (received at the Foreign Office on the 19th of October last past) from Dr. Livingstone, and goes to prove precisely what I have stated, that he meant no discourtesy to Dr. Kirk, or to attack his conduct, and that I judged his feelings correctly in the preceding paragraph.

DR. LIVINGSTONE *to* LORD GRANVILLE.

"Unyanyembe, July 1st, 1872.

"MY LORD,—It is necessary to recall to memory that I was subjected to very great inconvenience by the employment of slaves instead of freemen. It caused me the loss of quite two years of time, inflicted 1,800 or 2,000 miles of useless marching, imminent risk of violent death four several times, and how much money I cannot tell. Certain Banians, Indian British subjects, headed by one Ludha Damji, seem to have palmed off their slaves on us at more than double freemen's pay, and all the slaves were imbued with the idea that they were not to follow, but to force me back. By the money and goods of these Banians nearly all the slave trade of this region is carried on. They employed dishonest agents to conduct the caravans, and this has led to my being plundered four several times. No trader is thus robbed. I sent a complaint of this to Dr. Kirk, and in my letter of the 14th of November last I enclosed a copy, in the hope that, if necessary, his hands might be strengthened by the Foreign Office in administering justice, and I was in hopes that he would take action in the matter promptly; because the Banians and their dishonest agent, Shereef, placed a private trade speculation between Dr. Kirk and me, and we were unwittingly led into employing slaves, though we all objected to Captain Fraser doing the same on his sugar estate. I regret very much to hear incidentally that Dr. Kirk viewed my formal complaint against Banians as a covert attack upon himself. If I had foreseen this, I should certainly have borne all my losses in silence. I never had any difference with him, though we were together for years, and I had no intention to give offence now. But the public interest taken in this expedition enforces publicity as to the obstacles that prevented its work being accomplished long ago. I represented the Banians and their agents as the cause of all my losses, and that the Governor here is their chief trade agent. This receives confirmation by the fact that Shereef, and all the first gang of slaves, are now living comfortably with him at Mfutu, a village about twelve miles distant from the spot at which I write.

"Having, as I mentioned in my above letter, abundant supplies to enable me in a short time to make a feasible finish-up of my work, and the first and second gangs of slaves having proved so very unsatisfactory, I felt extremely anxious that no more should come, and requested Mr. Stanley to hire fifty freemen at Zanzibar; and should he meet a party of slaves coming, by all means to send them back, no matter what expense had been incurred. I would cheerfully pay it all. I had no idea that this would lead to the stoppage of an English expedition sent in the utmost kindness to my aid. I am, really and truly, profoundly grateful for the generous effort of my noble countrymen, and deeply regret that my precaution against another expedition of slaves should have damped the self-denying zeal of gentlemen who have not a particle of the slave spirit in them. As I shall now explain, but little good could have been done in the direction in which I propose to go; but had we a telegraph, or even a penny post, I should have advised work in another direction that would have pleased the Council.

"A war has been going on here for the last twelve months. It resembles one of our own Caffre wars in miniature, but it enriches no one. All trade is stopped, and there is a general lawlessness all over the country. I propose to avoid this confusion by going southwards to Fipa, then round the south end of Tanganyika, and crossing the Chambeze, proceed west along the shore of Lake Bangweolo. Being then in latitude 12 degrees south, I wish to go straight west to the ancient fountains reported at that end of the watershed, then turn north to the copper mines of Katanga, which are only about ten days south-west of the underground excavations. Returning thence to Katanga, twelve days south-south-west leads to the head of Lake Lincoln. Arrived there, I shall devoutly thank Providence and retire along Lake Kamolondo towards Ujiji and home. By this trip I hope to make up for the loss of ground caused by the slaves. I was forced back from near the confluence of the Lomame with Webb's Lualaba. Lomame is the prolongation of Lake Lincoln into the lacustrine central line of drainage—Webb's Lualaba. The route indicated utilizes my return tramp by going round outside, or say south, about all the sources together, and this, going back through Manyuema to take up the thread of exploration, would not do. It also takes me outside the area of the Ujijian or mainland slaving and bloodshed, which the Manyuema are learning to revenge. If I retired now, as I wish with all my heart I could do with honour, I should be conscious of having left the discovery of the sources unfinished, and that soon some one else would come and show the hollowness of my claim, and worse than that by far, the Banians, and their agents, who I believe conspired to baffle me, would virtually have success in their design. I already know many of the people among whom I go as quite friendly, because I travelled extensively in that quarter in eliminating the error into which I was led by the Chambeze being called, by the Portuguese and others, the Zambesi. I should very much like to visit the Basañgo, who are near my route; but I restrict myself to six or eight months to undo the losses I sustained. About five generations ago, a white man came to the highlands of Basañgo, which are in a line east of the watershed. He had six attendants, who all died, and eventually their head man, called Charura, was elected chief by the Basañgo. In the third generation he had sixty able-bodied spearmen as lineal descendants. This implies an equal number of the other sex. They are very light in colour, and easily known, as no one is allowed to wear coral beads such as Charura brought except the Royal family. A book he brought was lost only lately. The interest of the case lies in its connection with Mr. Darwin's celebrated theory on the 'origin of species,' for it shows that an improved variety, as we whites modestly call ourselves, is not so liable to be swamped by numbers as some have thought.

"Two Mazitu chiefs live near the route. I would fain call and obtain immunity for Englishmen such as has been awarded to the Arabs of Seyed Majid, but I am at present much too rich to go among thieves. At other times I could have gone safely, because, to use a Scotch proverb, 'No one can take the breeks of a Highlander.' With ordinary success, I hope to be back at Ujiji eight months hence. If any one doubts the wisdom of my decision, or suspects me of want of love to my family in making this final trip, I can confidently appeal for approbation to the Council of the Royal Geographical Society as thoroughly understanding the subject.

"Had it been possible for me to know of the coming of the late Search Expedition, I should certainly have made use of it as a branch expedition to explore Lake Victoria, for which the naval officers selected were no doubt perfectly adapted. The skeleton of a boat left here by Mr. Stanley would have served their purpose, and they would have had all the merit of independent exploration and success. I travelled for a considerable time in company with three intelligent Sanheli, who had lived three, six, and nine years respectively in the country east of the Victoria Lake, there called Okara, but on this side Mkara. They described three or four lakes, only one of which sends its waters to the north. Okara seems to be Lake Victoria proper; about its middle it gives off an arm eastwards called Kidette, in which many weirs are set and many fish caught. It is three days in length by canoe, and joins Lake Kavirondo, which may not deserve to be called a lake, but only an arm of Okara. Very dark people live on it, and have cattle. The Masai are further east. To the south-east of Kavirondo stands Lake Neibash, or Neybash; they travelled along its southern bank for three days, and thence saw Mount Kilimanjaro, also in the south-east; it had no outlet. Away far to the north of Kavirondo they described Lake Bariñgo (not Bahr Ngo). A river or rivulet, called Ngare na Rogwa, flows into it from the south or south-east. Its name signifies that it is brackish. Bariñgo gives forth a river to the north-east, called Ngardabash. The land east and north of Bariñgo is called Burukineggo, and Gallahs with camels and horses are reported; but my informants did not see them. I give their information only for what it may be worth; their object was plunder, and they could scarcely be mistaken as to the number of lakes where we suppose there is only one. The Okara, or Lake Victoria proper, is the largest, and has many very large islands in it. I have not the faintest wish to go near it, either now or at any future time. In performing my one work I desire to do it well, and I think that I may lay claim to some perseverance. Yet if ordered to go anywhere else, I should certainly plead 'severe indisposition,' or 'urgent private affairs.' I have been reported as living among the Arabs as one of themselves; that only means that I am on good terms with them all. They often call me the 'Christian,' and I never swerved from that character in any one respect.

"An original plan of getting the longitude, which I submit to Sir Thomas Maclear, of the Royal Observatory at the Cape, gives 27 degrees east as the longitude of the great river Lualaba, in latitude 4 degrees 9 minutes south. It runs between 26 degrees and 27 degrees east, and is therefore not so far west as my reckoning—carried on without watch, through dense forests and gigantic grasses—made it. It is thus less likely to be the Congo, and I ought to meet Baker on it. In reference to the ancient fountains, I already know the four rivers that unquestionably do arise near or on the western end of the watershed. Mr. Oswell and I were told, about 1851, that the Kafue and Liambai (Upper Zambesi) arose at one spot, though we were then some three hundred miles distant. The two rivers Lomame and Lufira come from the same quarter; the only point that remains doubtful is the distances of their fountain heads, and this I am very anxious to ascertain. I send astronomical observations and a sketch-map to Sir Thomas Maclear by a native. The map is very imperfect, from want of conveniences for tracing, and no position is to be considered settled or published until it is recalculated at the Observatory.

"There is a good deal of risk in so doing, but not so much danger as if I intrusted it to my friend the Governor. A former sketch-map, a multitude of astronomical observations, and nearly all my letters, always disappeared here; but it is better that they run the risk in the hand of a native than go with me over waters innumerable. The fear of losing my journal altogether led me to intrust it to Mr. Stanley to be kept by my daughter till I return, and I hope it has arrived safely. I am waiting here only till my fifty men arrive. The natural anxiety I feel for the safety of my son Oswell coming through the feverish districts between this cold highland and the coast would have been threefold increased had the naval gentlemen come.

"In conclusion, let me beg your lordship to offer my very warmest thanks to them, to the Council and Fellows of the Royal Geographical Society, and to all who kindly contributed in any way towards securing my safety. I really feel that no one in this world ought to be more deeply grateful than your most obedient servant,

"DAVID LIVINGSTONE,
"Her Majesty's Consul, Inner Africa."

CONCLUDING CHAPTER.

The following correspondence, and especially the last letter, which was accompanied by a beautiful and valuable gold snuff-box set with brilliants, will be treasured by me as among the pleasantest results of my undertaking.

H. M. S.

"Foreign Office, August 1.

"Sir,—I am directed by Earl Granville to acknowledge the receipt of a packet containing letters and despatches from Dr. Livingstone, which you were good enough to deliver to her Majesty's ambassador at Paris for transmission to this department; and I am to convey to you his Lordship's thanks for taking charge of these interesting documents.

"I am, Sir,
"Your most obedient humble servant,
"Enfield."

"Henry M. Stanley, Esq., New York Herald Bureau,
"46, Fleet Street, London."

◆

"London, August 2.

"Henry M. Stanley, Esq., has handed to me to-day the diary of Dr. Livingstone, my father, sealed and signed by my father, with instructions written on the outside, signed by my father, for the care of which, and for all his actions concerning and to my father, our very best thanks are due. We have not the slightest reason to doubt that this is my father's journal, and I certify that the letters he has brought home are my father's letters, and no others.

"Tom S. Livingstone."

◆

"August 2, 1872.

"Sir,—I was not aware until you mentioned it that there was any doubt as to the authenticity of Dr. Livingstone's despatches, which you delivered to Lord Lyons on the 31st of July. But, in consequence of what you said I have inquired into the matter, and I find that Mr. Hammond, the under-secretary of the Foreign Office, and Mr. Wylde, the head of the Consular and Slave Trade Department, have not the slightest doubt as to the genuineness of the papers which have been received from Lord Lyons, and which are being printed.

"I cannot omit this opportunity of expressing to you my admiration of the qualities which have enabled you to achieve the object of your mission, and to attain a result which has been hailed with so much enthusiasm both in the United States and in this country.

"I am, Sir,
"Your obedient,
"GRANVILLE."

"HENRY STANLEY, Esq."

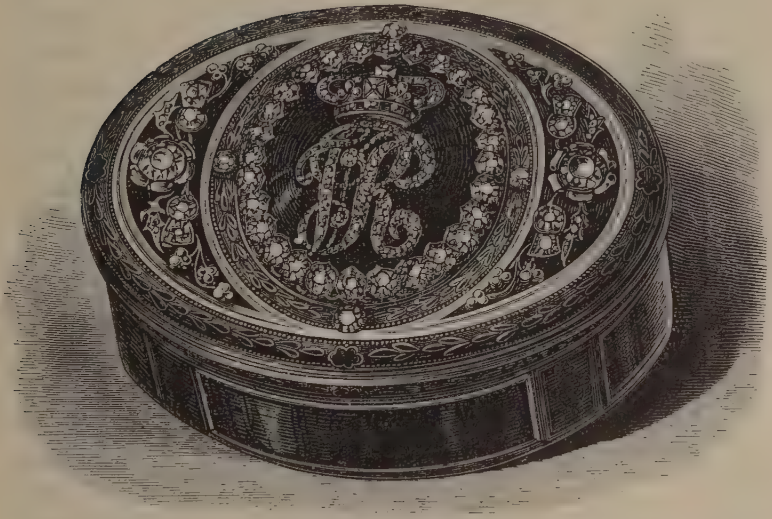
◆

"Foreign Office, August 27.

"SIR,—I have great satisfaction in conveying to you, by command of the Queen, her Majesty's high appreciation of the prudence and zeal which you have displayed in opening a communication with Dr. Livingstone, and relieving her Majesty from the anxiety which, in common with her subjects, she had felt in regard to the fate of that distinguished traveller.

"The Queen desires me to express her thanks for the service you have thus rendered, together with her Majesty's congratulations on your having so successfully carried on the mission which you fearlessly undertook. Her Majesty also desires me to request your acceptance of the memorial which accompanies this letter.

"I am, Sir,
"Your most obedient humble servant,
"GRANVILLE."



THE MEMORIAL.

GLOSSARY.

Boma	enclosure.
Bubu	black beads.
Diwan	elder, chief, or magistrate.
Doti	four yards of cloth.
Dowa	medicine.
Fundo	ten necklaces, or ten khetes.
Ghulabio	a species of bead.
Hafde	a species of bead.
Hamal	carrier.
Honga	tribute.
Ismahili	a native name for a particular kind of cloth.
Kadunguru	a brick-colored species of bead.
Kaif-Halek	"How do you do?"
Kaniki	a blue cloth manufactured in India.
Khambi	camp.
Khete	one necklace, or a tenth of a fundo.
Kichuma-chuma	"Little Irons," a disease of the liver.
Kirangozi	guide.
Kitambi	a cloth.
Kiti	stool
Lakhio	a pink-colored species of bead.
Lunghio	blue beads.
Lunghio mbamba	small blue beads.
Lunghio rega	large blue beads.
M	a prefix to denote a person of any country; such as M-jiji, a native of Jiji.

Manyapara	elder, or sub-chief.
Matama	Holcus sorghum, or the Arabic dourra.
Mbembu	forest peach.
Merikani	unbleached domestics manufactured in America.
Mganga	a medicine man, or magic doctor.
Miezi-Mungu	a Kisawahili term for "God."
Mtemi	a term synonymous with king.
Mtoni	nullah.
Muhongo	tribute.
Mulungu	a native term for "God."
Mukunguru	intermittent fever.
Mvuha	thunder.
Ngombe	a cow.
Pagazi	a porter, or carrier.
Posho	food.
Sami-Sami	the name of red beads.
Shamba	a field.
Shash	a muslin cloth.
Sheikh	a title of courtesy given to an elderly man
Shukka	two yards of cloth.
Sohari	a kind of colored cloth.
Sungomazzi	large glass or china beads of the size of marbles.
Toujiri	the name for a particular kind of cloth.
U	a prefix to denote the country: thus U-jiji signifies the country of Jiji.
Uganga	medicine.
Wa-	a prefix to denote persons: thus Wa-jiji would signify people of Jiji.
Washensi	a term of contempt applied to the natives.
Yambo	"How are you?"
Ziwa	a pool, or lake.
Ziwani	a pond.

INDEX.

Abdul Kader, tailor of the Expedition, 67, 216; retirement of, 318
Abdullah bin Nasib, 165
Acacia horrida, 203
African bridges, 125
Ali bin Salim, 45, 47, 49
Aloes, 525
Ambari, 345, 349
Amer bin Sultan, type of an old Arab Sheikh, 219
Amram bin Mussood, 271
Andersson, Mr., on the failure to reach Lake Ngami, 687
Animals, domesticated, of Central Africa, 529
Ant-hills, remarkable, 362
Ants, white, destructiveness of, 170
Arabs, antipathy to, as slave-traders, in Africa, 461
Aranselar, chief butler of the Expedition, 67; his desperate expedient to escape service, 68
Asmani, giant stature of, 306, 348; his murderous deportment, 344
Austin, Dr., of London, 100

Baba (Father), term of courtesy in addressing elderly persons, 597
Baboons, Wanderoo, 527; dog-faced, 528
Bagamoyo, French Mission Station at, 20, 43; life at, 41; climate of, 66
—— to Unyanyembe, distance of, 224
Bambarre, ivory dépôt, 450
Bana Mkuba, the "Big Master," 70
Bangwe Island, 479
Bangweolo Lake, 448
Banyans, 4; keen trading of, 6; their influence on African trade, 7
Baobab, fruit of the, 175
Baruti, one of Speke's Faithfuls, death of, 302
Beads as currency in the interior, 23
Bees, attack of, on the caravan, 595
Beke, Dr., dogmatism of, 468, 685
Bemba, wooded hills of, 480
Bennet, Mr. James Gordon, 424; Letter to, from Dr. Livingstone, 617; generous act of, in respect to Dr. Livingstone's letters, 679
Benta forest, 324
Bihawana, 182
Bikari, cluster of villages, 489
Birds of Central Africa, 530
"Bombay," or Mombay, 28, 30, 314, 345, 487
Bomboma's village, 277
Borassus flabelliformis, or Palmyra palm, 142
Brooks, Dr., 679
Buffalo gnats, 354
—— herd, 376
Bunder Salaam, cook of the Expedition, 67
Burial ceremonies, 302
Burton, Capt., 'Lake Regions of Central Africa,' 1; his map of region

of Bagamoyo, a blank, 83; experience of Banyans, 91; dread of fever by, 93; 517, 519
Bustard, 337

Cacti, 525
Cazembe, King, 444; his Queen and her Amazons, 445
Chamati Hill, 505
Chambezi, drainage of, 427
——, Livingstone's difficulty about the, 446
"Charley's" lodging-house at Zanzibar, kindly spirit of its landlord, 3
Chowpereh, Mgwana soldier, 152, 348
Christie, Dr., physician to Seyd Burghash, 68, 662
Chufwa fly, 90
Chuma, Dr. Livingstone's servant, 409
Cloth as currency in the interior, 23
'Columbine,' H.M.S., 64
Comorines, 9
Cooley, Mr., his unwillingness to give up a pet theory, 468, 517
Corn-grinding women of Kisemo, 106
Crocodile, narrow escape of the author from, 339
Customs, curious, of the Wanyamwezi, 544

Dahomey, King of, 19
'Daily Telegraph,' representative of, at Aden, 679
Dar Salaam, port of, 225
Dawson, Lieut., visit from, conversation as to his resigning command of the Search Expedition, 660; misapprehension as to the author's feelings towards him, 678; justification of his action in regard to the Search and Relief Expedition, 689
Deity, notions of natives as to, 545
Dhows, 2
Dilima Peaks, 94, 288
Diseases common to the natives, 533
Dogara, or whitebait, 473, 533
Donkeys, equipment of, 26; fine breed of, in Ubanarama, 212
"Dowa," medicine, 86

Earwigs, plague, of at Mpwapwa, 169
Elephantiasis common in Zanzibar, 148
Elephants, herd of, 358; difficulty of shooting, 582
Emancipation Proclamation of Abraham Lincoln, 451
English press, misconceptions and inaccuracies of, 680
Esau, Jemadar, 42

Farquhar, W. L., 26, 39, 67, 145, 156, 157; his death, 291; account of, 639
Faulkner, Mr., incredible statements of, 582
Fauna of Central Africa, 527
Ferajji, 350
Fire-arms, what most suitable to the traveller, 62
Fish of the Tanganika, 530
Fish-eagle, 337
Food of the Arab tribes, 526; of Central Africa, 550
Forest peach, 356
Forest scenery of Unyamwezi, 322; sublime aspect of, 520
Foreign Office, letters from, 616
Franklyn, Mr. Hales, 679
Fraser, Capt., 18, 662, 663
Freiligrath's description of the lion's habitat, 368
French Missionaries, practical character of, 20; Mission Station at Bagamoyo, 20, 43
Fruit-trees, 526

Galton, Mr. F., his designation of the author's defence of Dr. Livingstone as a sensational story, 468 684; his failure to reach Lake Ngami, 688
Giraffes, difficulty of killing, 590

Glossina morsitans, or tsetse fly, 87–90
Great Makata River, 230
Goma Pass, 151
Gombe Rivers, North and South, 521
Grant, Col., 685
Granville, Lord, letter from, conveying the thanks of Queen Victoria and the announcement of the Royal present, 716
Goodhue, Mr., or "Bana Mkuba," 39, 70
Guinea palm, 524

Hæmatite, 353
Half-castes, contemptible character of, 6
Halimah, Dr. Livingstone's cook, 417
Hassan, the Mseguhha, 355
Henn, Lieut., his meeting with the author, 653; resigns the leadership, 664
Herembe, Cape, 574
Herodotus, his account of the Nile sources, 455
Hindis, Mohammedan, cheating character of, 8
Hippopotami, 571
Honey-bird, 337; habits of, 353
Honga, or tribute, 55, 395
Horner, Père, 65
Hosmer, Dr., 679
Hunter's Paradise, the, 336
Hyænas, 194, 528

Ibrahim bin Rashid slain, 293
Imbiki, 101
Insects of Central Africa, 530
Itage village, 373

Jackals, 528
Jackson, Gen. Andrew, advice of, 374
Jako, employé of the Expedition, 67, 165
Jesuit Mission at Bagamoyo, 20, 43
Jiweh la Singa district, 209
Johari, dragoman, 27, 37; engaged to conduct the caravan conveying stores to Dr. Livingstone as far as the Kingani, 666
Jumah, 349
Jungle of Msuwa, its horrors, 648

Kabogi, Cape, 511
Kabogo Mountain, singular phenomenon of, 400
Kadetamare, or Misonghi, village, 144; favourable situation of, as mission field, 234
Kahirigi, boma of, 394
Kaif-Halek or "How-do-ye-do," the letter-carrier, 317
Kalulu, the boy-slave, 303, 352
Kamolondo Lake, 450
Kamyenyi, 635
Kanengi River, 394, 397
Kaniyaga village, 630
Kanjee, 60
Kanyamabengu River, 507
Kanyenyi, 190
Kaole village, 225
Kaseh, a myth, 260
Kasera ridge, 364
Katanga, copper mines of, 464
Katangara Islands, 506
Kavimba, 507
Kema Kaguru Mountains, 231
Khamis bin Abdullah, 267; his death, 293
Khamisi, desertion of, 101; his narrow escape, 107; flogged for desertion, 108; *précis* of character, 349
Khonze, remarkable globes of foliage at, 633
Kiala, chief, 381
Kibwe, Mount, 245
Kigoma Bay, 479
Kigondo, chief, 137
Kigwa, 220
Kigwena River, 488
Kikoka village, 81, 82
Kikuma River, 488
Kilwa, port of, 225
Kingani River, 78, 81; area drained by, 226; Valley, 77

Kingaru village, 94
Kingwere, the canoe paddler, 79
Kiora village, 144; Peak, 110, 112
Kirk, Dr., Mr. Stanley's introduction to, 12; his nonchalance in regard to Dr. Livingstone, 14; depreciatory remarks, 15; his interview with Speke's "Faithfuls," 28; tardy visit to Bagamoyo in reference to the "Livingstone caravan," 64; wish that the author should explore the Rufiji route, 83; objection to horses in the interior, 99; congratulates the author on his success, 662; decides as to the sale of part of the stores for Livingstone, 664; advises Mr. O. Livingstone not to go on to his father, 673; letter to the author on securing an efficient leader from Seyd Burghash, 674; his refusal to act for Dr. Livingstone except in an official capacity, 675
Kirondo, chief, 569
Kirurumo village, 209
Kisabengo, chief, a minor Theodore, 116
Kisemo village, 104; belles of, 105
Kisuka village, 495
Kisigo River, 235
Kisunwe River, 488
Kitanda or bedstead, 85
Kiti defile, 203
Kitunda Cape, 486
Kiwyeh, Sultan of, 198; village, 630; population of, 631
Kiwrima Valley, 113
Kolquall or candelabra tree, 161, 524
Konduchi village, 225
Krapf and Rebman, Messrs., 516
Kudu, 341
Kukumba Point, 508
Kulabi, 639
Kusuri or Konsuli, 209
Kwala or North Gombe River, 521
Kwala Mtoni, 216
Kwikurkura, 261
Ladies' tea-parties, early origin of, 546.
Lares and Penates of the Wazavira, 367
Leopard of Central Africa, 528
Letter of Shaw, 145; of Farquhar, 146
Leukole, chief, 164; his account of Farquhar's death, 639
Liemba, Lake, 447
Limestone, pisolitic, 521
Lincoln, Abraham, lake named after, by Livingstone, 451
Lion and leopard, home of the, Freiligrath's description of, 368
Lion of Central Africa, 528
Little Makata River, 230
Liuche, valley of the, 407
"Livingstone Cottage" at Mahé (Seychelles), happy intercourse at, 679
Livingstone, Dr., the author's first interview with, at Ujiji, 412; his anxiety for news, 414; the low ebb of his resources, 418; his early rising, 422; took the author for an emissary of the French Government, 423; his hard fare, 424; his sufferings and privations, 425; revival of his enthusiasm, 427; his guileless character, 428; his physical appearance, 429; absurd report of his marriage, his general character and careful observations, 430; sensitiveness of criticism, 431, amiable traits of his character, and his Spartan heroism, 432; his high spirits, inexhaustible humour, and retentive memory, 433; sincerity of his religion, 434; his Sunday services, 435; ability to withstand the African climate due to his temperate life, 435; his determination to complete his task, spite of all difficulties, 436; completeness of his discoveries, 437; summary of his experiences, 438; interview with King Cazembe, 444; difficulty as to the Chambezi, 447;

discovery of Lake Liemba, 447; investigation of the Luapula, 448: intervention in behalf of Mahomed bin Sali repaid by base ingratitude, 448; exploration of Uguhha, 449; sufferings at Bambarre, discovery of the Lualaba, description of the beauties of Moero scenery, 450; admiration of Abraham Lincoln, 451; his belief that the Lualaba or Webb's River is the true Nile, 452; his admission that the Nile sources have not been found, 454; his opinion as to the account of Herodotus, 455; thwarted by the cowardice of his men, 464; return to Ujiji, dishonesty of Sherif, 465; destitute condition of the Doctor, his complaint of the Zanzibar people not sending him freemen, 466; his objection to the "doctoring" of his despatches at home, 467; his relations with the Royal Geographical Society, 469–471; improvement of his health from more generous diet, contemplated cruise on the Tanganika, 472; start from Ujiji, 479; liability to diarrhœa, 483; manner of dealing with demands for honga, 486; loss of stores, &c., from Bombay's intoxication, 487; his unwillingness to retaliate on the hostile natives, 490; his tenderness in sickness, 497; disturbed in bed by his servant Susi in a state of intoxication, 498; his opinion that the Tanganika must have an outlet, 505; names the Kavunvweh islands the "New York Herald Islets," 510; his coolness at the hostility of the Wasansi, 512; calms them down by his gentle bearing and conversation, 513; his resolve to finish his task, 560; complaint of Dr. Kirk's sending only slaves, 561; resolves to accompany the author to Unyanyembe, 562; his sufferings on the road, 587; at Mpokwa's village, 588; his value as a travelling companion, 590; stung by wild bees, 596; his qualifications as a traveller, 599; peaceful recollections of his wife's grave, his relation of incidents of the life of his son Robert, 601; arrival at Ugundo, 604; letters from Dr. Kirk and home, 605; welcome to Unyanyembe, 607; in comfortable quarters and in possession of stores, 608; wreck of the stores detained by Sayd bin Salim, 612; in possession of four years' store of supplies, 613; his letter to Mr. Bennett, jun., 616; probable results of his perseverance in African discovery, 619; his last day with the author, 622; his intentions as to the future, 626; the parting farewell, 627; instructions to turn back any slave caravan sent to his relief, 663

——, Mr. Oswald, introduction to, 655; equipment of his proposed expedition, 672; determines to resign, by Dr. Kirk's advice, 673

——, Robert Moffatt, incidents of his life, 601

——, Mr. T. S., testimony of, to the genuineness of the Despatches from his father, 615

Lizard, large, 482

Loajeri River, 536

Loeki or Lomani River, 451

Lualaba or "Webb's River" of Livingstone, 450; thought by him to be the true Nile, 452

Luapula River, 448

Lubilash River, 452

Ludha Damji, 37

Lufira River, 451

Luhanga Peak, 493

Lukomo village, 388

Luvumba Cape, 511

Mabruki, cruel treatment of, 29; 347

Mabunguru Nullah, 205; River, 233
Madedita, 213
Magala, Mutware of, 494
Maganga, 86, 94, 100
Magunda Mkali, 204
Mahommed bin Sali, his release by Livingstone and subsequent ingratitude, 448
Maizun, Mons., 637
Makata Valley, 127; River, 136, 645; Plain, 641
Makololo race, extinction of, 542
Makumbi, chief, 385
Malagash Inlet, 16, 17
Malagarazi River, 381, 537
Manyuema country, people of, 459; the El Dorado of the Arabs, 460; sought as slaves, 464
—— tribe, clever weapon manufacturers, 557
Mapanga, 635
Marefu, 355
Marenga Mkali, 162, 172, 638
Masangi, 277
Masika, or rainy season, 46, 95, 123, 138, 640
Matamombo, 162
Mazitu, marauding propensities of, 444
Mbawala, species of antelope, 366
Mbembu, or forest peach, 356, 375
Mbengerenga River, 230
Mbegu-tree, 523
Mdaburu River, 233, 630
Medical appliances used by the natives, 534
Medicine for daubing warriors, 280
Metals known to the tribes of Central Africa, 533
Mfuto, Eastern, 278
Mganga, medicine-man of Unyamwezi, 543
Mgongo Tembo, or "Elephant's Back," 211
Mgwana, 107
Mikiseh, 113
Mionvu, Mutware of Kimenyi, 388
Mirambo, 280; defeated at Mfule, 304
Misonghi, deserted village, 366
Mizanza, 191
Mkambaku range of Speke, 226
Mkora tree, 523
Mkurongo tree, 523
Mkuti River, 404
Mkuyu, gigantic sycamore, 327
Moero Lake, 447; beauty of the scenery, 450
Mohammed bin Abdulla slain, 293
Mohammed bin Gharib, 570
Monkeys, troop of, 370
Morris, Hon. E. J., 79
Mpokwa River, 367
Mponda, chief, 441
Mpwapwa, its fruitfulness, 163; Mountains, 154, 166
Mrera, chief, 358
——, warriors of, 359
Mrima, portion of country so called, 224
Msagara, youthful, the *beau idéal* of African savage, 248
Msuwa, 102
Mtamba sycamore, gigantic size of, 522
Mtemi, chief, 333
Mud-fish, 216
Mugere River, 496
Mugeyo village, 493
Mugihewa territory, 500
Mukamba, chief, 496
Mukondoku, chief, 632
Mukondokwa Range, 151; Pass, 230, 642; River, 151, 230, 641; feeders of, 231
Mukungu, 486
Mukunguru, African intermittent fever, 86, 119, 130, 325
Munieha, 203
Muniyi Usagara, 151
Musa, chief of the Johanna men, 442
Murembwe Cape, 489; Point, 490
Muscat Arabs of Zanzibar, 6
Mussoudi, the Diwan's account of an extraordinary flood, 647

Musunya Lake, 399
Muzimu Island, 482, 493
Mvule tree, 524
Mvumi village, 641
Mwaru, 357
Myombo tree, 126
Mussoud bin Abdullah, 266
Mussoudi, 109; beautiful prospect at, 110

"Nazi-Moya" at Zanzibar, 5, 13
Negroes of Zanzibar, 9; character of, 10
New, Rev. Charles, introduction to, 659; his account of the collapse of the English Relief Expedition, 615
"New York Herald" Islets, 510
Ngaraiso village, 630
Nghwhalah River, 521, 630
Nguru Peak, 151, 153
Niamtaga, 404
Niasanga village, 482
Niongo, 357
Nondo, Speke's runaway, 214
Nullahs, description of, 232
Nyabigma island, 484
Nyambwa, 186
Nzoe, antelope of Speke, 366

"Omar," Mr. Stanley's watch dog, 85; death of, 162
Pallah buck, 341
Peach trees, wild, 535
Pembera Pereh, Sultan, 184, 187
Perpusilla, the, 337, 529
Piaggia, the Italian traveller, 453
Pisolitic limestone, 94
Plantains, toddy made from, 525
Pottery, native, of the Wazavira, 367

Queen Victoria, letter conveying the thanks of Her Majesty and the announcement of the Royal present, 616.

Rawlinson, Sir Henry, 685, 687, 692
Ras Shangani, "Sandy Point," 13
Rehenneko village, 142, 641
Reptiles of Central Africa, 530
Rocky Mountains and East African chain compared, 246
Rosako village, 84
Royal Geographical Society, their relations with Dr. Livingstone, 467; leavened with Cooleyism, 469; their conduct towards the author, 683; their censure of the "Search and Relief Expedition" undeserved, 688; its collapse due to their neglect in issuing instructions contingent on the author's success, 690
Rua country, 449; people, 459
Rubeho Slopes, 151; Peak, 167
Rubuga, 219
Rudewa River, 140
Rufiji, or Ruhwha River, 235
Rugufu Lake, 400; River, 376, 536
Ruhinga, chief, 501
Rusizi River, 495; problem of, 476; delta of, 500

Saadami, port of, 225
Said bin Majid, 414
Salim bin Rashid, 114
Saline lagoons, origin of, 232
Sultana of Simbamwenni, 116, 131, 132
Sami-sami, red beads, 357
Sawahili, meaning of the term, 224
Sayf, son of Ali, slain, 293
Sayd bin Salim's house, 258
Selim, interpreter, 70
——, the Arab boy, 351
Seyd Burghash, Sultan of Zanzibar, 37, 38
Sitting on pombe, 189
Sentakeyi, Cape, 493
Shaw, J. W., 26, 32, 39, 66, 70, 118, 139, 152, 157, 278, 305, 315; leaves the Expedition, 321
Shamba Gonera, or, "Gonera's Field," good disposition of the Indian widow towards the whites; appearance of the place, trade, &c., 75

Sheikh Sayd bin Salim, 266, 268, 612
—— Hamed, 188
—— Hassid, 22
—— Khamis bin Abdullah, 266
—— bin Nasib, 266, 297
—— Sultan bin Ali, 266
—— Thani, 162, 178
Sherif, Dr. Livingstone's servant, dishonesty of, 465
Shiza, 220
Sigungwa, 575
Shrubs, &c. of Central Africa, 526
Simbamwenni, 115; desolation of, by flood, 646
—— Sultana of, 120, 131, 132
Simba, ruler of Kasera, 364
Simbo, 228, 645
—— Khambi, 126
Simeon Price, Livingstone's servant, 443
Singwe, a plum-like fruit, 472
Slave-trade, 225, 244
Slave-gang, chained, 104
Small-pox, terrible scourge of East and Central Africa, 533
Smoking among the Wanyamwezi, 548
Sofi beads, 473
Somalis, 9
Soor Hadji Palloo, 50, 51, 52, 55, 56, 57, 100
Soud, the Arab, 269
——, son of Sayd bin Majid, 266
—— bin Sayd, his attack on Wilyankuru, 282; his death, 283
Speke, Capt., 227, 517; his "Faithfuls," 27; treatment of "Bombay" by, 28; error of, as to altitude of Tanganika, 466
Stanley, Mr., start from Bombay, 1; landing at Zanzibar, hospitable reception by Capt. Webb, 3; impressions of the city, 4; interview with Dr. Kirk, 12; organization of the expedition, 21; visit to the Sultan, 36; departure from Zanzibar, 40; landing at Bagamoyo, 41; troublesome experiences, 47; visit to the "Livingstone caravan," 63; interview with Dr. Kirk, 65; preparations for departure into the interior, 66; difficulties with employés, 67; chase after a thief, despatch of four caravans, 68; apology for egotism, 69; departure of the fifth caravan, led by himself, 70; members composing it, 71; outfit, 72; the start, first camp, Shamba Gonera, 73, 75; crossing the Kingani, 78; hippopotami shooting, 80; Kikoka village, 82; map of Bagamoya region, 83; halt at Rosako, 84; "Omar," watch-dog, missing, 85; formidable number of insects, the tsetse-fly, 87–90; game hunting, 91; difficulty of penetrating an African jungle, 92; camp at Kingaru, 94; death of the grey Arab horse, and offence given by its interment, 96; interview with the king of Kingaru, 97; loss of the remaining horse from cancer, 99; desertion and sickness, 100; appearance of Maganga's caravan, 100; march to Imbiki, 101; reach Msuwa, perils of the jungle, 102; astonishment of the chief, 103; chained slave-gang, 104; halt at Kisemo, 104; belles of, 105; narrow escape of Khamisi, 107; flogged for desertion, 108; arrival of Wangwana caravan with file of 'Heralds,' &c., 108; visit of Kisemo's daughters, 109; Mussoudi, 109; beautiful prospect, 110; cross the Ungerengeri, 111; start for Mikeseh, 112; Ulagalla and Muhalleh, 113; overtake Maganga's caravan, meet with Selim bin Rashid, news of Livingstone, 114; pass town of Simbamwenni, 115; its fortifications, 116; curiosity of the inhabitants, 117; four days' halt and overhaul of the luggage, 118; attack of ague, 119; visit of ambassadors of the Sultana

of Simbamwenni, 120; wretched encampment on the Ungerengeri, 124; difficulty of crossing the river, 125; Simbo Khambi, Bunder Salaam, the cook, flogged for pilfering, 126; Makata Valley, 127; loss of Bombay's equipage, 128; assistance of the Sultana of Simbamwenni in its recovery, 131; her appropriation of tribute claimed as due, 132; intervention of Sheikh Thani, 132; difficulties of the Makata Valley, 135; escape and capture of Kingaru, 137; emerge from the swamp Makata, attack of dysentery, 141; halt at Rehenneko, 142; ascent of the Usagara Mountains, 143; Mukondokwa Valley and River, 144; Kiora, 144; camp at, illness of Farquhar, 147; unsatisfactory state of his caravan, 148; ford of the Mukondokwa River, 151; Madete, Lake of Ugombo, 153; revolt of Shaw and Farquhar, 157; Shaw's penitence and subsequent attempt at assassination, 160; departure from Ugumbo, 161; camp at Matamombo, death of the dog "Omar," Sheikh Thani in clover at Mpwapwa, 162; a good breakfast and dinner, 163; Farquhar left to be nursed, 164; twelve pagazis engaged, 166; abundance of earwigs, 169; white ants, 170; Chunyo, badness of the water, 172; attack of fever, 173; Ugogo, 174; frantic conduct of the population, 176; West Mvumi, 177; the Sultan's exorbitant demand of Konda, 178; Matamburu, reasonableness of the Sultan of, 181; Bihiwana, 182; attack of intermittent fever, 183; Kididimo, bleak aspect and bad water, 184; Nyambwa, demonstrativeness of the people, 186; Mizanza, 191; benefit from quinine, visit from the Sultan, 192; Little Mukondoku, 194; Mukondoku Proper, 195; commotion and cowardice, 196; uproar in the camp, 197; debate as to route, 199; threatened mutiny, 202; Munieka, 203; Mabunguru Nullah, 205; Unyambogi, 206; Kiti, 207; Msalalo, Ngaraiso, 208; Kirurumo, greeting from the villagers, interview with Sultan bin Mahommed, 209; Kusuri, visit from Sheikh Hamed, and party of elephant-hunters, 210; halt at Mgongo Tembo, 211; Nghwhalah Mtoni, abundance of sweet water, 212; Madedita, tsetse-fly troublesome, 213; reach Unyamwezi territory at Eastern Tura, cultivated region, 213; Nondo, Speke's runaway, 214; Central Tura, attempted night robbery, 214; a thief shot dead, pass Western Tura, 215; Kwala Mtoni, mud-fish, illness of the tailor, Abdul Kader, 216; wishes to give up his post, 217; Rubuga, desolation of, since Burton's visit, 219; meeting with Amer bin Sultan, 219; Kigwa, wasted condition of, 220; Shiza, pastoral aspect of, visit from the Sultan, 220; rejoicings in camp on reaching Unyanyembe territory, 221; geography and ethnography of the country traversed, 223–257; life in Unyanyembe, 258; breakfast and gossip with Sayd bin Salim, 259; Kazeh, a myth, 260; leave Kwikuru, 261; in comfortable quarters, 262; visit from the Tabora Arab magnates, 264; Tabora, chief Arab settlement in Central Africa, 266; attend a council of war, 267; feast at the close of the council; return to Kwihara, 271; the Livingstone caravan's halt of 100 days, 272; attack of fever, 273; preparations for the march, 275; warlike demonstration, 277; Eastern Mfuto, illness of Shaw, *personnel* of the army, 278; Umanda, medicine daubing, war harangue, 280; Zimbizo, attack on the village, 281; fate of Soud bin Sayd and his Arabs, 283; retreat and stormy councils of war, 284; further retreat of the Arabs to Tabora, 288; serious position of the Expedition, 289; intelligence of Livingstone, 290; news of death of Farquhar, 291; illness of Shaw, attack of Mirambo on Tabora, 292; Khamis bin Abdullah, &c., slain, 293; preparations for Mirambo's threatened attack on Kwihara, 295; visit to Sheikh bin Nassib, 297; retreat of Mirambo, 298; determination to lead a flying caravan to Ujiji, 299; apathy of Shaw, 300; visit to Thani bin Abdullah, arrival of letters, 301; death of Barusi, evil reports by the Arabs, 302; present of a boy-slave, 303; defeat of Mirambo at Mfuto, 304; nursing experiences, 305; farewell feast at Unyanyembe, 307; march to Ujiji commenced by southern route, 310; list of "braves" of the Expedition, 311; Bombay's tender passion, 313; the start, 314; Shaw shows the white feather, 315; Kinyamwezi village, attack of fever, 316; arrest of runaways, threat of slave-chain, 317; Ineseuka, further desertions, punishment, withdrawal of Abdul Kader the tailor, 318; sickness in camp, adverse appearances, 319; Kasegara, rejoicings at 319; Kikandu, Shaw's by-play, 320; his withdrawal, 321; beauty of Unyamwezi forest scenery, 322; Ugunda, 323; Benta, 324; Kikuru, the mukunguru or fever, 325; camp at Ziwani, 327; gigantic sycamore, 328; Manyara, cultivated region, 331; difficulty of buying provisions, 332; visit of Mtemi, 333; his astonishment at the author's medicine-chest, 334; Gombe River, its beautiful neighbourhood, 336; narrow escape from a crocodile, suspicious-looking natives, 339; a peaceful camp-scene, 340; symptoms of revolt at starting onwards, 343; murderous aspect of Asmani and Mabruki, 344; Bombay and Ambari in chains, the march resumed, sketch of the principal men of the Expedition, 348; Ziwani (pool), waterless condition of, 352; Tongoni, abundance of honey-birds, 353; Marefu, rumours of war in our front, 355; march through a forest abounding with peach-trees, 356; Utende village, 356; Mwaru, 357; supposed report of Livingstone, Mrera's district, wild elephants, 358; Selim falls ill, 359; start from Mrera north-westward, 361; confidence restored in the camp, remarkable ant-hills, 362; camp in the jungle, 363; embassy from Simba, 364; Uzavira, ruined neighbourhood of, 366; Misonghi, 366; Mpokwa River, deserted village near, 367; Mtambu stream, its beauty, 368; attack by a leopard, 369; shot at a wild boar, 370; proximity of lions, 371; Itaga village, beginning of troubles, 373; shortness of provisions, 377; "Welled Nzogera's" village, abundant supplies, 379; crossing a marsh, 380; reach the Malagarazi, heavy exaction of the chief Kiala, 381; island of Ihata, fresh demands for ferriage, 382; donkey seized by crocodile, 383; Uvinza, news of Livingstone, 384; departure from the Malagarazi, 385; country of Uhha, halt at Kawanga, 386; halt on the Pombwe stream, 388; interview with Mionvu, 389; exorbitant demand of honga, 392; cross the Kanengi River, 394; more claims of honga, 395; departure by stealth, 396; Kanengi River, 397; cross the Rusugi, taming a sable shrew, 398; Lake Musunya, 399; Rugufu River, Kabogo Mountain, singular phenomenon of, 400; Sunuzzi stream, 401; enter Ukaranga, 402; beauty of the landscape, 403; Mkute River, Niamtaga, alarm of the people, 404; first view of the Tanganika, 406; Port of Ujiji in view, 407; salute announcing the approach of the caravan, 408; meeting with Susi, the servant of Dr. Livingstone, 409; excitement of the inhabitants, 410; appearance of the Doctor, 411; the introduction, 412; conversation, 413; the over-due letter-bag, 365 days from Zanzibar, 414; budget of news, 415; intercourse with Livingstone, 420, *et seq.*; suggestions as to his future course, 477; start with Livingstone for cruise on the Tanganika, 479; pass Bangwe Island, 479; wooded hills of Bemba, 480; camp at Niasanga, 482; Nyabigma Island, 484; Mukungu, 486; loss of valuables from Bombay's intoxication, 487; hostile demonstrations of the Bikari people, 490; bivouac on the shore disturbed by natives, 491; round Cape Sentakeyi, and sleep at Mugeyo, 493; Magala, hospitality of the people, visit of the Mutware of, 494; rumours of wars, 494; Kisiku, native report as to the Rusizi River, 495; Mugere, delta of the, 496; visit Mukamba, attacked by fever and experience Livingstone's tenderness, 497; Mugihewa territory on the delta of the Rusizi, 500; visit of the chief Ruhinga, his geographical information, 501; exploration of the Rusizi debouchure, 504; Kukumba Point, enchanting scenery near, 508; halt at Bemba, superstition of the Wajiji, 509; 'New York Herald Islets,' so named by Livingstone, 510; Cape Luvumba, hostile aspect of the Wasansi, 511; return to Ujiji, domestic and foreign news, 515; geographical and ethnographical notes, 514 *et seq.*; preparations for march to Unyanyembe, 562; attack of fever, 564; Christmas Day at Ujiji, 565; the departure, 566; meet with Mohammed bin Gharib, 570; Sigunga, beautiful aspect of, 574; sport at Urimba, 575; homeward bound, 576 *et seq.*; an elephant herd, 581; Ukawendi, luxuriance of its vegetation, 584; painful march to Imrera, 586 *et seq.*; a giraffe shot, 593; severe attack of fever, the Doctor's prescription, 594; the caravan attacked by bees, 595; Mrera, meeting with caravan sent by Sayd bin Habib, exchange of news, 596; encounter a lion, 600; Ugundu, the deserter Hamdallah retaken, 604; receipt of letters and newspapers, 605; welcome to Unyanyembe, 607; stores found tampered with, 610; a second Christmas celebration, 611; four years' store of supplies turned over to the Doctor, 613; commission to enlist at Zanzibar fifty freemen as his carriers, 615; farewell dance of natives, 620; choragic adieu of the Wanyamwezi, 621; last night with Livingstone, 622; the last walk in his company, 625; the farewell, 627; a letter from the Doctor, 628; Ngaraiso, hostility of the Wakimbu, 630; Ugogo, warlike demonstrations, 631; march of warriors arrayed for the fight, 632; Khonze, determined mode of dealing with the chief successful, 633;

Kamyenyi, cordial reception by the Msagira of, 634; Mapanga, hostile demonstration, 636; asked to act as rain-maker, 637; Kulabi, experience of a "peppo," 638; Marenga Mkali, 639; Mukondokwa valley, experience of the Masika, 640; Makata plain, battling with the floods, 641; Mvumi village, fighting with mosquitoes, 641; the Doctor's despatches in danger, 642; a perilous ford, 644; ten days' camp at Rehenneko, difficulties of the march to the Makata River, 645; arrive at Simbo, cross the Unkerengere, and reach Simbamwenni, its desolated aspect, 646; Ulagalla, extraordinary devastation by flood, 647; Msuwa, horrors of its jungle, 648; Kingaru Hera, news of the Zanzibar storm, 649; Rosako, welcome consignment from the American Consul, 649; ill-natured criticisms, information as to the "Livingstone Search and Relief Expedition," 650; Kingwere's ferry, a watery waste, four miles broad, 651; welcome to Bagamoyo, 652; meeting with Lieut. Henn, 653; introduction to Mr. Oswald Livingstone, 655; the march ended, 657; welcome at Zanzibar, the American Consul and Rev. C. New, 658; congratulation of Lieut. Dawson, discussion as to his resignation, 599; visit from Dr. Kirk and Bishop Tozer, 662; change in the author's appearance on his return, 663; conversation with Lieut. Henn, 664; explanations from the Rev. C. New, 665, *et seq.*; preparations for Mr. O. Livingstone's Expedition, 672; his resignation, 673; selection of an Arab leader, 674; parting with Lieut. Dawson, 674; discussion with Dr. Kirk on the misunderstanding with Livingstone, 675; farewell to old travelling companions, 666; departure from Zanzibar in the 'Africa,' 677; reach Seychelles, a month's delay at Mahé, agreeable intercourse at "Livingstone Cottage," 678; arrival at Aden and Marseilles, 679; a few remarks as to the English Press, 679; and the Royal Geographical Society, 683; defence of the English Expedition against the censure of the Council, 689; honor rendered to the author by the Royal Geographical Society, 691; award of the Victoria Medal, 692.

Sultan bin Mohammed, 209

Sultan of Zanzibar, Mr. Stanley's interview with, 37

Sunuzzi stream, 401

Sunset at Ujiji, magnificence of, 539

Susi, Dr. Livingstone's servant, 409, 498

Swaruru, Sultan, 196

Sycamore, gigantic, 327

Tabora, 264

Tagamoyo, massacre of the Wamanyuema by, 463

Tamarind-trees, 525

Tamarisks, 525

Tanganika Lake, first visit to, 406; cruise on, with Dr. Livingstone, 479 *et seq.*

Tarya Topan, integrity of, 9, 37, 50

Tembe, the, 253

Thani bin Abdullah, 266, 301

——, Sheikh, 132

Thata Island, 382

Tongoni, 353

Tozer, Bp., his residence at Zanzibar, 5, 19; his character and High Church practices, 19, 20; his congratulations at the author's success, 663

Trade, mode of conducting, in Africa, 8

Tsetse fly, 87, 213, 330, 354

Tura, Eastern, 213; Central, 214; Western or Tura Perro, 215

Udoe, cones of, 94
——, picturesque aspect of, and warlike character of the people, 240
"Uganga," or charm, 106
Ugombo, Lake, 153, 231; Peak, 156; Plain, 167
Ugunda village, 323
Uhha country, geological interest of, 538; king of, 387
Ujiji, magnificence of sunset at, 539; port of, 407
Ukaranga territory, its beautiful aspect, 403, 539
Ukawendi country, 536, 537, 585; scenery of, 375
Ukonongo, 535
Ukwere, territory of, 226
Ulagalla district, 113
Ulimengo, absconding slave, 349, 592
Unamapokera, friendliness of, 635
Ungerengeri River, 105, 111, 123, 647; rise of, 227; Valley, 110
Urundi Mountains, 488
Unyamwezi forest scenery, beauty of, 322; meaning of the name, 516; territory, 213
Unyambogi, 206
Uplands of Africa, health and abundance in, 234
Urimba, 575
Uronga River, 230
Urimba, camp at, 558
Usagara Mountains, 126, 143
Useguhha, territory of, 226
Utende village, 356
Uvinza, Southern and Northern, 537
Uwelasia River, 575
Uyanzi, Magunda Mkali, or "Hot Field," 257
Uyoweh, Mirambo of, 267
Uzavira, village in, 367

Victoria Medal of the Royal Geographical Society awarded to the author, 692

Wabembe, or Wavembe, tribe of cannibals, 555
Waganga or medicine men, 244; filthy war-potion concocted by, 295
Wagogo tribe, 249; villages of, 214
Wagtails regarded as birds of good omen, 483
Waguhha tribe, 384
Wagunda tribe, 324
Wahumba tribe, 195
"Wait-a-bit" thorn, 525
Wajiji tribe, 552; superstition, 509
Wakimbu of Tura, rascality of, 214
—— tribe, 208; villages of, 214
Wakwere tribe, 238
Wakonongo, 339
Wamanyuema, fondness of, for marketing, 463
Wami River distinct from the Kingani, 229; available for commerce, 233
Wangwana caravan, 108
—— village, 219
—— tribe, gormandizing of the, 342
Wanyamwezi tribe, 9, 197; their superstitious aversion to antelope meat, 366; the Yankees of Africa, 540
War, council of, 267
Warfare, tame mode of conducting, 495
Wa-Ruga-Ruga, 354
Warundi tribe, 555
Wasawahili tribe, 9, 237
Wasansi or Basansi tribe, 511
Waseguhha territory and tribe, 114, 442
Washenshi, 103, 104
Wavinza tribe, 385; greed of, 384
Webb, Capt. F. R., U.S. Consul, his hospitality and courtesy, 3, 12, 17, 37
——, Mr., of Newstead Abbey, 451; river named after him, 451
——, Mrs., 40
Wagogo, cool impudence of the, 85
Whinde, port of, 225
Wilderness, African, more favourable

to the traveller than the populated country, 205
Wild-boar, 372
Wilyankuru, attack on, 282
Wine, high value of, in the interior, 25

Zanzibar city, view of, from the bay, harbor, "Charley's" lodging-house, 3; character of the streets and population, trade, "Nazi-Moya," 4; house of Bishop Tozer, mart of the interior, mode of commerce unchanged for ages, 5; population, 11; filth and unhealthiness of, 16; inertness induced by climate of, 17; Palace of the Sultan, 36
—— Island, misconceptions as to its character, 1; its aspect from the sea, 2; malarious climate, 16
Zassi River and village, 483
Zebra, 338
Zimbizo, attack on the village, 281
Zimmerman on the benefit of an unencumbered mind, 433
Ziwa, or pond, 215
Ziwani (pool), 327, 352
Zogga, palm toddy, 487

LONDON: PRINTED BY W. CLOWES AND SONS, STAMFORD STREET AND CHARING CROSS.